User Manual

Tektronix

AWG2005
Arbitrary Waveform Generator

070-8958-50

www.tektronix.com

Tektronix Japan, Ltd., 5–9–31 Kitashinagawa, Shinagawa–ku, Tokyo 141–0001 Japan
Tektronix, Inc., P.O. Box 500, Beaverton, OR 97077

WARRANTY

Tektronix warrants that this product will be free from defects in materials and workmanship for a period of one (1) year from the date of shipment. If any such product proves defective during this warranty period, Tektronix, at its option, either will repair the defective product without charge for parts and labor, or will provide a replacement in exchange for the defective product.

In order to obtain service under this warranty, Customer must notify Tektronix of the defect before the expiration of the warranty period and make suitable arrangements for the performance of service. Customer shall be responsible for packaging and shipping the defective product to the service center designated by Tektronix, with shipping charges prepaid. Tektronix shall pay for the return of the product to Customer if the shipment is to a location within the country in which the Tektronix service center is located. Customer shall be responsible for paying all shipping charges, duties, taxes, and any other charges for products returned to any other locations.

This warranty shall not apply to any defect, failure or damage caused by improper use or improper or inadequate maintenance and care. Tektronix shall not be obligated to furnish service under this warranty a) to repair damage resulting from attempts by personnel other than Tektronix representatives to install, repair or service the product; b) to repair damage resulting from improper use or connection to incompatible equipment; or c) to service a product that has been modified or integrated with other products when the effect of such modification or integration increases the time or difficulty of servicing the product.

THIS WARRANTY IS GIVEN BY TEKTRONIX WITH RESPECT TO THIS PRODUCT IN LIEU OF ANY OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED. TEKTRONIX AND ITS VENDORS DISCLAIM ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. TEKTRONIX' RESPONSIBILITY TO REPAIR OR REPLACE DEFECTIVE PRODUCTS IS THE SOLE AND EXCLUSIVE REMEDY PROVIDED TO THE CUSTOMER FOR BREACH OF THIS WARRANTY. TEKTRONIX AND ITS VENDORS WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES IRRESPECTIVE OF WHETHER TEKTRONIX OR THE VENDOR HAS ADVANCE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Contents

Getting Started

Operating Basics

Functional Operation Summary

Reference

Appendices

List of Figures

List of Tables

General Safety Summary

Review the following safety precautions to avoid injury and prevent damage to this product or any products connected to it.

Only qualified personnel should perform service procedures.

Injury Precautions

Use Proper Power Cord

To avoid fire hazard, use only the power cord specified for this product.

Avoid Electric Overload

To avoid electric shock or fire hazard, do not apply a voltage to a terminal that is outside the range specified for that terminal.

Ground the Product

This product is grounded through the grounding conductor of the power cord. To avoid electric shock, the grounding conductor must be connected to earth ground. Before making connections to the input or output terminals of the product, ensure that the product is properly grounded.

Do Not Operate Without Covers

To avoid electric shock or fire hazard, do not operate this product with covers or panels removed.

Use Proper Fuse

To avoid fire hazard, use only the fuse type and rating specified for this product.

Do Not Operate in Wet/Damp Conditions

To avoid electric shock, do not operate this product in wet or damp conditions.

Do Not Operate in Explosive Atmosphere

To avoid injury or fire hazard, do not operate this product in an explosive atmosphere.

Product Damage Precautions

Use Proper Power Source

Do not operate this product from a power source that applies more than the voltage specified.

Provide Proper Ventilation

To prevent product overheating, provide proper ventilation.

Do Not Operate With Suspected Failures

If you suspect there is damage to this product, have it inspected by qualified service personnel.

Safety Terms and Symbols

Terms in This Manual

These terms may appear in this manual:

WARNING. *Warning statements identify conditions or practices that could result in injury or loss of life.*

CAUTION. *Caution statements identify conditions or practices that could result in damage to this product or other property.*

Terms on the Product

These terms may appear on the product:

DANGER indicates an injury hazard immediately accessible as you read the marking.

WARNING indicates an injury hazard not immediately accessible as you read the marking.

CAUTION indicates a hazard to property including the product.

Symbols on the Product

The following symbols may appear on the product:

Certifications and Compliances

CSA Certified Power Cords

CSA Certification includes the products and power cords appropriate for use in the North America power network. All other power cords supplied are approved for the country of use.

Welcome

This is the User Manual for the AWG2005 20MHz Arbitrary Waveform Generator.

Section 1 Getting Started covers the features of the AWG2005, initial inspection, and start up. In particular, the start up section covers the procedures required prior to turning on the unit and points that require special care or caution. Be sure to read this section carefully.

Section 2 Operating Basics first describes the components of the AWG2005 and their functions. Then it describes the operating procedures used to output waveforms from the AWG2005 by presenting a few simple examples.

Section 3 Functional Operation Summary presents a basic operational overview of the AWG2005.

Section 4 Reference explains the specific functions and execution method details for each menu.

Appendices describe option and accessories, specifications, sample waveform library, and various miscellaneous subjects.

Related Manuals

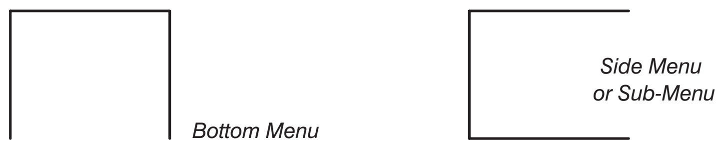
Other documentation for the instrument includes:

- The AWG2005 Programmer Manual (Tektronix part number 070-8657-XX) explains how to control the AWG2005 with a computer through the GPIB or RS-232-C interface. This manual is a standard accessory.
- The AWG2005 Service Manual (Tektronix part number 070-8962-XX) provides information to maintain and service AWG2005, and provides a complete board-level description of the instrument's operation. This manual is an optional accessory.

Conventions

In sections 2 through 4, you will find various procedures that contain steps of instructions for you to perform. To keep those instructions clear and consistent, this manual uses the following conventions:

- Names of front panel controls and menu item names are printed in the manual in bold with the same case (e.g., initial capitals, all upper case) as they appear on the unit itself.
- Instruction steps are numbered. When the number is omitted there is only one step.
- When menu items are displayed in the manual, the menu type, either bottom menu, side menu, or sub-menu, is distinguished and indicated as shown below.



- Consecutive button operations are expressed as shown below.

  Setting (bottom) → **View type...** (side) → **Timing** (sub)

  This expression describes the following button operations.

  1) Selecting the ”**Setting**” item from the bottom menu
  2) Selecting the ”**View type...**” item from the side menu.
  3) Selecting the ”**Timing**” item from the sub-menu.

Contacting Tektronix

Phone	1-800-833-9200*
Address	Tektronix, Inc. Department or name (if known) 14200 SW Karl Braun Drive P.O. Box 500 Beaverton, OR 97077 USA
Web site	www.tektronix.com
Sales support	1-800-833-9200, select option 1*
Service support	1-800-833-9200, select option 2*
Technical support	Email: techsupport@tektronix.com 1-800-833-9200, select option 3* 1-503-627-2400 6:00 a.m. – 5:00 p.m. Pacific time

* **This phone number is toll free in North America. After office hours, please leave a voice mail message.**
Outside North America, contact a Tektronix sales office or distributor; see the Tektronix web site for a list of offices.

Getting Started

Overview

This section describes the features of the AWG2005, initial inspection, and start up.

Product Description

The AWG2005 is a portable arbitrary waveform generator equipped with two output channels and capable of generating both arbitrary and standard function waveforms.

This arbitrary waveform generator provides these major features:

- custom waveforms for simulation and testing
- waveforms that can not be generated with function generators

As an arbitrary waveform generator, this instrument has a highest clock frequency of 20 MHz, an independent 64K-word, 12-bit internal memory for each channel, and an output amplitude to 10 $V_{p\text{-}p}$ (into 50 Ω). It can also generate a one-bit marker output which can be placed anywhere within the 64K location memory corresponding to each arbitrary output channel.

There are several options available for the AWG2005, including four-channel output, clock sweep, digital data output, and FFT and convolution waveform editor. These options allow the AWG2005 to handle a wide range of applications.

This instrument has four editors for making waveform files. Each editor is equipped with a variety of editing functions, as described below.

1. Waveform Editor – creates waveform data. This editor can display its data in three formats: graphical, table, and timing, and the data can be edited in the format appropriate for the application. Furthermore, the waveform editor can edit up to three waveform files at the same time, thus easing the creation of related waveform files.
2. Sequence Editor – creates sequences of waveforms by combining waveform files created with the waveform editor.
3. Equation Editor – creates files with equations and compiles them into waveform files.
4. Autostep Editor – programs waveform files, including output conditions for each channel, in steps.

An FFT editor and a convolution waveform editor are provided with AWG2005 units that include Option 09. These editors support frequency domain editing and waveform convolution calculations.

Similarly, a clock sweep editor is provided for Option 05. This editor allows the simple realization not only of linear and log sweeps, but also of arbitrary sweeps.

As a function generator, this instrument can generate sine waves, triangle waves, square waves, ramp waves, and pulse waves. It can set the frequency, amplitude, offset, polarity, and other factors for each of these waveforms, independently for each channel.

The AWG2005 has a 3.5-inch floppy disk drive and non-volatile memory for storing created waveform data and parameter settings. Each of these storage devices can store the files created with the editors.

You control this instrument by way of its front panel hierarchical menu display system or its rear panel GPIB or RS-232-C interfaces.

Waveforms can be transferred directly through the GPIB interface from a digital storage oscilloscope. Such direct waveform transfers allow for many types of applications with other measurement equipment and computers. Supported equipment includes our major digital storage oscilloscopes as well as the digital storage oscilloscopes of other leading manufacturers.

Initial Inspection

Before unpacking the AWG2005 from its shipping carton, inspect it for signs of external damage. If the carton is damaged, notify the carrier. The carton contains the basic instrument and its standard accessories. Refer to the Standard Accessories list in Appendix A.

This instrument was thoroughly inspected for mechanical and electrical defects before shipment. It should be free of mars or scratches. To confirm this, inspect the instrument for physical damage incurred in transit and test instrument functionality by following the Operating Examples in this manual. The Service Manual contains a full Performance Verification, and can be ordered from Tektronix (part number 070-8962-XX). If a discrepancy is found, contact your local Tektronix Field Office or representative.

NOTE

At installation time, save the shipping carton and packaging materials for repackaging in case shipment becomes necessary.

Start Up

This section describes the procedures required prior to turning on the AWG2005.

Installation

Before you begin, refer to the Safety Summary at the front of this manual for power source, grounding, and other safety information.

Before you use the instrument, ensure that it is properly installed and powered on. To properly install and power on the instrument, perform the following steps:

☐ **Step 1:** Check that the operating environment is correct.

The AWG2005 operates correctly in ambient temperatures from +10°C to +40°C and relative humidity from 20% to 80%. If this instrument is stored at temperatures outside this usage temperature range, do not switch on the power until the chassis has come within the usage temperature range. For the information on the other operating environment, see Appendix B: Performance Characteristics.

NOTE

If you are installing this instrument in the dedicated rack, refer to the instruction sheet that comes with the rack mounting kit.

☐ **Step 2:** Before switching on the power, double check that there is nothing blocking the flow of air at the fan and air intake holes.

This instrument takes in outside air and cools itself by forcibly exhausting air with the fan on its left side. Leave space at the sides of this instrument so that the heat generated within the instrument does not build up and harm the operation. There are holes for air intake on the sides and bottom of this cabinet. After switching on the power, double check that the fan is turning. Here are the minimums for the space at the sides of this instrument.

Top and rear: 3 inches

Left and right: 6 inches

WARNING

Always unplug the power cord from the socket before checking the line fuse to avoid electrical shock.

☐ **Step 3:** Remove the fuse from the fuse holder on the rear panel and check the fuse.

To remove the fuse, turn it counter-clock-wise with a screwdriver while pushing it in. There are two types of fuses that may be used. Here are the fuse types and ratings.

Fuse	Fuse Part Number	Fuse Cap Part Number
0.25 inch x 1.25 inch (UL 198G,3AG): 6A FAST, 250 V.	159-0239-00	200-2264-00
5 mm x 20 mm (IEC 127):5A (T), 250 V.	159-0210-00	200-2265-00

☐ **Step 4:** Check that you have the proper electrical connections.

The AWG2005 operates at the following power supply voltage.

Line Voltage Range	90 V – 250 V
Line Frequency	48 Hz – 440 Hz (90 V – 127 V)
	48 Hz – 63 Hz (127 V – 250 V)
Maximum Power	300 W

CAUTION

Instruments are shipped with a power cord appropriate for use with normal 115 V power systems. If the AWG2005 is to be used with 230 V power, the power cord must be replaced with one appropriate for the power source used. See Figure 1-2, "Optional Power Cords", for the available power cord types.

☐ **Step 5:** Connect the proper power cord from the rear-panel power connector to the power system.

Power On

☐ **Step 6:** Push the **PRINCIPAL POWER SWITCH** (shown in Figure 1-1) on the rear panel of this instrument. Power is now applied to the standby circuit of this instrument.

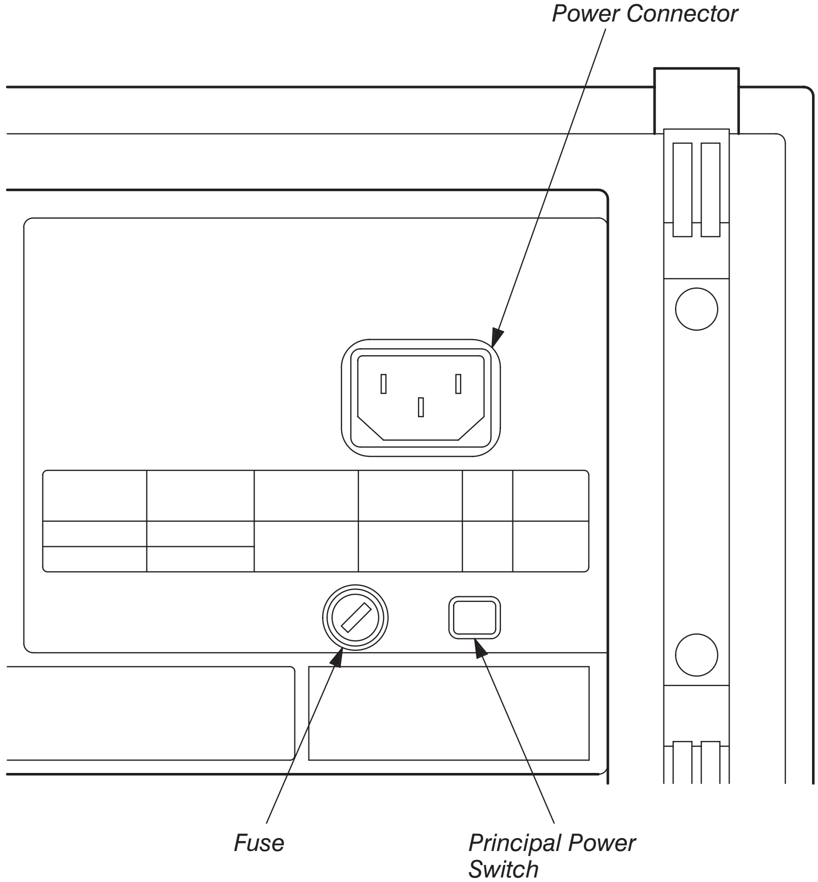
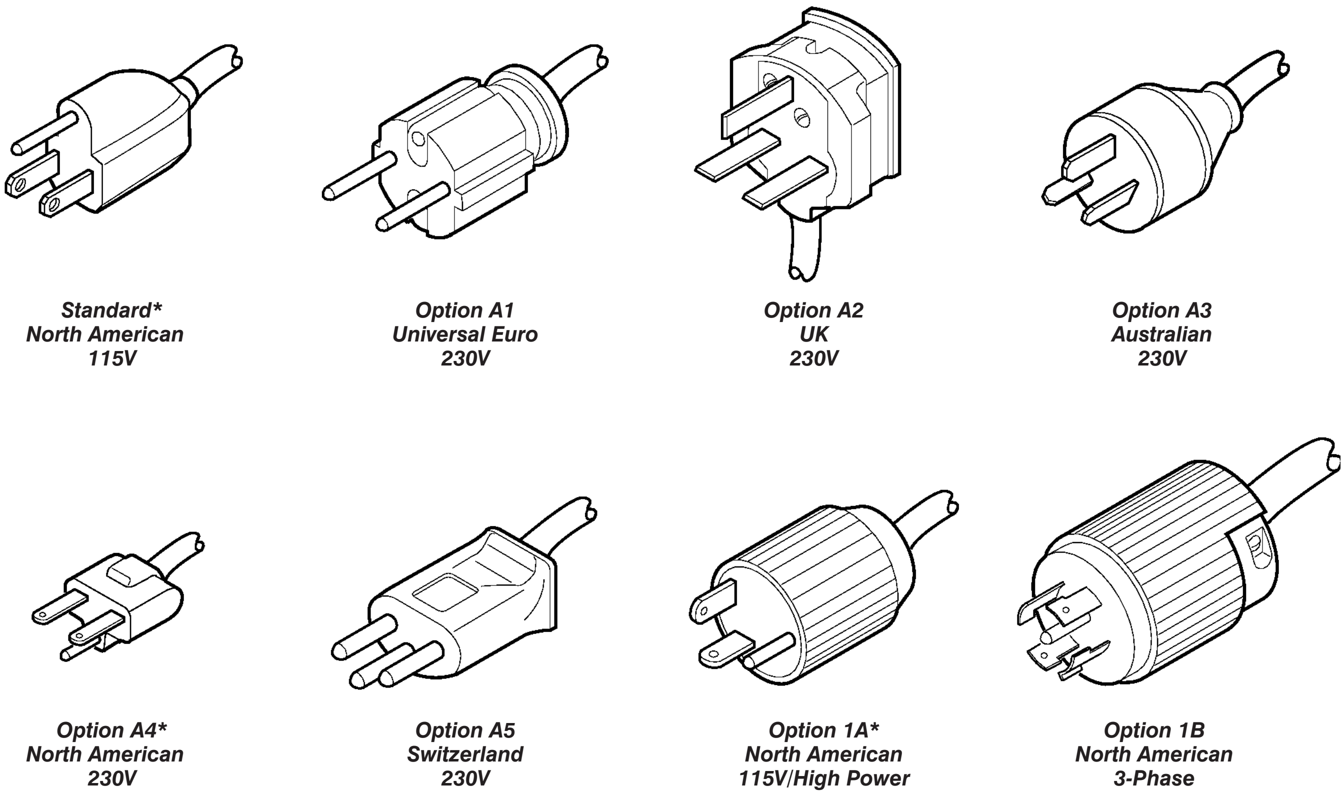


Figure 1-1: Rear Panel Controls Used In Start Up



** Canadian Standards Association certification includes these power plugs for use in the North American power network*

Figure 1-2: Optional Power Cords

☐ **Step 7:** Press the **ON/STBY** switch (shown in Figure 1-3) on the lower left side of the front panel to switch on the power for this instrument. This instrument needs to be warmed up for at least 20 minutes in order to operate at its optimum precision.

Once this instrument is installed, it is typical to leave the **PRINCIPAL POWER SWITCH** on and use the **ON/STBY** switch as the power switch.

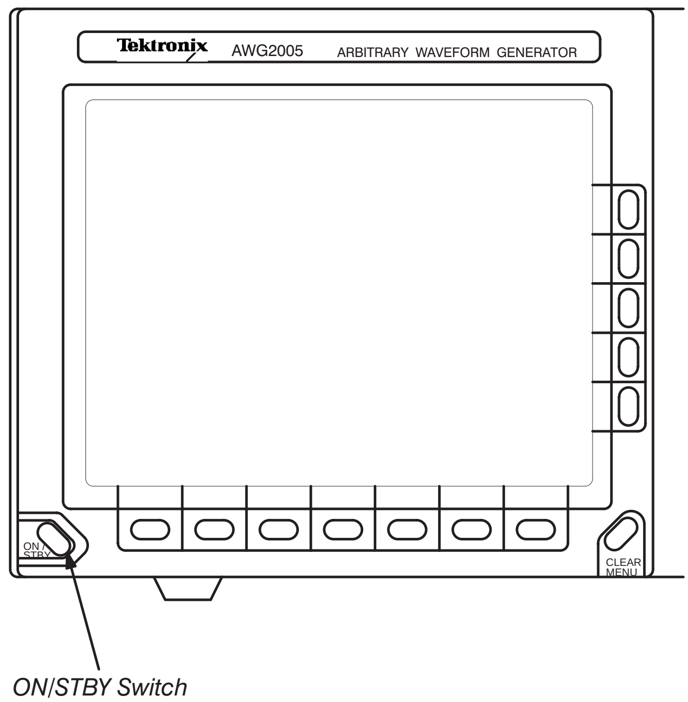


Figure 1-3: ON/STBY Switch

Start-up Diagnostics

☐ **Step 8:** Check the results of the start-up diagnostics.

When the power is applied to this instrument, the start-up diagnostics are carried out. It checks whether the instrument is performing within its defined operating characteristics.

If all the diagnostic items are completed without error, **Pass** is displayed and the system moves on to the **SETUP** menu.

If an error is detected, **Fail** and the error code are displayed. You can exit this state and operate this instrument, but until the error is corrected, the waveform outputs can not be relied on. If the ”**Uncal**” as the error message is displayed, you should execute the calibrations in the **UTILITY** menu. Still, when the error message is displayed, contact our nearest representative. To exit the diagnostics system, press any of the buttons. The system moves on to the **SETUP** menu.

NOTE

In order to preserve the precision of this instrument, after the completion of the warmup or temperature changes, calibrate this instrument. For details on how to calibrate, see the explanation of the Calibration item on the ***UTILITY*** *menu in Section 4.*

If this instrument is exposed to temperatures outside its usage temperature range and the chassis temperature is inappropriate, an error will occur during the diagnostics when the power is switched on. If this happens, wait till the chassis temperature is appropriate, then switch the power on again.

Power Off

☐ **Step 9:** Toggle the **ON**/**STBY** switch.

Operating Basics

Introduction

This section will discuss the following:

- Overview

  The names of the parts of the instrument and their functions.

- Basic Menu Operation

  Operations commonly performed on the instrument and how to enter numbers.

- Operating Examples

  Simple examples showing how to output waveforms.

  These examples are designed to help you gain a basic understanding of the instrument.

Overview

The instrument can be divided into three main areas: the front panel, the side panel and the rear panel. In this section, we will list the names and functions of the parts in each of these areas. We will also list typical display messages that appear on the screen and what they mean.

Front Panel

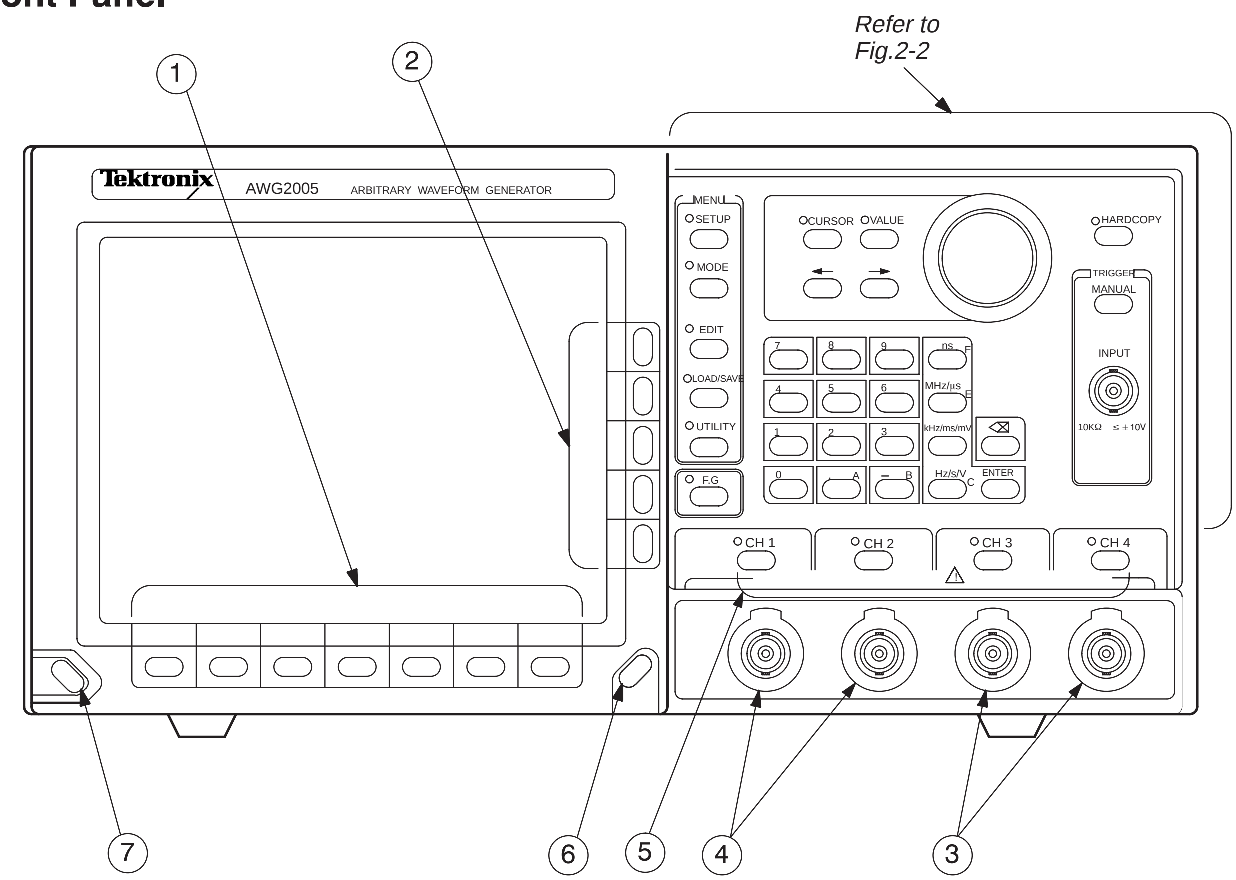


Figure 2-1: Front Panel Overall View

(1) Bottom Buttons

Use the seven bottom buttons to display corresponding menus. Pressing any button in the **MENU** column, or the **F.G** button, displays its corresponding menu. These menus are generally the highest level menus.

(2) Side Buttons

Use the five side buttons to select the side menus displayed on the right side of the screen. Selecting any item from bottom menu displays a side menu. The side menu is generally a lower level menu.

(3) CH3/CH4 Waveform Output Connector (Option 02)

⚠ Instruments that have the Option 02 installed are equipped with an additional connector for output of CH3/CH4 waveforms. The maximum output level is 10 Vp-p with a 50Ω termination.

CAUTION

Do not apply any external voltage to the output connector of this instrument. Doing so can harm this instrument.

(4) CH1/CH2 Waveform Output Connector

⚠ CH1/CH2 waveforms are output from this connector. The maximum output level is 10Vp-p with a 50Ω termination. Note, however that output may exceed 10 Vp-p if **AM**, **Add**, **Ext AM** or **Ext Add** mode has been selected for **CH1 Operation** from the **SETUP** menu.

CAUTION

Do not apply any external voltage to the output connector of this instrument. Doing so can harm this instrument.

(5) Channel On/Off Buttons and Indicators

Press the channel on/off buttons to switch the output for each channel on and off. When set to on, the LED indicator is lit and a waveform is output. When set to off, the LED indicator is extinguished and a waveform is not output.

(6) CLEAR MENU Button

Press this button to cancel any entering alphanumeric input and return the system to the data before input. Also, for a side menu item with ”**...**” attached to it, pressing this button returns the system from the sub menu (lower-level menu) to the side menu. Using remote commands, the user may delete a message that has been entered in the message area (see Page 2-15).

(7) ON/STBY Button

When the **PRINCIPAL POWER SWITCH** on the rear panel has been pressed to supply power to the standby circuit, this button can be pressed to provide power to the other circuits of the instrument. Normally this button is used as a power switch.

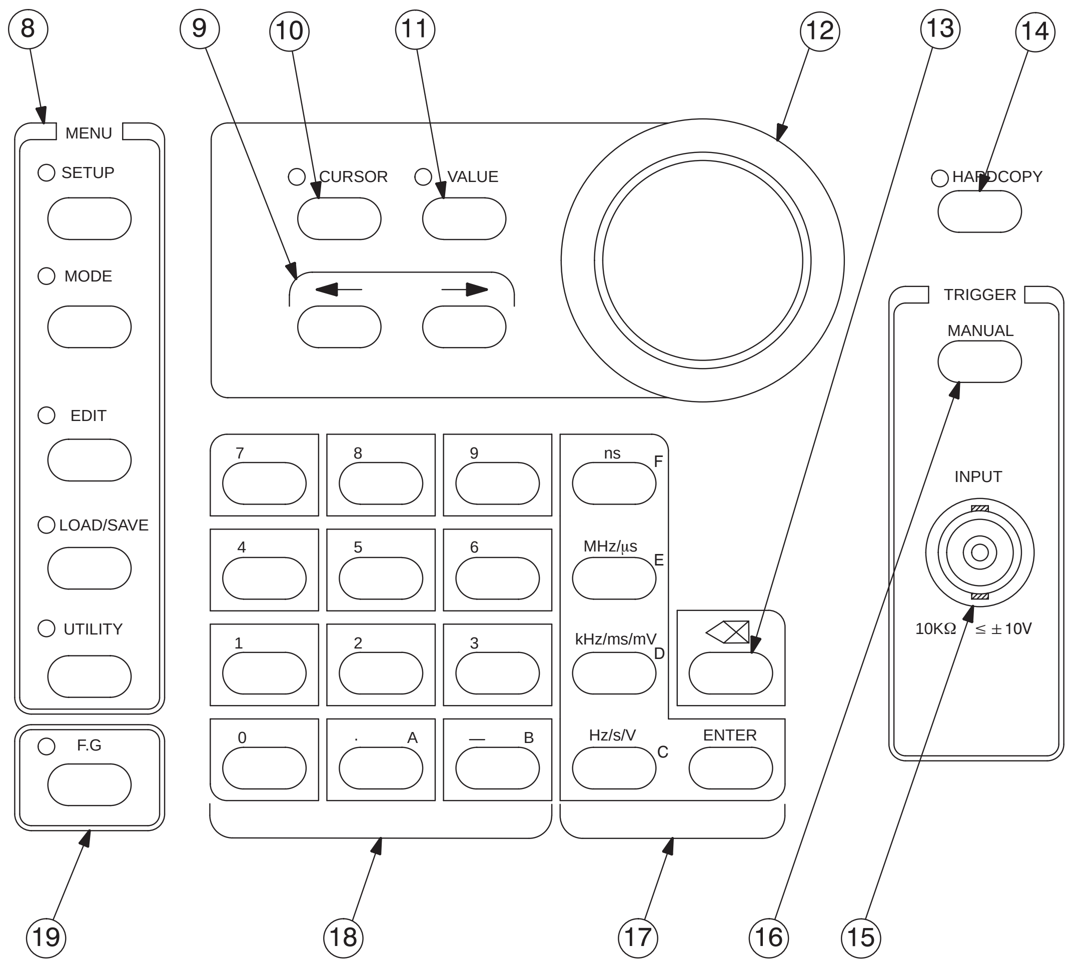


Figure 2-2: Front Panel Button Detail

(8) Menu Buttons and Indicators

The **MENU** column comprises the **SETUP**, **MODE**, **EDIT**, **LOAD**/**SAVE** and **UTILITY** buttons. To display one of these five main menus on the screen, press the corresponding button in the **MENU** column. The corresponding LED indicators show which menu has been selected. Each of these menus is described in detail in Section 4A through 4F.

SETUP Menu

Use the **SETUP** menu to set the following waveform output parameters for each channel: clock source and frequency, waveform/sequence file selection, operation, filter, amplitude and offset. See Section 4B for more information.

MODE Menu

Use the **MODE** menu to set the operation mode. There are two main types of operation modes: the trigger modes (**Cont, Triggered** and **Gated**) and the modes in which waveforms are output in sequence for each trigger (**Waveform Advance** and **Autostep**). This menu also has an item for controlling master/slave unit in the system. See Section 4C for more information.

EDIT Menu

The **EDIT** menu incorporates four types of editors: the waveform editor, the equation editor, the sequence editor and the autostep editor. Editing can be performed for each file type. Instruments with Option 05 installed also have a clock sweep editor which provides linear, log and arbitrary sweep output for clock frequencies. Instruments with Option 09 installed have an FFT editor to permit editing in the freguency domain and a convolution editor to operate the waveforms convolution in high speed.

The **EDIT** menu displays a list of files stored in internal memory. New files can be created or existing files can be selected from this list and edited. See Section 4A for further information.

LOAD/SAVE Menu

Press the **Load**/**Save** bottom button to select the appropriate menu.

See Section 4D for further information.

LOAD Menu — Used when loading files from a floppy disk or non-volatile internal RAM (NVRam) into the internal memory of the AWG2005, or from another instrument through the GPIB interface.

SAVE Menu — Used when saving files from the internal memory of the AWG2005 to a floppy disk or to the instrument's NVRam.

UTILITY Menu

Use the **UTILITY** menu to operate on the files saved to a floppy disk or the instrument's NVRam; to set the parameters for the GPIB or RS-232-C interface; to execute diagnosis or calibration of the instrument; or to set other instrument parameters. See Section 4E for further information.

(9) ← and → Buttons

Use the arrow buttons to shift to the right/left of the input digit or position when a numeric value or character is input using the general purpose knob. The digit input numeric value is indicated at the underscore. Hold down these arrow buttons to shift in succession.

(10) CURSOR Button and Indicator

Use the **CURSOR** button to select a field or switch the active cursor. The function of **CURSOR** button is different depending on each menu.

When the LED indicator is illuminated, cursor function is activated. When special **CURSOR** button movement is required, a description of the **CURSOR** button is displayed on the screen.

(11) VALUE Button and Indicator

Press the **VALUE** button to light the LED indicator. In this state, inputting the numeric values or selecting the item can be done using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob. After inputting or selecting, press the **VALUE** button to enter the setting. When a special **VALUE** button movement is required, an explanation of the **VALUE** button is displayed on the screen.

(12) General Purpose Knob

Use this knob to set a variety of functions and numerical values on the instrument. A knob icon shown on the screen indicates that that item is controlled by this knob.

(13) Delete Key

Use this key to delete the character just in front of the cursor. Hold down the key to delete characters in succession.

(14) HARDCOPY Button

Use this button to output a hard copy of the data displayed on the screen. The hard copy can be output to disk or to either the GPIB or RS-232-C interface.

(15) TRIGGER INPUT Connector

This connector is used to enter an external trigger or gate signal. With 10kΩ input impedance, the maximum external signal that can be input is ±10V.

(16) TRIGGER MANUAL Button

When the operation mode is set to **Triggered**, **Waveform Advance** or **Autostep**, pressing the **MANUAL** button will cause waveform output to begin. Waveform output will proceed and stop in accordance with the mode that has been set. In **Gated** mode, the waveform will be output only as long as the **MANUAL** button is pressed. In **Cont** mode, pressing the **MANUAL** button has no effect.

(17) Unit Keys and ENTER Key

The following unit keys are provided: **ns**, **MHz/μs**, **kHz/ms/mV** and **Hz/s/V**. Press the appropriate unit key to specify the desired numeric value and unit. Also, if a hexadecimal radix is selected from the Waveform Editor Table display, the unit key is used to input **C**–**F**. Press the **ENTER** key to enter the numeric value and selected item.

(18) Numeric Keys

Press the numeric keys to enter numeric data. The numeric keys include the numerals **0** through **9**, and the ”**.**” and ”**–**” symbols. The ”**.**” and ”**–**” numeric keys are also used to input hexadecimal ”**A**” and ”**B**”, respectively, in the Waveform Editor Table display. Hold down a numeric key as desired to repeat its input.

(19) F.G Button

Press the **F.G** button to switch from arbitrary waveform generation mode to functional waveform generation mode. Use this mode to select one of the standard function waveforms for each output channel and to set its parameters. The functional waveforms include sine, triangular, square, ramp and pulse waveforms. You can set each function’s parameters. See Section 4F for further information.

Side Panel

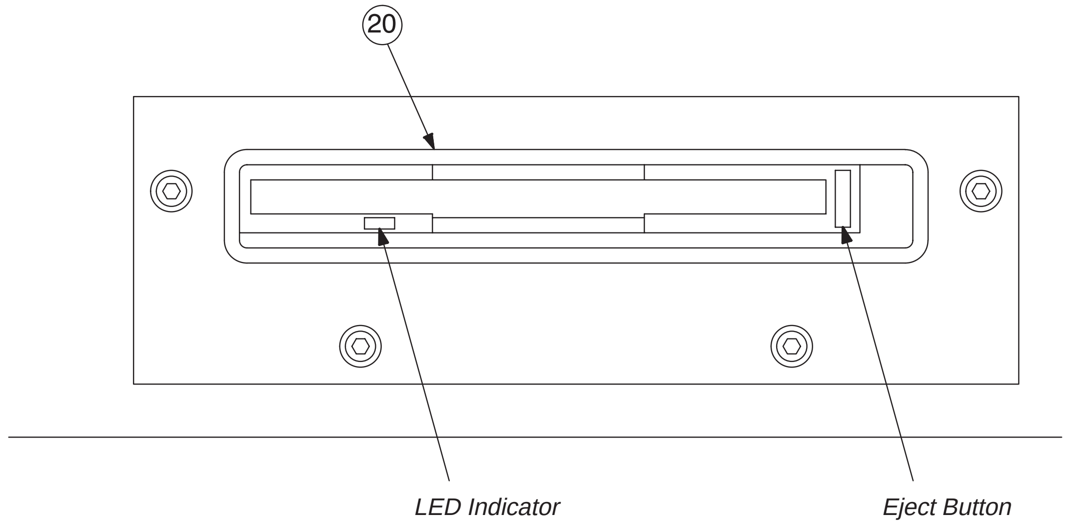


Figure 2-3: Side Panel

(20) Floppy Disk Drive

The floppy disk drive is used for storing various types of files. Files can be loaded or saved from/to floppy disk using the **LOAD**/**SAVE** menu. When the disk drive is in operation, the LED indicator is lit. Remove a floppy disk by pressing the eject button.

NOTE

Never press the eject button to eject the floppy disk while the disk drive indicator light is lit, as the stored data may be corrupted and errors may result.

Rear Panel

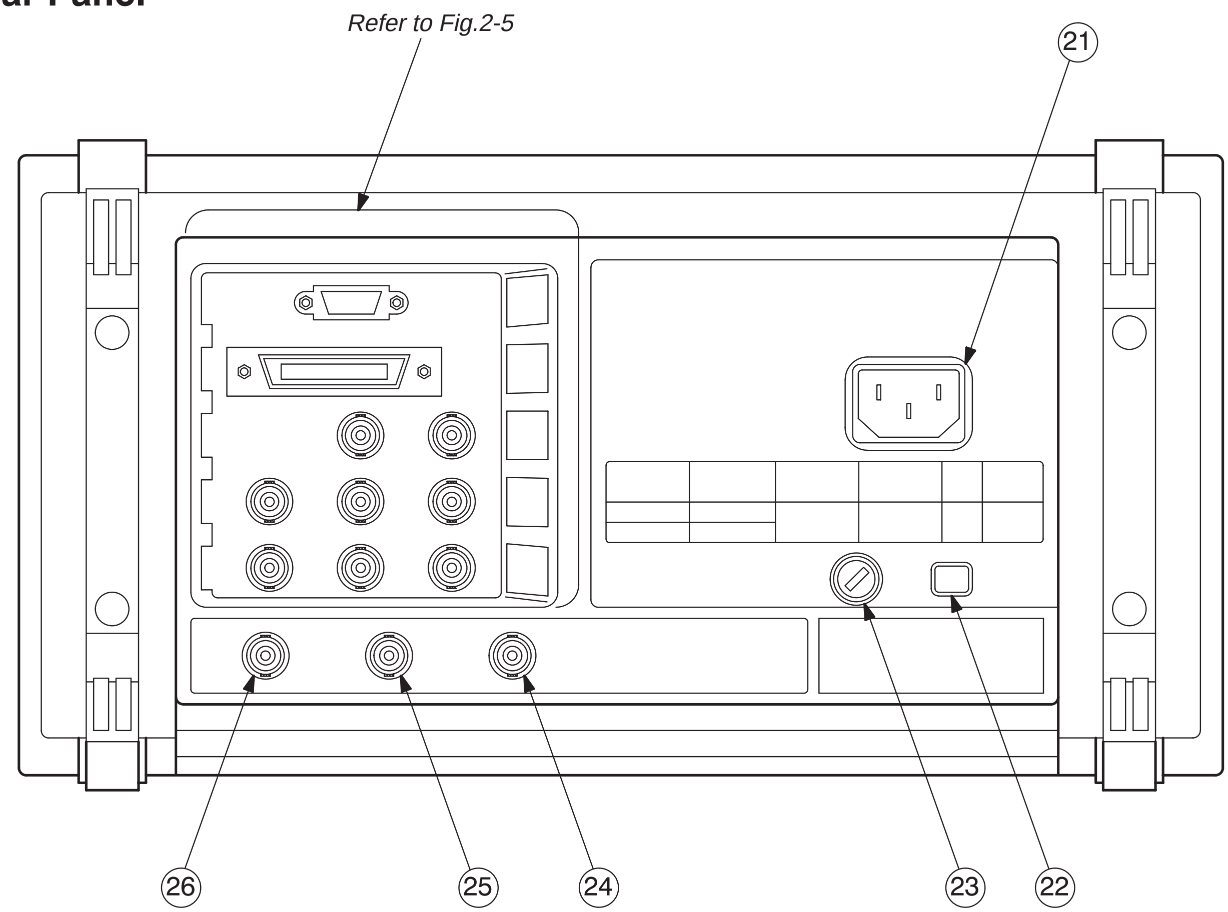


Figure 2-4: Rear Panel Overall View

(21) Power Source Connector

A power cord is connected to the power source connector.

(22) PRINCIPAL POWER SWITCH

When this switch is on, power is supplied to the standby circuit in the power system. Press the **ON/STBY** button on the front panel to supply power to the rest of the instrument.

(23) Fuse Holder

⚠ The power supply fuse is enclosed in the fuse holder. The same fuse is used for both 115 V and 230 V systems. A 6 A fast-blow fuse is used.

NOTE

When using the AWG2005 in Europe, you should use an IEC-approved fuse. For details, see Page 1-4.

(24) SWEEP OUT Connector (Option 05)

This connector is provided only when Option 05 is installed. It is used to output voltage proportional to the linear, log or arbitrary sweep output created with the clock sweep editor. At an output impedance of 600Ω, the maximum output voltage is 5 V with no termination.

(25) CH1 AM IN Connector

This connector is used to enter an external AM modulation waveform to CH1. With a nominal input impedance of 10kΩ, the maximum voltage of the external signal that can be entered is ±5 V. At ±1 V input, 100% modulation is possible.

(26) CH1 ADD IN Connector

This connector is used to enter an external added waveform to CH1. With a nominal input impedance of 50Ω, the maximum voltage of the external signal that can be entered is ±5 V.

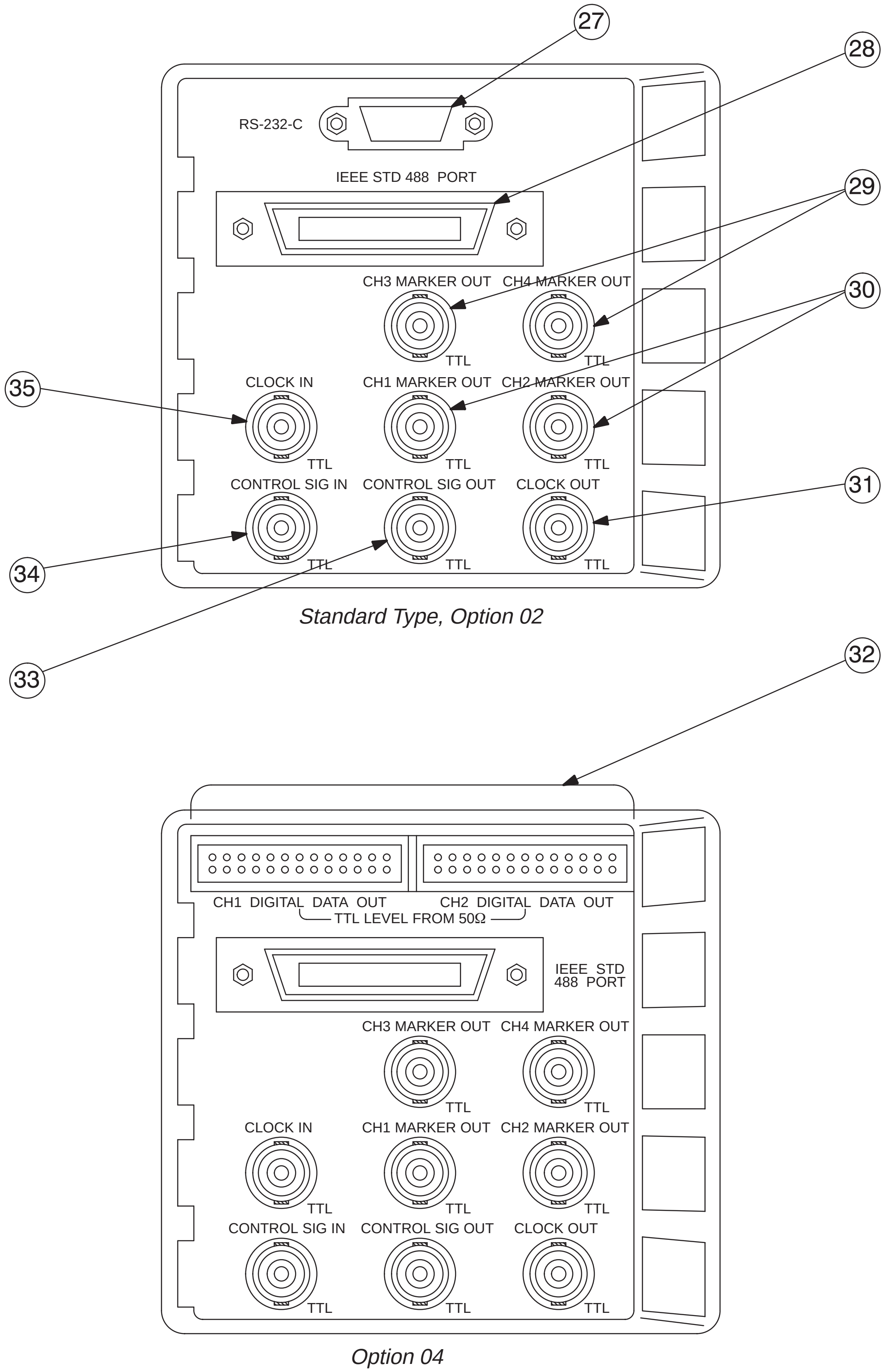


Figure 2-5: Rear Panel Detail

(27) RS-232-C Connector

The RS-232-C connector enables remote control by a computer via this serial interface.

(28) IEEE STD 488 Connector

The IEEE STD 488 connector enables remote control by a computer via an IEEE STD 488 parallel interface.

(29) CH3/CH4 MARKER OUT Connectors (Option 02)

These connectors are only provided when Option 02 is installed. They are used to provide a user-designated CH3/CH4 marker. The output impedance will be at the TTL level at 50Ω with no termination.

(30) CH1/CH2 MARKER OUT Connector

These connectors are used to provide a user-designated CH1/CH2 marker. The output impedance will be at the TTL level at 50Ω with no termination.

(31) CLOCK OUT Connector

This connector is used for internal clock output. The output impedance will be at the TTL level at 50Ω with no termination.

(32) CH1/CH2 DIGITAL DATA OUT Connector (Option 04)

These connectors are used to output CH1/CH2 digital data. The output impedance will be at the TTL level at 50Ω with no termination. For details, see Appendix A ”Option 04.”

(33) CONTROL SIG OUT Connector

This connector is used for control signal output. When this instrument is connected in parallel, the control signal is used to control the slave instrument. The output impedance will be at the TTL level at 50Ω with no termination.

(34) CONTROL SIG IN Connector

This connector is used for control signal input. With a nominal input impedance of 10kΩ, an external control signal at the TTL level can be entered.

(35) CLOCK IN Connector

This connector is used for external clock input. When this instrument is the master instrument, the connector has an input impedance of 330Ω; when it is the slave instrument, the connector has an input impedance of 10kΩ. In either case, an external clock at the TTL level can be entered.

CRT Display

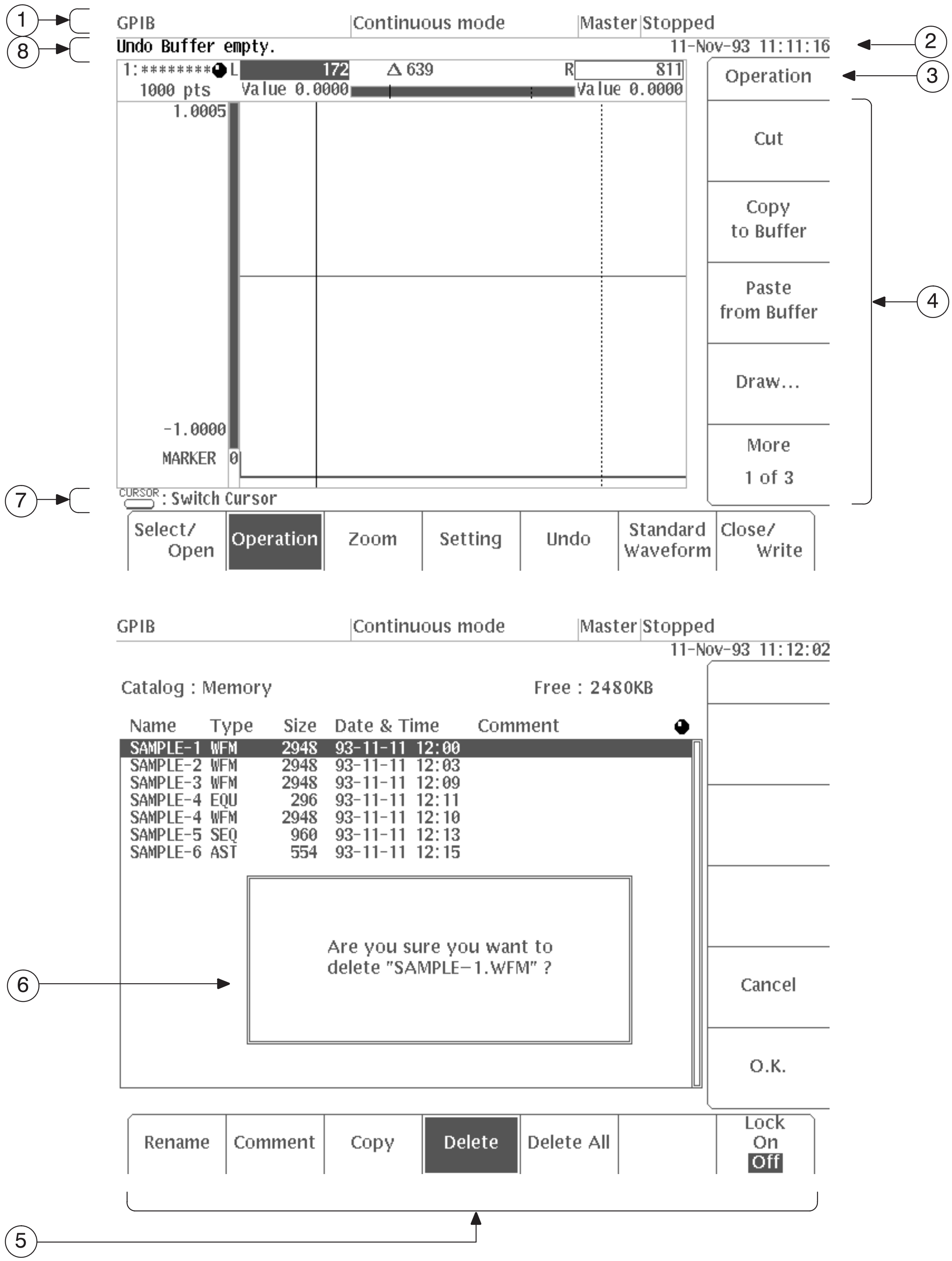


Figure 2-6: CRT Display

(1) Status Area

The status line always displays the status of the instrument, no matter what menu is displayed on the screen. Five items are shown on the status line: the interface status (see the AWG2000 Series Programmer Manual); the operation mode and the trigger status (see Page 4C-5); and the clock icon (which indicates that the instrument is busy and cannot accept input from any other sources)( ).

(2) Date and Time Area

The date and time are displayed here. The display can be turned on and off in the **UTILITY** menu (see UTILITY section).

(3) Bottom Menu Label Display

The label for the selected bottom menu item is displayed.

(4) Side Menu

When selecting an item from a bottom menu, the corresponding side menu is displayed at the right of the screen. Item selection, numeral input, and execution of functions are performed by pressing the button corresponding to the side menu item.

(5) Bottom Menu

Press any button of the **MENU** column or the **F.G** button to display the corresponding bottom menu in the lower part of the screen. To select an item from a bottom menu, press the corresponding button.

(6) Message Display

This area displays inquiries, or warnings for the user, enclosed in a box.

(7) Button Operation Area

Explanations of each front panel button operation for the current menu are shown in this area.

(8) Message Area

In the event of an error, a message (brighter than normal for easy visibility) is displayed in this area. This is not an interrogative to the user. Remote commands can be used to enter a user-designated message.

Basic Menu Operation

Menu Operations

Operations (settings, procedures and selection of parameters for waveform output) are performed on this instrument by means of the system's menus.

When one of the menu buttons in the center of the front panel is pressed, the menu corresponding to that button will appear. There are six menu buttons: the five buttons used in arbitrary waveform generation mode (**SET-UP**, **MODE**, **EDIT**, **LOAD**/**SAVE** and **UTILITY**) and below them the button used in function waveform generation mode (**F.G**). See Figure 2-7.

The menu items displayed on the screen are selected by pressing the corresponding bezel buttons at the bottom of the screen (hereafter referred to as bottom buttons) or to the right of the screen (hereafter referred to as side buttons). There are 7 bottom buttons and 5 side buttons. When one of the buttons is pressed to select an item, that item will be displayed inverted on the screen to indicate that it is operational. See Figure 2-7.

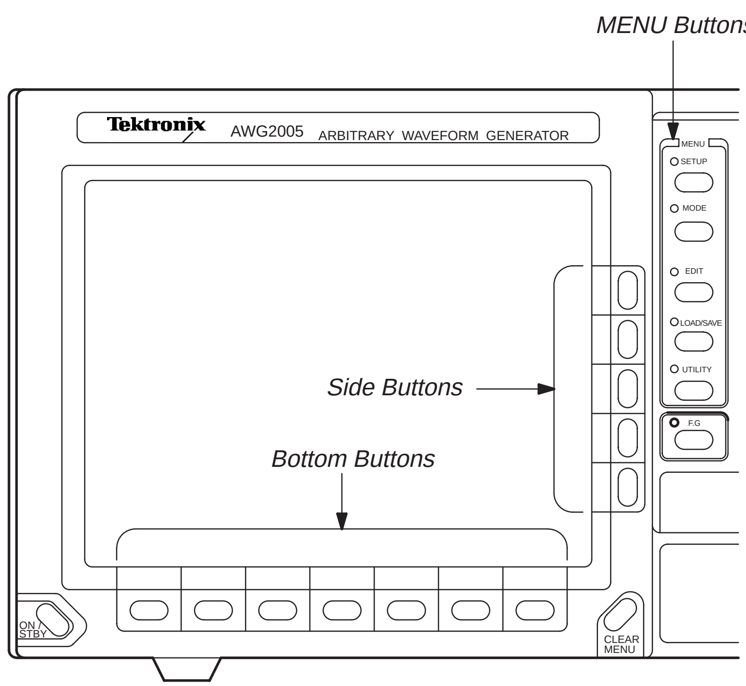


Figure 2-7: Menu Buttons and Bezel Buttons

When you select the desired menu item, the numeric input columns and the selections controlled by that menu are displayed. To change the selections and numeric values, use the numeric keys or general purpose knob.

When you select a menu item, one of the following occurs.

- The lower-level menu is presented.
- The desired item can be selected and may have these characteristics:

  each time the bezel button is pressed, the selection changes.

  a list is presented from which you can select.
- Numeric values can be input.
- The moment the menu item is selected, the function is executed.

Menu Names

The on-screen menus are hierarchical. This section will give the names of the menus in order from top (first level) to bottom.

Main Menus

There are several different main menus. Pressing one of the **MENU** buttons causes the corresponding main menu to appear.

Bottom Menu

This menu is shown at the bottom of the screen. These items can be selected by pressing the corresponding bottom button.

Side Menu

This menu is shown in the right-hand side of the screen. These items can be selected by pressing the corresponding side button.

Sub-Menus

These menus are shown below the side menu. When an item in the side menu is followed by an ellipsis (**...**), it indicates that that item has a submenu listing additional choices.

Numeric Input

Generally, numbers are entered using one of the following methods:

- Enter the desired value using the numeric keys
- Turn the general purpose knob to set the desired value

In the following section, we will explain these numeric input methods in more detail.

Using the Front Panel Numeric Keys

To specify numeric values with the numeric keys, **ENTER** key, and unit keys on the front panel, perform the following steps.

- ☐ **Step 1:** Press the button for the menu item you want to change.
- ☐ **Step 2:** Use the numeric keys to input the desired value.
- ☐ **Step 3:** Press one of the unit keys or the **ENTER** key.

Figure 2-8 shows the menu displayed when **Amplitude** is selected from the **SETUP** menu. In this figure, the numeric keys are used to change the amplitude. Here the asterisk in the numeric input column indicates that the value is being input. Press the front panel **ENTER** key to enter the value and remove the asterisk.

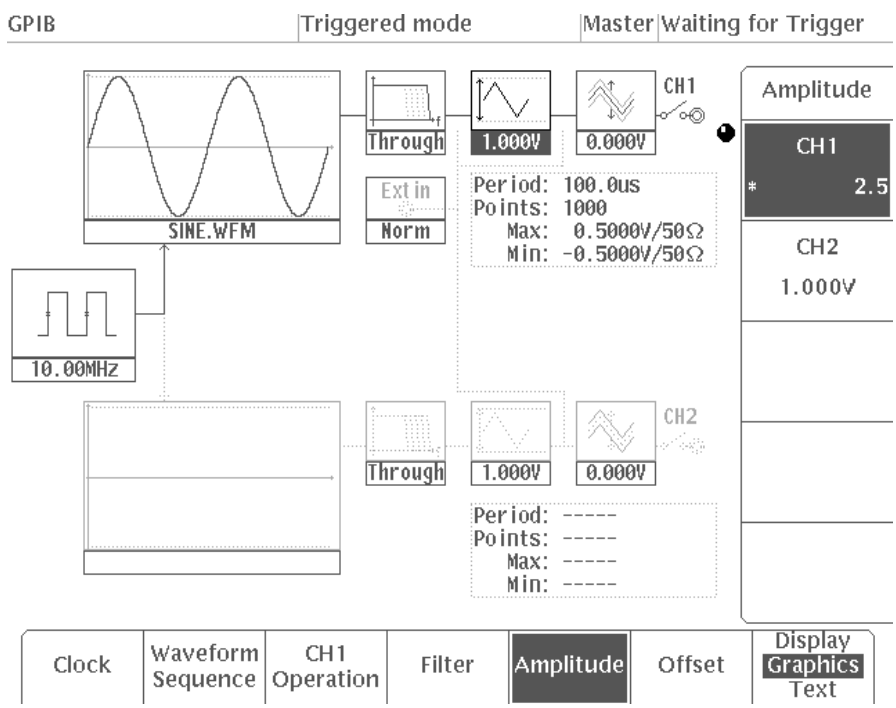


Figure 2-8: Numeric Input Using Numeric Keys

Numeric input keys

Four types of keys are used to enter numeric values: the numeric keys (0 – 9), the unit keys (ns, MHz/μs, kHz/ms/mV and Hz/s/V), the Delete key and the **ENTER** key. These are shown in Figure 2-9.

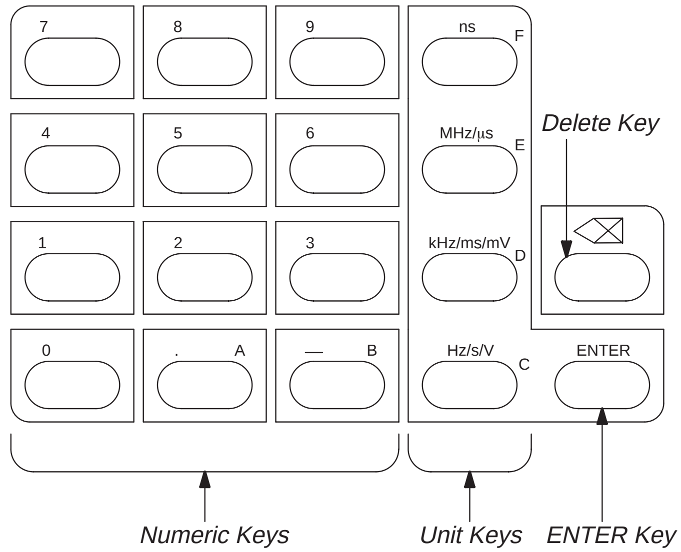


Figure 2-9: Numeric Keys, Unit Keys, Delete Key, and ENTER Key

Numeric Input Examples

Example 1: Clock frequency numeric input
(**Clock** in **SETUP** menu)

The value before input mode was 100.0 Hz and is to be changed to 12.3 Hz. Pressing the "**1**", "**2**", "**.**", "**3**", and **ENTER** keys in order changes the input column this way:

Table 2-1: Numeric Value Input Example 1

Input Key	Numeric Value Column	Numeric Value Status
	100.0 Hz	Before input
1	* 1	During input
2	* 12	
.	* 12.	
3	* 12.3	
ENTER	12.30 Hz	Entered

When you press one of the numeric keys, the instrument switches to numeric input status and the value that has been entered is displayed in the input column, preceded by an asterisk. Enter other numbers as desired and then press the **ENTER** key to confirm the value. Unless otherwise designated, the unit that is used for numeric input will be the same as when numbers were previously entered.

To change the unit to MHz, press ”**1**”, ”**2**”, ”**.**”, ”**3**”, and **MHz/μs** keys in order. This changes the value to 12.30 MHz. The frequency is expressed by a four-digit number.

When a value has been entered, pressing one of the unit keys will change the unit to that value and will confirm the number that has been entered. If you press the unit key before the instrument has entered numeric input status), only the unit will change; the numeric value that is currently displayed will be unaffected.

NOTE

*After a value has been entered, if you proceed to another menu item without first pressing either a unit key or **ENTER**, the input operation will be canceled; the value you have entered will be discarded and the previous value will be retained. If you attempt to enter a value outside the allowable range, whether too high or too low, the value will change to the closest allowable value (in other words, either the minimum or the maximum value).*

Example 2: Offset numeric input
(**Offset** in **SETUP** menu)

This example changes the offset from 2.500 V to −0.030 V. The input is as shown in this table.

Table 2-2: Numeric Value Input Example 2

Input Key	Numeric Value Column	Numeric Value Status
	2.500V	Before input
–	* –	
3	* 3	During input
0	* 30	
kHz/ms/mV	−0.030 V	Entered

In this case, pressing ”**–**”, ”**.**”, ”**0**”, ”**3**” **Hz/sec/V** also enters a value of −0.030 V. The unit is displayed as ”V”.

Using the General Purpose Knob

When the knob icon is displayed on the CRT screen, numeric values can be set using the general purpose knob and the ← (left/down) and → (right/up) buttons. When setting numeric values in this manner, the value in the number column that is underlined will be increased or decreased. Values will decrease when the general purpose knob is turned counter-clockwise and increase when the general purpose knob is turned clockwise. Values cannot be changed outside the parameter range. Figure 2-10 shows the general purpose knob and arrow buttons. Figure 2-11 shows the knob icon and the figure in the window with the first decimal place underlined, indicating that this value may be changed.

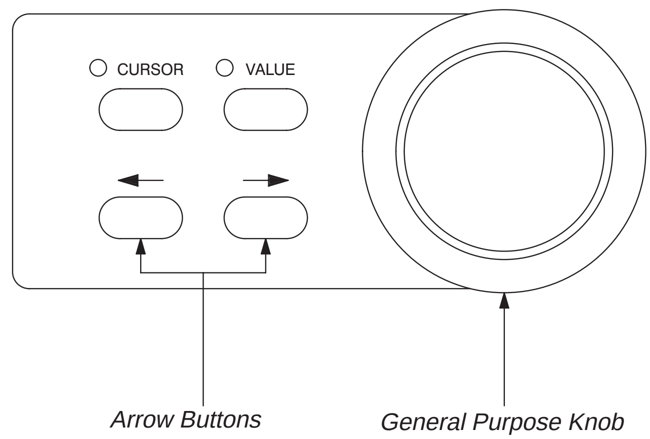


Figure 2-10: General Purpose Knob and Arrow Buttons

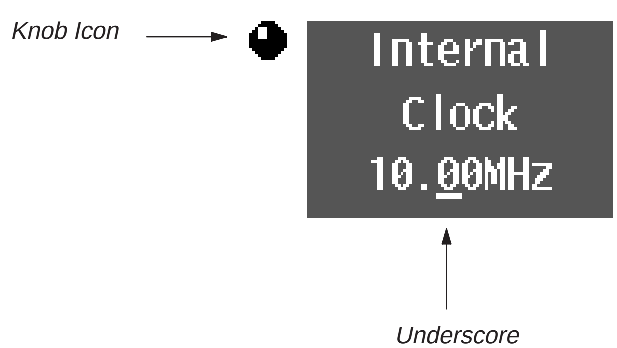


Figure 2-11: Knob Icon and Underscore

When a numeric value has been changed using the general purpose knob, there is no need to confirm it by pressing the **ENTER** key on the front panel. The numeric value is entered automatically without pressing the **ENTER** key. To change a value using the general purpose knob, perform the following steps.

☐ **Step 1:** Press the button for the menu item you want to change.

☐ **Step 2:** Press the ← and → buttons to specify the digit to be the index for input.

The amount of change obtained by turning the general purpose knob is controlled with the front panel ← and → keys. Press the ← key to move the underscore to the left and thus raise the amount of change to 10x. Or press the → key to move the underscore to the right and thus reduce the amount of change for general purpose knob turning to $\frac{1}{10}$.

☐ **Step 3:** Turn the general purpose knob to change the value.

Numeric Specification Example

Turning the general purpose knob one click to the right increases the value of the underscored digit by 1. Turning it one click to the left decreases the value by 1. For example, if the value is 173.0 and the cursor is under the 7, turning the general purpose knob left or right changes the value as shown below. If the underscored value is already 1, turning the general purpose knob left does not decrease the value any further.

1<u>7</u>3.0	1<u>7</u>3.0
1<u>8</u>3.0	1<u>6</u>3.0
1<u>9</u>3.0	...
2<u>0</u>3.0	<u>2</u>3.00
2<u>1</u>3.0	<u>1</u>3.00
Turning right	Turning left

When the value has already been increased to the maximum allowable value for the parameter, turning the general purpose knob further to the right has no effect. Similarly, when the value has already been decreased to the minimum allowable value for the parameter, turning the general purpose knob further to the left has no effect.

Operating Examples

In this section, we will use simple examples to illustrate the basic procedures for waveform output on the AWG2005. Six examples will be given; these are listed below. Buttons and menu items to be used will be shown to the left, and a description of the corresponding operation will appear on the right.

First of all, you should make sure the power to the unit has been turned on; see Section 1 ”Start Up” for instructions on how to do this.

Example 1: Setting the Date & Time and Adjusting the Brightness

Example 2: Output of a Waveform Using the Sample Waveform Library Disk

Example 3: Creating Files and Arbitrary Waveform Outputs

Creating a Waveform File
Creating Arbitrary Waveforms Using the Point Draw Function
Creating Waveforms Arithmetically
Creating an Equation File
Creating a Sequence File
Creating Autostep Files
Setting the Output Parameters
Setting Operation Mode and Waveform Output

Example 4: Loading and Saving Files

Example 5: Loading Waveforms From Other Instruments

Example 6: Using the Waveform Function Generator

When a detailed description of a function is needed at the operation stage, see the section dealing with that particular menu (4A – 4F).

NOTE

These examples do not cover all of the functions and special features of the instrument. The purpose of the examples is only to give you practice in executing basic operations on the instrument.

Necessary Equipment

The following equipment is needed to execute Examples 1 – 6:

- Digital storage oscilloscope (Tektronix TDS series instrument or equivalent)
- 50 Ω cables (3)
- GPIB cable (1)
- 50 Ω terminators (2)
- Sample waveform library disk (included with the instrument as a standard accessory

- Signal generator

Example 1: Setting the Date & Time and Adjusting the Brightness

In Example 1, you will set the date and time on the instrument's built-in clock and adjust the brightness of the screen.

Setting the Date and Time

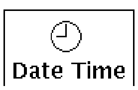
In this operation, you will set the date and time on the instrument.

Be sure to do this when using the instrument for the first time. Once set, there will usually be no need to reset these values. However, if the instrument has not been used for an extended period of time, the date and time may be incorrect; in such cases, you should set these values again using the same procedure. The date and time are important, as they are used as a time stamp when creating or editing files.

In this example, you will set the date to November 12, 1993 and the time to 15:30, using the following procedure.

UTILITY

☐ **Step 1:** Press the **UTILITY** button in the **MENU** column.



☐ **Step 2:** Select **Date Time** from the bottom menu.
The menu shown in Figure 2-12 will appear.

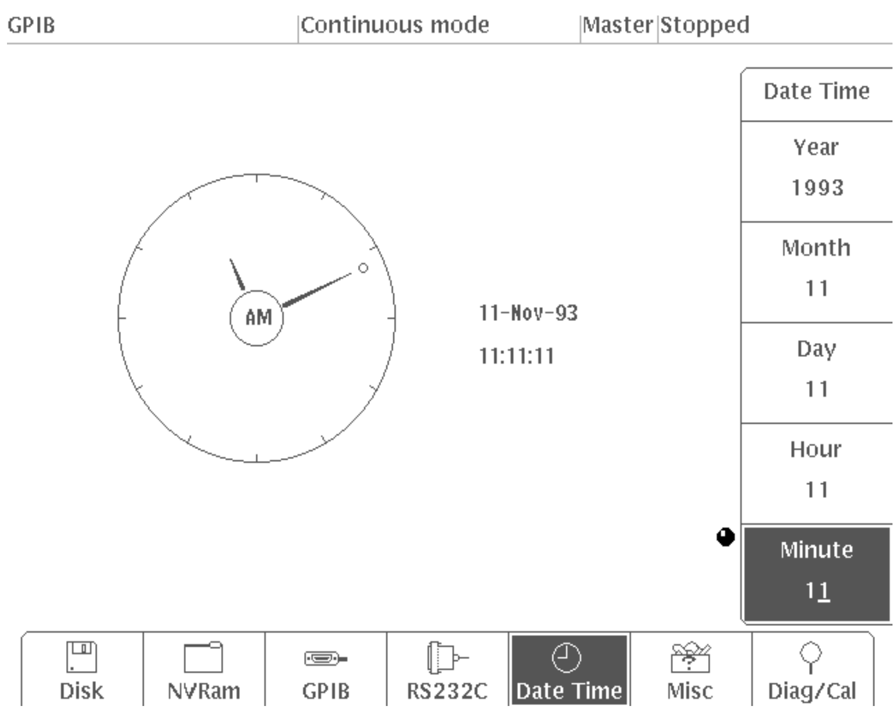


Figure 2-12: Menu Display (showing Date/Time item selected)

Year

☐ **Step 3:** Select **Year** from the side menu.

1993

☐ **Step 4:** Turn the general purpose knob to set the year to **1993**.

☐ **Step 5:** In the same manner, select **Month**, **Day**, and **Hour** from the side menu and set the values to November, 12 and 15, respectively. The time is displayed in 24-hour fashion.

Minute

☐ **Step 6:** Select **Minute** from the side menu.

30

☐ **Step 7:** Use the general purpose knob to set the minute value to **30**.

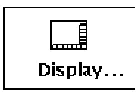
NOTE

*When the setting for **Hour** or **Minute** is changed, the value for seconds will be reset to 0.*

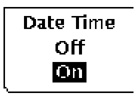
Date/Time Display

It is possible to have the date and time constantly displayed on the screen. To do this, use the following procedure:

☐ **Step 8:** Select **Misc** from the bottom menu.



☐ **Step 9:** Select **Display...** from the side menu.



☐ **Step 10:** Press **Date Time** in the sub-menu and select **On**. The current date and time will be displayed in the upper right-hand corner of the screen, as shown in Figure 2-13.

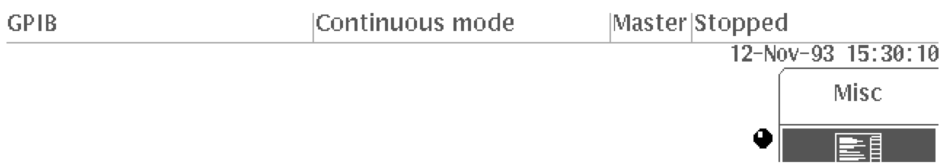


Figure 2-13: Date/Time Display

Setting the Display Brightness

In this operation, you will set the display brightness of the screen. The display offers three different levels of brightness. Use the following procedure to adjust the overall display brightness to the proper level:

☐ **Step 11:** Select **Brightness** from the side-menu.

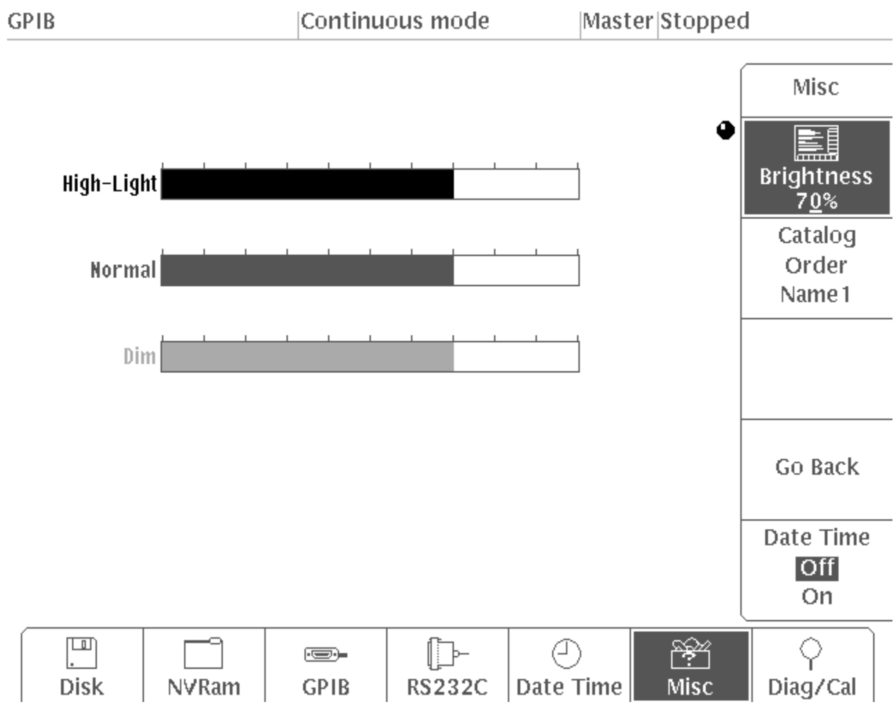


Figure 2-14: Setting the Display Brightness

0A100%

☐ **Step 12:** Turn the general purpose knob to set the brightness to the proper level.

The brightness can be changed between 0% and 100% in 1% increments; the default setting is 70%.

This completes the Example 1.

Example 2: Output of a Waveform Using the Sample Waveform Library Disk

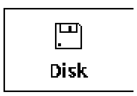
In Example 2, you will output a waveform using the sample waveform library disk, a standard accessory included with the instrument.

Loading Sample Waveforms

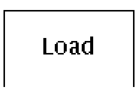
The sample waveform should be loaded from the floppy disk to the internal memory of the instrument.

☐ **Step 1:** Press the **LOAD/SAVE** button in the **MENU** column.

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Device** from the bottom menu.



☐ **Step 3:** Select **Disk** from the side menu.



☐ **Step 4:** Select **Load** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 5:** Insert the sample waveform library disk that comes with this instrument into the floppy disk drive.

NOTE

Do not remove the floppy disk while the floppy disk drive is operating. This can destroy the data and cause errors.

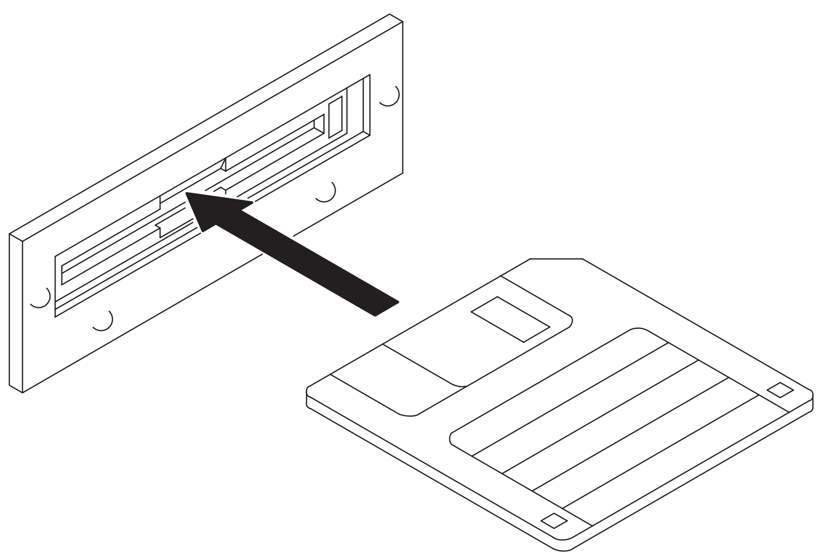


Figure 2-15: Inserting the Floppy Disk

The files will be displayed in the lower box of the LOAD menu. Figure 2-16 shows how the files on the sample waveform library disk are displayed on the screen.

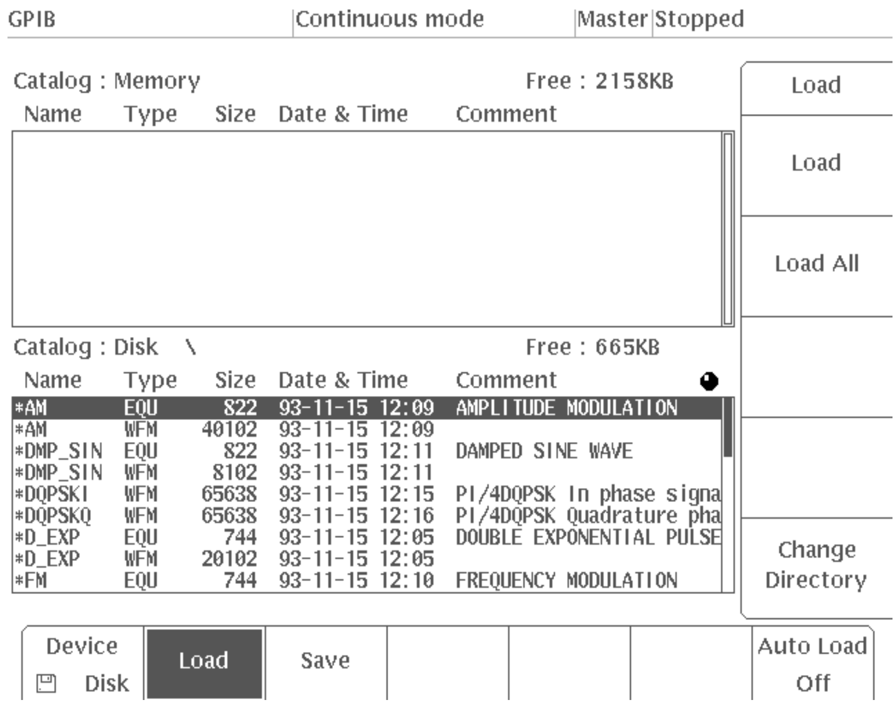


Figure 2-16: Sample Waveform Library Disk Files

Load All

☐ **Step 6:** Select **Load All** from the side menu. The display shown in Figure 2-17 will appear.

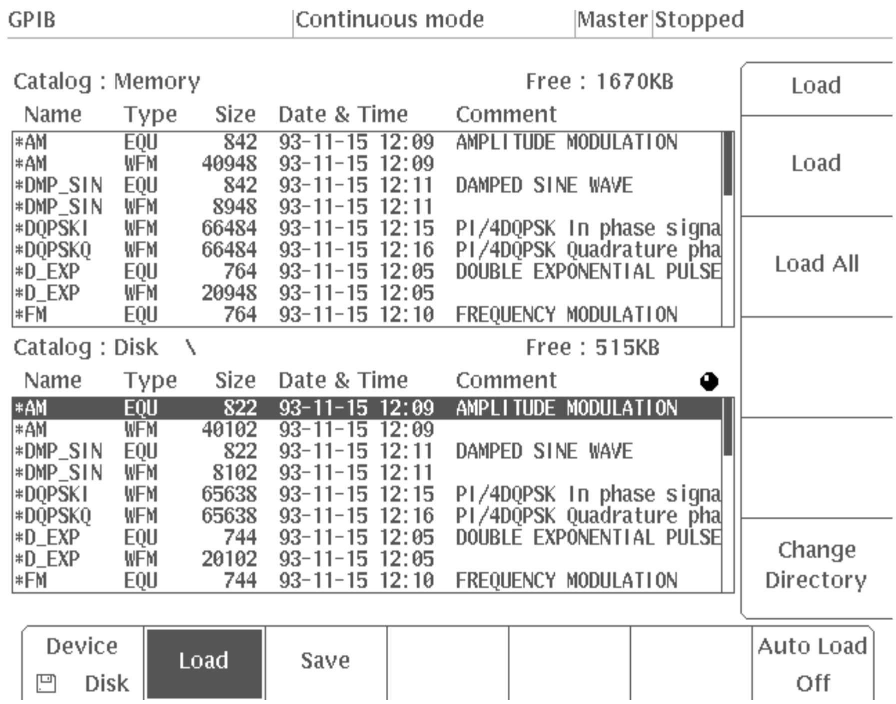


Figure 2-17: CRT Screen Display When Load All is Selected

All the files in the lower box on the screen are loaded into internal memory. The loaded files are displayed in the internal memory list in the upper box on the screen.

Turn the general-purpose knob to scroll through the list of files displayed in the lower box on the screen. For explanations of the waveform in each file, see Sample Waveform Library in Appendix C.

NOTE

*The sample waveform library disk files are locked (and * is displayed next to their names). You must unlock these files before you can edit them.*

Setting the Output Parameters

These parameters are used for waveform output.

SETUP

☐ **Step 7:** Press the **SETUP** button in the **MENU** column. The **SETUP** menu is displayed.

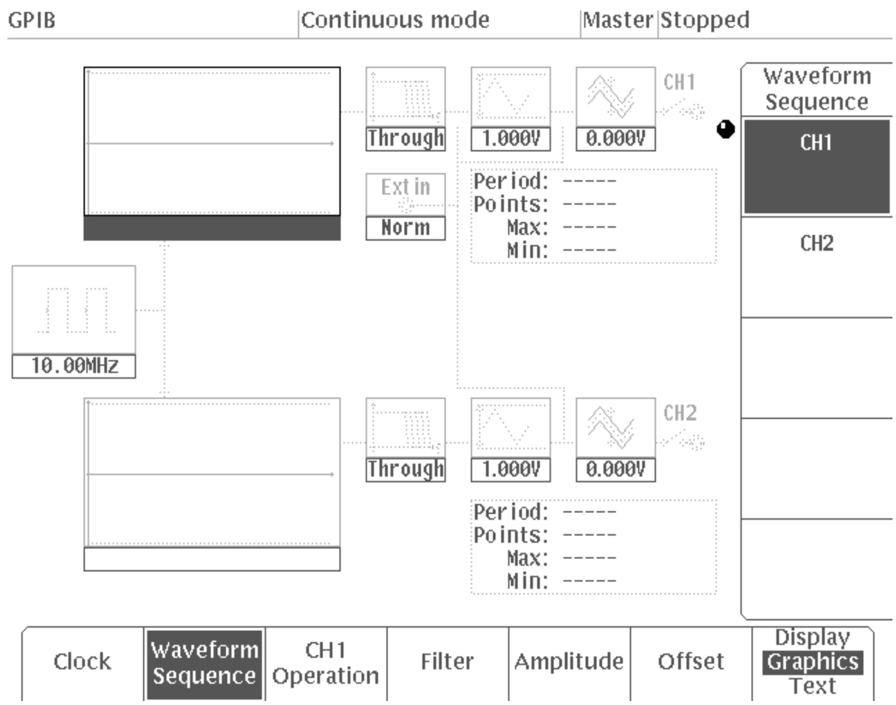


Figure 2-18: SETUP Menu

Waveform Sequence

☐ **Step 8:** Select **Waveform Sequence** from the bottom menu.

CH1

☐ **Step 9:** Select **CH1** from the side menu.

GAUSS_P.WFM

☐ **Step 10:** Turn the general-purpose knob to develop the waveform file list. Select the file **GAUSS_P.WFM** from this list.

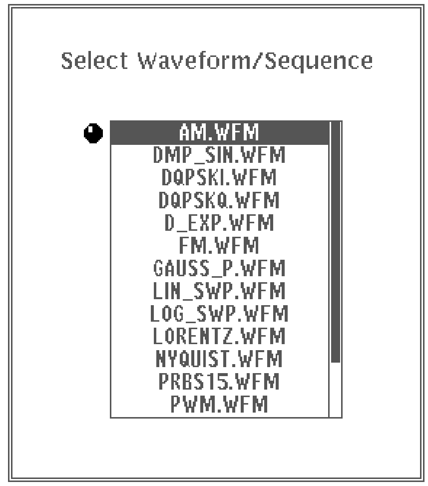


Figure 2-19: Waveform File List

O.K.

☐ **Step 11:** Select **O.K**. from the sub-menu. The selected file will be confirmed and the output conditions will be automatically set. Figure 2-20 shows the **SETUP** menu with the file **GAUSS_P.WFM** selected.

NOTE

The selected file is locked. Therefore, although changes can be made to the waveform clock, filter, amplitude, offset and other output conditions, these changes cannot be saved to the file.

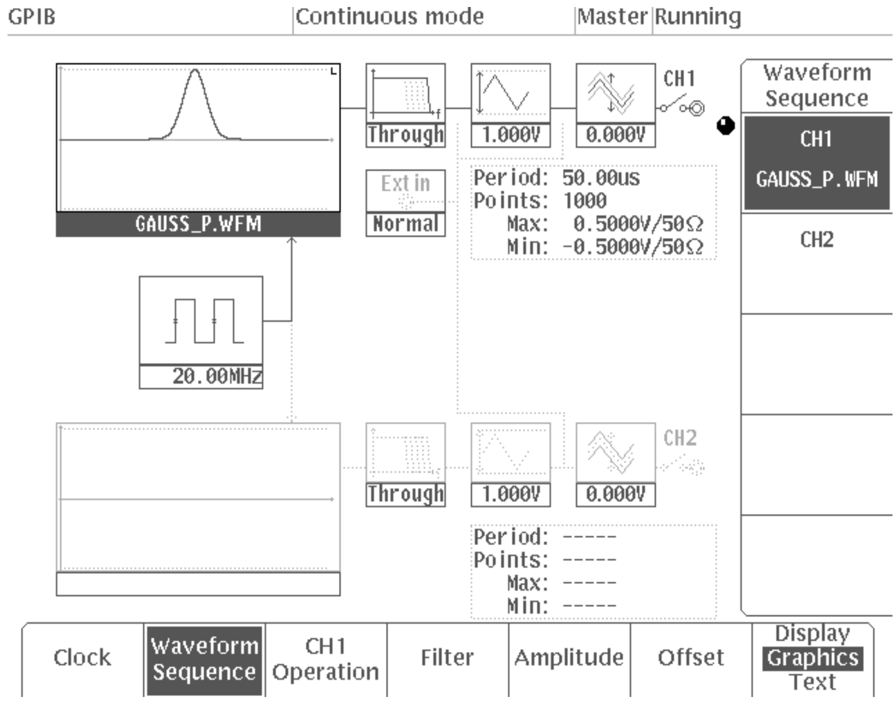


Figure 2-20: GAUSS_P.WFM File Output Parameters

MODE

☐ **Step 12:** Press the **MODE** button in the **MENU** column. The **MODE** menu is displayed.

The files selected from the **SETUP** menu are displayed in the **MODE** menu.

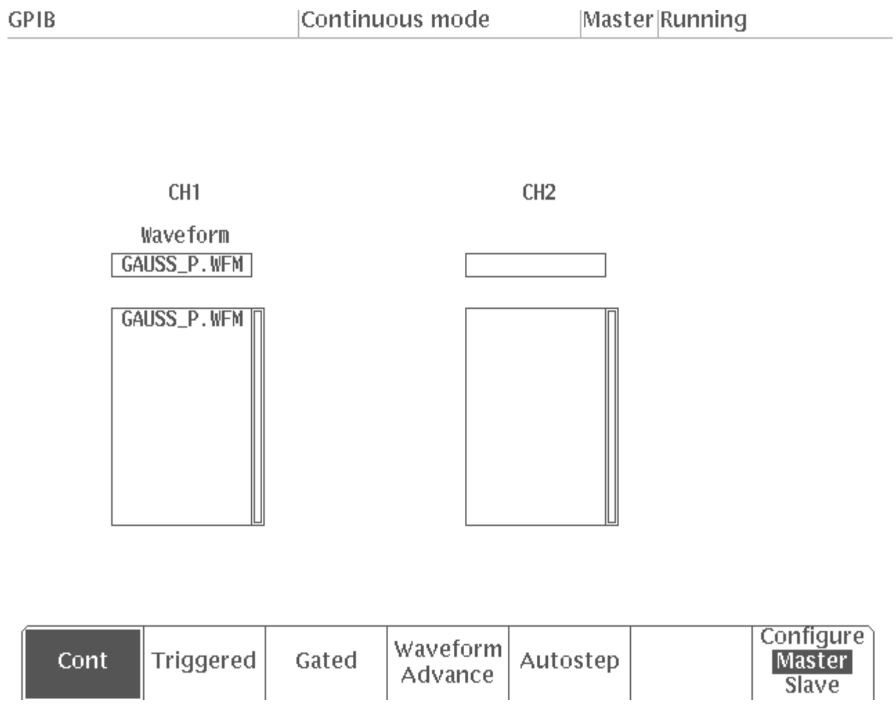
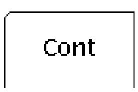


Figure 2-21: MODE Menu



☐ **Step 13:** Select **Cont** from the bottom menu. When **Cont** is selected, the waveform is continuously output.

Waveform Output

☐ **Step 14:** Connect this instrument and the oscilloscope with a 50 Ω cable and a 50 Ω termination as shown in Figure 2-22. This instrument's waveform output is calibrated to a 50 Ω load.

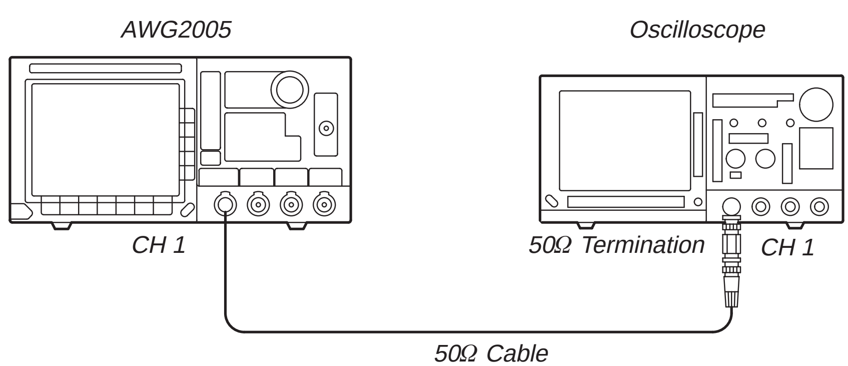
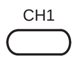


Figure 2-22: Connections in Example 2



☐ **Step 15:** Press the front panel **CH1** On/Off button to switch on waveform output. Figure 2-23 shows the channel On/Off button and indicator.

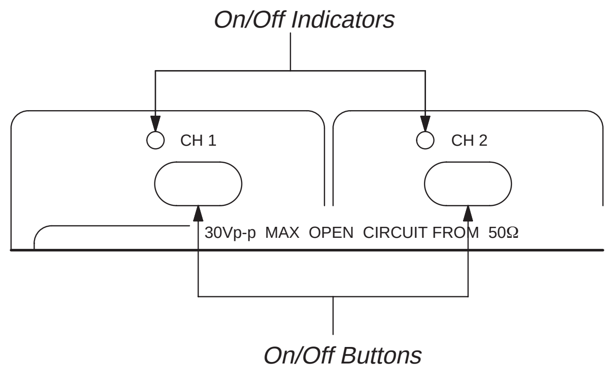


Figure 2-23: Channel On/Off Buttons and Indicators

When the Channel is on, the indicator lights up and the set waveform is output from the **CH1** output connector.

☐ **Step 16:** Set the parameters for the connected oscilloscope as shown below and display the waveform on the oscilloscope screen.

Volt/Div.	200 mV/Div.
Time/Div.	20 μs/Div.
Trigger Mode	Auto

When you change the **Clock**, **Amplitude**, or **Offset** items with the **SETUP** menu, the waveform changes in real time.

This completes the example 2.

Example 3: Creating Files and Arbitrary Waveform Outputs

When using the instrument for arbitrary waveform output, you should first use the editors in the **EDIT** menu to create the waveform to be output. In this operation, you will create an arbitrary waveform with the editors, and then you will set the conditions for waveform output (frequency, amplitude, offset, etc.) in the **SETUP** menu. Finally, you will set the operation mode in the **MODE** menu to output the waveform.

In Example 3, we will practice the following series of operations:

Creating a Waveform File
Creating Arbitrary Waveforms Using the Point Draw Function
Creating Waveforms Arithmetically
Creating an Equation File
Creating a Sequence File
Creating Autostep Files
Setting the Output Parameters
Setting Operation Mode and Waveform Output

Creating a Waveform File

Use the waveform editor graphic display to create a waveform file by performing the following steps:

☐ **Step 1:** Press the **EDIT** button in the **MENU** column. Figure 2-24 shows the initial menu displayed.

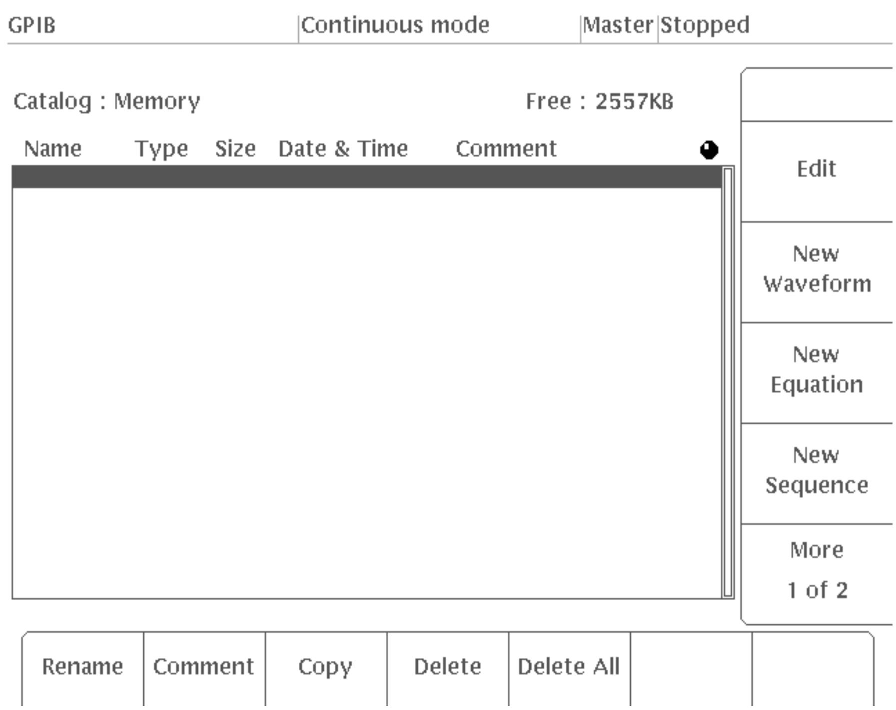


Figure 2-24: Initial Menu

☐ **Step 2:** Select **New Waveform** from the side menu. Figure 2-25 shows the waveform editor graphic menu. The default for the number of points in the waveform is 1000.

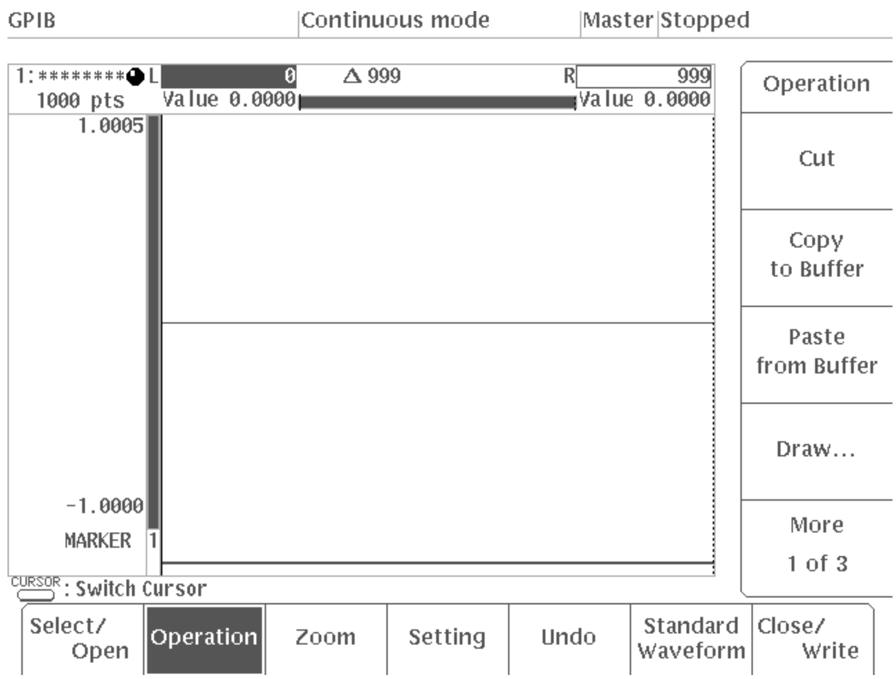
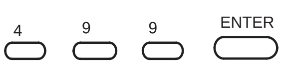


Figure 2-25: Waveform Editor Graphic Menu

☐ **Step 3:** Press the front panel **CURSOR** button to activate the right side vertical bar cursor (it becomes a solid line).

Pressing the **CURSOR** button toggles the selected vertical bar cursor from right to left and back again. You can move the selected cursor using the general purpose knob or the numeric keys.



☐ **Step 4:** Press the following key sequence: 4, 9, 9, **ENTER**. This sets the point value for the right side vertical bar cursor to 499 (see Figure 2-26).

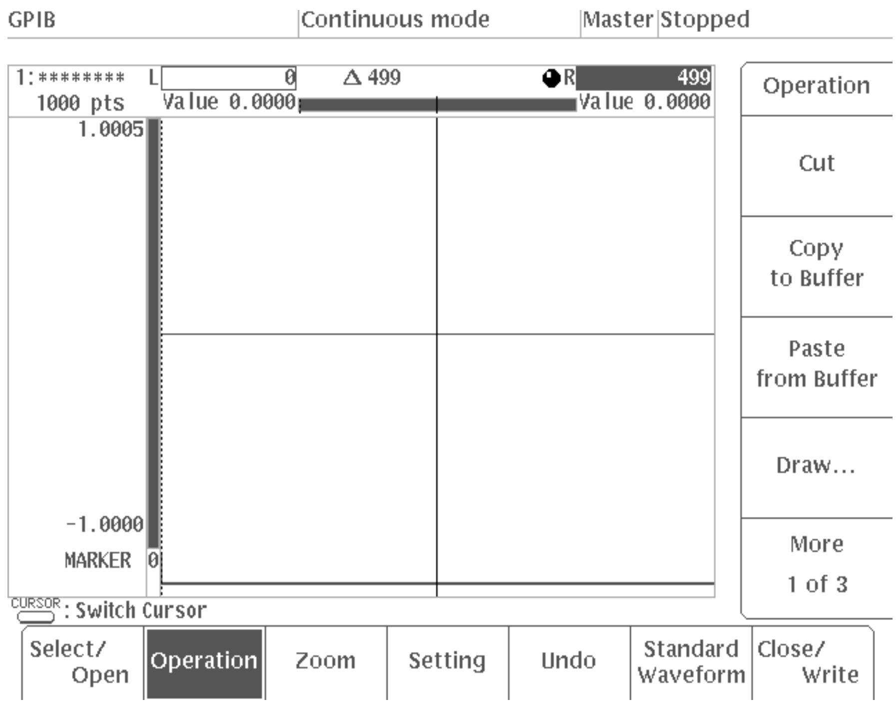


Figure 2-26: Setting the Point Value for the Right Side Vertical Bar Cursor

Standard Waveform

☐ **Step 5:** Select **Standard Waveform** from the bottom menu.

Type

☐ **Step 6:** Select **Type** from the side menu.

Sine

☐ **Step 7:** Turn the general purpose knob to select **Sine**.

Cycle

☐ **Step 8:** Select **Cycle** from the side menu.

2 ENTER

☐ **Step 9:** Press ”**2**” and **ENTER** in that order to set the number of cycles for the sine wave to 2.

Execute

☐ **Step 10:** Select **Execute** from the side menu.

A two-cycle sine waveform is created between the vertical bar cursors (see Figure 2-27).

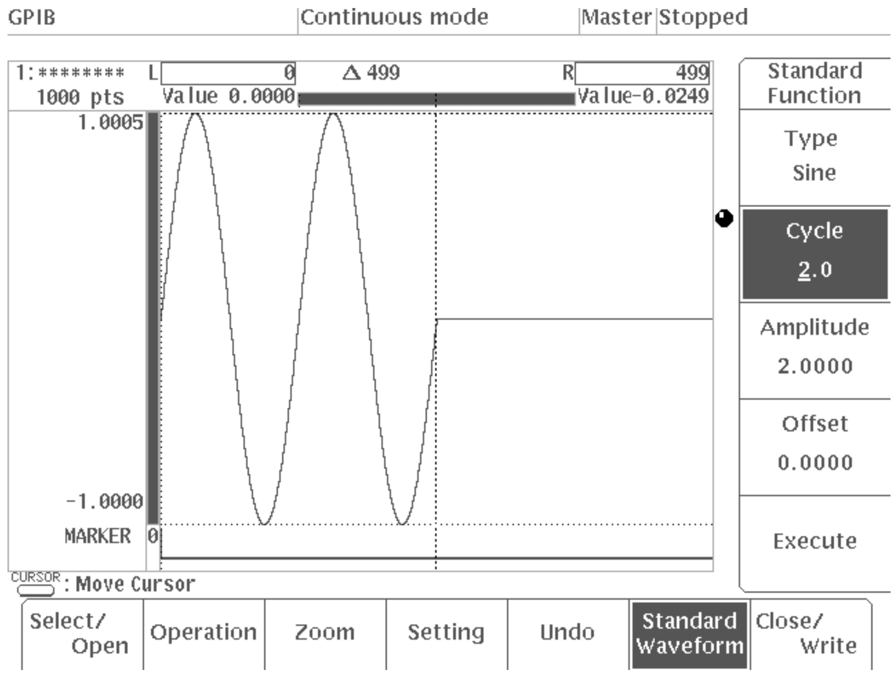


Figure 2-27: Creating a Sine Waveform

CURSOR

☐ **Step 11:** Press the **CURSOR** button to activate the right side vertical bar cursor.

9 9 9 ENTER

☐ **Step 12:** Press the following key sequence: **9**, **9**, **9**, **ENTER**. This sets the point value to **999**.

CURSOR

☐ **Step 13:** Press the **CURSOR** button to activate the left side vertical bar cursor.

5 0 0 ENTER

☐ **Step 14:** Press the following key sequence: **5**, **0**, **0**, **ENTER**. This sets the point value to **500**.

Type

☐ **Step 15:** Select **Type** from the side menu.

Ramp

☐ **Step 16:** Turn the general purpose knob to select **Ramp**.

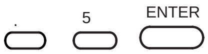
Amplitude

☐ **Step 17:** Select **Amplitude** from the side menu.

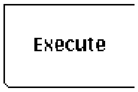
1 ENTER

☐ **Step 18:** Press ”**1**” and **ENTER** in that order to set the ramp wave amplitude to **1**.

☐ **Step 19:** Select **Offset** from the side menu.



☐ **Step 20:** Press ”**.**”, ”**5**”, and **ENTER** in that order to set the ramp wave offset to **0.5**.



☐ **Step 21:** Select **Execute** from the side menu. A two-cycle ramp waveform is created between the vertical bar cursors (see Figure 2-28).

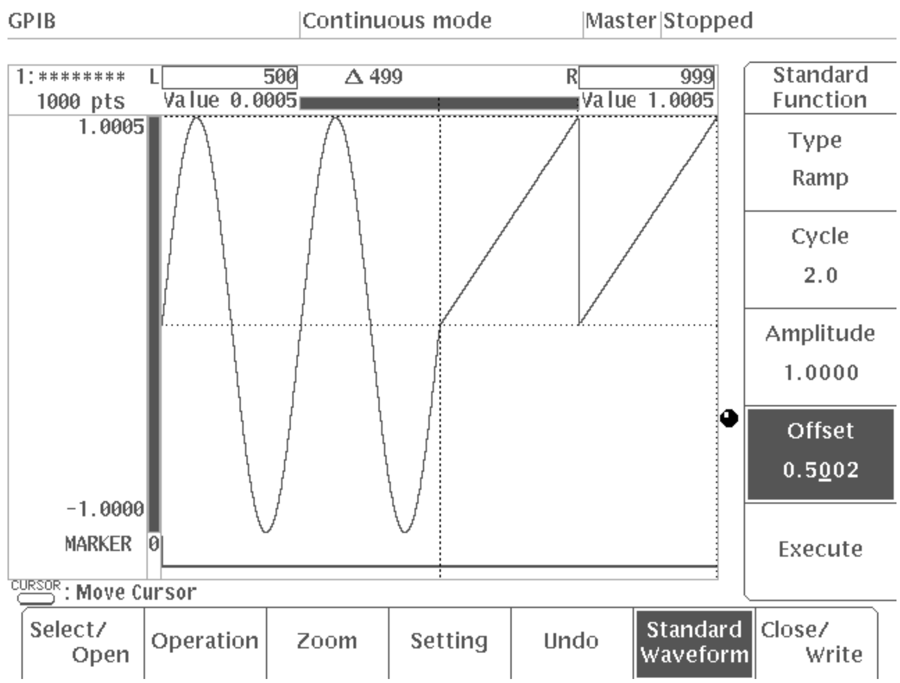
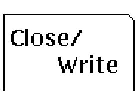
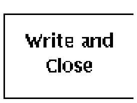


Figure 2-28: Creating a Ramp Waveform

This completes the waveform creation. Next, name the waveform file and exit the waveform editor.



☐ **Step 22:** Select **Close**/**Write** from the bottom menu.



☐ **Step 23:** Select **Write and Close** from the side menu. The display used to enter the file name will appear.

S

VALUE

☐ **Step 24:** Input **SAMPLE–1** as the file name. Use the general purpose knob to select **S** from the character menu.

Then press the **VALUE** button. **S** is inserted into the file name input column. In the same manner, input **A**, **M**, **P**, **L**, **E**, **–**, **1** (see Figure 2-29).

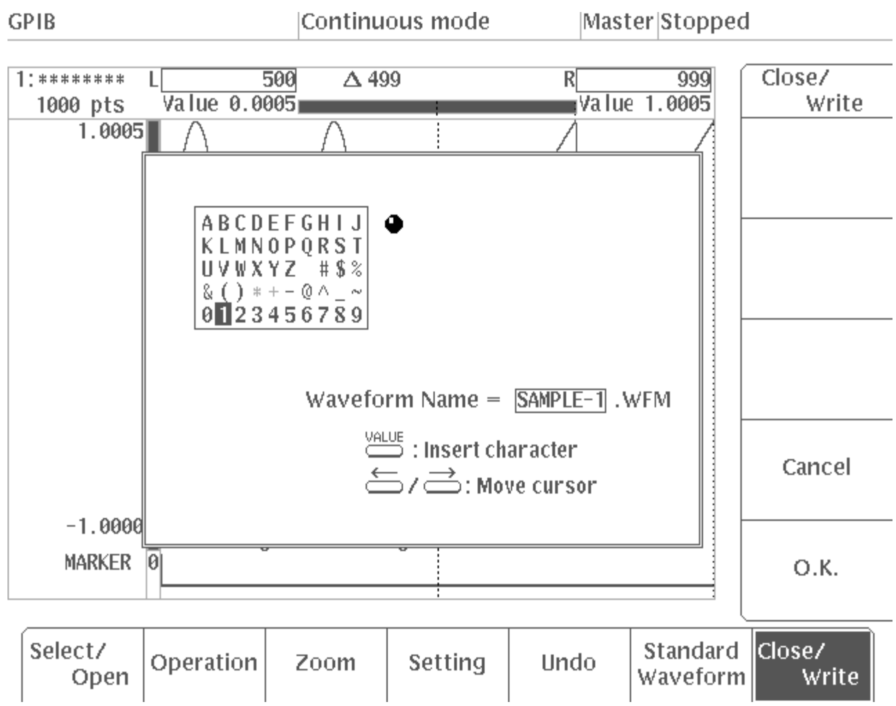


Figure 2-29: Naming a File

O.K.

☐ **Step 25:** When you finish inputting the file name, select **O.K.** from the sub menu. The system returns to the initial menu and displays the waveform file created (see Figure 2-30). The extender "**WFM**" will be displayed after the file name; this indicates that the file is a waveform file.

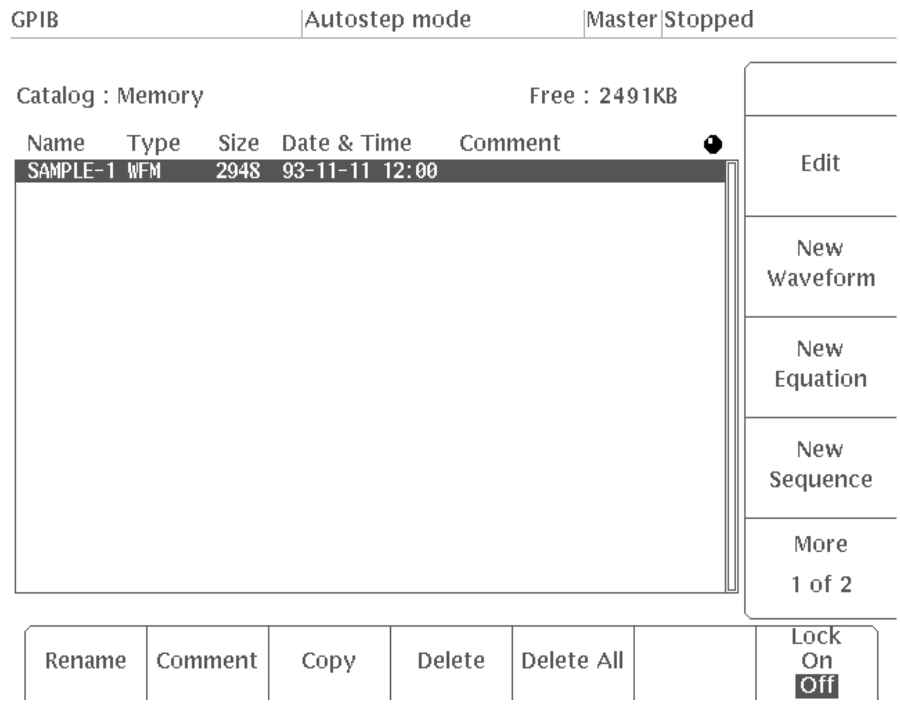


Figure 2-30: Initial Menu File List

Creating Arbitrary Waveforms Using the Point Draw Function

Arbitrary waveforms can be created on the graphic display with the POINT DRAW function.

Use the following procedure to make a copy of the file **SAMPLE–1.WFM** created in the previous operation.

Copy

- [ ] **Step 1:** In the initial **EDIT** menu, select **Copy** bottom menu. The display used to enter the name of the copy of the file will appear, as shown in Figure 2-31.

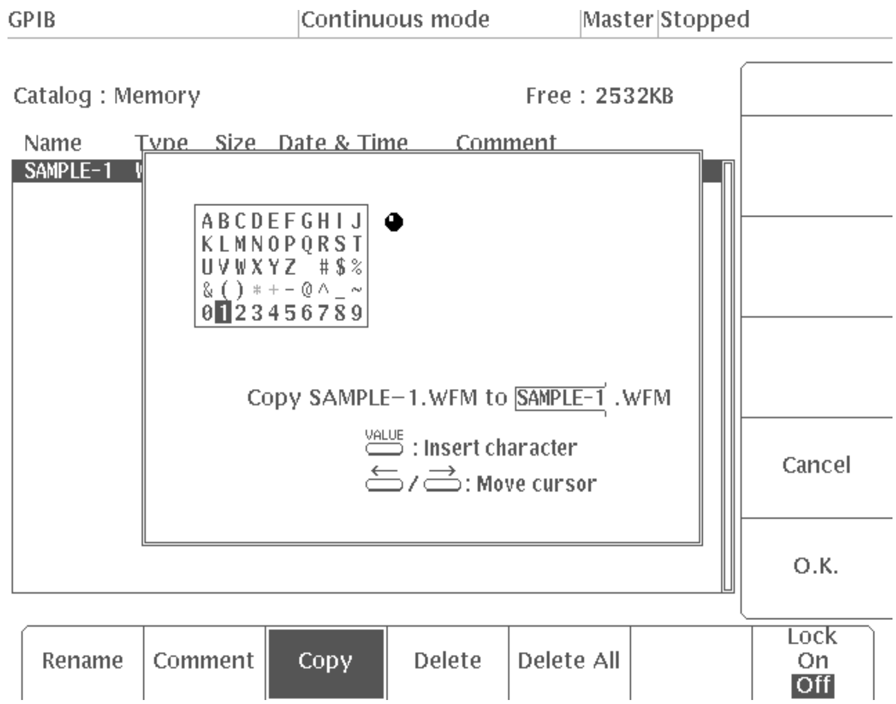


Figure 2-31: Entering a Name for the Copied File

In this example, you will name the copy **SAMPLE−2**.

☐ **Step 2:** Press the Delete key on the front panel to delete the ”**1**” in the file name.

☐ **Step 3:** Press ”**2**.”

☐ **Step 4:** Select **O.K.** from the side menu.

SAMPLE−1 will be copied as a new waveform file named **SAMPLE−2**.

☐ **Step 5:** Check to make sure that the **SAMPLE−2** waveform file is displayed inverted in the file list in the initial menu. If it is not selected, turn the general purpose knob until the name **SAMPLE−2** is displayed inverted.

☐ **Step 6:** Select **Edit** from the side menu.

The **SAMPLE−2** waveform file will appear on the screen.

You will now set the range for waveform creation. The arbitrary waveform will be created within this range using the POINT DRAW function.

☐ **Step 7:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel. This will activate the vertical cursor bar in the left-hand side of the screen.

2 5 0 ENTER

- [ ] **Step 8:** Press ”**2**”, ”**5**”, ”**0**”, and **ENTER** to set the point value of the left cursor to 250.

CURSOR

- [ ] **Step 9:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel again to activate the vertical cursor bar in the right-hand side of the screen.

7 5 0 ENTER

- [ ] **Step 10:** Press ”**7**”, ”**5**”, ”**0**”, and **ENTER** to set the point value of the right cursor to **750**.

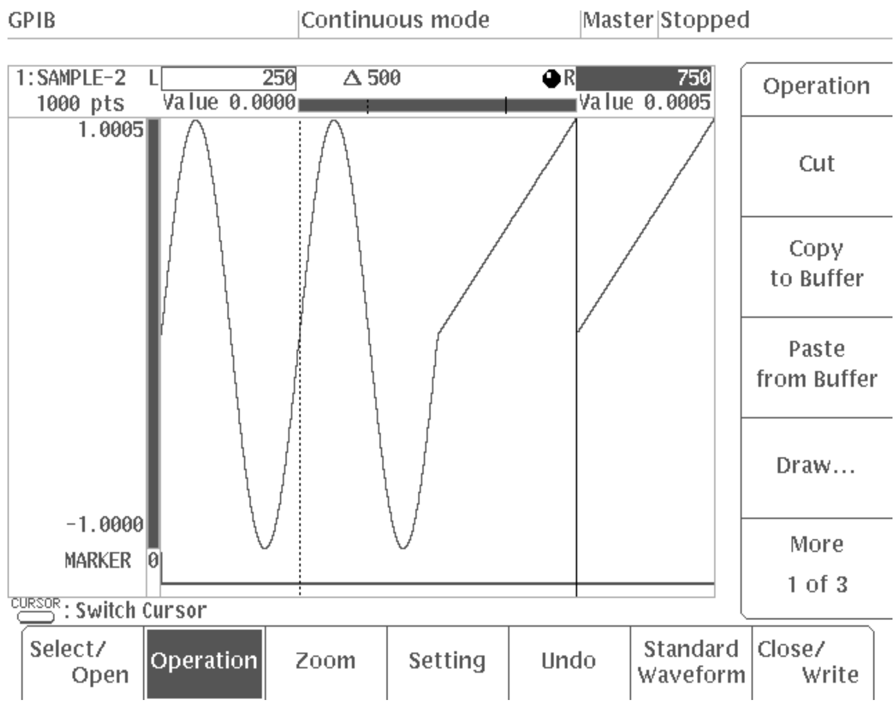


Figure 2-32: Setting the Edit Range

You may now create the arbitrary waveform within the range designated by these two vertical bar cursors, using the POINT DRAW function.

Operation

- [ ] **Step 11:** Select **Operation** from the bottom menu.

Draw...

- [ ] **Step 12:** Select **DRAW...** from the side menu.

The first point will be drawn.

VALUE

- [ ] **Step 13:** Press the **VALUE** button on the front panel to determine the direction in which the point cursor will move.

- [ ] **Step 14:** Using the general purpose knob, move the point cursor to draw another point.

Add Draw Point

☐ **Step 15:** Select **Add Draw Point** from the sub-menu.

The point will be confirmed and an _ will appear at that position.

☐ **Step 16:** Repeat steps 13 through 15 to determine other points. An example is shown in Figure 2-33.

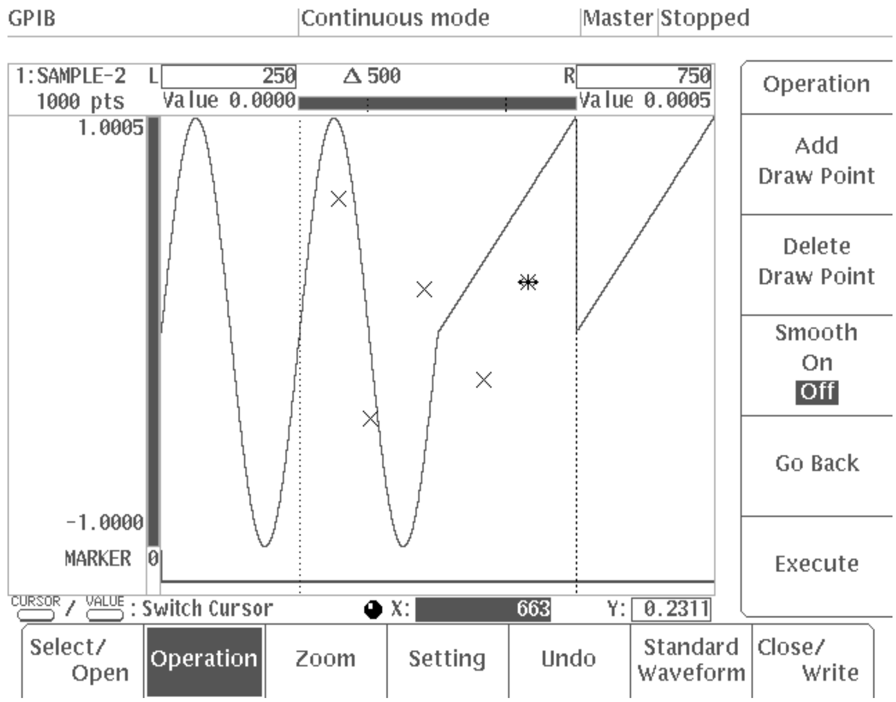


Figure 2-33: Drawing a Waveform Using the Point Draw Function

Smooth On Off

☐ **Step 17:** Select **Smooth** from the sub-menu to turn smoothing ON.

When this is done, spline interpolation will be performed and the points that have been drawn and the curve outside the area marked by the vertical bar cursors will be connected in a smooth curve.

If smoothing is turned off, linear interpolation will be performed and the points that have been drawn and the curve outside the area marked by the vertical cursors will be connected using straight lines.

Execute

☐ **Step 18:** Select **Execute** from the sub-menu.

The points between the vertical cursors will be connected in a smooth curve (using spline interpolation), as shown in Figure 2-34.

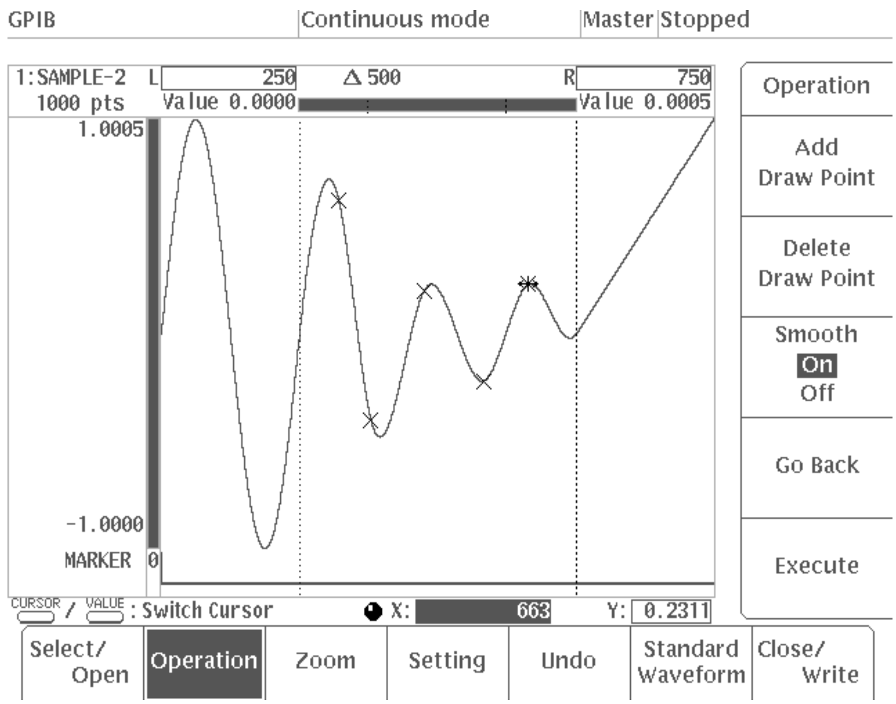
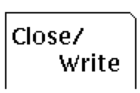
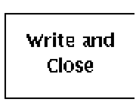


Figure 2-34: Connecting the Points



☐ **Step 19:** Select **Close**/**Write** from the bottom menu.



☐ **Step 20:** Select **Write and Close** from the side menu.

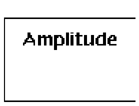
The data for the **SAMPLE–2** waveform file will be updated and the initial **EDIT** menu will reappear.

Creating Waveforms Arithmetically

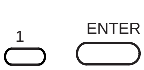
You will now add a noise waveform to the sine waveform.

☐ **Step 1:** Select **New Waveform** from the side menu in the initial **EDIT** menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Standard Waveform** from the bottom menu.



☐ **Step 3:** Select **Amplitude** from the side menu.



☐ **Step 4:** Press ”**1**” and **ENTER** in that order.

☐ **Step 5:** Check to make sure that the parameters for other items in the side menu are set to the values shown below. If they are different, change them to the values shown below.

Type	Sine
Cycle	1.0
Offset	0.0000

Execute

☐ **Step 6:** Select **Execute** from the side menu.

The sine wave shown in Figure 2-35 will be created.

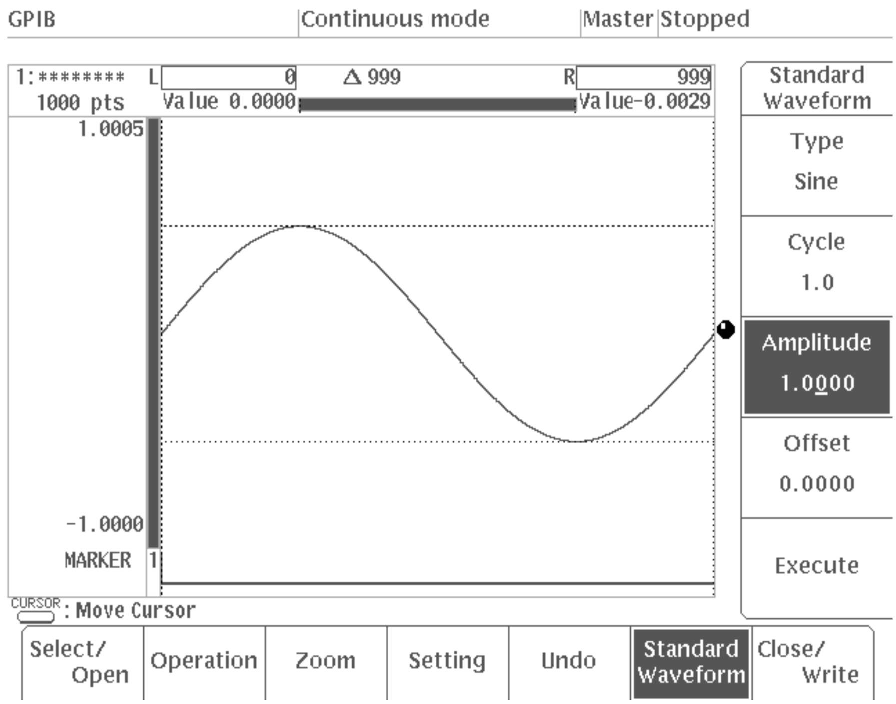


Figure 2-35: Creating a Sine Wave

Type

☐ **Step 7:** Select **Type** from the side menu.

Add Noise

☐ **Step 8:** Using the general purpose knob, select **Add Noise**.

Amplitude

☐ **Step 9:** Select **Amplitude** from the side menu.

. 3 ENTER

☐ **Step 10:** Press ”**.**”, ”**3**”, and **ENTER** in that order.

Execute

☐ **Step 11:** Select **Execute** from the side menu.

Noise will be added to the sine wave, as shown in Figure 2-36.

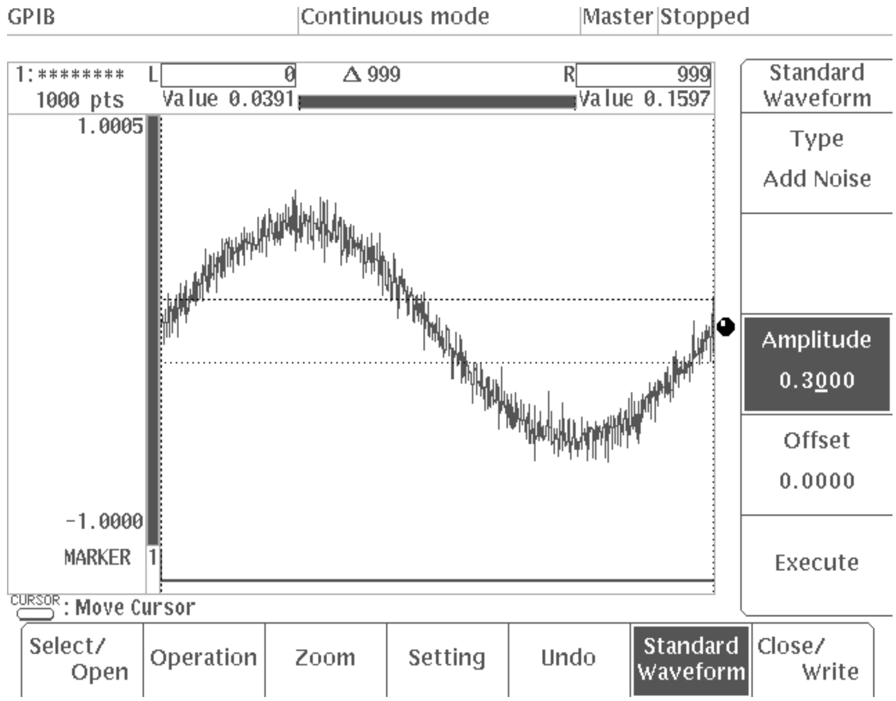
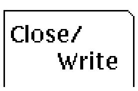
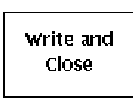


Figure 2-36: Sine Wave With Noise Added



☐ **Step 12:** Select **Close**/**Write** from the bottom menu.



☐ **Step 13:** Select **Write and Close** from the side menu.

☐ **Step 14:** Make **SAMPLE–3** the file name. See Step 24 in the waveform file creation procedure for instructions on how to enter the file name.

Creating an Equation File

This procedure is used to create a waveform using an equation.

New Equation

☐ **Step 1:** Select **New Equation** from the side menu.

Figure 2-37 shows the equation editor menu.

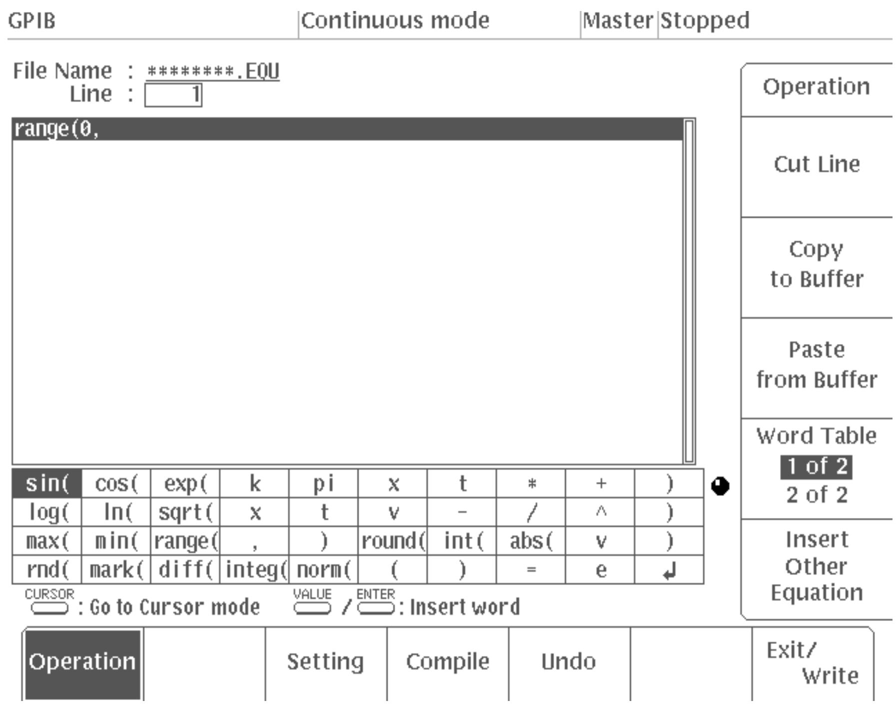


Figure 2-37: Equation Editor Menu Display

To initially define an equation, you must specify its region in time. Do this by selecting ”**range(**” in the component menu. When a new equation file is created, ”**range(0**,” will automatically appear in the first line of the equation. Following this notation, you must input the equation end time, as shown in subsequent steps.

Select **Setting** from the bottom menu. When this is done, the default setting (**1000**) for the number of points will appear. If the clock frequency has been set to 100 kHz in the **SETUP** menu, the value will be 10 μs for each point. Accordingly, for 1000 points the waveform period will be 10 ms.

Operation

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Operation** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 3:** Set the time from 0 to 5 ms. Press the **5**, **ms**, ”**)**”, and ”↵” (carriage return), in order, using the numeric keys and unit key or by selecting and entering these characters from the items in the component menu.

NOTE

*You can use the general purpose knob to select an item from within the component menu. After selecting an item, press the front panel **VALUE** button or **ENTER** button to enter the selected item into the equation list.*

Now you will create the equation for the time region set in the previous step.

☐ **Step 4:** For the equation, enter 0.5*sin(4*pi*x). Input **0**, ”**.**”, **5**, *****, **sin(, 4, *, pi, *, x,)** with the numeric keys or from the component menu.

☐ **Step 5:** In the same manner, input the data as shown in Figure 2-38.

Figure 2-38: Equation List Input

Compile

☐ **Step 6:** Select **Compile** from the bottom menu.

After the compiling is complete, the waveform data is created from the equation and the resultant waveform is displayed on the screen. Figure 2-39 shows the compiled waveform data.

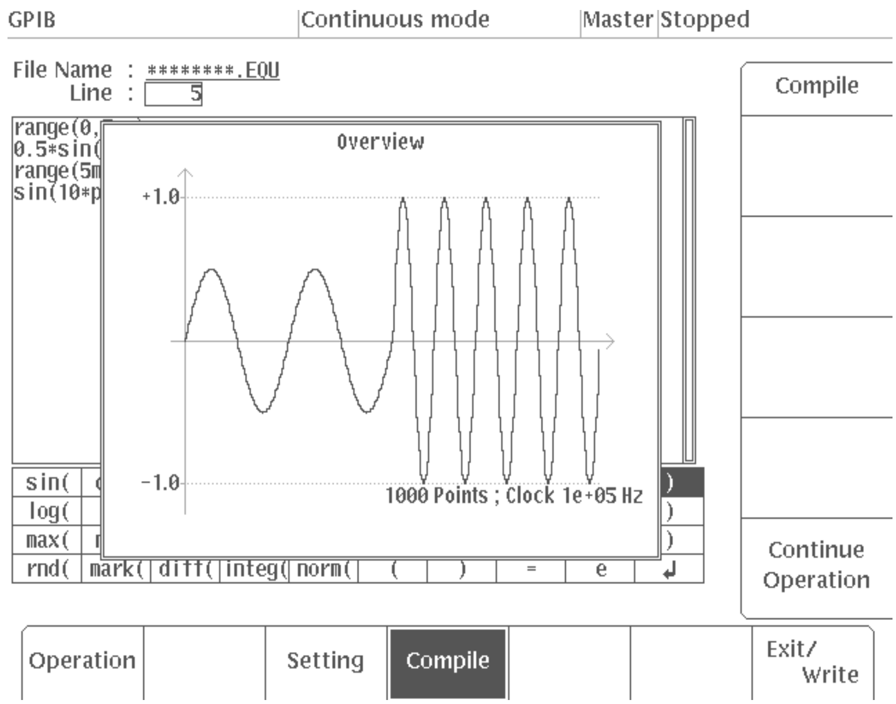
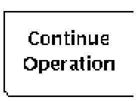
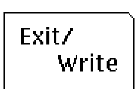


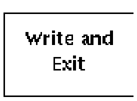
Figure 2-39: Display of Compiled Waveform Data



☐ **Step 7:** Select **Continue Operation** from the side menu to return the system to the previous equation edit menu.



☐ **Step 8:** Select **Exit**/**Write** from the bottom menu.



☐ **Step 9:** Select **Write and Exit** from the side menu.

☐ **Step 10:** Make **SAMPLE−4** the file name. For details on how to input the file name, see Step 24 from the waveform file creation procedure.

☐ **Step 11:** When you are finished inputting the file name, select **O.K.** from the sub-menu.

The equation file (**SAMPLE−4.EQU**) and the waveform file (**SAMPLE−4.WFM**) of compiled data with the same name are created and the system returns to the initial menu. See Figure 2-40.

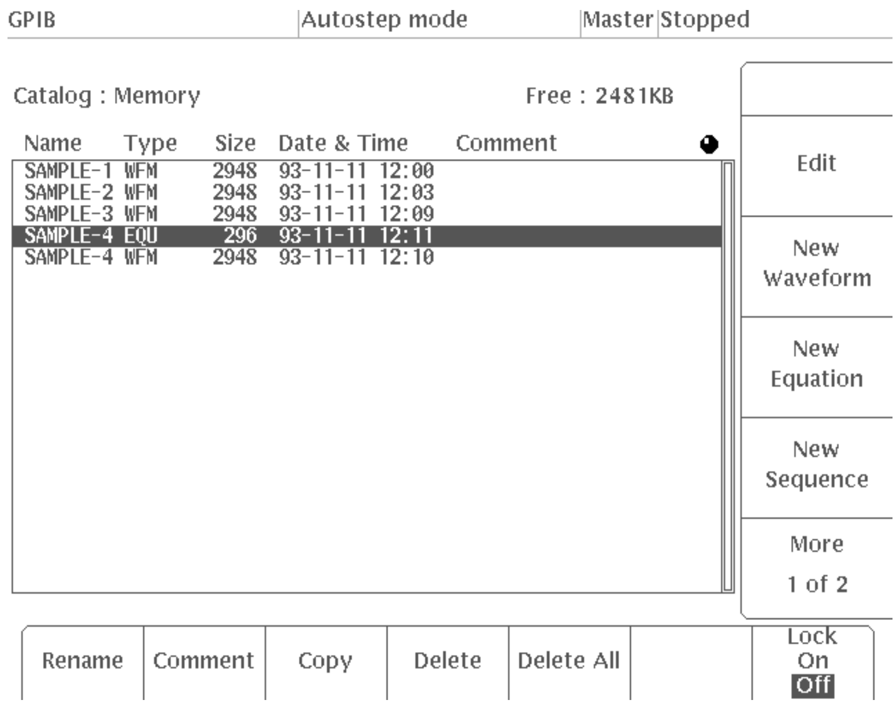
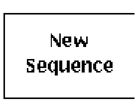


Figure 2-40: Initial Menu File List

Creating a Sequence File

In this procedure, you will create a sequence file that combines two files: the waveform file created with the waveform editor (**SAMPLE–1.WFM**) and the waveform file created with the equation editor and then compiled (**SAM-PLE–4.WFM**).



☐ **Step 1:** Select **New Sequence** from the side menu. Figure 2-41 shows the sequence editor menu.

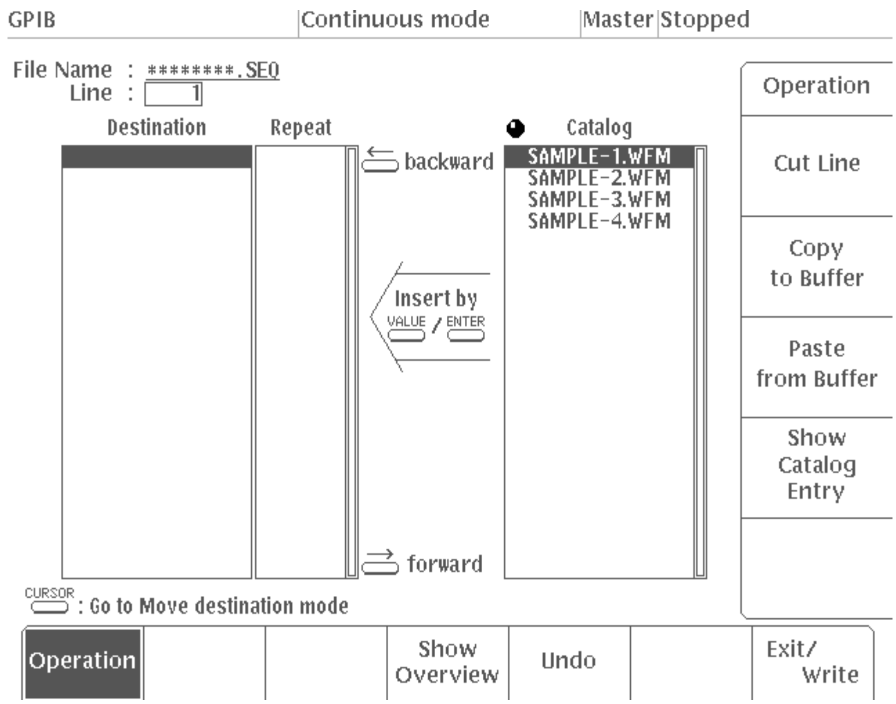


Figure 2-41: Sequence Editor Menu Display

SAMPLE–1.WFM

☐ **Step 2:** Use the general purpose knob to select the waveform file from the **Catalog** to go on the first line of the **Destination** list. Select **SAMPLE–1.WFM** here.

VALUE

☐ **Step 3:** Press the **VALUE** button on the front panel.

The file **SAMPLE–1.WFM** will be inserted in the first line of the **Destination** list. The inverted video cursor will move to the **Repeat** column on the same line.

2 ENTER

☐ **Step 4:** Now you will set the repetition count for the **SAMPLE–1.WFM** file to 2.

Press ”**2**” and **ENTER** in that order. The inverted video cursor will move to the second line in the **Destination** list.

SAMPLE–4.WFM

☐ **Step 5:** Repeat Steps 2 through 4 to enter **SAMPLE–4.WFM** in the second line of the **Destination** list. The repetition count for this file should be set to **1**; since this is the default value, there is no need to change it.

This completes the creation of the waveform sequence file. Figure 2-42 shows the resultant display.

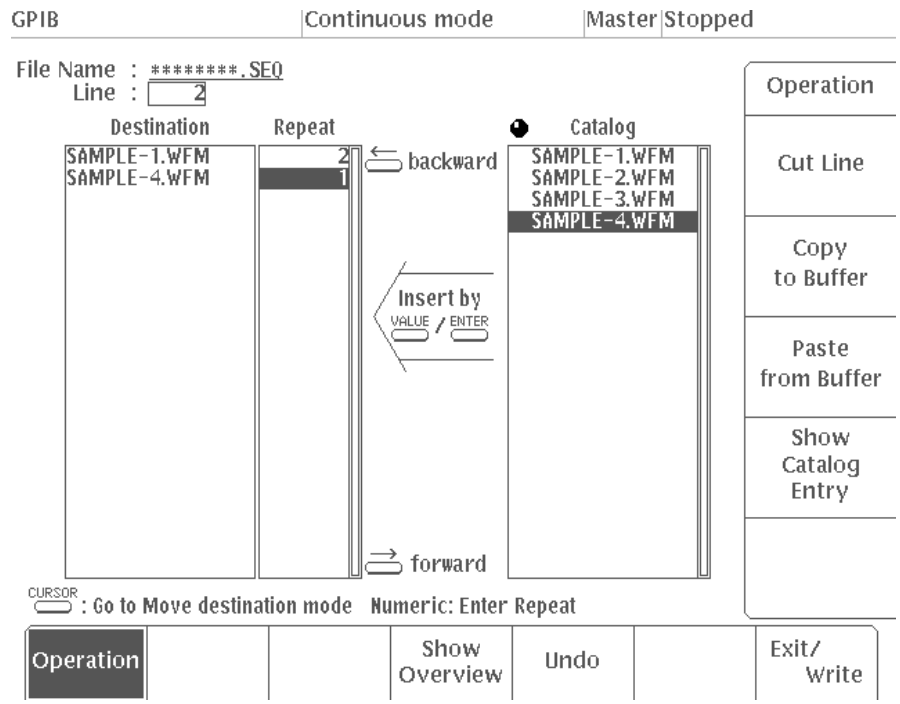


Figure 2-42: Sequence Example

Show Overview

☐ **Step 6:** Select **Show Overview** from the bottom menu to verify the sequence waveform.

The sequence waveform is combined as the sequence: **SAMPLE−1.WFM** twice and **SAMPLE−4.WFM** once. See Figure 2-43.

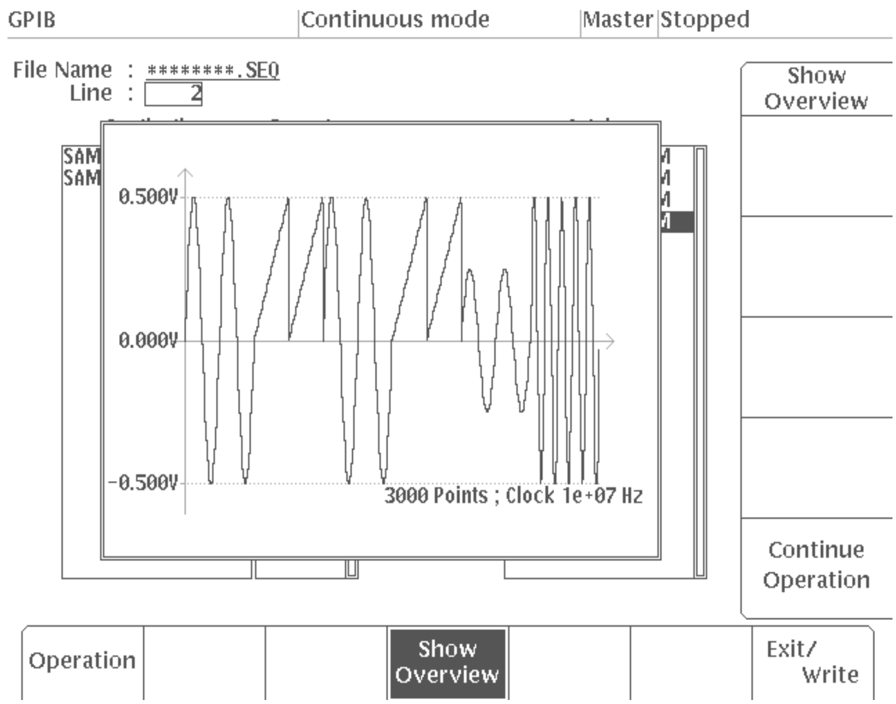
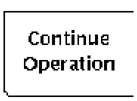
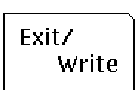


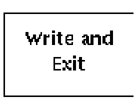
Figure 2-43: Sequence Waveform Display With Show Overview Selected



☐ **Step 7:** After verifying waveform, select **Continue Operation** from the side menu to return the system to the previous sequence edit menu.



☐ **Step 8:** Select **Exit**/**Write** from the bottom menu.



☐ **Step 9:** Select **Write and Exit** from the side menu.

☐ **Step 10:** Input **SAMPLE−5** as the name for this sequence file. For details on how to input the file name, see Step 24 of the procedure for waveform file creation.

☐ **Step 11:** When you are finished inputting the file name, select **O.K.** from the sub-menu. The sequence (**SAMPLE−5.SEQ**) file is saved to internal memory and the system returns to the initial menu.

Creating Autostep Files

In this operation, you will program waveforms to be output, using the files you have created in the previous operations, to form an autostep file.

New Autostep

☐ **Step 1:** Select **New Autostep** on the second page of the side menu in the initial **EDIT** menu.

NOTE

*Select **More** from the side menu to display the next page.*

You will set the CH1 and CH2 files for Step 1.

☐ **Step 2:** Using the general purpose knob, move the cursor to the CH1 file setting column.

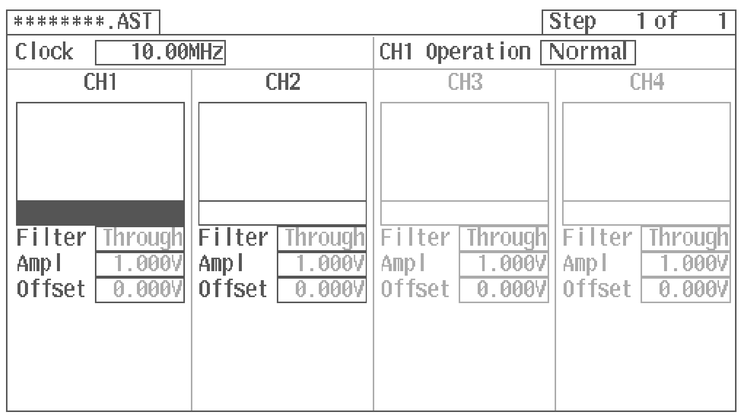


Figure 2-44: Moving the Cursor

VALUE

☐ **Step 3:** Press the **VALUE** button on the front panel.

The list used to select waveforms or sequence files will appear.

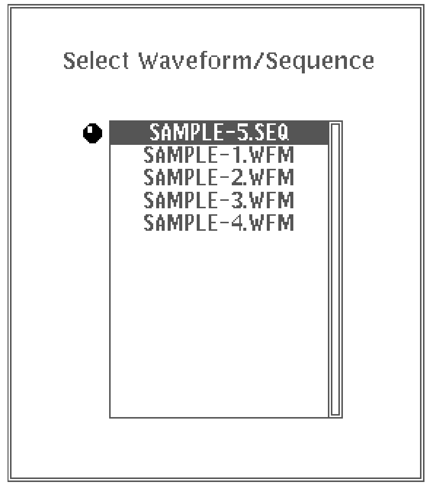


Figure 2-45: File List

SAMPLE–1.WFM

☐ **Step 4:** Using the general purpose knob, select the **SAMPLE–1.WFM** file.

Set

☐ **Step 5:** Select **Set** from the side menu.

The waveform and output parameters for the **SAMPLE–1.WFM** file will appear.

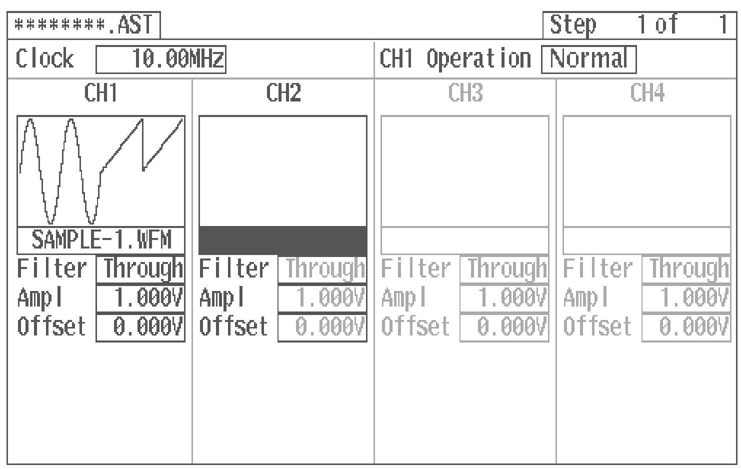


Figure 2-46: Setting Files

☐ **Step 6:** Using the general purpose knob, move the cursor to the CH2 file setting column.

VALUE

☐ **Step 7:** Press the **VALUE** button on the front panel.

◐ SAMPLE–2.WFM

Set

☐ **Step 8:** Turn the general purpose knob until the SAMPLE–2.WFM file is selected.

☐ **Step 9:** Select **Set** from the side menu.

The waveform and output parameters for the **SAMPLE–2.WFM** file will appear.

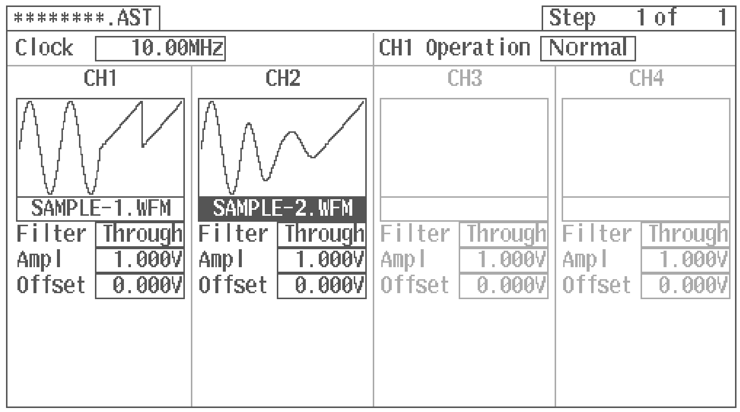


Figure 2-47: Setting the Files for Step 1

You will now set the CH1 and CH2 files for Step 2.

More 1 of 2

☐ **Step 10:** Select **More 1 of 2** from the side menu.

Append New Step

☐ **Step 11:** Select **Append New Step** from the side menu.

The Step 2 display will appear.

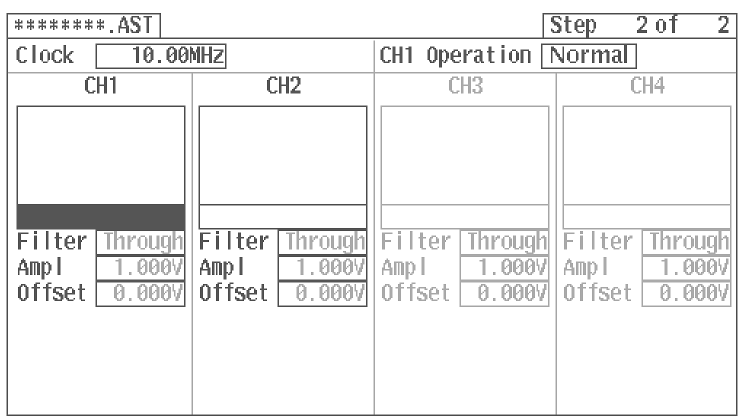


Figure 2-48: Step 2 Display

☐ **Step 12:** Using the procedure described in Steps 2 – 9 above, set the CH1 and CH2 files for Step 2.

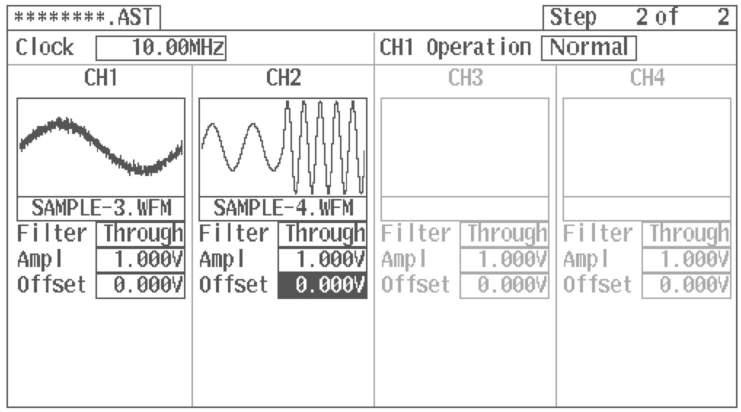
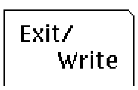
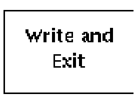


Figure 2-49: Setting the Files for Step 2



☐ **Step 13:** Select **Exit/Write** from the bottom menu.



☐ **Step 14:** Select **Write and Exit** from the side menu.

☐ **Step 15:** Enter **SAMPLE–6** as the name for the autostep file. See Step 24 of the waveform file creation procedure for instructions on how to enter the file name.

☐ **Step 16:** When the file name has been entered, select **O.K.** from the sub-menu.

The autostep file that you have created will be saved in the internal memory under the name **SAMPLE–6.AST** and the initial menu will reappear.

Setting the Output Parameters

SETUP

☐ **Step 1:** Press the **SETUP** button in the **MENU** column. Figure 2-50 shows the **SETUP** menu displayed.

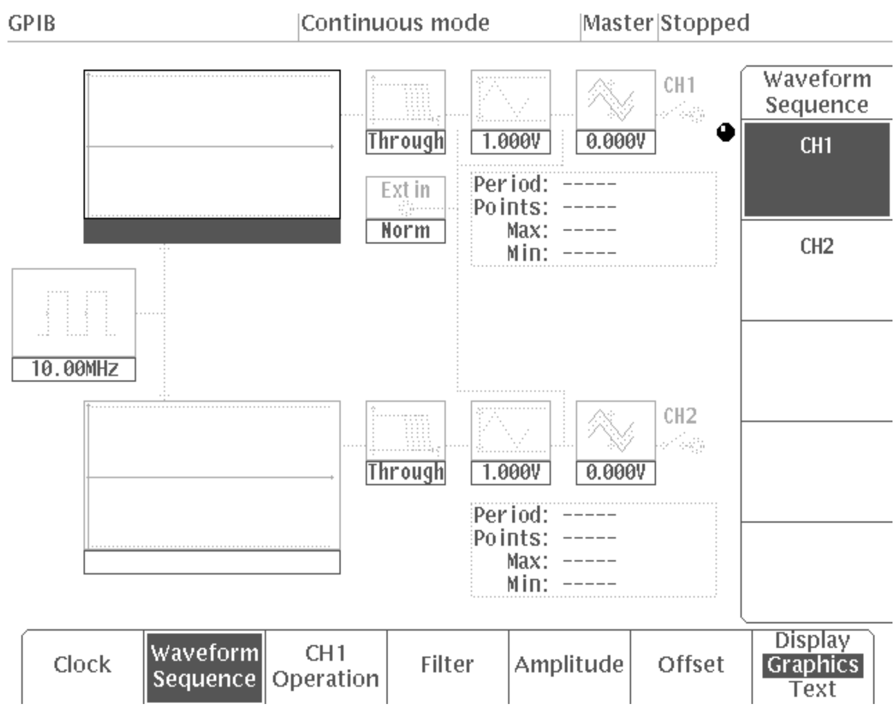


Figure 2-50: SETUP Menu

Waveform Sequence

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Waveform Sequence** from the bottom menu.

SAMPLE–1.WFM

☐ **Step 3:** Turn the general purpose knob to select the **SAMPLE–1.WFM** file.

ENTER

☐ **Step 4:** Press the front panel **ENTER** button.

Clock

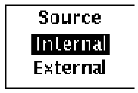
☐ **Step 5:** Select **Clock** from the bottom menu.

Internal Clock

☐ **Step 6:** Select **Internal Clock** from the side menu.

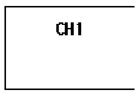
1 0 0 KHz/ms/mV

☐ **Step 7:** Use the numeric and unit keys to input **1**, **0**, **0**, **kHz**, in order, to set the clock frequency.



☐ **Step 8:** Press the **Source** button in the side menu to select **Internal**.

☐ **Step 9:** Select **Amplitude** from the bottom menu.



☐ **Step 10:** Select **CH1** from the side menu.

☐ **Step 11:** Use the numeric and unit keys to input **5**, **V**, in order, to set the voltage value for full vertical scale.

Figure 2-51 shows the menu displayed as a result of these settings.

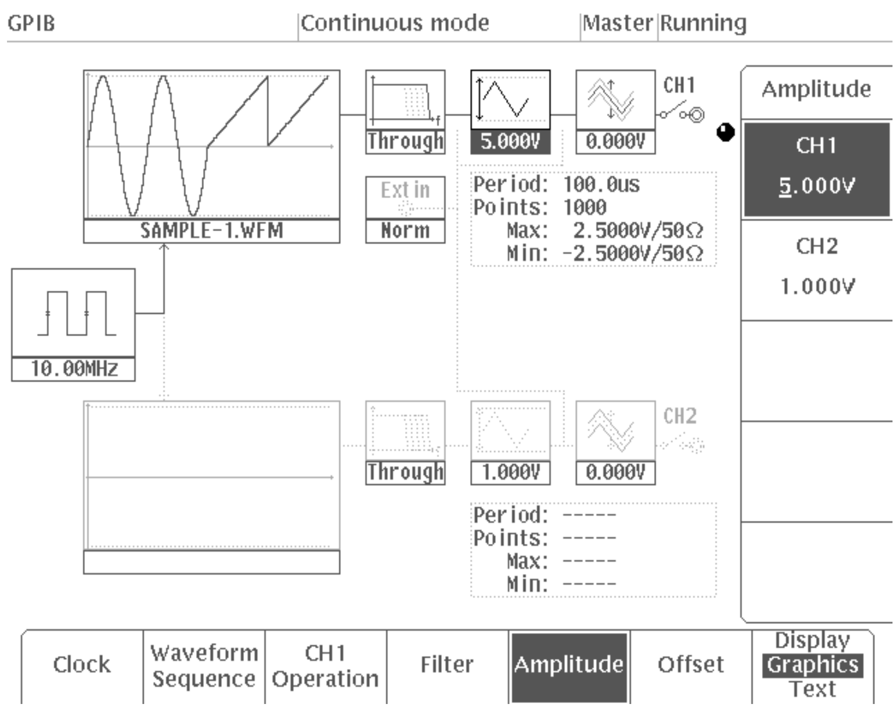


Figure 2-51: Setting Output Parameters

This completes the output parameter setting.

Setting Operation Mode and Waveform Output

Now use an oscilloscope to see what type of waveform is generated. Connect the AWG2005 to a oscilloscope using a 50 Ω cable and a 50 Ω termination as shown in Figure 2-52. The waveform output for this instrument is calibrated for a 50 Ω load.

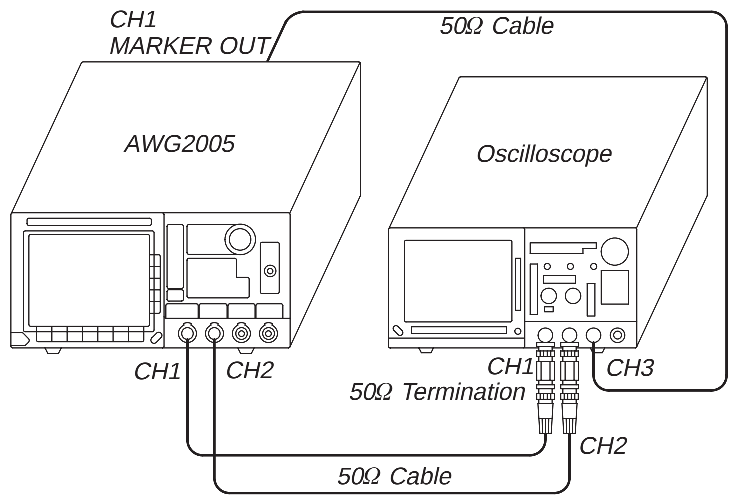


Figure 2-52: Connections for Example 3

Continuous Mode

Set the operation mode to **Cont**.

MODE

☐ **Step 1:** Press the **MODE** button in the **MENU** column. Figure 2-53 shows the **MODE** menu.

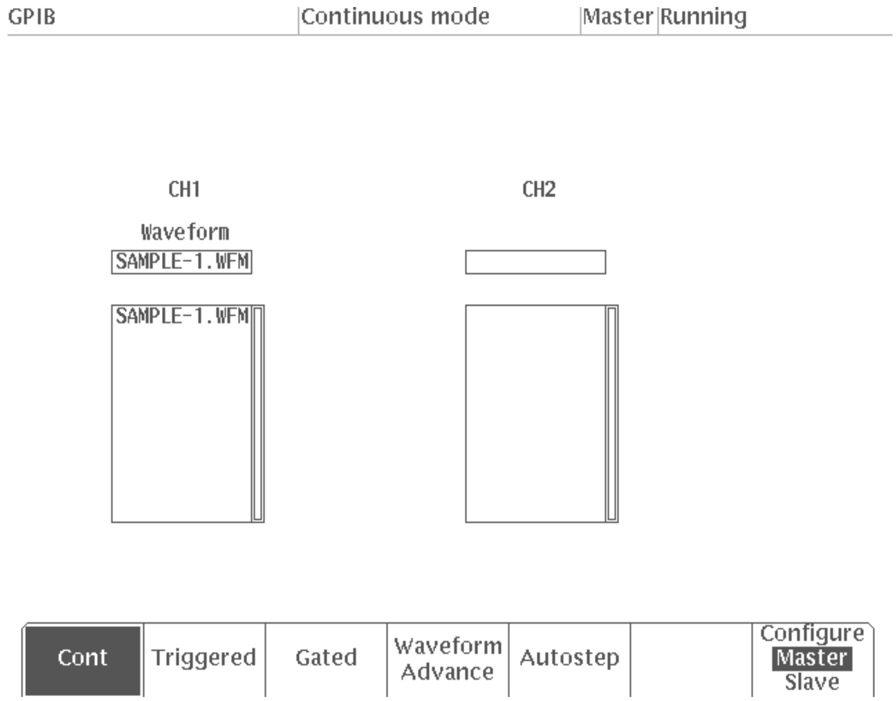
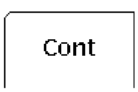
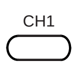


Figure 2-53: MODE Menu



- [ ] **Step 2:** Select **Cont** from the bottom menu.

This operation mode continuously outputs the set waveform. Also, "**Running**" is displayed in the trigger status area on the upper right section of the screen to show that the set waveform is being output.



- [ ] **Step 3:** Press the front panel **CH1** On/Off button to enable waveform output.

When the output is On, the On/Off indicator lights up. This operation outputs the specified waveform from the **CH1** output connector. Set the oscilloscope appropriately to display the waveform on the oscilloscope screen.

You can use the marker output from the rear panel of the instrument as the external trigger for the oscilloscope. The default value for the point at which the marker signal is high is 0. See Figure 2-54. The marker signal can be set to any point using the waveform edit function.

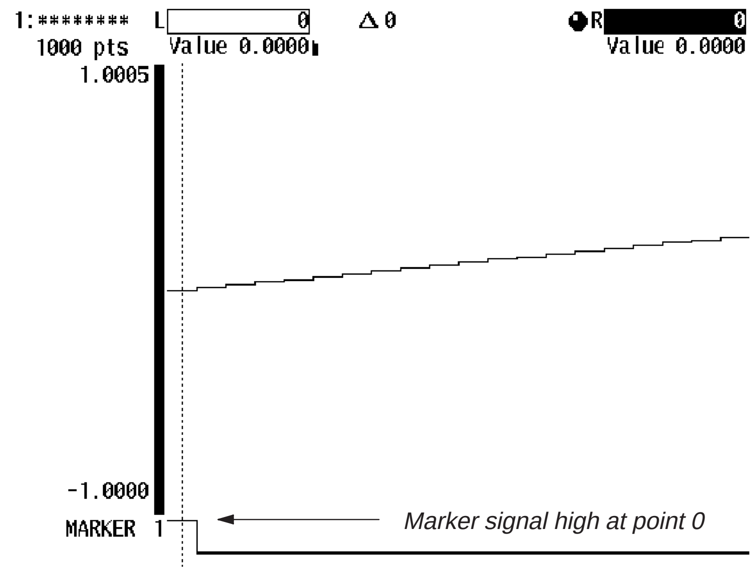


Figure 2-54: Setting the Marker Default

Triggered Mode

In the following steps, set the operation mode to **Triggered** and generate the trigger signal with the **TRIGGER MANUAL** button to control the waveform output.

Triggered

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Triggered** from the bottom menu.

When you select this item, the side menu lists external trigger parameters which allow you to set them. Figure 2-55 shows the menu set for **Triggered** mode.

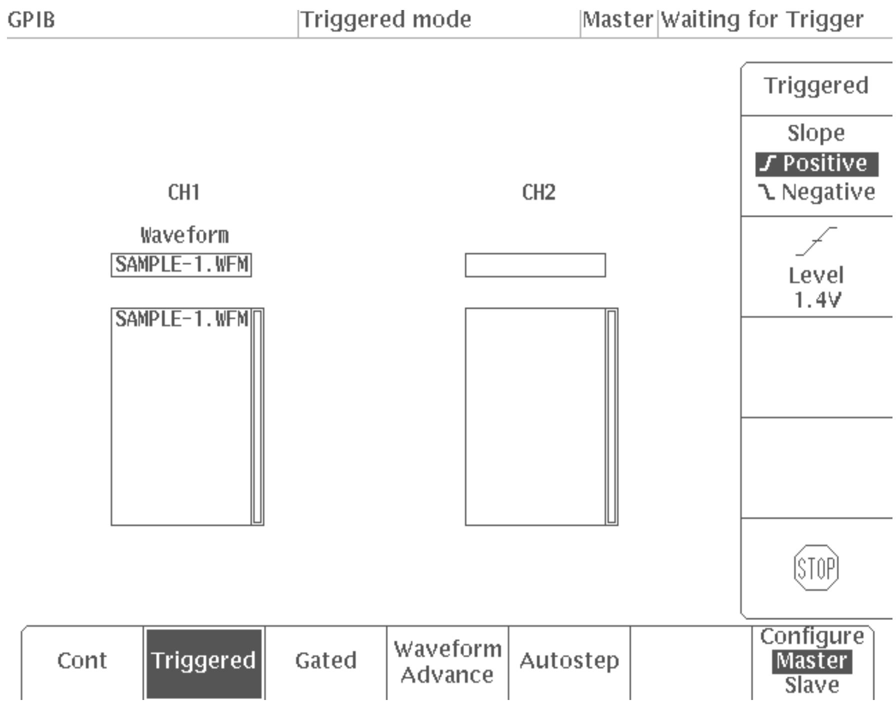


Figure 2-55: Menu Displayed When Triggered is Selected

Figure 2-56 shows the **MANUAL** button and the **TRIGGER INPUT** connector for inputting an external trigger signal.

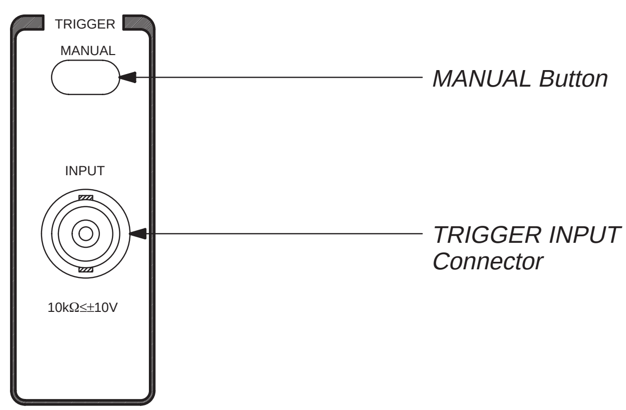


Figure 2-56: MANUAL Button and TRIGGER INPUT Connector

This procedure does not use an external trigger signal. Rather, it generates the trigger signal when the **MANUAL** button is pressed.

MANUAL

☐ **Step 5:** Press the **MANUAL** button.

Check the oscilloscope to see that each time you press the **MANUAL** button, a set waveform is output once.

Autostep Mode

Using the following procedure, you can set the operation mode to **Autostep** and use the **MANUAL** button to generate a trigger signal and control step waveform output.

NOTE

*When the operation mode is set to **Autostep**, it is not possible to change the output parameters in the **SETUP** menu.*

☐ **Step 6:** Select **Autostep** from the bottom menu.

The menu shown in Figure 2-57 will appear.

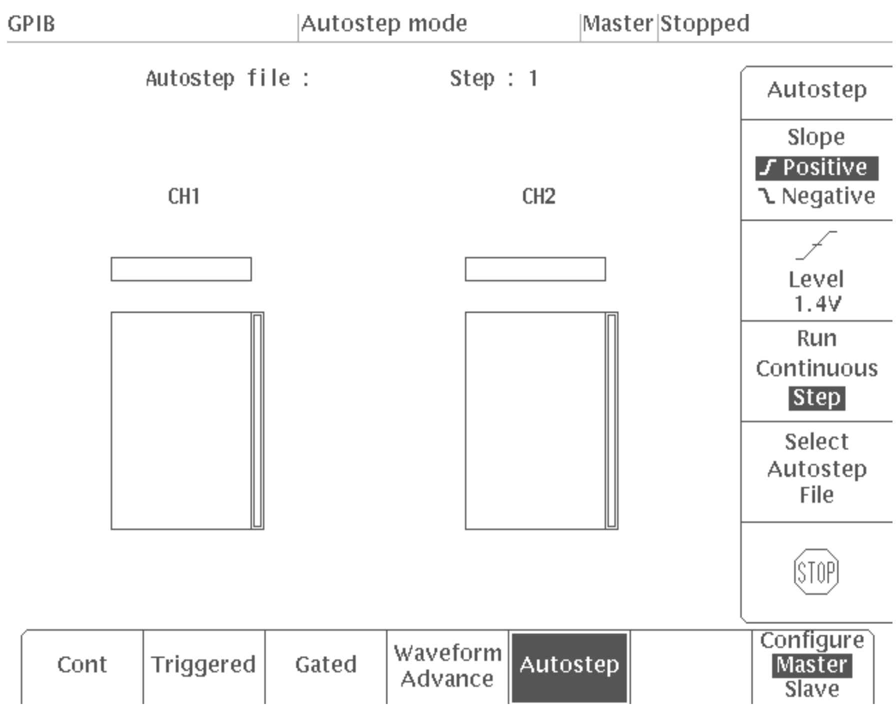


Figure 2-57: Menu Displayed When Autostep is Selected

☐ **Step 7:** Choose **Select Autostep File** from the side menu.

A list of autostep files will appear.

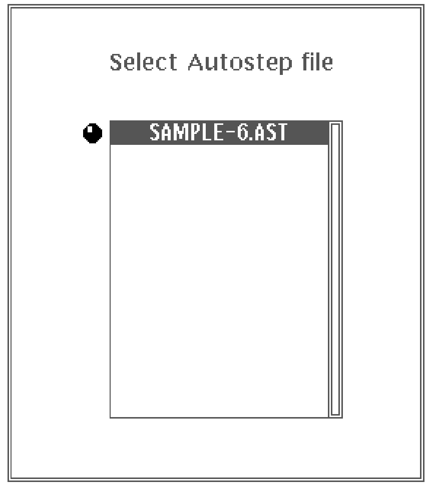
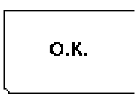


Figure 2-58: Autostep File List

SAMPLE–6.AST

☐ **Step 8:** Using the general purpose knob, select the **SAMPLE–6.AST** file.

In this example, there is only one file in the list, so it will already be selected.



☐ **Step 9:** Select **O.K.** from the sub-menu.

☐ **Step 10:** In the side menu, press the **Run** button and select **Continuous**.

☐ **Step 11:** Press the **CH1** and **CH2** On/Off buttons on the front panel to turn on waveform output.

☐ **Step 12:** Press the **MANUAL** button on the front panel.

Check on the oscilloscope to make sure CH1/CH2 waveform output advances one step each time the button is pressed.

This completes the Example 3.

Example 4: Loading and Saving Files

NOTE

When the instrument is switched off, the data in the internal memory is erased. Accordingly, it is necessary to copy any files that have been created or edited onto a floppy disk or into the instrument's internal non-volatile memory (NVRam).

In Example 4, you will load and save the file created in the previous operation.

LOAD menu

Used to enter files from a floppy disk or the instrument's internal NVRam.

SAVE menu

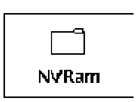
Used to save files that have been created or changed onto a floppy disk or the instrument's internal NVRam.

Saving Files

To save files into internal non-volatile memory (NVRam), perform the following steps:

☐ **Step 1:** Press the **LOAD/SAVE** button in the **MENU** column.

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Device** from the bottom menu.



☐ **Step 3:** Select **NVRam** from the side menu.

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Save** from the bottom menu.

Figure 2-59 shows the **SAVE** menu displayed.

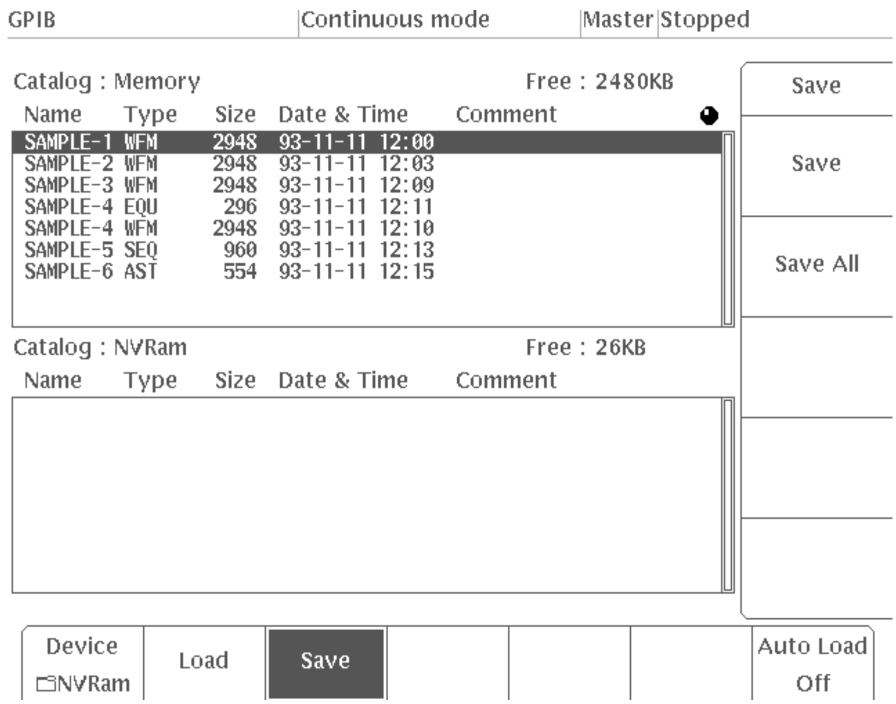


Figure 2-59: SAVE Menu

☐ **Step 5:** Select **Save All** from the side menu.

When **Save All** is selected, all the files in internal memory (listed in the upper screen) are saved to the NVRam. See Figure 2-60.

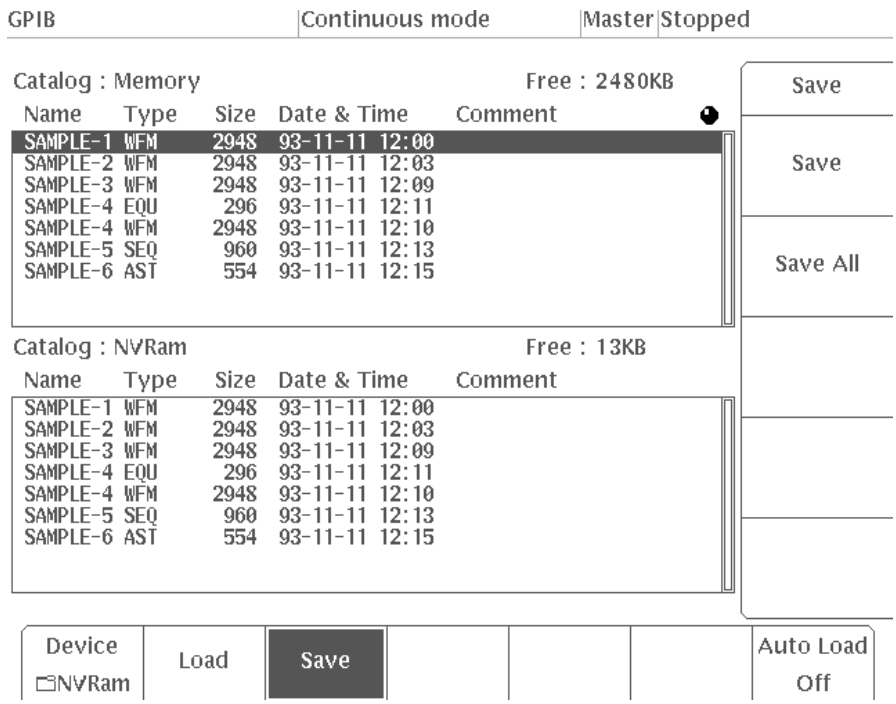
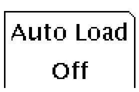


Figure 2-60: Files Saved in NVRam

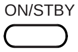
When **Save** is selected from the side menu, only the file displayed inverted in the internal memory list is saved to NVRam.



☐ **Step 6:** Check to make sure that **Auto Load** in the bottom menu is **Off**.

If it is not **Off**, select **Auto Load** from the bottom menu, then select **Off** from the side menu.

ON/STBY



☐ **Step 7:** Power the instrument off, then on again.

Loading Files

The following procedure loads files into internal memory.

LOAD/SAVE

☐ **Step 8:** Press the **LOAD**/**SAVE** button in the **MENU** column.

Make sure that there are no files in the internal memory file list in the upper screen (see Figure 2-61).

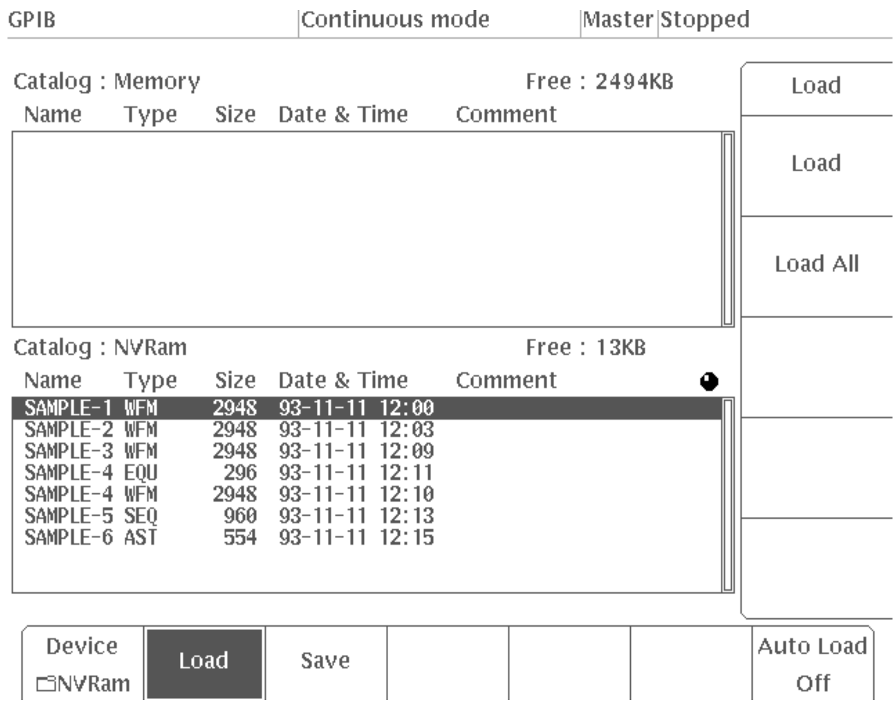


Figure 2-61: Internal Memory File List

Load

☐ **Step 9:** Select **Load** from the bottom menu.

Here **NVRam** is selected in the **Device** bottom menu.

Load All

☐ **Step 10:** Select **Load All** from the side menu.

When this item is selected, all the files in the NVRam (listed in the lower screen) are loaded into internal memory. See Figure 2-62.

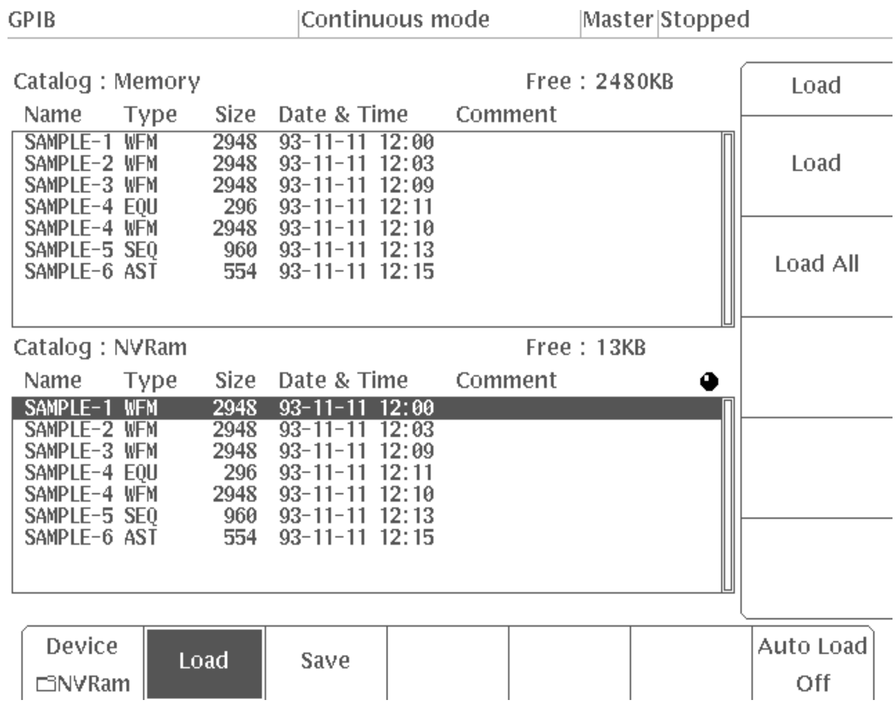


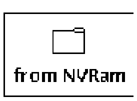
Figure 2-62: Files Loaded into Internal Memory

When you select **Load** from the side menu, the file displayed in inverted video in the NVRam list is loaded into internal memory.

Auto Load

Using the Auto Load process, it is possible to automatically load files from a designated device into the instrument's internal memory when the power to the instrument is turned on. You can do this with the following procedure:

☐ **Step 11:** Select **Auto Load** from the bottom menu.



☐ **Step 12:** Select **from NVRam** from the side menu.

☐ **Step 13:** Power the instrument off, then on again.

Check to make sure that the designated files were loaded from the NVRAM to the internal memory when the power to the instrument was turned on.

This completes the Example 4.

Also, note that files are loaded/saved in the same manner when the **Device** is set to **Disk**. For a floppy disk, hierarchical file structures can be created using directories. See the **UTILITY** menu Disk item in Section 4E, Reference, for directory creation instructions.

NOTE

*You must format new floppy disks. See the **UTILITY** menu Disk item in Section 4E, Reference, for formatting instructions.*

Example 5: Loading Waveforms From Other Instruments

This instrument can transfer waveforms via a GPIB cable from a digital storage oscilloscope (DSO), etc. See Page 4D-7 for a list of instruments from which waveforms can be transferred.

In Example 5, you will transfer waveforms from a Tektronix TDS series digital storage oscilloscope.

☐ **Step 1:** Connect the AWG2005 and the other instruments as shown in Figure 2-63.

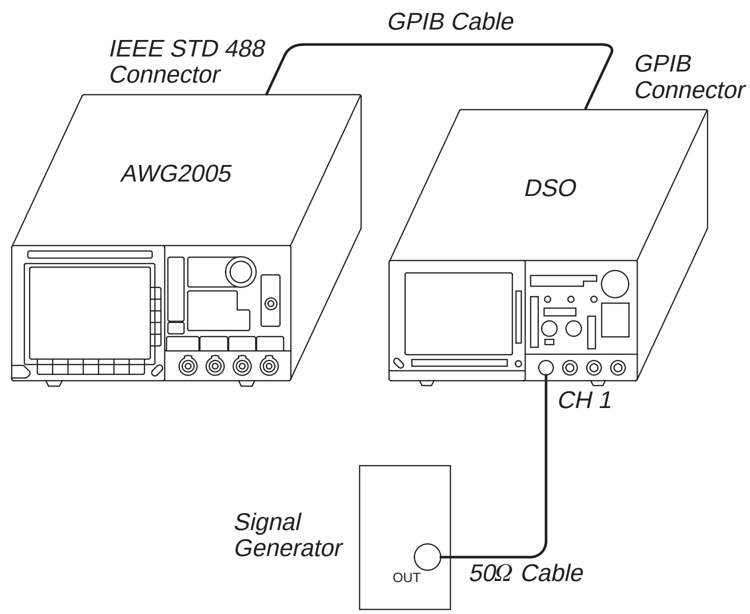


Figure 2-63: Connections for Example 5

☐ **Step 2:** Adjust the amplitude of the signals from the signal generator so that the waveform is displayed on the DSO screen with the amplitude and sweep speed shown in Figure 2-64.

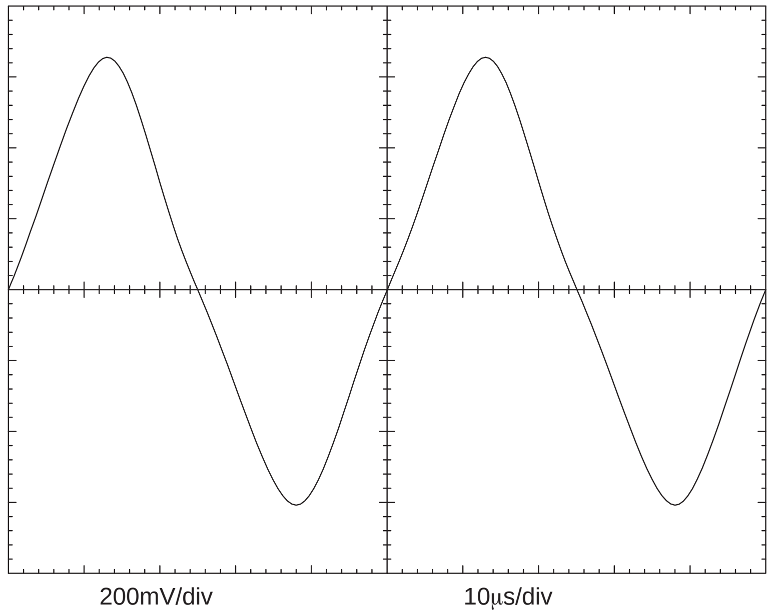
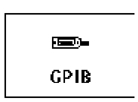


Figure 2-64: DSO Screen

☐ **Step 3:** Press the **MENU** column **LOAD**/**SAVE** button for the AWG2005.

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Device** from the bottom menu.



☐ **Step 5:** Select **GPIB** from the side menu.

At this point, if the remote port is not **GPIB** or the GPIB is not configured for waveform transferring, these settings must be changed. In such cases, the message shown in Figure 2-65 will appear:

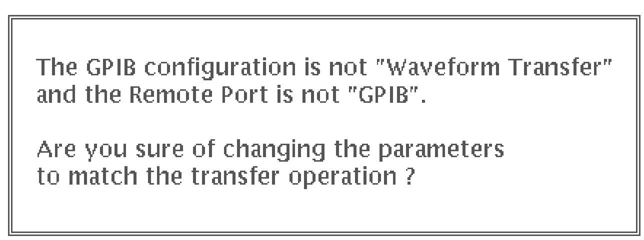


Figure 2-65: Confirmation Message (asking if it is O.K. to change the remote port and GPIB configuration settings)

To change the settings, select **O.K.** from the sub-menu.

Load

☐ **Step 6:** Select **Load** from the bottom menu.

Tek TDS CH1

☐ **Step 7:** Use the general purpose knob to select the name of the DSO instrument connected to the instrument and the transferring source from the **Name** column in the **GPIB Source** list. In this example, you should select ”**Tek TDS CH1.**” See Figure 2-66.

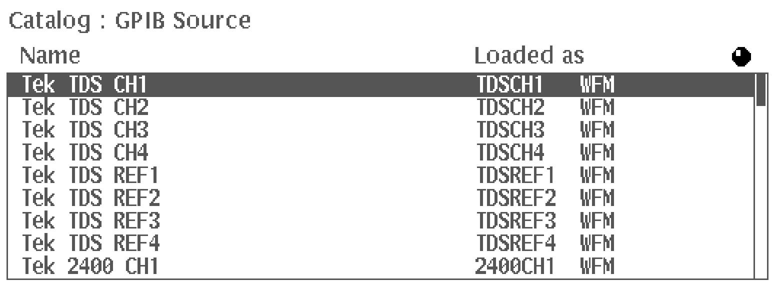


Figure 2-66: GPIB Source List

☐ **Step 8:** Set the DSO GPIB address to 1 and its communication mode to talk/listen.

NOTE

If the DSO GPIB debug mode is On, a time out error may occur. If so, switch off the debug mode.

Load

☐ **Step 9:** Select **Select Source Address** from the side menu.

☐ **Step 10:** Use the general purpose knob to set the address to 1 which is the same as the GPIB address of the load source DSO.

☐ **Step 11:** Select **Load** from the side menu.

When this is done, the waveform data will be transferred from the DSO instrument to the AWG2005. The transferred waveform data will be loaded into the internal memory of the AWG2005 under the name shown in the ”**Loaded as**” column of the GPIB Source list. In this example, the waveform file is named ”**TDSCH1.WFM.**” The clock, amplitude, and offset values obtained from the waveform preamble are loaded into the waveform file as setup data, together with the waveform data.

NOTE

If the amplitude, offset, or clock is outside the range that can be set for the AWG2005, it is replaced with the maximum or minimum value that can be set. If an attempt is made to transfer a waveform that exceeds any of these ranges, a message to that effect is displayed.

Load Without Preamble

If **Load Without Preamble** in the side menu is selected, the waveform preamble will not be loaded (in other words, only the waveform data will be loaded). In such cases, all parameters will be set to their default values.

This completes the Example 5.

Example 6: Using the Waveform Function Generator

The instrument is equipped with a waveform function generator for generating simple waveform functions. Pressing the **F.G** button on the front panel will change the mode to function generator (**FG**) mode and enable you to set various waveform parameters.

In Example 6, you will select a sine wave for CH1 and a pulse wave for CH2. Then you will set the parameters for each channel and output these waveforms.

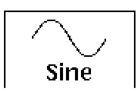
☐ **Step 1:** Press the front panel **F.G** (Function Generator) button. The **FG** mode menu is displayed.

CH1 Waveform Settings

First, as described below, you will define a 200 kHz, 5 V amplitude, 0 V offset sine wave on CH1.

☐ **Step 2:** Press the **Channel** button at the left end of the bottom menu and select **CH1**.

The **CH1** waveform is displayed on the top half of the screen enclosed in a frame.



☐ **Step 3:** Select **Sine** from the bottom menu.

Figure 2-67 shows a sine wave displayed within the CH1 frame on the screen.

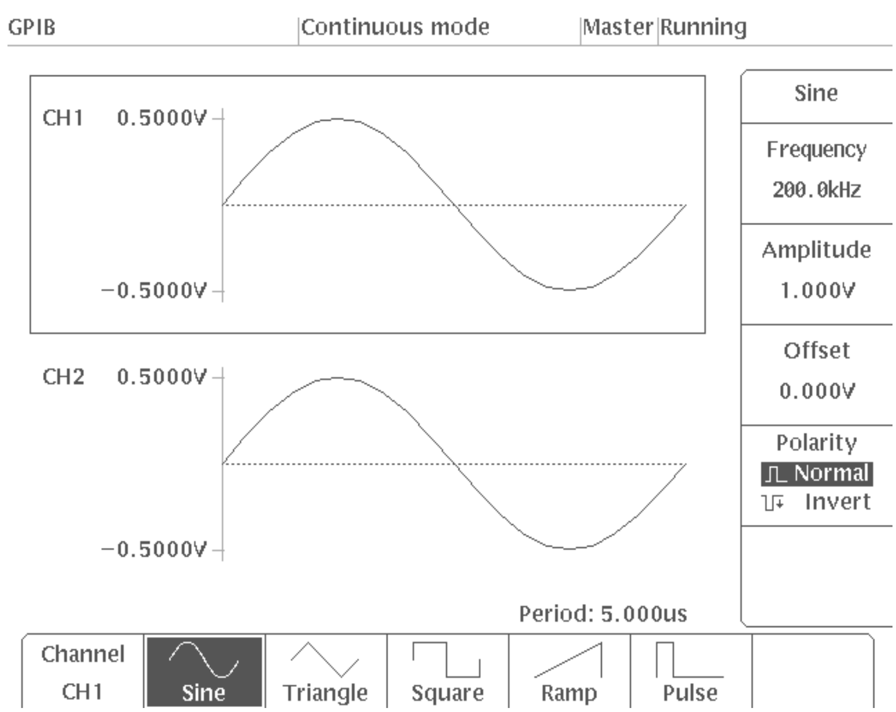


Figure 2-67: Screen When Sine Set for CH1

Set the frequency to 200 kHz.

Frequency

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Frequency** from the side menu.

2 0 0 KHz/ms/mV

☐ **Step 5:** Press **2**, **0**, **0**, and the **kHz**/**ms**/**mV** key in the Unit key to input the frequency with the numeric keys.

200.0KHz

☐ **Step 6:** To set the frequency with the general purpose knob, select the index digit for input with the front panel arrow buttons (←/→). Press the ← button to move the underscore to the left or press the → button to move the underscore to the right. Turn the general purpose knob with the index digit selected to get a **200.0 kHz** frequency.

In the same manner as the frequency, above, you will set the amplitude to 5 V and the offset to 0 V.

Amplitude

☐ **Step 7:** Select **Amplitude** from the side menu.

Use the general purpose knob or numeric keys to set an amplitude of **5.000 V**.

Offset

☐ **Step 8:** Select **Offset** from the side menu.

Turn the general purpose knob and check that the 0 V line (broken line) on the screen moves within a range ±5 V. Then set the offset to **0.000 V**. You could also input the offset value with the numeric keys.

Polarity
Normal
Invert

☐ **Step 9:** Check that when you press the **Polarity** button in the side menu, the polarity toggles between **Normal** and **Invert** and the polarity of the sine wave on the screen is reversed. Then set the polarity to **Normal**.

Figure 2-68 shows the screen when the output parameters are set for a sine wave on CH1.

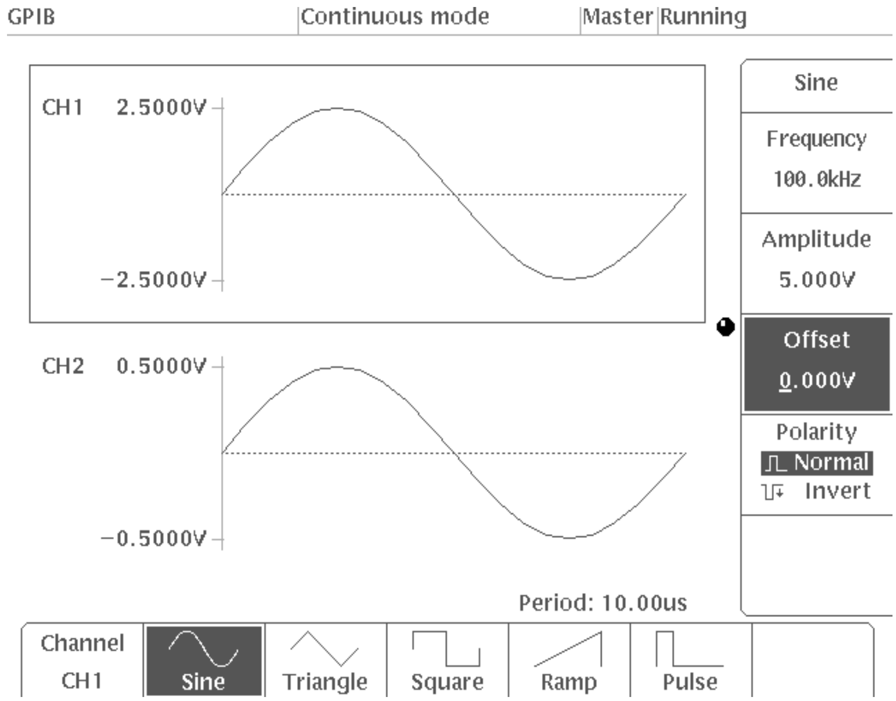


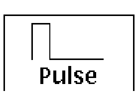
Figure 2-68: CH1 Output Parameter Setting Display

CH2 Waveform Setting

You will define a pulse wave on CH2 with an amplitude of 3 V, an offset of 0 V, and a duty cycle of 30%.

☐ **Step 10:** Press the **Channel** button in the bottom menu and select **CH2**.

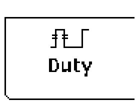
The bottom half of the screen is enclosed in a frame to indicate channel selection.



☐ **Step 11:** Select **Pulse** from the bottom menu.

A pulse wave is displayed within the **CH2** frame on the screen.

☐ **Step 12:** Using the method given in Steps 7 through 9, give the pulse wave an amplitude of 3 V, an offset of 0 V and a polarity of **Normal**.



☐ **Step 13:** Select **Duty** from the side menu.

Use the general purpose knob or numeric keys to set the duty to 30%.

Figure 2-69 shows the screen for setting the output parameters for the CH2 pulse waveform.

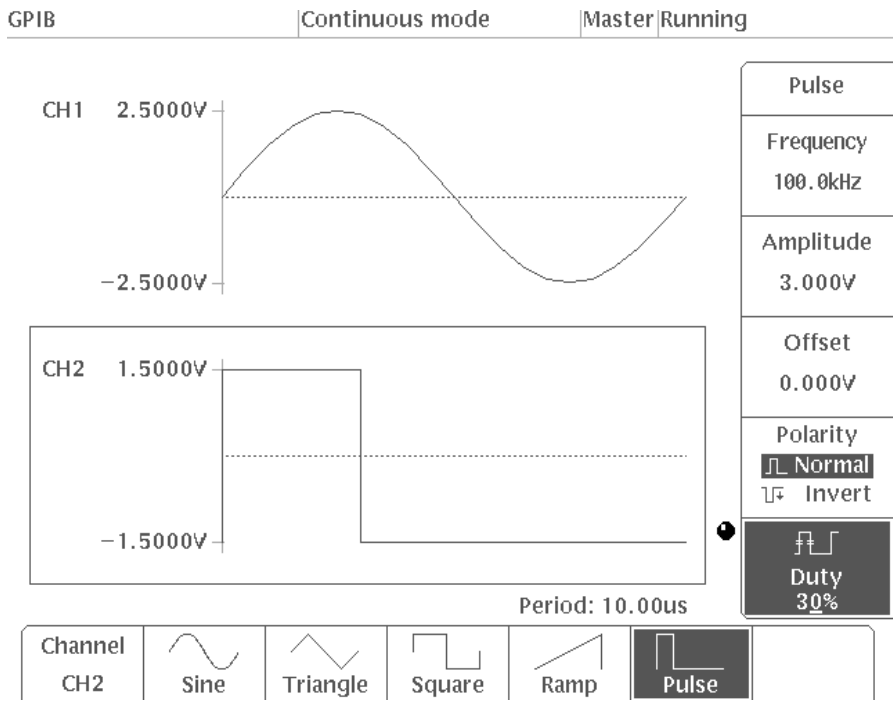


Figure 2-69: CH2 Output Parameter Setting Display

This completes the sine and pulse wave output parameter setting. Now you will check the actual waveform on the oscilloscope screen.

Waveform Output

Connect the AWG2005 to an oscilloscope with 50 Ω cables and 50 Ω terminations as shown in Figure 2-70. The waveform output for this instrument is calibrated for a 50 Ω load.

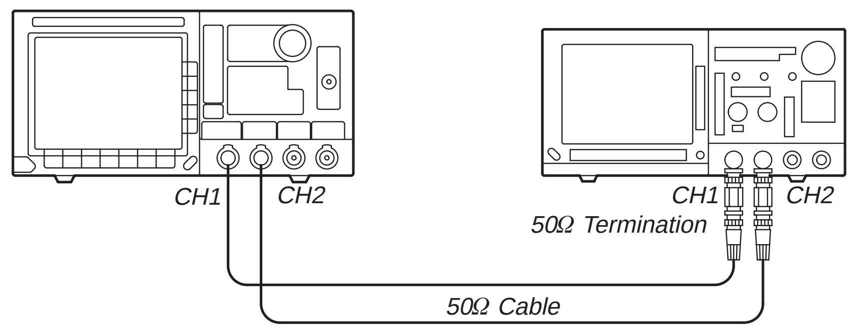


Figure 2-70: Connections for Example 6

☐ **Step 14:** Press the front panel **CH1**/**CH2** On/Off buttons and switch both channels on. The On/Off indicators should light up. In this operation, the waveform outputs continuously from the **CH1** and **CH2** output connectors. Set the oscilloscope appropriately to display the waveform on the oscilloscope screen.

This completes the Example 6.

Functional Operation Summary

Introduction

This summary presents functional block diagrams, explains each block, and gives some operating precautions which are of practical value in understanding the fundamental operating concepts of the AWG2005.

Block Diagram

Figure 3-1 shows a block diagram of the AWG2005. In subsequent sections, we will discuss each block in detail.

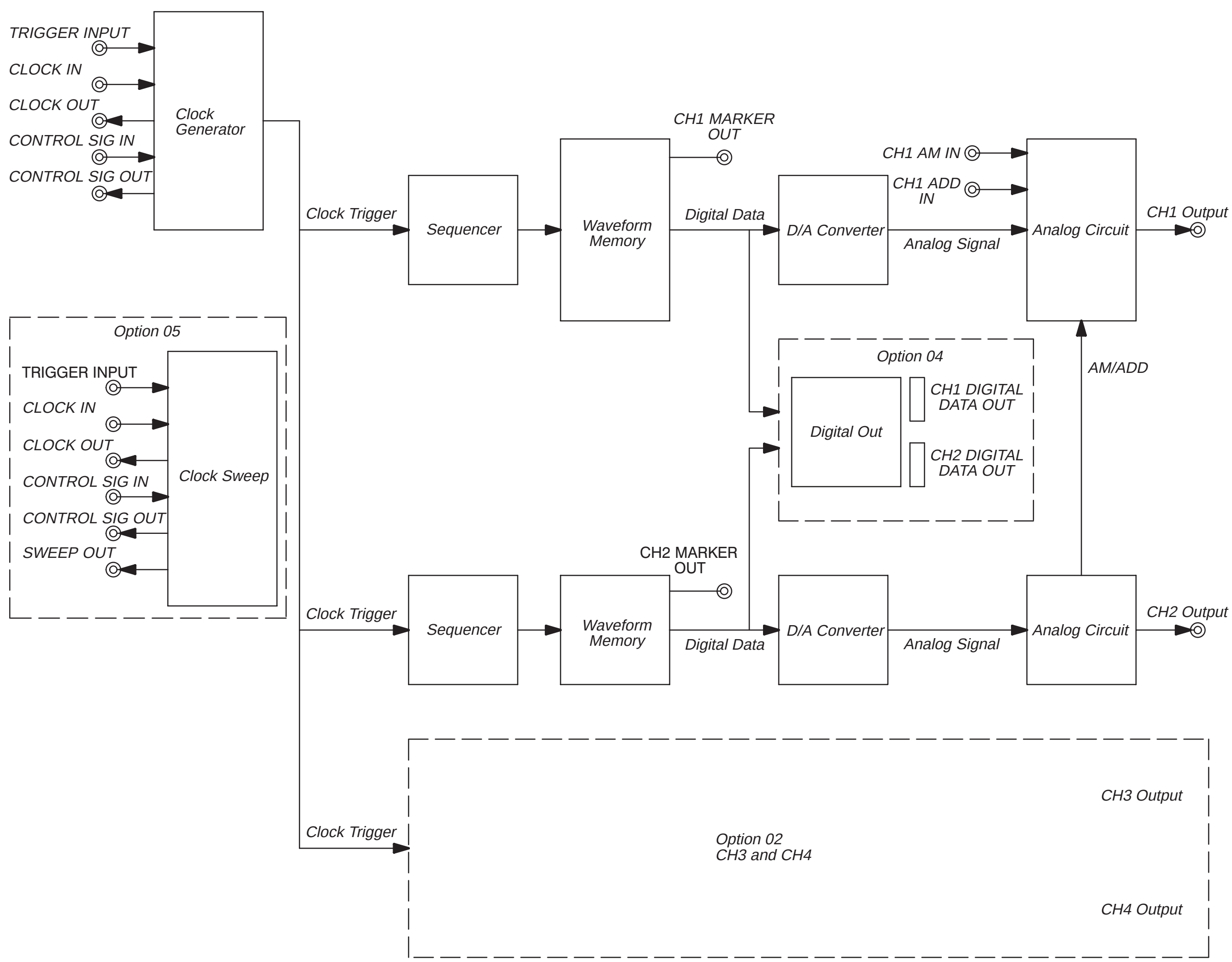


Figure 3-1: Block Diagram

Clock Generator

Figure 3-2 shows a block diagram of the clock generator.

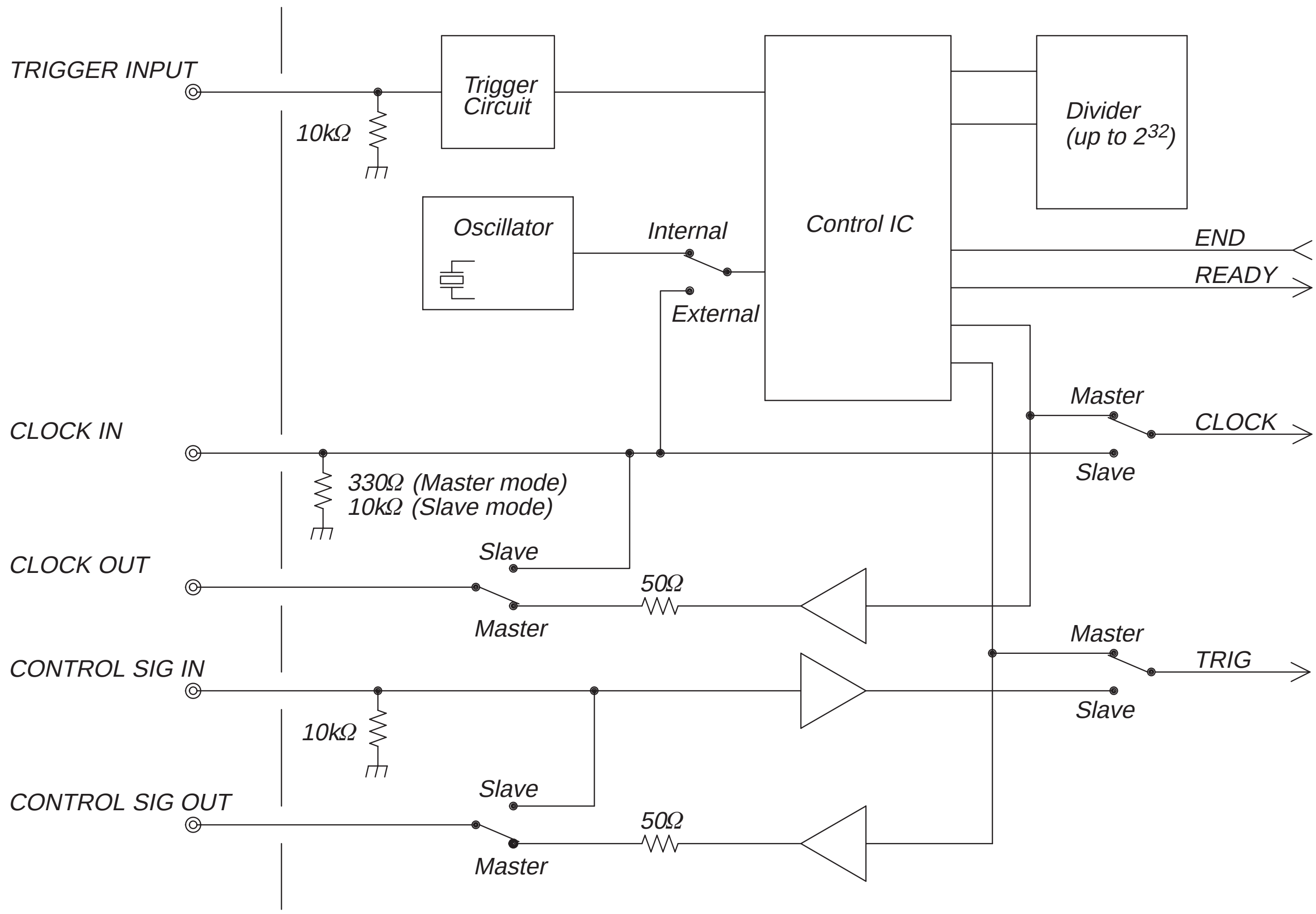


Figure 3-2: Clock Generator

This block changes the clock source, controls the clock using the trigger and generates the control signals used when the AWG2005 is connected in parallel with other instruments.

The oscillator for internal clock use is normally a PLL (phase lock loop) type. It uses a liquid crystal oscillator that provides a stable 12.8MHz signal. The oscillator oscillates between 10 and 20 MHz. When frequencies below 10MHz are required, the divider is used to divide the signal.

The internal operation will differ depending on which mode is set, so we will discuss each mode briefly.

When the instrument is used by itself, it should be set to **Master** mode. When the mode is set to **Master**, the following operations are possible:

CLOCK

This allows you to choose whether the clock source is internal or external. When **Internal** is selected, it is possible to set the frequency. When **External** has been selected, the signal connected to the **CLOCK IN** connector on the rear panel will be used as the clock. The clock signal is output from the **CLOCK OUT** connector while the waveform is being output.

Operations in Trigger Mode

Depending on which trigger mode is set, the following operations are possible:

Cont

The clock signal is sent to the sequencer continuously regardless of whether or not there is a trigger signal.

Triggered

A clock signal is sent to the sequencer when an external trigger signal is received from the **TRIGGER INPUT** connector on the front panel, or when a trigger signal is sent by pressing the **MANUAL** key on the front panel, or when a trigger command is received from the GPIB interface. When this happens, a control signal is generated for external unit control.

Gated

A clock signal is sent continuously to the sequencer while the gate signal (either the external gate signal from the **TRIGGER INPUT** connector on the front panel or the signal sent when the **MANUAL** key on the front panel is pressed) is TRUE. Even after the waveform ends, the waveform will be repeated again from the beginning as long as the gate signal is TRUE.

When two or more instruments are connected in parallel, set one to **Master**, and the others to **Slave**.

Instruments are connected together with BNC cables, as shown in Figure 3-3. In order to make sure that the same clock signal is sent to all instruments, the master **CLOCK OUT** is connected to the slave **CLOCK IN** and the master **CONTROL SIG OUT** is connected to the slave **CONTROL SIG IN** so the trigger signal is transmitted to the slave instrument. When there is more than one slave instrument, the **CLOCK OUT** and **CONTROL SIG OUT** from the master instrument are connected to the **CLOCK IN** and **CONTROL SIG IN**, respectively, of all slave instrument. 50 Ω terminators are connected to the **CLOCK OUT** and **CONTROL SIGNAL OUT** connectors on the last slave instrument in the chain, in order to prevent signals from being reflected back up the cable.

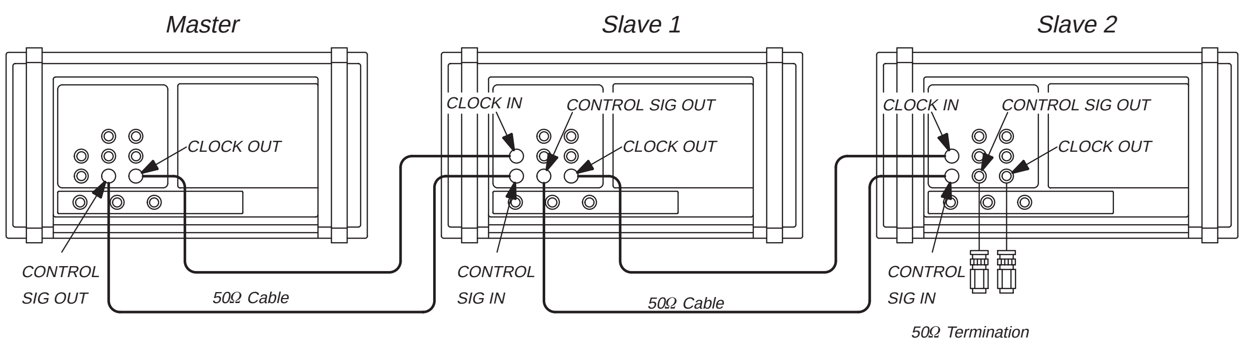


Figure 3-3: Connecting Three AWG2005 Instruments in Parallel

When this is done, the instruments designated as slave units are used for the following operations:

CLOCK

The clock source is fixed at **External**, and so the clock signal input to the **CLOCK IN** connector is sent to the sequencer. The clock signal is also output to the **CLOCK OUT** connector so it can be used by the other slave instrument. 50 Ω terminators are connected to the **CLOCK OUT** connector on the last slave instrument in the chain, in order to prevent signals from being reflected back up the cable, as shown in Figure 3-3.

CONTROL

The **CONTROL SIG OUT** connector is connected to the **CONTROL SIG IN** connector and the control signal is entered via this pathway. This signal is used by the slave instrument as a trigger signal. At the same time, it is also output as is to the other slave instrument from the **CONTROL SIG OUT** connector. 50 Ω terminators are connected to the **CONTROL SIGNAL OUT** connector of the last slave instrument in the chain, in order to prevent signals from being reflected back up the cable, as shown in Figure 3-3. This control signal is used to control the slave instrument. In **Slave** mode, the **TRIGGER INPUT** connector on the front panel is not operational.

The slave instrument are usually set to either ”**Cont**” or ”**Triggered**.” If other modes are selected, the slave instrument may operate differently from the master instrument. The slave instrument can only output waveforms while the clock signal is output from the master instrument, so the length of the waveform on the master instrument should be set to the longest possible value.

NOTE

The length of (i.e., number of points in) the waveform need not necessarily be the same; however, you should be aware that the operation may be different from normal if the length of the waveform differs.

The master instrument can be set up only with Triggered, Gated, Waveform Advance or Autostep. It can’t be set up Cont mode.

Figure 3-4 shows the output timing relationship among the waveform and **MARKER** signal on the master instrument side, and the waveform on the slave instrument side when two instrument of AWG2005 are connected in parallel and a trigger signal is applied from the outside.

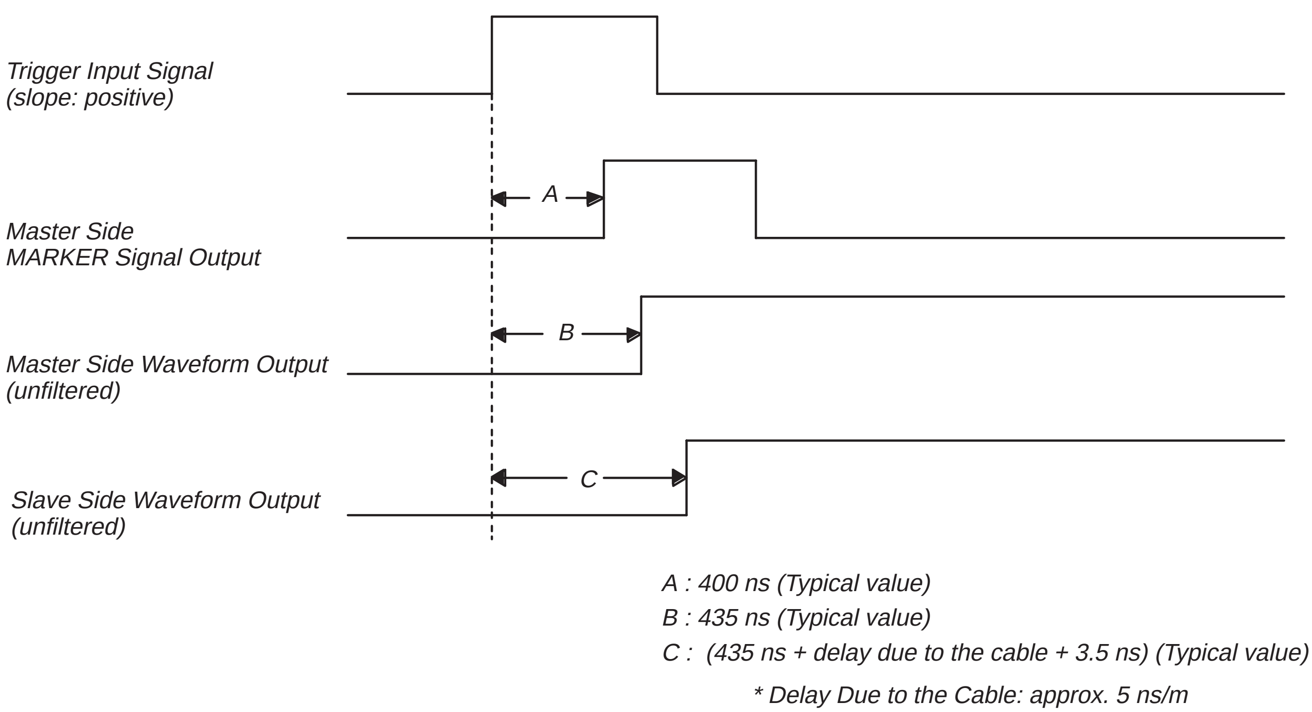


Figure 3-4: Waveform Timing

Clock Generator (Option 05: Clock Sweep)

Figure 3-5 shows a block diagram of the clock generator (when Option 05 ”Clock Sweep” is installed). Dotted lines indicate the circuits that are identical with those found on standard models.

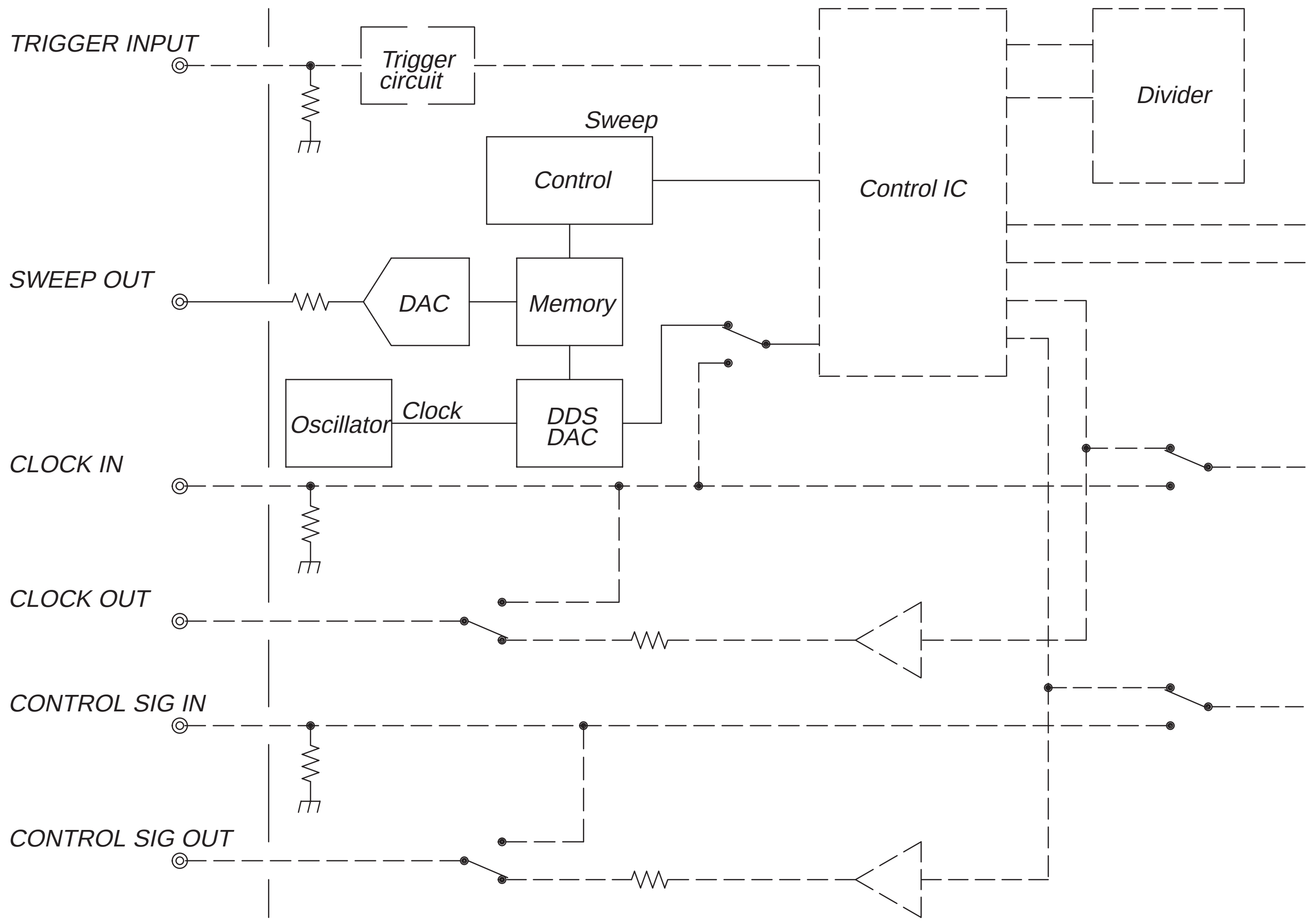


Figure 3-5: Block Diagram of the Clock Generator (Option 05: Clock Sweep)

The internal generator enters DDS (direct digital synthesis) mode and enables clock sweep. Data for the frequency needed for clock sweep is stored in the DDS memory and the oscillation frequency varies in accordance with this data.

When the sweep mode is set to **Triggered**, the trigger signal is used for sweep control and not for clock control. In such cases, the trigger is set to **Cont**.

A voltage proportional to the frequency is output from the **SWEEP OUT** connector on the rear panel.

Apart from the internal oscillator, this circuit is basically the same as the normal clock generator circuit.

Sequence, Waveform Memory and D/A Converter

Figure 3-6 shows a block diagram of the sequence, waveform memory and D/A converter.

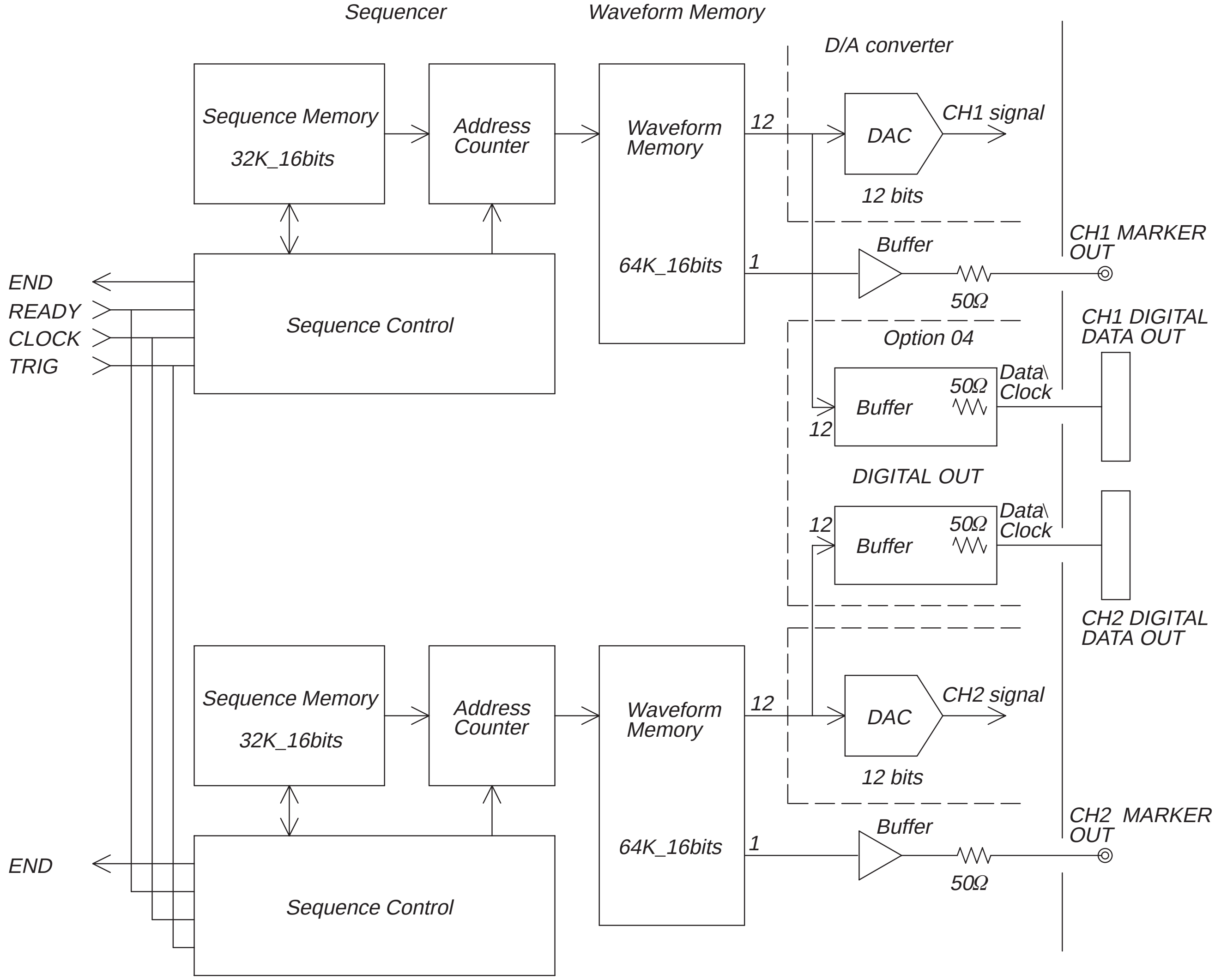


Figure 3-6: Block Diagram of the Sequence, Waveform Memory and D/A Converter

Figure 3-6 shows a block diagram of the sequence, waveform memory, D/A converter and **DIGITAL DATA OUT** (option 04). The operation is the same for both Channel 1 and Channel 2, so this manual will discuss only Channel 1 operation.

Sequence

The sequence memory has a capacity of 32 K words, with each word composed of 16 bits. When a file has been selected with **Waveform Sequence** in the **SETUP** menu, data items such as the address of the waveform written to the waveform memory, the number of loops for the waveform or sequence, and the operation mode are written to the sequence memory.

Clock and trigger signals from the clock generator are sent to the sequence control circuit. This circuit reads out the contents of the sequence memory, loads the contents to the required counter, and controls the address counter of the waveform memory. It can also record (nest) sequences within sequences.

Table 3-1 shows an example of a sequence file that contains another sequence.

Table 3-1: Sample Sequence Files

Sequence File (EXAMPLE.SEQ)

File Name	Repetition Count
– – – –	– – – –
AAA.WFM	3
XXX.SEQ	5
BBB.WFM	16
– – – –	– – – –

Configuration of XXX.SEQ

File Name	Repetition Count
CCC.WFM	2
DDD.WFM	1
EEE.WFM	10

When the mode has been set to **Waveform Advance**, the contents of the sequence memory are overwritten and the operation is in keeping with this mode.

Waveform Memory

The waveform memory has a capacity of 64 K words, with each word composed of 16 bits. When a file has been selected with the **Waveform Sequence** item in the **SETUP** menu, the marker data and waveform data that are actually output are stored in this memory. The maximum number of waveforms that can be written is 256.

Waveform data consists of 12 bits, while marker data consists of 1 bit. The waveform data is sent to the DAC (digital/analog converter), while the marker data passes through both the CMOS buffer and a resistance of 50 Ω and is finally output from the **MARKER OUT** connector on the rear panel. During normal use, the circuit is terminated in series by this 50 Ω resistance, so termination is not required on the receiving end. When the waveform is distorted by the cable or the receiving circuit, however, it should be terminated with 50 Ω resistance. When this is done, the output voltage will be cut in half.

D/A Converter

This is used to convert digital waveform data to an analog signal. It has a resolution of 12 bits.

Data Length

Generally, outputting high precision (high S/N ratio) waveforms requires an adequate number of data points.

For example, when outputting triangular waveforms, about 8000 points are needed to minimize the jaggedness of the waveform. That is why the AWG2005 uses a DAC with a resolution of about 4000 (12 bits) for the vertical amplitude.

Figure 3-7 shows the relationship between the triangular wave resolution and the number of data points.

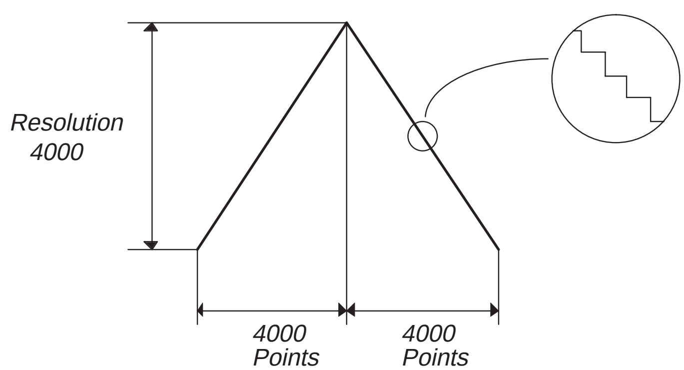


Figure 3-7: Relationship Between Triangular Wave Resolution and Number of Data Points

For a triangular wave, extra waveform points beyond 8000 are meaningless. This applies not only to triangular waves but to smooth waveforms, in general.

In normal use, this level of precision is rarely required. When it is not, the number of waveform points may be reduced. In the equation editor and the waveform editor, the default value for the number of waveform points is 1000.

When a sine wave is created with 1000 points, the size of this fold back component is −60 dB, which should be no problem in ordinary use.

When making a waveform with less than 1000 points, because you are using the maximum clock frequency, use a filter. In this case, observe the following points.

- According to sampling theory, if the ideal filter is used, with a mere two points of data for the highest frequency component the waveform has, the waveform can be reproduced. In order to eleiminate overshoot and ringing, the filters in the AWG2005 have Bessel characteristics with relatively gentle shoulder characteristics, That is why more points are required.
- The amount of data required depends on the waveform shape, the S/N ratio required, the filter cutoff frequency, and other such factors. Therefore, output the waveform on the oscilloscope, spectrum analyzer, or the like, and check that the waveform is what you need.
- Care is particularly necessary in creating waveforms with the equation editor.

Digital Data Output (Option 04)

The data and clock signal sent to the DAC pass unchanged through the buffer and are output from the connector on the rear panel. As in the case of the marker signal, a resistance of 50 Ω has been inserted in series, so normally there is no need for termination on the receiving end.

Analog Circuit

Figure 3-8 shows a block diagram of the analog circuit.

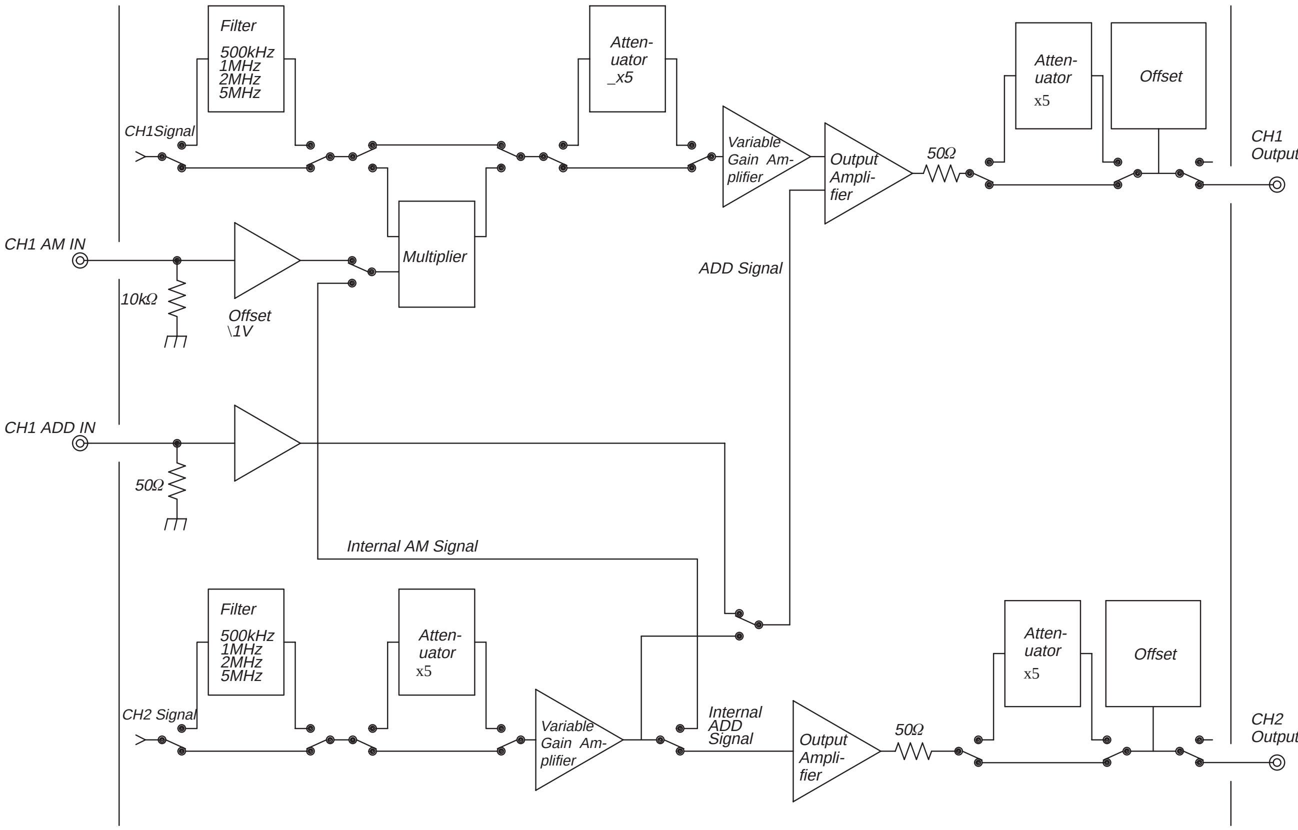


Figure 3-8: Block Diagram of the Analog Circuit

Filter

This circuit contains the four types of low pass filters shown in Table 3-2. Each one has moderate shoulder characteristics to prevent overshooting and ringing. These filters can be used to remove unnecessary frequency elements from the waveform itself or reduce the number of elements through reflection when the waveform is made up of a limited number of points.

Table 3-2: Cutoff Frequencies and Delays

Cutoff Frequency	Delay
500kHz	800ns
1MHz	340ns
2MHz	190ns
5MHz	74ns

Rising time is around 35ns when a filter is not needed. The delay times shown in Table 3-2 are all standard values.

Multiplier

When external input has been selected, the signal connected to the **CH1 AM IN** connector on the rear panel can be used to provide AM modulation to the CH1 signal. An offset of 1V is applied by the input amplifier, so the output in response to the input signal is like that shown in the table below; 100% modulation is obtained with an input of ±1V. Table 3-3 shows the signals that are output in response to various external signals.

Table 3-3: Output Signals for External Signals

External Signal	Output Signal (CH1)
1V	100% of set value
0V	50% of set value
–1V	0%

If a signal greater than ^1V is entered, the waveform may be distorted.

Figure 3-9 shows 100% modulation.

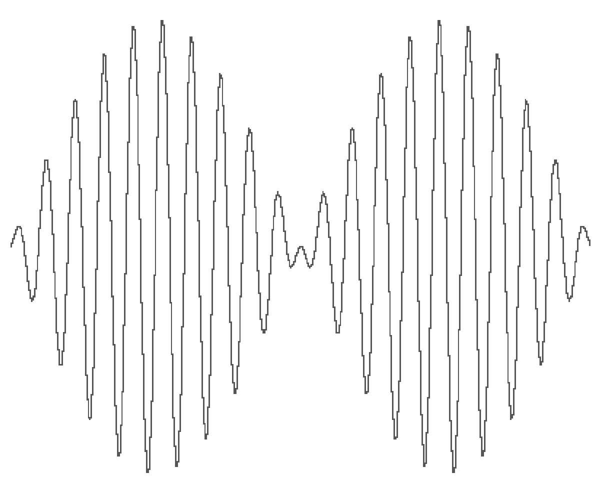


Figure 3-9: 100% Amplitude Modulation

When CH2 is selected as the modulation signal, no particular offset is applied, unlike when external input is selected (as described above). Table 3-4 shows the CH1 signal output in response to the amplitude of the CH2 signal.

Table 3-4: CH1 Signal Output for CH2 Signal Amplitude

CH2 Signal	Output Signal (CH1)
5V	100% of set value
0V	0%
−5V	−100% of set value (signal is inverted)

Variable Gain Amplifier/Attenuator

The amplitude of the waveform output is determined through combination with the attenuator.

Output Amplifier

This amplifies the signal to the designated output, using an amplifier with approximately 10 times the gain.

When **Ext Add** has been selected, the external signal is added to the CH1 signal at this stage.

When **Add** is selected, the CH2 signal is added to the Ch1 signal at this stage.

NOTE

*Whether set to **Ext Add** or **Add**, the output voltage should not exceed 10Vp-p, as this will result in waveform distortion.*

Offset

This is the current source used to determine the offset for the waveform output. Current of up to 200mA can be output. With termination of 50 Ω, an offset of up to ±5V is applied; with no termination, an offset of up to ±10V is applied.

Reference

Introduction

Sections 4A through 4F will describe in detail the functions contained in each of the menus.

Section 4A **EDIT** Menu
Section 4B **SETUP** Menu
Section 4C **MODE** Menu
Section 4D **LOAD**/**SAVE** Menu
Section 4E **UTILITY** Menu
Section 4F **FG** Menu

Each section will describe menu functions in the following order:

- **Menu Structure**

  Each menu will be shown in a diagram listing the menu items from left to right, with the highest menu level on the left and the lowest menu level on the right. There are three types of menus: the bottom menu, the side menu and the sub-menus. An ellipsis (...) in a side menu item indicates that it has a sub-menu. If a menu has many levels, there will be a ”Description” section at the beginning which shows the detailed menu configurations for that function.

- **Menu Functions**

  This is a list showing the menu functions and the number of the page on which you can find a description of that function.

- **CRT Display**

  This shows a typical screen for that menu and a brief explanation.

- **Description**

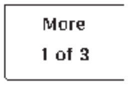
  This section gives a detailed explanation of the functions in each menu. It includes examples with step-by-step instructions showing how the function is used. Menu items in the text are shown in a bold typeface.

Menu Items Available With Each Editing Function

Menu items for the bottom and side/sub-menus are shown with the words enclosed as shown below to make them easy to distinguish from one another.

Bottom Menu *Side Menu or Sub-Menu*

More

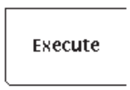


When the side menu consists of two or more pages, this item is used to display the next page. In the example shown at left, the side menu being displayed consists of three pages and the first page is currently being displayed.

Go Back

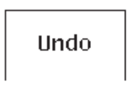
This item is displayed when you select a side menu item that has a sub-menu. It allows you to escape from the sub-menu and return to the side menu level. (The **CLEAR MENU** bezel button can also be used for this purpose.)

Execute



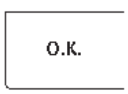
Select this button to execute the currently selected menu function. For example, in the **Draw...** menu, pressing this button will cause the waveform to be drawn; in the **Shift...** menu, it will cause the waveform to move.

Undo



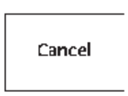
Select this button to cancel the most previous operation – for example, **Execute,** calculations in the **Math...** sub-menu, or **Marker** settings, or **Cut**, **Paste**, **Insert** or other operation. Pressing **Undo** again will cancel the Undo operation and restore the waveform to the status before **Undo** was pressed.

O.K.



Select this button to confirm that you really want to perform an operation, or to respond to a query when a popup menu has appeared. A warning message will appear when it is necessary to confirm an operation in this manner. If you are sure you want to execute the operation, press this **O.K.** button.

Cancel



This button is usually displayed along with the **O.K.** button. Select it when you want to cancel an operation. (You may also use the **CLEAR MENU** bezel button for this purpose.)

Continue

This item appears in the side menu when a panel containing an error message appears on the screen, or when the **Show Catalog Entry** or **Show Overview** command is used to display a waveform in graphic form. Pressing this button causes the panel to disappear. (You may also use the **CLEAR MENU** bezel button for this purpose.)

EDIT Menu

General Description

To use the AWG2005 to output arbitrary waveforms, you must first create a file for the waveform to be output. There are four file types, each created by a different editor. Files created in this manner will have an extension after the file name that identifies what type of file they are.

Editor	File	Extension
Waveform Editor	Waveform file	**.WFM**
Equation Editor	Equation file	**.EQU**
Sequence Editor	Sequence file	**.SEQ**
Autostep Editor	Autostep file	**.AST**

NOTE

*Instruments with Option 05 installed have a clock sweep editor to permit creating the clock sweep file (extension **.CLK**). This file provides linear, log and arbitrary sweep output for clock frequencies.*

When option 09 is installed, there are two additional functions: a high-speed convolution function and an FFT editor. These allow you to perform convolution calculations and edit the waveform file within the frequency range.

Pressing the **EDIT** button in the **MENU** causes the initial menu to be displayed. When you want to edit an existing file or create a new file, you select the appropriate editor from this initial menu. In this section, we will briefly describe these editors.

Waveform Editor

This editor is used to create and edit waveform files. The waveform data display formats are graphic, table, and timing.

Equation Editor

This editor is used to create and edit equation files. Equation file data takes the form of mathematical equations. An equation file is compiled to create a waveform file and to output the waveform.

Sequence Editor

This editor is used to create and edit sequence files. Sequence files assemble a number of waveforms or sequence files in order.

Autostep Editor

This editor is used to create and edit autostep files. Autostep files are created by programming waveforms or sequence files for each channel. Each time a trigger is received, the waveform moves on to the next step in this program. Since the output parameters set for each waveform or sequence file are part of the autostep file, the output parameters can change for each waveform.

Initial Menu

To create or edit waveform files, press the **EDIT** button of the **MENU** column to display the initial menu. Figure 4A-1 shows the structure of the initial **EDIT** menu.

Initial Menu Structure

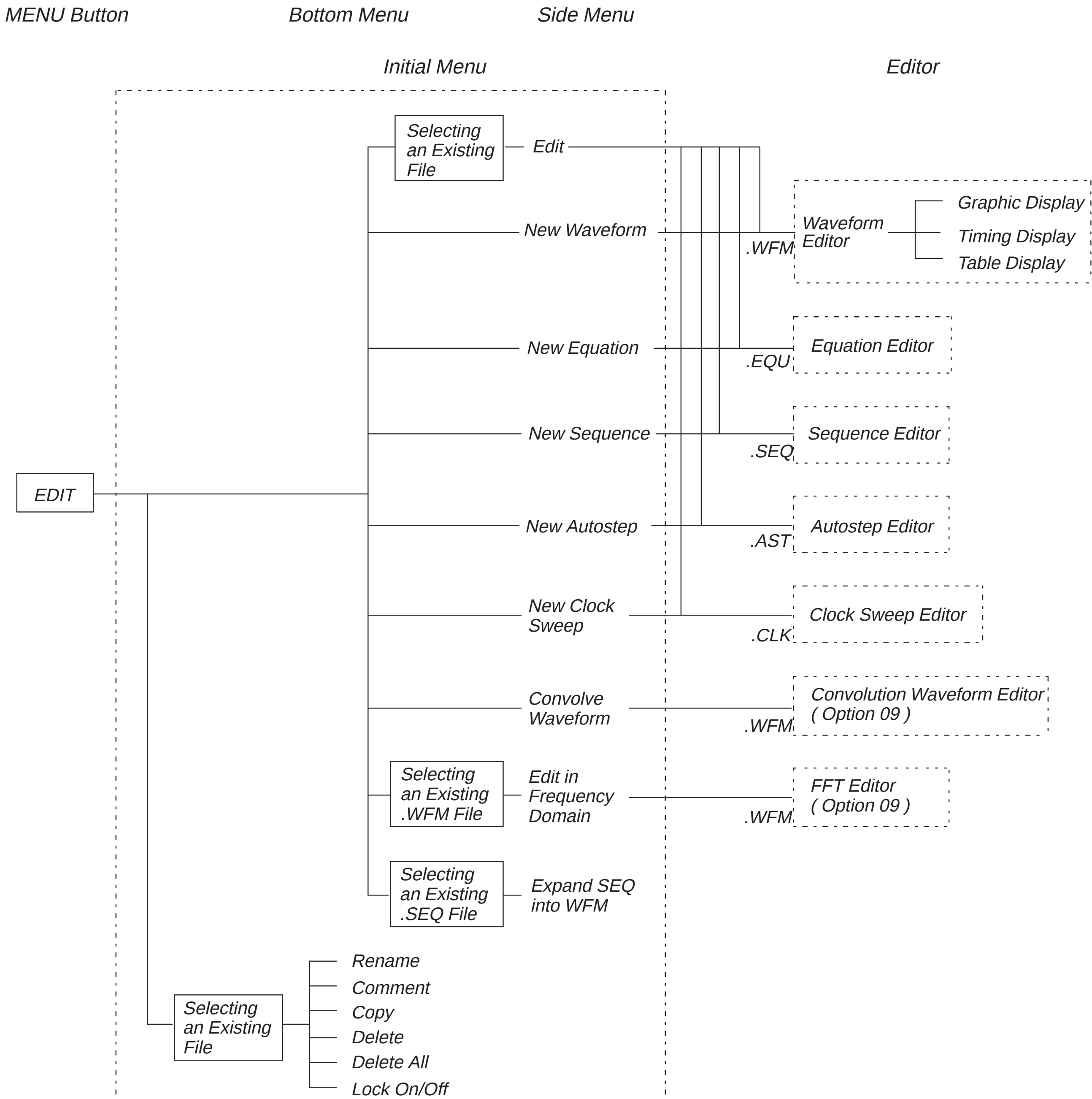


Figure 4A-1: Initial EDIT Menu Structure

Menu Functions

The following list shows the functions available for each menu item and the page on which you can find a description of that function.

Table 4A-1: Menu Functions

Menu	Function	Page
Edit	Editing an existing file	4A-7
New Waveform	Creating a new file (.WFM)	4A-6
	Waveform editor	4A-13
	Graphic display	4A-22, 4A-28
	Timing display	4A-28, 4A-94
	Table display	4A-28, 4A-127
New Equation	Creating a new file (.EQU)	4A-6
	Equation editor	4A-135
New Sequence	Creating a new file (.SEQ)	4A-6
	Sequence editor	4A-158
New Autostep	Creating a new file (.AST)	4A-6
	Autostep editor	4A-169
New Clock Sweep	Creating a new file (.CLK) (Option 05)	4A-6
	Clock sweep editor	4A-187
Expand SEQ into WFM	Expanding a sequence file into a waveform file	4A-11
Convolve Waveform	Convolution waveform editor (Option 09)	4A-204
Edit in Frequency Domain	FFT editor (Option 09)	4A-210
Rename	Renaming a file	4A-7
Comment	Comment input	4A-9
Copy	Copying a file	4A-9
Delete	Deleting a file	4A-9
Delete All	Deleting a file	4A-9
Lock On/Off	Locking and unlocking files	4A-10

CRT Display

Figure 4A-2 shows the initial menu of the **EDIT**. A description for each callout follows.

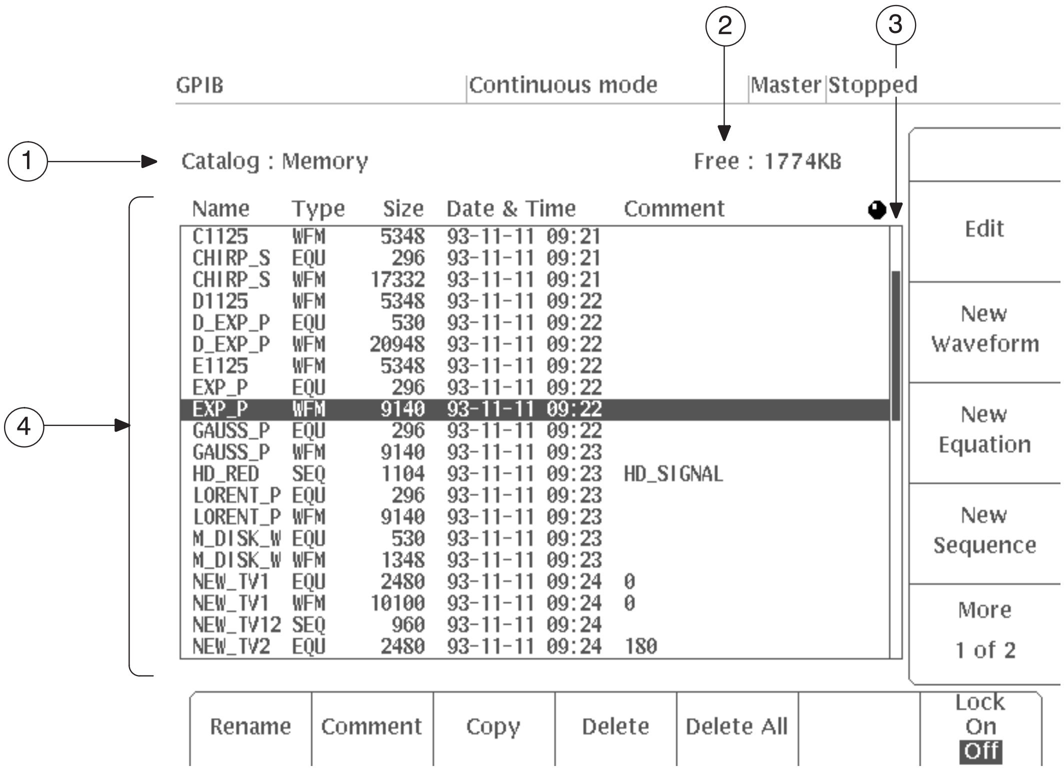


Figure 4A-2: Display of the Initial Menu

(1) Catalog:Memory

The display list shows the files in internal memory.

(2) Free Memory

Available internal memory is indicated.

(3) Scroll Indicator

The file area of memory displayed on the screen is indicated by an inverted display area in the scroll indicator. Up to 20 files can be displayed on the screen. To display more files, scroll the screen up or down by turning the general purpose knob.

(4) File List

This list displays the files in the internal memory of the instrument. The display gives the following information about the file: **Name**, **Type**, **Size**, **Date & Time** and **Comment**. Select a file by turning the general purpose knob. The selected file will appear inverted on the display.

Name – Files saved in internal memory are displayed in this column.

Type – Name extensions of each file are displayed in this column. Name extensions are **WFM**, **EQU**, **SEQ**, and **AST**. The file is identified by its name extension for each editor.

Size – The memory occupied by each file is indicated in bytes.

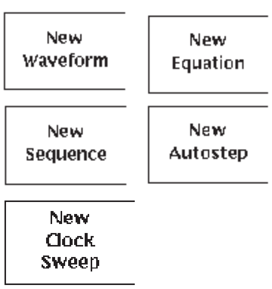
Date & Time – The date and time the file was saved in the internal memory is displayed in this column.

Comment – Any comment defined for the file is displayed.

Creating or Editing a File

Select one of the items from the side menus in the initial menu to create a new file (**New Waveform**, **New Equation**, **New Sequence**, or **New Autostep**) or to edit an existing file (**Edit**).In the instruments with Option 05 installed, **New Clock Sweep** is added in the side menu. Use the item to permit creating the clock sweep file.

Creating a New File



When a **New** command (**New Waveform**, **New Equation**, **New Sequence**, **New Autostep** or **New Clock Sweep**) is selected, a new file will be created by the appropriate editor.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Press the **EDIT** button in the **MENU** column to display the initial menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Select one of the following editors in the side menu, depending on what type of file you wish to create.

- New Waveform — Waveform editor
- New Equation — Equation editor
- New Sequence — Sequence editor
- New Autostep — Autostep editor
- New Clock Sweep — Clock sweep editor (Option 05)

To select the autostep editor, select **More** from the side menu in the initial menu and then select **Autostep Editor** from the second page of the side menu.

☐ **Step 3:** Select an editor and create the file. The file name in the upper left of the screen has not yet been assigned, so it is ********.extension.

Editing an Existing File

Edit

To edit an existing file, select **Edit** and perform the following steps:

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Press the **EDIT** button in the **MENU** column to display the initial menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Turn the general purpose knob to select a file from the internal memory file list displayed in the initial menu.

☐ **Step 3:** Select **Edit** from the side menu. The system automatically enters the editor appropriate for the file-type extension so the selected file can be edited.

Using File Editing Functions

The following operations can be performed for the file that has been created:

- Rename — Renaming a file
- Comment — Comment input
- Copy — Copying a file
- Delete — Deleting a file

NOTE

When the file is locked (indicated by an asterisk displayed in front of the file name), it is not possible to change the file name, enter a comment or delete the file. See "Locking and Unlocking Files" in this section.

Renaming a File

Rename

The **Rename** item is used to change a file name.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Use the general purpose knob to select the file to be renamed from the initial menu file list.

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Rename** from the bottom menu. The menu for changing the file name is displayed. See Figure 4A-3.

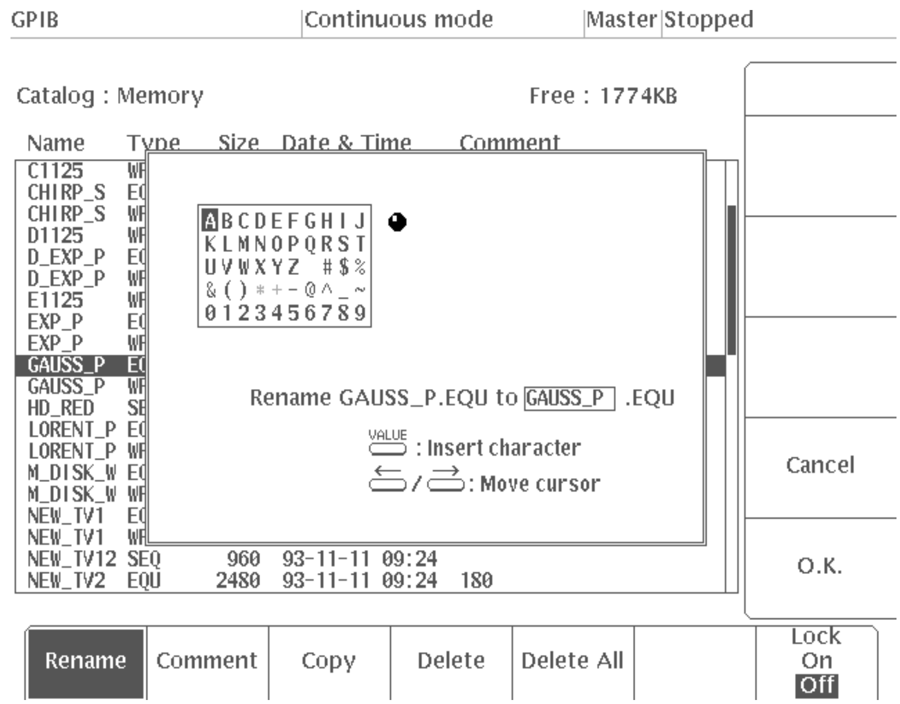


Figure 4A-3: Menu Displayed When Rename is Selected

Before entering the new file name, you must delete the current file name.

☐ **Step 3:** To delete a character, press the **Delete** button on the front panel. This deletes the character right before the cursor. The cursor can be moved with the front panel ← and → buttons.

Now, input the new file name.

☐ **Step 4:** Use the general purpose knob to select a character.

☐ **Step 5:** Press the front panel **VALUE** button. The selected character is inserted immediately before the cursor blinking in the file name input column.

☐ **Step 6:** Repeat Steps 4 and 5 until the entire name has been entered. Up to 8 characters can be input.

NOTE

*The following cannot be used as file names: **CLOCK**, **CON**, **AUX**, **COM1**, **COM2**, **LPT1**, **LPT2**, **LPT3**, **NUL**, and **PRN**. Also, the " ", "*****", and "+" characters in the character menu can not be used in file names and cannot be selected.*

☐ **Step 7:** To enter the file name, select **O.K.** To cancel that file name, select **Cancel**.

When **O.K.** is selected, the file is saved into internal memory with the changed file name and displayed in the file list on the CRT screen. Select **O.K.** or **Cancel** to return to the initial menu.

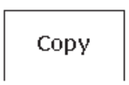
NOTE

If there is already a waveform file in internal memory with the name the compiled waveform file will be given, a message is displayed asking if you are sure you want to overwrite the old file. Overwriting erases the data in the old file.

Comment Input

Select **Comment** to input a comment. The input method for the comment is the same as that for **Rename** above. The comment may be up to 24 characters long. All the characters in the character menu can be used.

Copying a File



Select **Copy** to display a menu for inputting the copy destination file name. The input method for the file name is the same as that for **Rename** above.

Deleting a File

Select **Delete** or **Delete All** to delete unnecessary files. **Delete** deletes files in internal memory one at a time; **Delete All** deletes all the files in internal memory.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Use the general purpose knob to select the file to be deleted from the file list in the initial menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Delete** from the bottom menu. This instrument asks you if you are sure you want to delete the selected file. See Figure 4A-4.

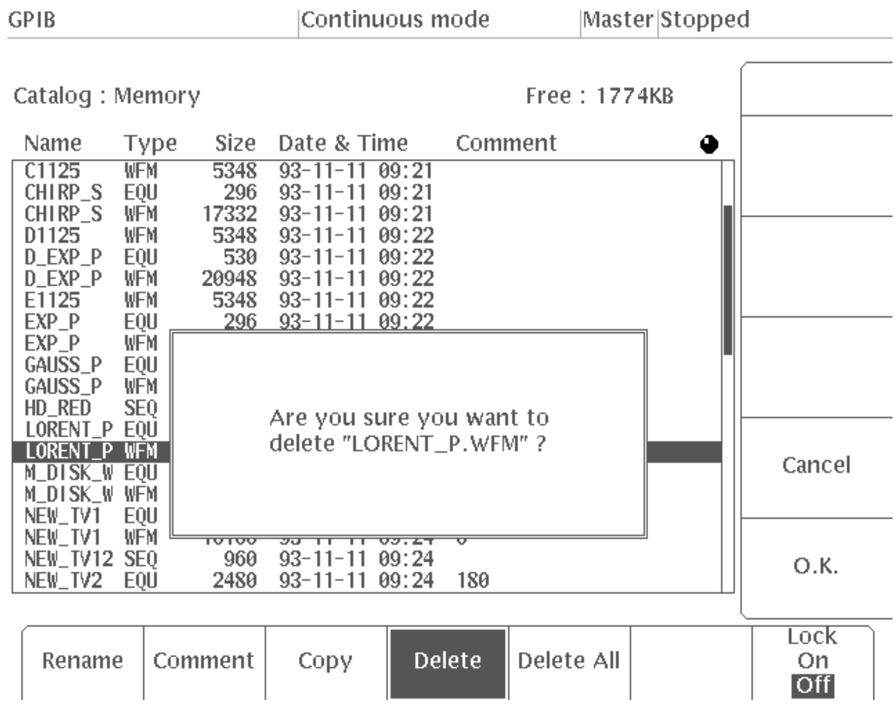
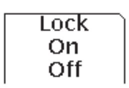


Figure 4A-4: Menu Displayed When Delete is Selected

If you select **O.K.** from the side menu, the file is deleted. If you decide not to delete the file, select **Cancel**. When either **O.K.** or **Cancel** is selected, the system returns to the initial menu.

Locking and Unlocking Files



Select **Lock** to lock or unlock a file. When the file is locked, it is not possible to delete the file or change the file name or the comments for that file.

NOTE

*While a locked file can have its output parameters changed with the **SETUP** menu, the original output parameters are retained. Thus, when the locked file is loaded again into waveform memory, the original parameters are set again.*

Procedure

- ☐ **Step 1:** Use the general purpose knob to select the file to be locked from the file list in the initial menu.
- ☐ **Step 2:** Press the **Lock** bottom menu button. The selected file is locked and **On** is selected for the **Lock** label. Locked files have ”*” next to their names in the display. See Figure 4A-5.

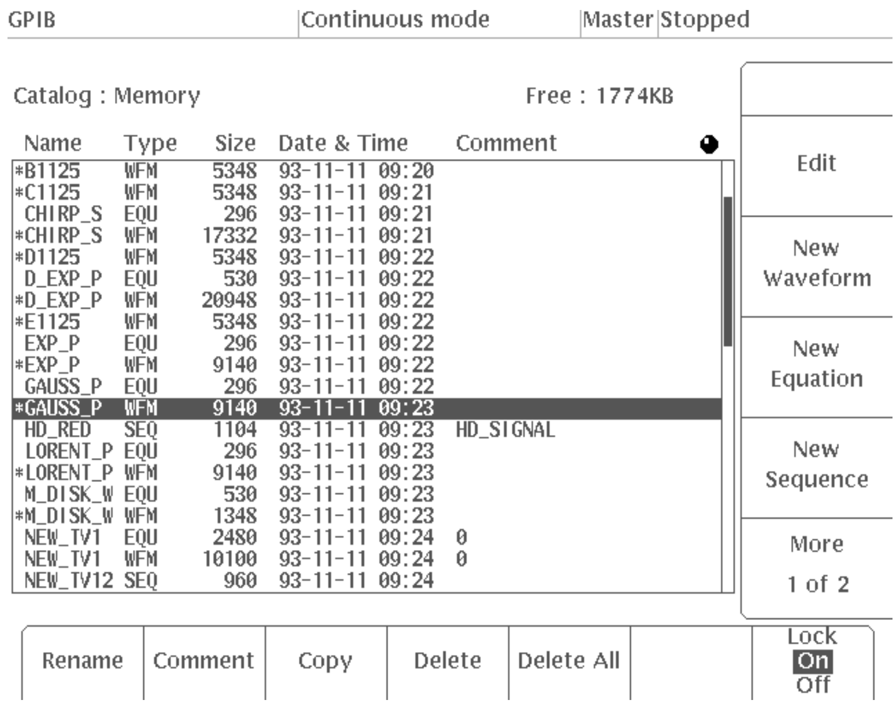


Figure 4A-5: Menu Displayed When Lock is Selected

☐ **Step 3:** Select **Delete** from the bottom menu. Check to make sure that the words "**File locked.**" is displayed in the message area to indicate that it is not possible to delete the file.

☐ **Step 4:** If you press the **Lock** bottom menu button again, the file is unlocked and **Off** in the **Lock** label is displayed inverted. Files on a floppy disk or in NVRam can be locked/unlocked in the same manner with the **UTILITY** menu.

Expanding a Sequence File into a Waveform File

The "**Expand SEQ into WFM**" item is displayed when a sequence file has been selected from the file list in the initial menu. It is used to expand a waveform created from a sequence file (.SEQ) into a waveform file (.WFM).

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Select **More** from the side menu in the initial menu to display the second page of the side menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Using the general purpose knob, select a sequence file (the file name should end in **.SEQ**) from the file list in the initial menu. The "**Expand SEQ into WFM**" item will appear in the side menu.

☐ **Step 3:** Select **Expand SEQ into WFM** from the side menu. You will be asked to provide a name for the resulting waveform file. See Figure 4A-6. If necessary, change the default name. See "Renaming a File" described above.

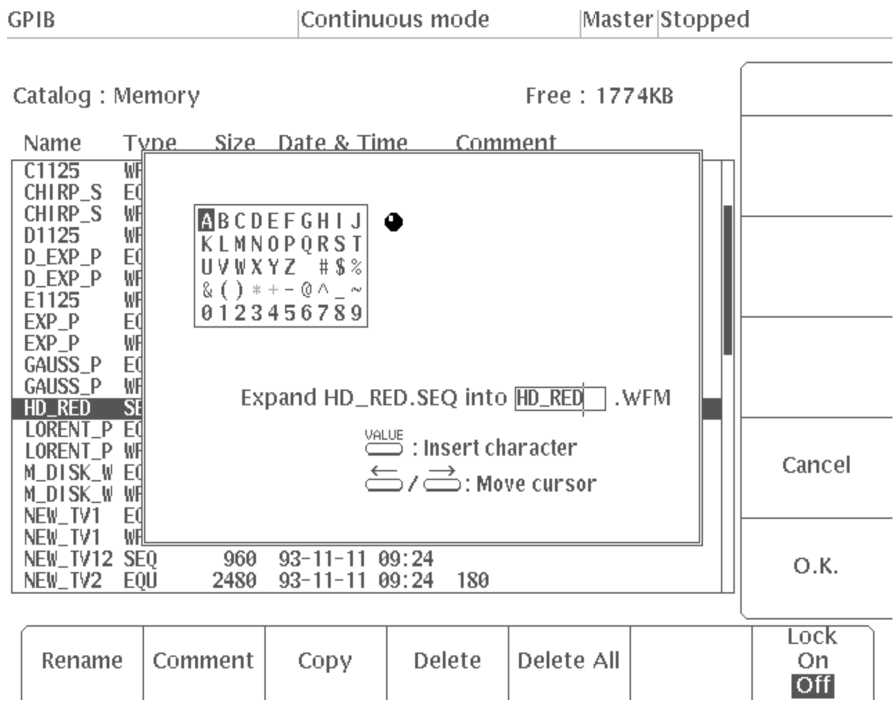


Figure 4A-6: Menu Display When Expand SEQ into WFM is Selected

☐ **Step 4:** Press **O.K.** to confirm the file name. Press **Cancel** to cancel the operation.

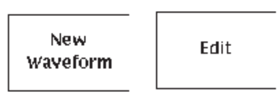
When **O.K.** is pressed, the sequence file will be expanded into a waveform file and the initial menu will reappear. The name of the new file will be added to the file list in the initial menu. If a waveform file with that name already exists, you will be asked whether it is all right to overwrite the existing file with the new data. Be careful when answering this query, as a ”yes” will cause the existing data to be deleted and replaced with the new file. Pressing ”**Cancel**” will cancel the operation and the initial menu will reappear.

Waveform Editor

Use the waveform editor to create or edit waveform files with the extension of **.WFM**. Waveform files contain waveform data, marker signal data, and the waveform output parameters set with the **SETUP** menu. The waveform data display formats are graphic, table, and timing. The editing functions displayed depend on the data display format.

In the waveform editor, 0 to 4094 in 12-bit resolution on the vertical axis is expressed as −1.0000 to +1.0000 (with 4095 as 1.0005). At this level, there is no relationship to the **Amplitude**/**Offset** setting in the **SETUP** menu used when the waveform is output.

Entering the Waveform Editor



Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Press **EDIT** in the **MENU** column. The initial **EDIT** menu will appear.

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Edit** or **New Waveform** from the side menu.

- **Edit** — Use this command to select and edit an existing waveform file (**.WFM**)
- **New Waveform** — Use this command to create a new wave form file

As a result of the procedure described above, the waveform editor will appear on the screen. The waveform editor can be displayed in one of three formats: graphic, timing or table; the default setting is graphic display. Figure 4A-7 shows an example in which an existing waveform file has been selected.

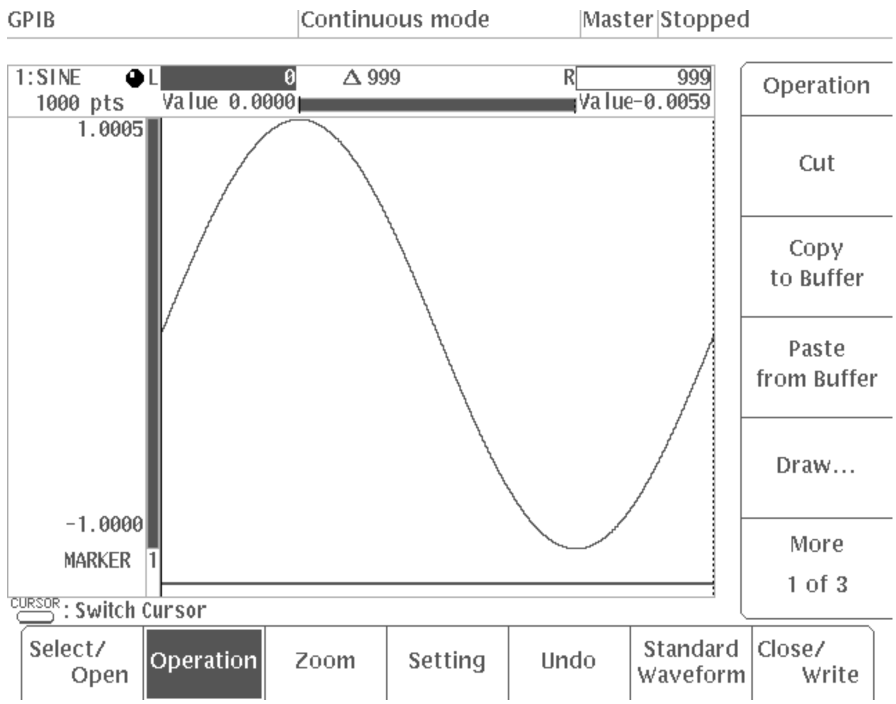
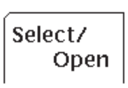


Figure 4A-7: Graphic CRT Display

In graphic display, the waveform is created or edited with the waveform displayed in the waveform editor in graphic display. For details on the different formats, see ”Timing Display” and ”Table Display”.

Opening and Selecting Editing Areas



Up to three waveforms can be displayed and edited in the waveform editor at the same time. This makes it easy to edit several related waveforms. Figure 4A-8 shows an example in which three waveforms are displayed. In this example, the box around the **Waveform2** area shows that this waveform is selected and is currently being edited.

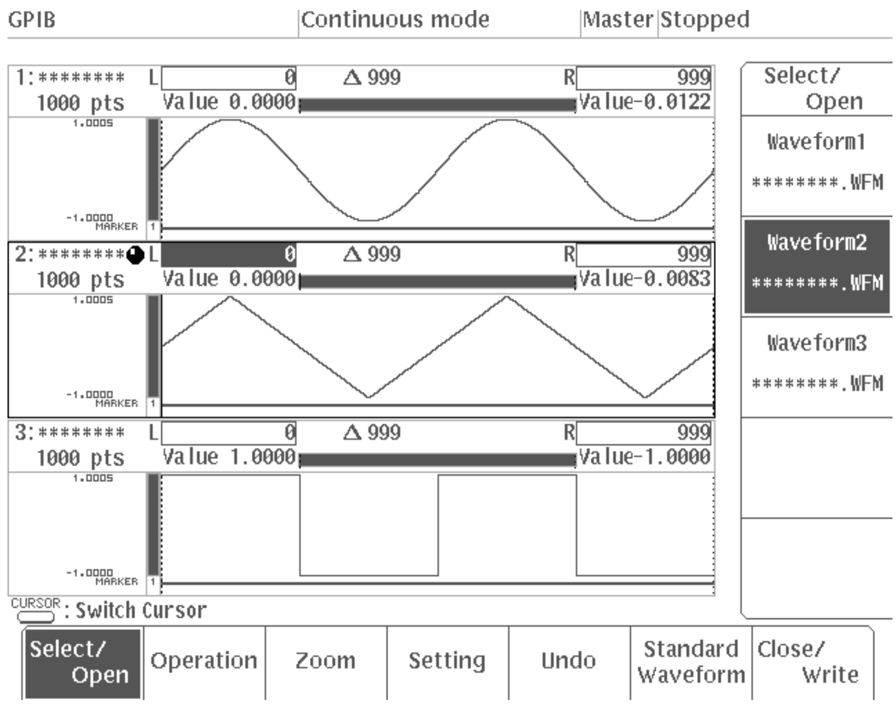


Figure 4A-8: Waveform Editor With Three Editing Areas

When there is more than one waveform displayed in the waveform editor, the following menu items will be added:

- **Cursor Link to...** will be added to the **Setting** menu item. See page 4A-33.

  Cursor Link to... — Used to link the cursors in different editing areas.

- Three additional commands (**Multiple Copy...**, **Convolute...**, **Compare...**) will be added to the **Operation** menu item. See pages 4A-78, 4A-83 and 4A-86, respectively.

  Multiple Copy... — Used to copy a waveform in one editing area that has been designated with the vertical bar cursors into another editing area (in the space designated with the vertical bar cursors in that area), using the interval specified with Interval.

  Convolute... — Used to perform convolution calculations for the waveform in one area (in the space designated with the vertical bar cursors) with the part of a waveform in another editing area designated by the vertical bar cursors in that area.

  Compare... — Used to compare the waveform in the area designated by the vertical bar cursors with the waveform in another editing area.

Procedure

In this example, you will select three waveforms in the waveform editor. The following procedure starts in the initial **EDIT** menu.

☐ **Step 1:** Select **New Waveform** from the side menu. The new waveform will be displayed in area 1.

☐ **Step 2:** Press **Select**/**Open** from the bottom menu. In the side menu, "**Waveform1**" refers to the waveform file in editing area 1.

☐ **Step 3:** Select **Another Waveform** from the side menu. A file list will appear, allowing you to select the waveform file to be displayed in editing area 2.

The top item in the list (**New Waveform**) is used to create a new waveform file. The subsequent items are the names of existing waveform files. See Figure 4A-9.

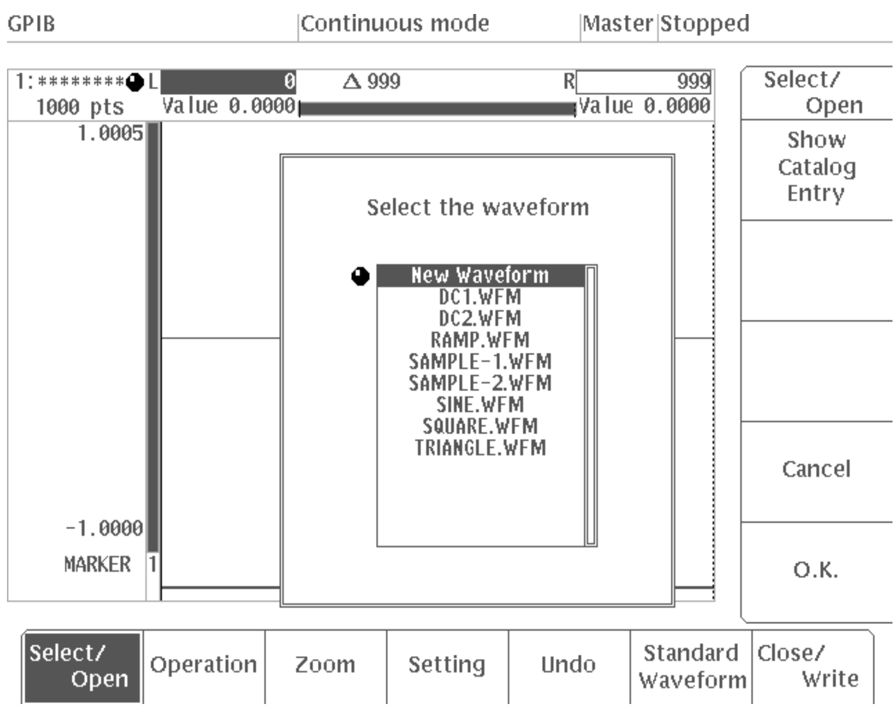


Figure 4A-9: Menu Display When Another Waveform is Selected

☐ **Step 4:** Using the general purpose knob, select **New Waveform**. The new waveform file created in this step will be assigned to editing area 2.

☐ **Step 5:** Select **O.K.** from the sub-menu. When this is done, **Waveform2** will be added to the side menu and the **Waveform2** editing area will appear on the screen. See Figure 4A-10.

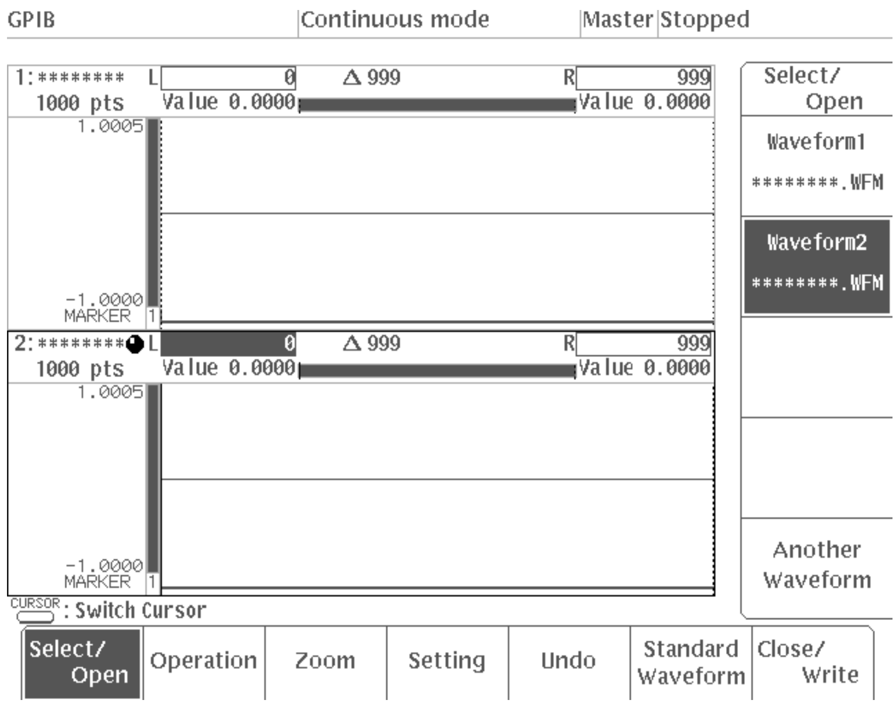


Figure 4A-10: Waveform2 Added

☐ **Step 6:** Select **Another Waveform** from the side menu.

☐ **Step 7:** Using the general purpose knob, select a waveform file. In this example, we will select an existing waveform file.

☐ **Step 8:** Select **Show Catalog Entry** from the sub-menu. This allows you to check the waveform for the selected file on the screen. See Figure 4A-11.

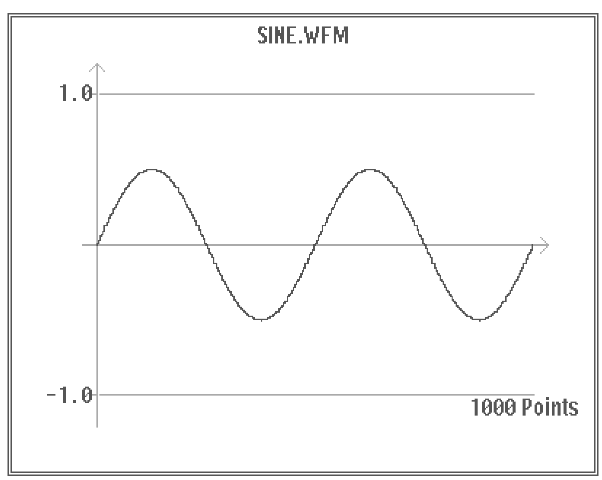


Figure 4A-11: Menu Display When Show Catalog Entry is Selected

☐ **Step 9:** Select **Continue** from the sub-menu.

☐ **Step 10:** Select **O.K.** from the sub-menu. **Waveform3** will be added to the side menu and the **Waveform3** editing area will appear on the screen. See Figure 4A-12.

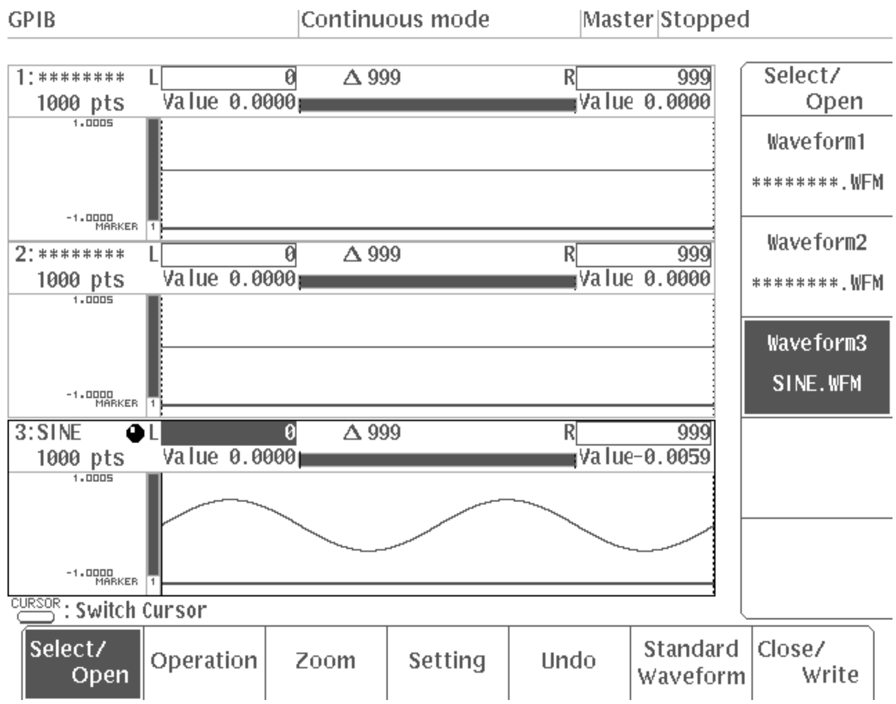


Figure 4A-12: Waveform3 Added

The three waveform items (**Waveform1**, **Waveform2** and **Waveform3**) will be displayed in the side menu. You will select the waveform to be edited from among these items.

☐ **Step 11:** Select **Waveform2** from the side menu. A box will appear around the editing area to indicate that this waveform has been selected.

To close a waveform, once again select that **Waveform** from the side menu and then select **Close**/**Write** from the bottom menu. See ”Saving Files and Exiting the Editor” in this section.

Saving Files and Exiting the Editor

Close/
Write

When you select **Close**/**Write** from the bottom menu, the newly created or edited file currently selected in the side menu will be saved to the instrument's internal memory and the waveform editor will disappear.

NOTE

*The procedure for saving files and exiting the editor is the same for all editors. The only difference is that the **Close**/**Write** item in the waveform editor changes to **Exit**/**Write** in the other editors; it functions in the same manner. (The word "**Close**" is used in the waveform editor because more than one waveform is opened in this editor.)*

Choices When Exiting the Editor

Select **Close**/**Write** from the bottom menu to display a side menu containing **Write and Close**, **Close without Writing**, and **Write** menu items. These functions are explained next.

- **Write and Close**

  When a new file is created, if you select **Write and Close**, a menu for naming the file is displayed. Input the file name, then select **O.K.** from the sub-menu. The file is saved into internal memory with that name and the system returns to the initial menu. If **Cancel** is selected, the input file name is canceled and the system returns to the editor.

  When you exit the editor after editing an existing file and you select **Write and Close**, the menu for naming the file is not displayed. Instead, the system immediately returns to the initial menu and the file created in internal memory is saved with the existing file name.

- **Close without Writing**

  When this item is selected, the system returns to the initial menu without saving the created or edited file to internal memory. In this case, a message asking you if it is ok to erase the created data is displayed on the CRT screen. Reply **O.K.** or **Cancel**.

- **Write**

  When **Write** is selected, the file name menu is displayed. If you input or change the file name, then select the sub-menu **O.K.** item, the created or edited waveform data is saved into internal memory with that file name and the system returns to the editor it has been in. If the file name is changed, the old file is left as is and a new file is created with the new file name. If you select **Cancel**, the input file name is canceled and the system returns to the editor without saving the data into internal memory. Although the created or edited data is not saved at this time, it is retained for further editing.

Naming a File

When saving a newly created file, a file name must be created. The menu for creating a file name is the same for all the editors.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Close**/**Write** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Write and Close** from the side menu. Figure 4A-13 shows the menu with the file name.

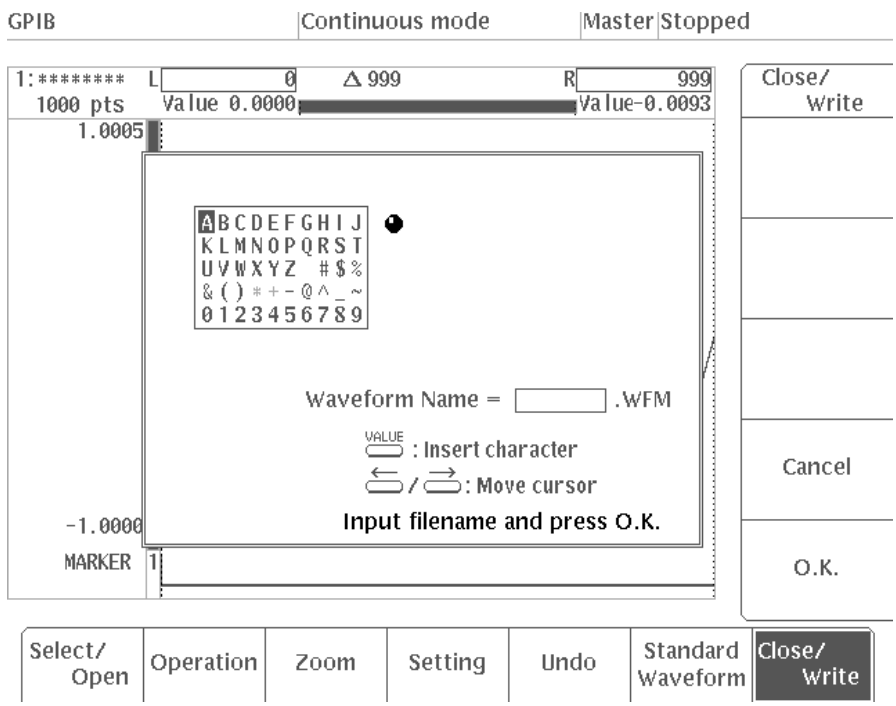


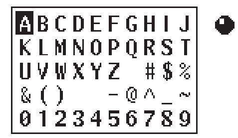
Figure 4A-13: Menu With File Name

NOTE

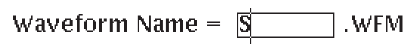
*When no editing has been performed in the editor, selecting the **Write and Close** item will not cause the menu used to enter the file name to appear; the initial menu will reappear instead.*

Now, input the file name.

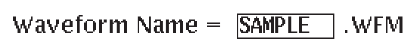
☐ **Step 3:** Use the general purpose knob to select a character.



☐ **Step 4:** Press the front panel **VALUE** button. The selected character is inserted immediately before the cursor.



☐ **Step 5:** Repeat Steps 3 and 4 until the entire file name has been entered. In this example, we will enter the name **SAMPLE**.



Up to 8 characters can be input. To delete a character, press the Delete button on the front panel. This deletes the character right before the cursor. The cursor can be moved with the front panel ← and → buttons.

NOTE

The following can not be used as file names: ***CLOCK***, ***CON***, ***AUX***, ***COM1***, ***COM2***, ***LPT1***, ***LPT2***, ***LPT3***, ***NUL***, *and* ***PRN***. *Also, the ” ” and ”********” and ”+” characters in the character menu can not be used in file names and can not be selected.*

☐ **Step 6:** To enter the file name, select **O.K.** To cancel that file name, select **Cancel** from the side menu.

When **O.K.** is selected, the file will be saved to the internal memory under the file name that has been entered and the initial menu will reappear. The new file name will be displayed in the file list in the initial menu. If **Cancel** is selected, the name that has been entered will be disregarded and the editor screen will reappear.

NOTE

If there is already a waveform file in internal memory with the name the complied waveform file will be given, a message is displayed asking if you are sure you want to overwrite the old file. Overwriting erases the data in the old file.

Graphic Display

In graphic display, the waveform is displayed in graphic form in the waveform editor and it is created or edited in that form. The horizontal axis indicates time or number of points, while the vertical axis indicates the levels. Waveforms are displayed at each data point in 12-bit resolution. On the beneath the waveform, the on/off state of the marker signal is displayed in timing form. All editing operations are performed between the two vertical bar cursors.

Graphic Display Menu Structure

Figure 4A-14 is a diagram showing the menu structure for the waveform editor in graphic display. This is not a complete list; for a complete list, see the diagram at the beginning of the section on each menu. An ellipsis (**...**) next to an item in the side menu indicates that there is a sub-menu below that item listing additional choices. Commands in the sub-menu are executed with the **Execute** command; when **Go Back** is selected, the sub-menu disappears and the side menu reappears.

Bottom Menu — *Side Menu* — *Sub-Menu*

- *Waveform Editor*
  - *Select/Open*
    - *Waveform1*
    - *Waveform2* *1
    - *Waveform3* *1
    - *Another Waveform*
  - *Operation*
    - *Cut*
    - *Copy to Buffer*
    - *Paste from Buffer*
    - *Draw...*
      - *Add Draw Point*
      - *Delete Draw Point*
      - *Smooth*
    - *Shift...*
      - *Shift*
      - *Value*
    - *Scale...*
      - *Scale*
      - *Factor*
      - *New Size* *2
      - *Origin* *2
    - *Invert...*
      - *Invert*
    - *Clip...*
      - *Clip*
      - *Level*
    - *Marker...*
      - *Set High*
      - *Set Low*
      - *Set Pattern*
    - *Insert Other Waveform*
      - *Show Catalog Entry*
    - *Single Waveform Math...*
      - *Type*
    - *Dual Waveform Math...*
      - *Add*
      - *Sub*
      - *Mul*
      - *Show Catalog Entry*
    - *Multiple Copy...* *1
      - *Source*
      - *Interval*
    - *Convolute...* *1
      - *Source*
    - *Compare...* *1
      - *Source*
      - *Hysteresis*
      - *Set Result to*
    - *Region Shift...*
      - *Type*
      - *Shift Scale Value*
      - *Config...*

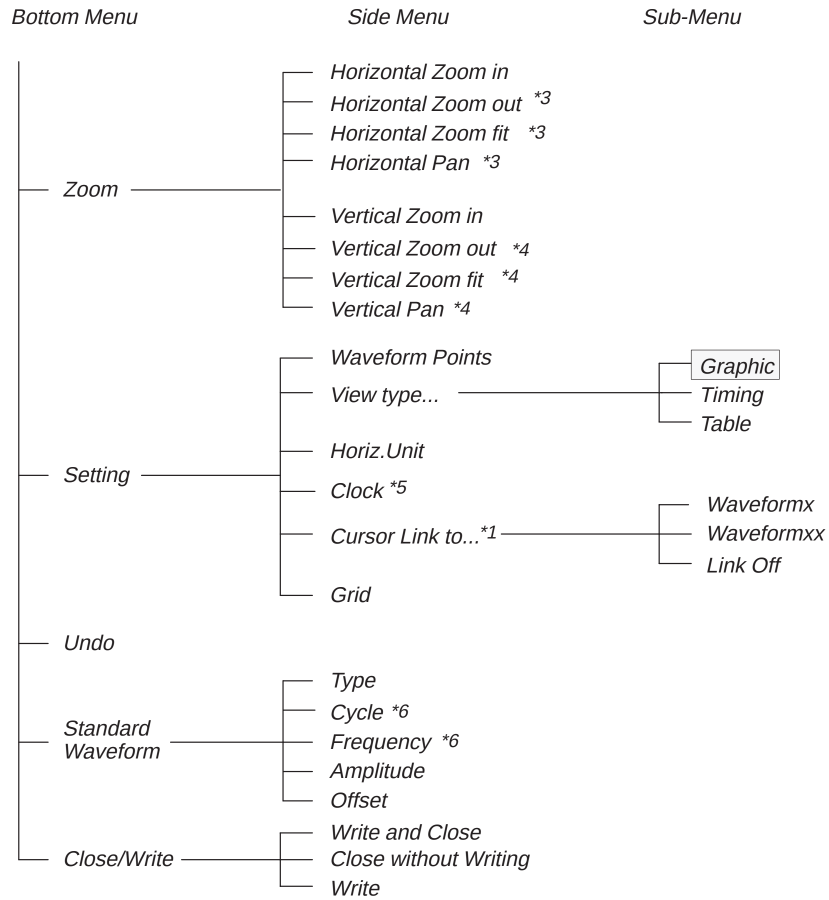


Figure 4A-14: Waveform Editor Graphic Display Menu Structure

*1 **Another Waveform** under **Select**/**Open** in the bottom menu appears when another editing area has been edited.

*2 If **Horizontal** is selected for **Scale** in the sub-menu, **New Size** appears; if **Vertical** is selected, **Origin** appears.

*3 The **Horizontal Zoom in** item under **Zoom** in the bottom menu item appears when the waveform on the screen has been zoomed in the horizontal direction.

*4 The **Vertical Zoom in** item under **Zoom** in the bottom menu appears when the waveform on the screen has been zoomed in the vertical direction.

*5 This item appears when **Time** has been selected for **Horiz**. **Unit** in the side menu.

*6 If **Point** is selected for **Horiz. Unit** under **Setting** in the bottom menu, **Cycle** appears; if **Time** is selected for this item, **Frequency** appears.

Menu Functions

The following list describes the functions for each of the menu items and gives the number of the page on which you can find a more detailed explanation of that item.

Table 4A-2: Menu Functions

Menu	Function	Page
Select /Open	Opening and selecting the editing area	4A-14
Operation	Editing waveforms in graphic display	4A-41
Cut	Cutting waveforms	4A-42
Copy to Buffer	Copying waveforms	4A-43
Paste from Buffer	Pasting waveforms	4A-43
Draw...	Draw function	4A-45
Shift...	Shift function	4A-48
Scale...	Scaling function	4A-51
Invert...	Invert function	4A-53
Clip...	Clip function	4A-55
Marker...	Setting a marker	4A-56
Insert Other Waveform	Inserting other waveforms	4A-59
Single Waveform Math	Single waveform calculations	4A-62
Dual Waveform Math...	Calculations with other waveform data	4A-67
Region Shift...	Specified region shift	4A-71
Multiple Copy...	Multiple copy	4A-78
Convolute...	Convolution calculations	4A-83
Compare...	Comparing waveforms	4A-86
Zoom	Zooming waveforms	4A-90
Setting	Settings for the waveform to be edited	4A-28
View type...	Selecting the waveform data display format	4A-28
Waveform Points	Setting waveform point count	4A-29
Horiz. Unit	Setting horizontal axis units	4A-31
Clock	Setting clock frequency	4A-32
Cursor Link to...	Linking the vertical bar cursors	4A-33
Grid	Displaying a grid in the editing area	4A-35
Undo	Canceling function execution	4-2
Standard Waveform	Creating a standard function waveform	4A-36
Close/Write	Saving files and exiting the editor	4A-19

Graphic Display Screen

The general graphic display is shown in Figure 4A-15. A description for each callout follows.

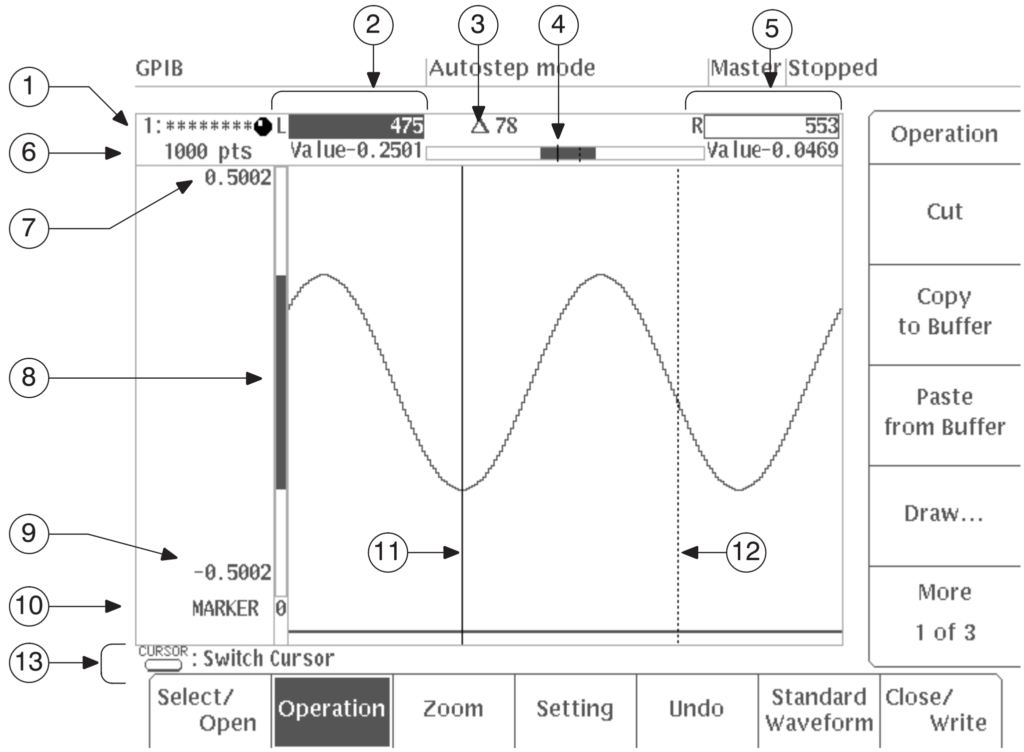


Figure 4A-15: Graphic Display Screen

(1) File Name

The name of the waveform file being edited. The number preceding the file name indicates the sequential number of that editing waveform. In this editor, up to three waveforms can be displayed and edited at the same time. If the name has not been set, ******** is displayed.

(2) L

Value

Shows the left vertical bar cursor position time or point value (**L**) and the vertical level (**Value**). When the cursor value is displayed inverted, this means the cursor value can be changed with the general purpose knob or numeric keys.

(3) n

Shows the time or point count between the left and right vertical bar cursors.

(4) Horizontal Scroll Indicator

When the display is magnified horizontally with **Zoom**, this indicator is displayed to show where waveform point positions are in the CRT display area. The area displayed on the CRT is shown with inverted display.

(5) R

Value
Shows the right vertical bar cursor position time or point value (**R**) and the vertical level (**Value**).

(6) No. of Waveform Points

Shows the number of points in the waveform being edited.

(7) Top Waveform Level

Shows the top level for the waveform data displayed on the CRT.

(8) Vertical Scroll Indicator

When the display is magnified vertically with **Zoom**, this indicator is displayed to show where the CRT display area is in terms of the vertical axis full scale. The area displayed on the CRT is shown with inverted display.

(9) Bottom Waveform Level

Shows the bottom level for the waveform data displayed on the CRT.

(10) Marker

Shows the timing for the marker signal. The number to the right of the word ”**MARKER**” indicates the state value for the marker at which the active vertical bar cursor (the one displayed with a solid line) locates.

(11) Left Vertical Bar Cursor

The active cursor is displayed with solid lines and the non-movable is displayed with broken lines. The left cursor indicates the left starting point for editing.

(12) Right Vertical Bar Cursor

Indicates the right end point for editing.

(13) Button Operations

This area shows how the front panel buttons operate in this menu.

CURSOR : Switch Cursor

Press the **CURSOR** button to toggle the active vertical bar cursor between left and right.

CURSOR : Move Cursor

The vertical bar cursor can be moved by pressing the **CURSOR** button.

Settings for the Waveform to be Edited

Setting

Before waveform data is created, you must use the **Setting** item in the side menu to select the environment for editing. The following settings are available:

■ View type...	Selecting the waveform data display format
■ Waveform Points	Setting waveform point count
■ Horiz. Unit	Setting horizontal axis units
■ Clock	Setting clock frequency
■ Cursor Link to...	Linking the vertical bar cursors
■ Grid	Displaying a grid in the editing area

NOTE

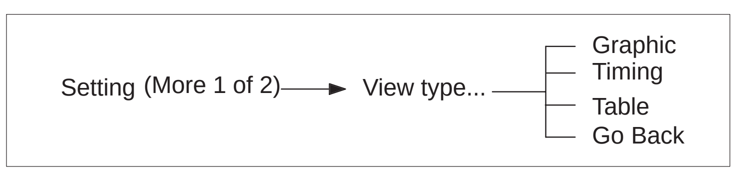
These settings are the same in all display formats (graphic, timing and table).

In the following section, each of these items will be discussed in detail.

Selecting the Waveform Data Display Format

View type...
Graphic

The **View type...** item allows you to set the display format for the waveform data. There are three choices: graphic, timing and table. The following diagram shows the menu configuration.



When you open the waveform editor, **Graphic** display is selected as the default option. If you want to change the display format, select **Setting** from the bottom menu and then **View type** from the side menu, then select the desired format (**Timing** or **Table**) from the sub-menu. Pressing the **Go Back** button cancels the operation and causes the side menu to reappear. See page 4A-94 for a discussion of timing display and page 4A-127 for a discussion of table display.

Setting Waveform Point Count

Waveform Points

Waveform Points sets the number of points for waveform data. The following diagram shows the menu configuration.

Setting (More 1 of 2) → Waveform Points

The following formula is used to derive the number of points per period for the waveform to be created:

$$\text{No. of points} = \frac{\text{Clock frequency}}{\text{Frequency of output waveform}}$$

For example, for output of a 20kHz sine wave, setting the clock frequency to 10MHz will result in a waveform point value of 10MHz/20kHz = 500 points.

When you create a new waveform file, the waveform point size is set to the default value of 1000. Technically, you can change this size to any value up to 262,144 points and edit the waveform data as desired. However, due to hardware limitations, the waveform point size on this instrument is limited to 16 – 65,536 points. In the event that you have edited the data to a waveform point size outside this range, you will be given an opportunity to change to the nearest allowable size (in other words, 16 or 65,536 points) when you save the file.

- When the waveform point size is less than 16 points:

  For example, if the waveform point size is 10 points, the following message will appear:

  The data size dose not fit to this instrument.
  size = 10 < 16 (Minimum)
  Please select action.

  The following items will be displayed in the side menu:

  - **Append 0**

    ”0” (7FF) values will be added after the data until a size of 16 points is reached.

- **Expand**

  The data will be interpolated and expanded to make it 16 points.

- **Expand with Clock**

  The data will be interpolated and expanded to make it 16 points, and the clock will be speeded up to the same degree.

- **Cancel**

  The operation will be canceled and the editor screen will reappear.

- **Leave as it is**

  The operation will be canceled and the data will be written as is. The file that has been created cannot be output on this instrument.

- When the waveform point size is greater than 65,536 points:

  For example, if the waveform point size is 262,144 points, the following message will appear:

  > The data size dose not fit to this instrument.
  > size = 262144 > 65536 (Maximum)
  > Please select action.

  The following items will be displayed in the side menu:

  - **Shrink**

    The data will be interpolated and reduced to make it 65,536 points.

  - **Shrink with Clock**

    The data will be interpolated and reduced to make it 65,536 points, and the clock will be slowed down to the same degree.

  - **Cancel**

    The operation will be canceled and the editor screen will reappear.

  - **Leave as it is**

    The operation will be canceled and the data will be written as is. The file that has been created cannot be output on this instrument.

Select the appropriate command from the side menu and change the waveform point size.

If the data point count is set longer than the current waveform data, new points with a value of zero are added at the right end of the waveform. On the other hand, if the data point count is set shorter than the current waveform data, points are deleted from the right end.

Procedure

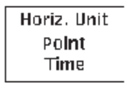
To set the waveform point value to 500:

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Setting** from the bottom menu.

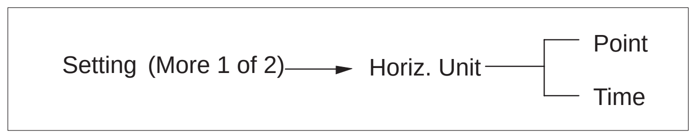
- [ ] **Step 2:** Select **Waveform Points** from the side menu.
- [ ] **Step 3:** Use the numeric keys or the general purpose knob to enter a value of 500.

  In the case of the numeric keys, press **5**, **0**, **0** and **ENTER** in that order.

Setting Horizontal Axis Units



Horiz. Unit sets the units for the horizontal axis for the displayed waveform in either time or number of points. The following diagram shows the menu configuration.



Each time the **Horiz. Unit** button in the side menu is pressed, the units toggle between **Time** and **Point**. When **Time** is selected, the **Clock** item is added to the side menu and the clock frequency can be set.

Time – Sets the horizontal axis unit to time. The cursor position data at the top of the CRT is displayed in time and data can be edited in time units.

Point – Sets the horizontal axis unit to points. The cursor position data at the top of the CRT is displayed in points and data can be edited in points.

In Figure 4A-16, the display on the left shows the horizontal axis unit set to **Point**, while the display on the right shows this value set to **Time**.

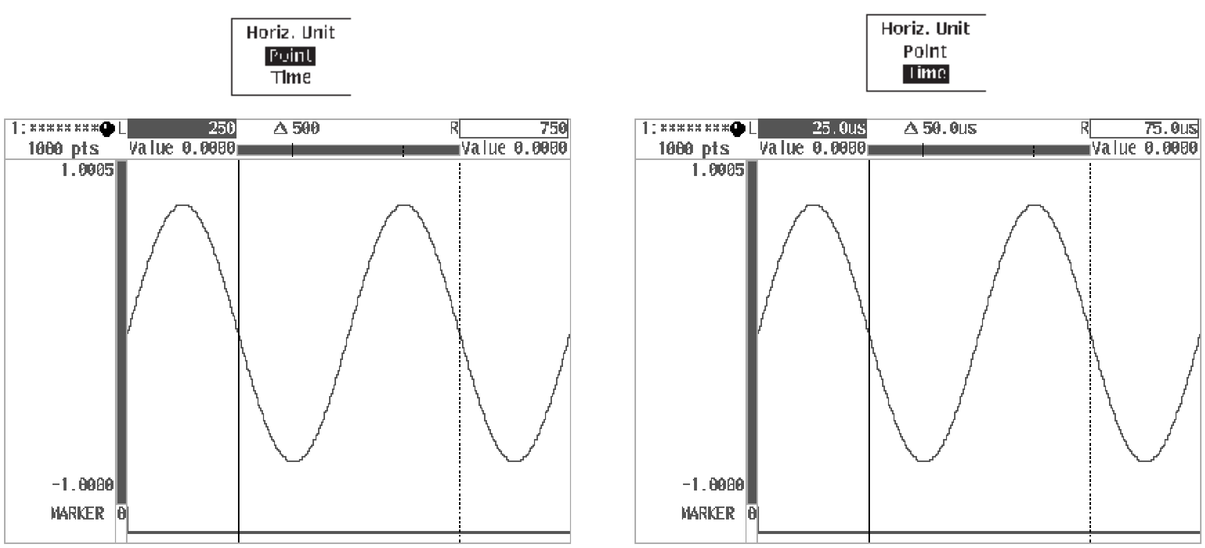


Figure 4A-16: Setting the Unit for the Horizontal Axis

When the horizontal axis unit is changed, even if you switch to table or timing display mode, the horizontal axis there is changed too.

Setting Clock Frequency

Clock

When the unit of the horizontal axis is **Time**, the clock frequency can be set. The following diagram shows the menu configuration.

Setting (More 1 of 2) → Horiz. Unit (Time) → Clock

Select **Clock** from the side menu to set the clock frequency. This parameter determines the time between the data points (the inverse of the clock frequency). For example, when the maximum clock frequency on the AWG2005 is set to 20MHz, waveform data can be edited at a resolution of 50ns. Figure 4A-17 shows the **Setting** menu for **Clock**.

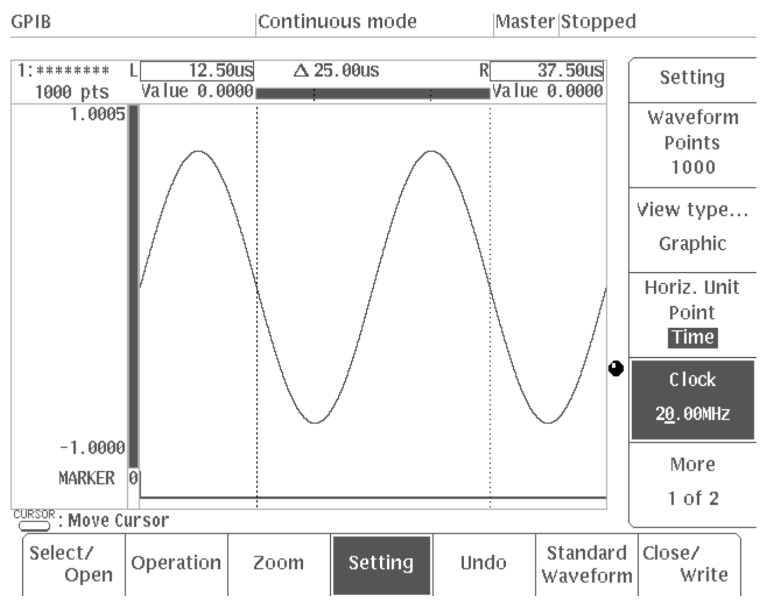


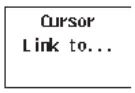
Figure 4A-17: Menu Displayed When Clock is Selected

Procedure

- ☐ **Step 1:** Select **Setting** from the bottom menu.
- ☐ **Step 2:** Press the **Horiz. Unit** button in the side menu to select **Time**.
- ☐ **Step 3:** Select **Clock** from the side menu.
- ☐ **Step 4:** Input the clock frequency with the numeric keys or the general purpose knob.

The default setting for clock frequency is 10MHz. The clock frequency set in this process will be displayed in the **Internal Clock** item in the **SETUP** menu via the waveform file. When the clock frequency is changed, even if you switch to table or timing display mode, the clock frequency there is changed too.

Linking the Vertical Bar Cursors



The **Cursor Link to...** item appears when two or more waveforms are being edited simultaneously. This item is used to link the movement of the vertical bar cursors in different editing areas. For example, when the cursors in editing area 1 are linked to those in editing area 2, moving the one of the cursors in editing area 1 will cause the corresponding cursor in editing area 2 to move the same distance. The following diagram shows the menu configuration.

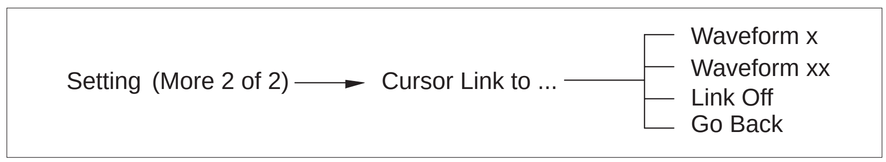


Figure 4A-18 shows a display in which two editing areas have been created and **Cursor Link to...** in the sub-menu has been selected.

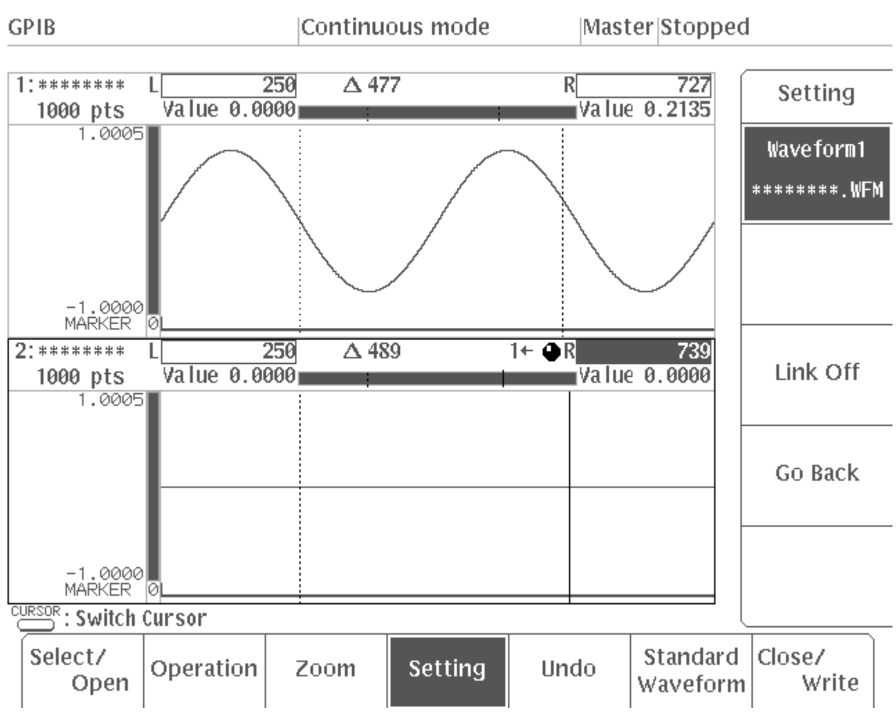


Figure 4A-18: Sub-Menu Showing Cursor Link to... Selected

The **1**← at the top of editing area 2 indicates that this area has been linked to editing area 1.

Procedure

In the following procedure, you will link the vertical bar cursors in editing area 2 (**Waveform2**) to the ones in editing area 1 (**Waveform1**) while editing area 1 is being edited.

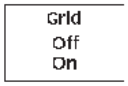
- ☐ **Step 1:** Select **Select**/**Open** from the bottom menu.
- ☐ **Step 2:** Select **Waveform2** from the side menu.
- ☐ **Step 3:** Select **Setting** from the bottom menu.
- ☐ **Step 4:** Select **More 1 of 2** from the side menu and then select **Cursor Link to...** .
- ☐ **Step 5:** Select **Waveform1** from the side-menu. **1«** will appear at the top of editing area 2.
- ☐ **Step 6:** Select **Go Back** from the side-menu. The **Setting** side menu will reappear.
- ☐ **Step 7:** Select **Select**/**Open** from the bottom menu.
- ☐ **Step 8:** Select **Waveform1** from the side menu.
- ☐ **Step 9:** Press the front panel **CURSOR** button.
- ☐ **Step 10:** Using the general purpose knob, move the active vertical bar cursor in editing area 1 and check to make sure that the vertical bar cursor in editing area 2 moves to the same degree.

Procedure

In the following procedure, you will unlink the editing areas that you linked in the previous example while the waveform in editing area 1 is being edited.

- ☐ **Step 1:** Select **Select**/**Open** from the bottom menu.
- ☐ **Step 2:** Select **Waveform2** from the side menu.
- ☐ **Step 3:** Select **Setting** from the bottom menu.
- ☐ **Step 4:** Select **More 1 of 2** from the side menu and then select **Cursor Link to...** .
- ☐ **Step 5:** Select **Link Off** from the side-menu. The link will be canceled and the **1**← at the top of editing area 2 will disappear.

Displaying a Grid in the Editing Area



This item is used to display a grid in the editing area to make it easier to edit the waveform. The following diagram shows the menu configuration.

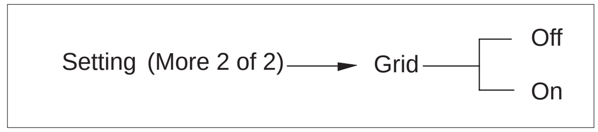


Figure 4A-19 shows an example of an editing area with the grid set to On.

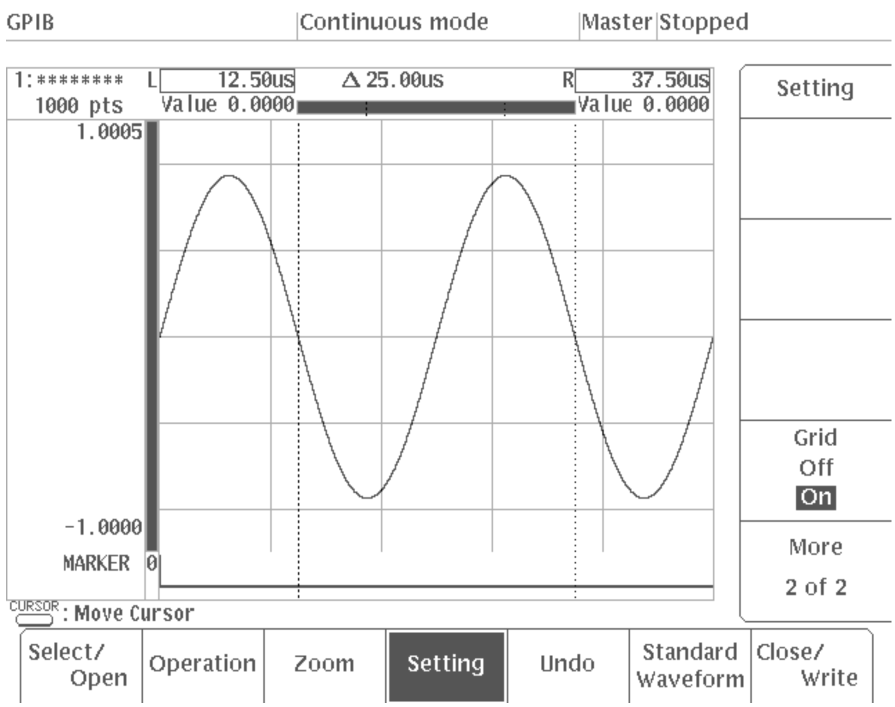


Figure 4A-19: Grid Set to On

- ☐ **Step 1:** Select **Setting** from the bottom menu.
- ☐ **Step 2:** Select **More 1 of 2** from the side menu.
- ☐ **Step 3:** Press the **Grid** button in the side menu and select **On**. A grid will appear in the editing area.

NOTE

Grid On/Off can be set same as timing and table display. However, grid display is only effect in graphic display.

Creating a Standard Function Waveform

Standard Waveform

When you select the **Standard Waveform** item, a function waveform is created in the area between the specified vertical bar cursors, or a waveform is created through calculation of the original waveform and a function waveform.

When you select **Standard Waveform** from the bottom menu, the following items are displayed in the side menu. Some of the items will change depending on the settings. For example, if you press **Setting** in the bottom menu and **Horiz. Unit** in the side menu and then select **Point**, the **Cycle** item appears in the menu; if you press **Setting** and **Horiz. Unit** and select **Time**, the **Frequency** item appears in the menu.

- Type — Select the type of function waveform
- Cycle — Set the cycle
- Frequency — Set the frequency
- Amplitude — Set the amplitude
- Offset — Set the offset
- Execute — Execute the process (draw the waveform)

In the following section, each of these items will be discussed in detail.

Selecting Function Waveform Type and Calculation Method

Type

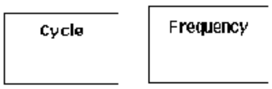
The **Type** item is used to select the type of function waveform and the calculation method to be created. There are six choices for waveform type and three choices for calculation method, making a total of 18 different ways in which this item can be set.

Type of Function Waveform	Calculation Method
Sine wave(**Sine**)	Substitute
Triangle wave(**Triangle**)	Add(**Add**)
Square wave(**Square**)	Multiply(**Mul**)
Ramp wave(**Ramp**)	
Noise wave(**Noise**)	
DC(**DC**)	

Example:	**Sine**	The data between the vertical bar cursors is replaced by a sine wave
	Add Sine	A sine wave is added to the data between the vertical bar cursors
	Mul Sine	The data between the vertical bar cursors is multiplied by a sine wave

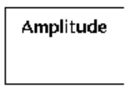
Setting the Parameters for Function Waveforms

The following parameters can be set for each type of function waveform designated with the **Type** command. Note, however, that only **Amplitude** and **Offset** can be set for a **Noise** waveform, while only **Offset** can be set for a **DC** waveform.

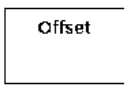


Cycle — 0.1 to 100,000 (in 0.1 increments)

Frequency — 2MHz to f/5 (f = **Clock** frequency set with **Setting** menu item)



Amplitude — ±2.0005 (if set to a negative number, the wave form will have inverse polarity)



Offset — −1.0000 to +1.0005

Procedure 1: Creating a Sine Wave

In this example, you will replace the data between the vertical bar cursors with a sine wave. The procedure begins at the initial menu level.

- [ ] **Step 1:** Select **New Waveform** from the side menu in the initial menu.
- [ ] **Step 2:** Select **Standard Waveform** from the bottom menu.
- [ ] **Step 3:** Check to make sure that the left and right vertical bar cursors are all the way to the left and right, respectively, to encompass the entire editing area. If they are not, use the general purpose knob to set them in this manner.
- [ ] **Step 4:** Press the **Type** button in the side menu and select **Sine**.
- [ ] **Step 5:** Select **Cycle** from the side menu. Use the numeric keys or the general purpose knob to set the number of cycles for the sine wave to 2.
- [ ] **Step 6:** Select **Amplitude** from the side menu. Use the numeric keys or the general purpose knob to set the p-p amplitude for the sine wave to 1.
- [ ] **Step 7:** Select **Execute** from the side menu.

When **Execute** is selected, the sine waveform is created between the vertical bar cursors with the set parameters. See Figure 4A-20.

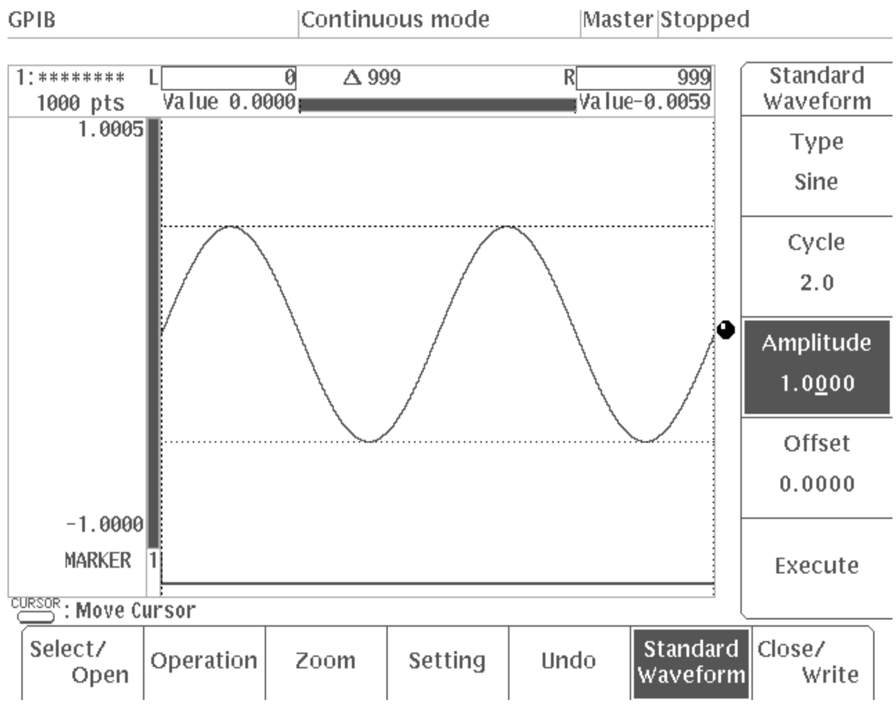


Figure 4A-20: Creating a Sine Wave

Procedure 2: Adding a Waveform to Existing Data

In this example, you will add noise to the sine wave you created in Procedure 1. The procedure starts from where you left off in Procedure 1.

- [ ] **Step 1:** Select **Type** from the side menu. Turn the general purpose knob or press the **Type** button in the side menu and select **Add Noise**.

- [ ] **Step 2:** Select **Amplitude** from the side menu. Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, set the p-p amplitude for the noise to 0.1.

- [ ] **Step 3:** Select **Execute** from the side menu.

  When you select **Execute**, a noise waveform will be added to the sine wave displayed between the left and right vertical bar cursors. See Figure 4A-21.

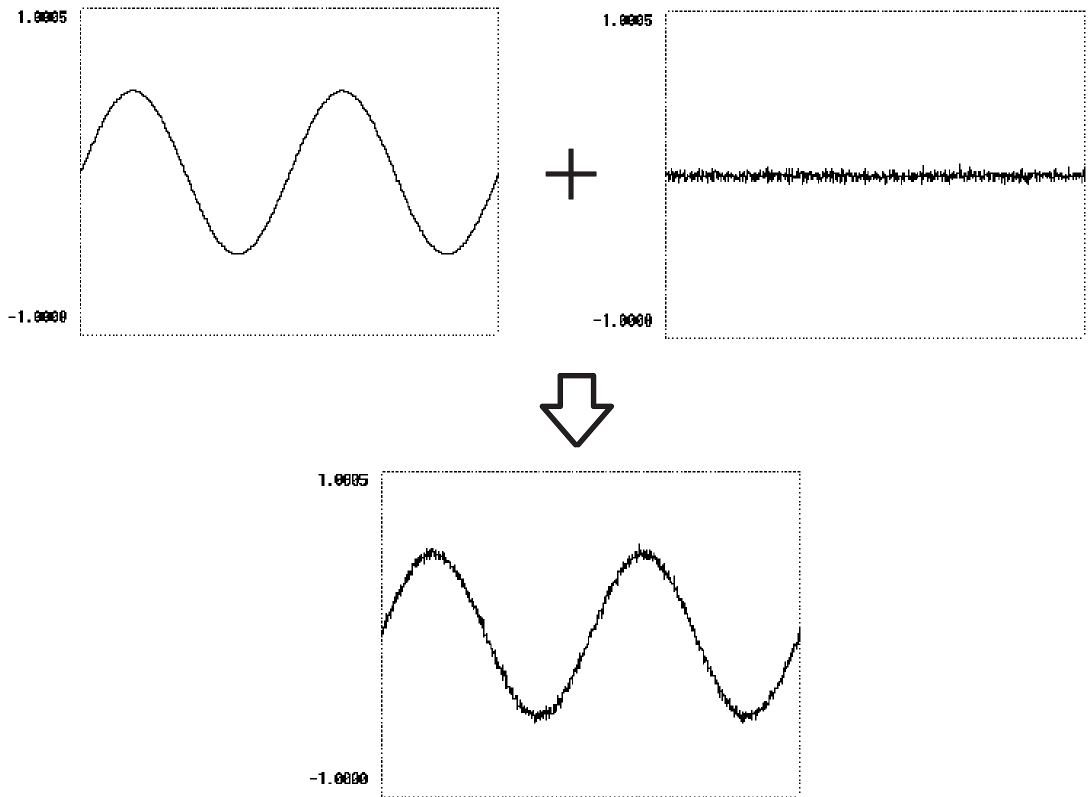


Figure 4A-21: Adding Noise to the Sine Wave

NOTE

Portions of the waveform that protrude outside the editing area when the other waveform is added will be clipped.

Procedure 3: Multiplying Waveforms

In this example, you will multiply the sine wave you created in Procedure 1 by another sine wave with a different frequency. The procedure starts from where you left off in Procedure 2.

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Undo** from the bottom menu. This will eliminate the noise waveform added in Step 2.

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Type** from the side menu. Turn the general purpose knob or press the **Type** button in the side menu and select **Mul Sine**.

☐ **Step 3:** Select **Cycle** from the side menu. Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, set the number of cycles for the sine wave to 30.

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Amplitude** from the side menu. Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, set the p-p amplitude for the sine wave to 1.

☐ **Step 5:** Select **Execute** from the side menu.

When you select **Execute**, the sine wave between the vertical bar cursors will be multiplied by the different frequency sine wave. See Figure 4A-22.

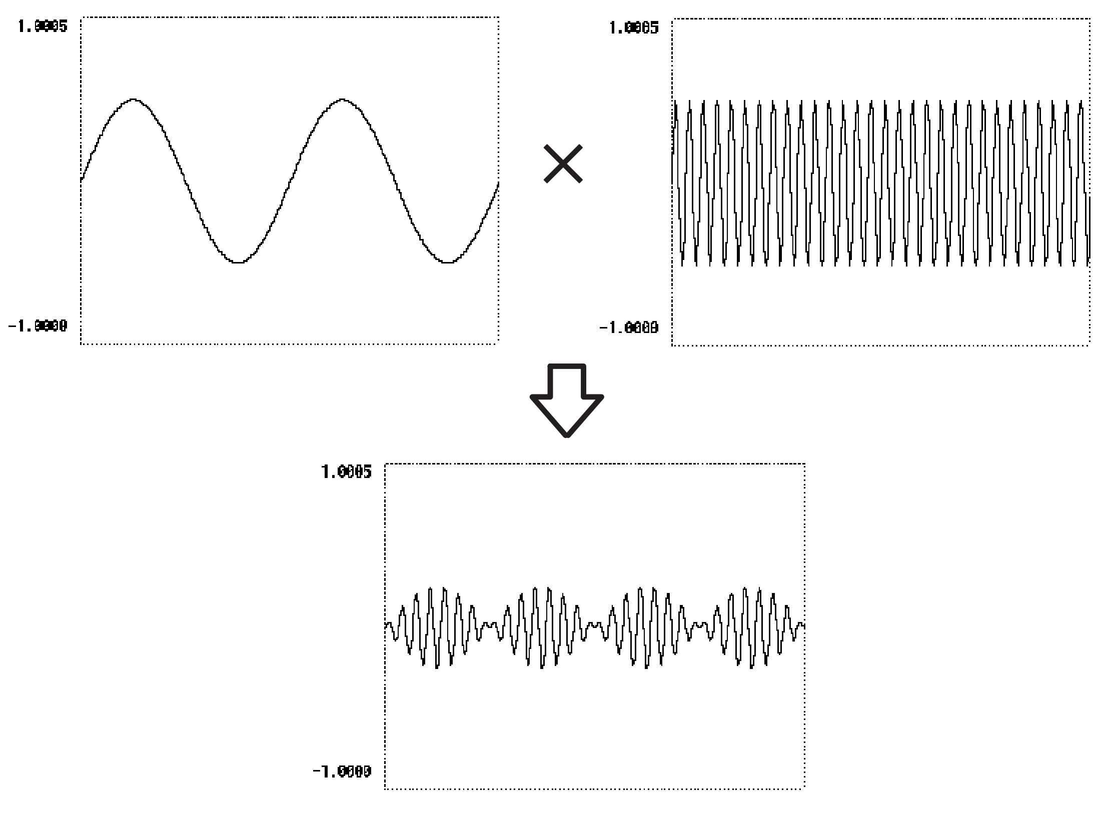


Figure 4A-22: Multiplying Sine Waves

Editing Waveforms in Graphic Display

Operation

When **Operation** is selected with the waveform editor set to graphic display, it is possible to edit the waveform data in various ways.

The side menu has four pages. Select **More** to switch the side menu to the next page. The following is a list of the items in the side menu and their functions.

■ Cut	Cutting waveforms
■ Copy to Buffer	Copying waveforms
■ Paste from Buffer	Pasting waveforms
■ Draw...	Draw function
■ Shift...	Shift function
■ Scale...	Scaling function
■ Invert...	Invert function
■ Clip...	Clip function
■ Marker...	Setting a marker
■ Insert Other Waveform	Inserting other waveforms
■ Single Waveform Math...	Single waveform calculations
■ Dual Waveform Math....	Calculations with other waveform data
■ Region Shift....	Specified region shift

When editing two or more waveforms simultaneously, three more items are added to the side menu (and the size of the menu increases to four pages).

■ Multiple Copy...	Multiple copy
■ Convolute...	Convolution calculations
■ Compare...	Comparing waveforms

Items with "**...**" have further low-level side menus, called sub-menus.

Setting Editing Areas

The editing operations available under **Operation** are all performed in the editing area located between the left and right vertical bar cursors. Before beginning the editing process, you should define the editing area using the following procedure.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Operation** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel to make the left vertical cursor active (solid line).

☐ **Step 3:** Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, move the left cursor to the starting point for the editing operation you wish to perform.

☐ **Step 4:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel again to make the right vertical cursor active (solid line).

☐ **Step 5:** Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, move the right cursor to the endpoint for the editing operation you wish to perform.

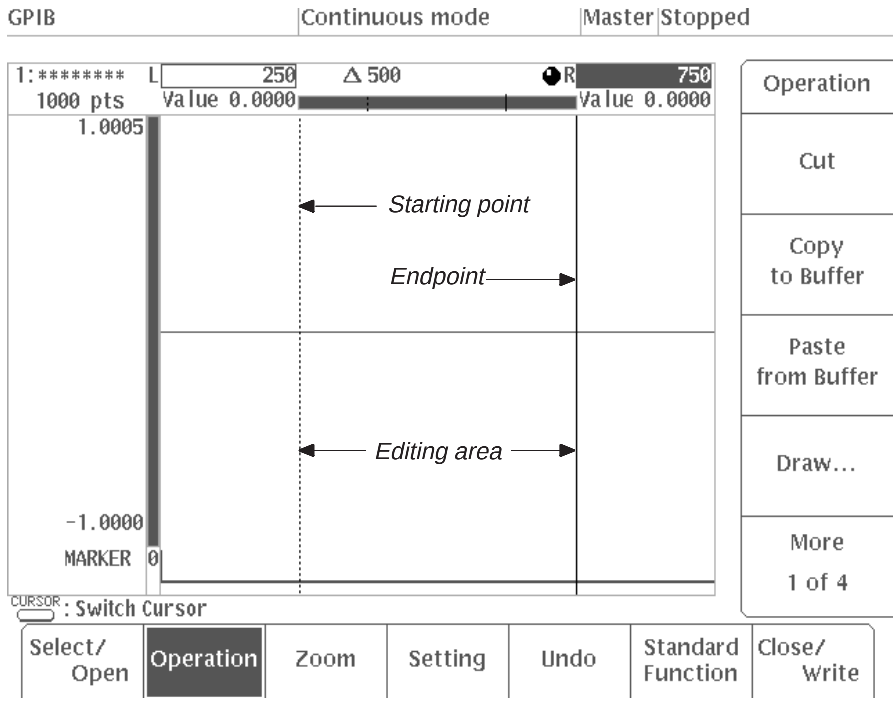


Figure 4A-23: Defining the Editing Area

Subsequent editing operations will be performed in the area that you have set between the left and right vertical bar cursors.

The following section will describe each of the items in the side menu in detail.

Cutting Waveforms

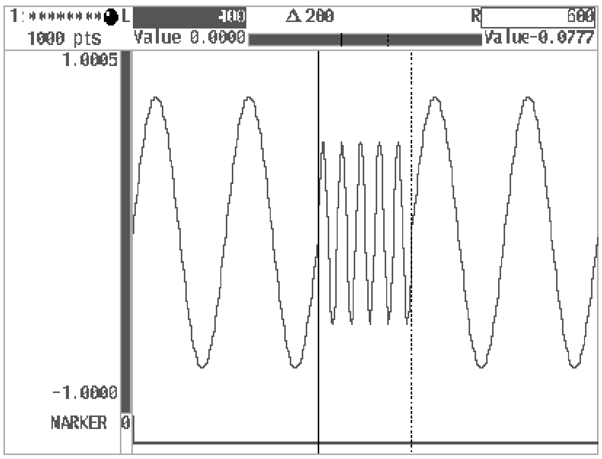
Cut

This command is used to remove a portion of the waveform from the editing area. The following diagram shows the menu configuration.

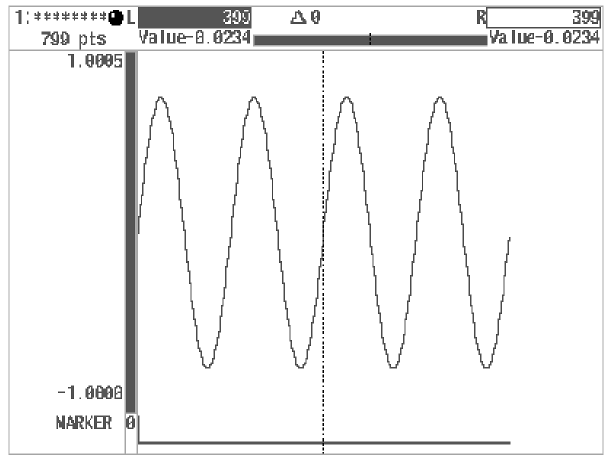
Operation (More 1 of 3) → Cut

Move the right and left vertical bar cursors to define the area you wish to cut and then select **Cut** from the side menu. There is no sub-menu for this command; when it is selected, the section of the waveform that you have defined is cut instantly. Marker signals associated with that waveform data are also cut. Removing part of a waveform will naturally reduce the number of points in that waveform.

Figure 4A-24 shows an example of a waveform before and after a section is cut. Note that only the section between the two vertical bar cursors is removed including the bar cursors.



Before



After

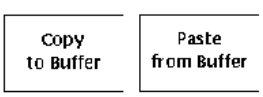
Figure 4A-24: Cutting Waveforms

Waveform data that has been cut is stored in the paste buffer. You can paste this data into another editing area (by selecting **Paste from Buffer**), insert it into another waveform (by selecting **Insert Other Waveform**) or use it to perform calculations with another waveform (by selecting **Math**).

NOTE

*If you cut out waveform data by mistake, select **Undo** from the bottom menu to restore the original waveform data.*

Copying/Pasting Waveforms



Use the **Copy to Buffer** and **Paste from Buffer** items to copy the edited waveform area and paste it to another location. The following diagram shows the menu configuration.

Operation (More 1 of 3) → Copy to Buffer

Operation (More 1 of 3) → Paste from Buffer

There are no sub-menus associated with these commands; when they are selected, the copy or paste operation is performed instantly. Marker signals associated with that waveform data are also subjected to the copy and paste operations. Pasting data into a waveform will naturally increase the number of points in that waveform.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Specify the waveform to be copied with the left and right vertical bar cursors. Select **Copy to Buffer** from the displayed side menu.

When **Copy to Buffer** is selected, the waveform data between the vertical bar cursors (including the left and right vertical bar cursor data) is copied into the paste buffer. Marker signals associated with that waveform data are also subjected to the copy operation. This operation does not affect the display on the CRT.

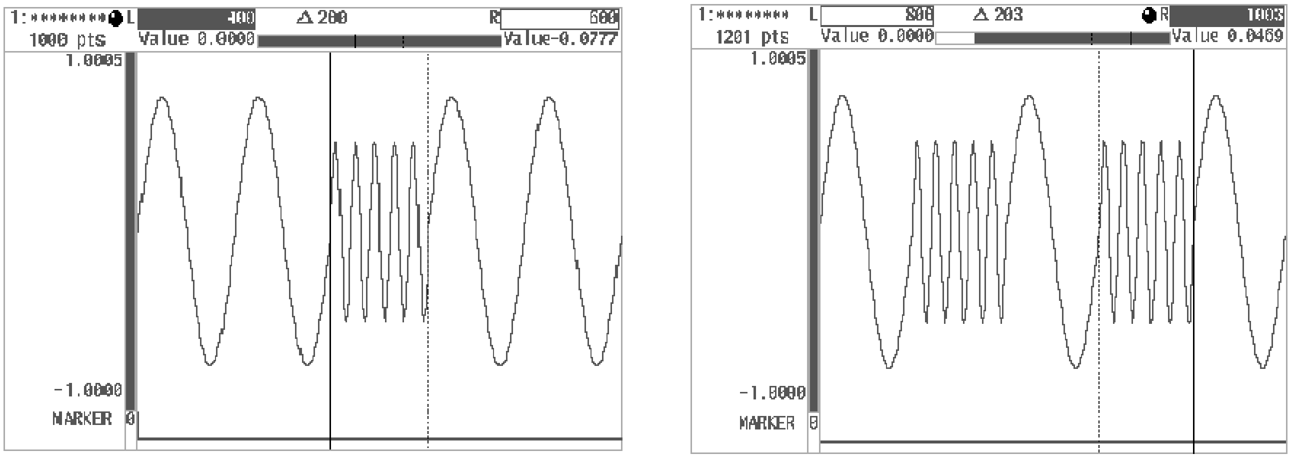
☐ **Step 2:** Press the front panel **CURSOR** button.

☐ **Step 3:** Use the general purpose knob to specify the position to paste the data with whichever of the vertical bar cursors is active.

The data is pasted directly before the active vertical bar cursor. However, when the cursor is at the end of the waveform, the data is inserted directly after the cursor.

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Paste from Buffer** from the side menu.

Figure 4A-25 shows an example of a waveform before and after additional data is pasted into that waveform.



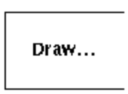
Before *After*

Figure 4A-25: Pasting Waveforms

When **Paste from Buffer** is selected, the waveform data copied into the paste buffer with the copy processing is pasted directly before the active vertical bar cursor. The left and right vertical bar cursors move to the two ends of the pasted waveform data.

The paste buffer data can be inserted into a waveform or used for operations with waveforms by selecting **Insert Other Waveform** or **Math** from the **Operation** menu.

Draw Function



This command is used to draw points between the specified vertical bar cursors and connect these points to create an arbitrary waveform. The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the **Draw...** item.

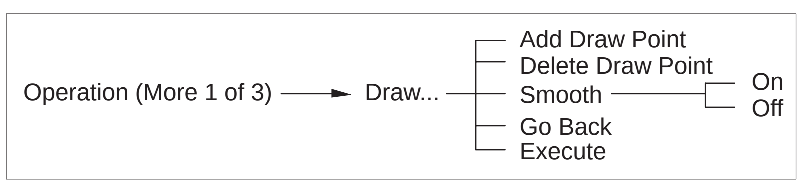


Figure 4A-26 shows an example of the screen with the **Draw...** item selected. This figure will be discussed in the following section.

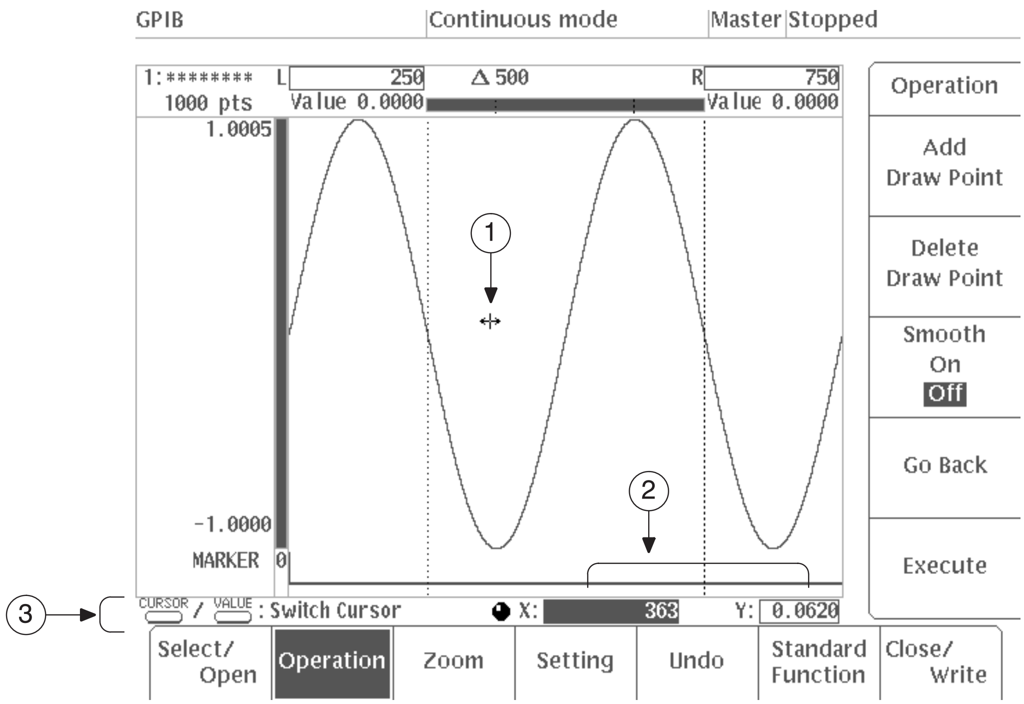


Figure 4A-26: Menu Display When Draw... Item is Selected

(1) Point Cursor

Used to draw points. When this cursor can be moved, the direction in which it can be moved is shown by the arrows.

(2) X–Y Coordinate Axis

Shows the X and Y coordinates of the point cursor described in (1) above. When the coordinates for a coordinate axis are displayed inverted, it indicates that the cursor can be moved in that direction.

(3) Button Operations

CURSOR : Switch Cursor

Pressing the **CURSOR** button toggles the active vertical bar cursor from left to right and back again. Pressing the **VALUE** button toggles the direction in which the point cursor can be moved from up-down to left-right and back again.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Move the left and right vertical bar cursors to define the area within which the waveform will be drawn and then select **Draw...** from the side menu.

The point cursor will appear in the middle of the vertical axis between the left and right vertical bar cursors.

☐ **Step 2:** Press **VALUE** button on the front panel.

☐ **Step 3:** Use the general purpose knob to move the point cursor to the location where you want to place a point.

Each time the front panel **VALUE** button is pressed, the direction of movement for the point cursor switches between horizontal (X) and vertical (Y). The X–Y coordinates for the point cursor position are displayed at the bottom right of the CRT display.

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Add Draw Point** from the sub-menu to place the draw point.

Draw points can be placed outside the left and right vertical bar cursors. However, such points are not drawn when **Execute** is pressed.

NOTE

*You cannot set multiple draw points above the same horizontal position. If you try to do so, the system asks you if you want to change the level for the point already above the horizontal position. To do so, select **O.K.** To abort the operation, select **Cancel**.*

☐ **Step 5:** Repeat Steps 3 and 4 to place as many points as desired.

☐ **Step 6:** To delete a draw point added with **Add Draw Point**, move the point cursor to the point to be deleted, then select **Delete Draw Point**. This deletes the point.

If **Delete Draw Point** is pressed repeatedly, the added points closest to the point cursor are deleted in order.

☐ **Step 7:** Press the **Smooth** button in the sub-menu to switch on smoothing.

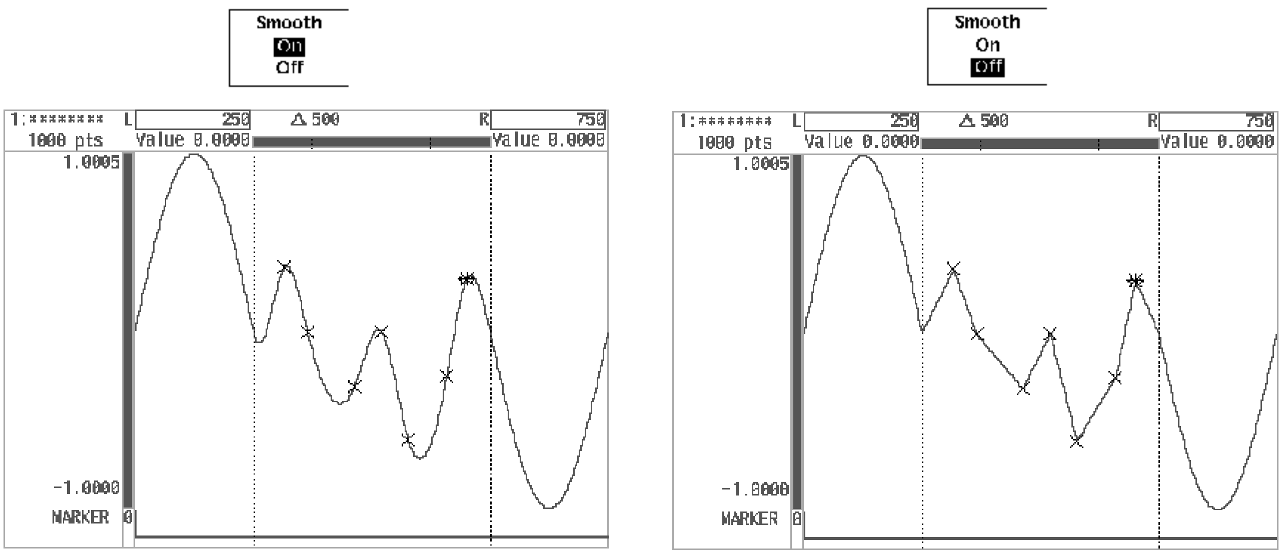
- Smoothing – Smoothing can be toggled **On** or **Off** by pressing the **Smooth** button. When smoothing is **On**, the waveform data is spline interpolated and the curve outside the left and right vertical bar cursors and the placed points are connected with a smooth curve. When smoothing is **Off**, the interpolation is linear and the curve outside the left and right vertical bar cursors and the placed points are connected with a straight line. When the vertical bar cursors are at the ends of the waveform being edited, the waveform start and finish are given the values to be smooth waveform as the repetition waveforms whether smoothing is on or off.

☐ **Step 8:** Select **Execute** from the sub-menu. The points between the vertical bar cursors will be connected with smooth curves, as shown in the left screen in Figure 4A-27. This is called spline interpolation.

☐ **Step 9:** To return to the original waveform, select **Undo** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 10:** Press the **Smooth** button in the sub-menu to switch off smoothing.

☐ **Step 11:** Select **Execute** from the sub-menu. The points between the vertical bar cursors will be connected with straight lines, as shown in the right screen in Figure 4A-27. This is called linear interpolation.



Spline Interpolated Display *Linear Interpolated Display*

Figure 4A-27: Smoothing

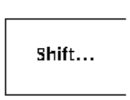
NOTE

*To cancel drawing execution, select **Undo** from the bottom menu. The waveform before the drawing is displayed again.*

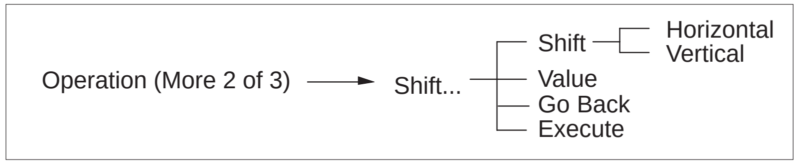
☐ **Step 12:** Select **Go Back** from the current sub-menu. The display moves from the **Draw...** sub-menu to the side menu.

This completes the drawing procedure.

Shift Function



Use **Shift...** to shift the waveform data in the area specified with the vertical bar cursors in the vertical or horizontal direction. The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the **Shift...** item.



In the horizontal direction, the shift value is the number of points or time; in the vertical direction, the shift value is specified with the vertical value.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Move the left and right vertical bar cursors to define the section of the waveform to be shifted. Then select **Shift...** from the second page of the side menu (**More 2 of 3**).

Horizontal shift

☐ **Step 2:** Press the **Shift** button in the sub-menu to select **Horizontal**.

The **Shift** side menu item selects the direction in which the waveform data between the vertical bar cursors is to be shifted.

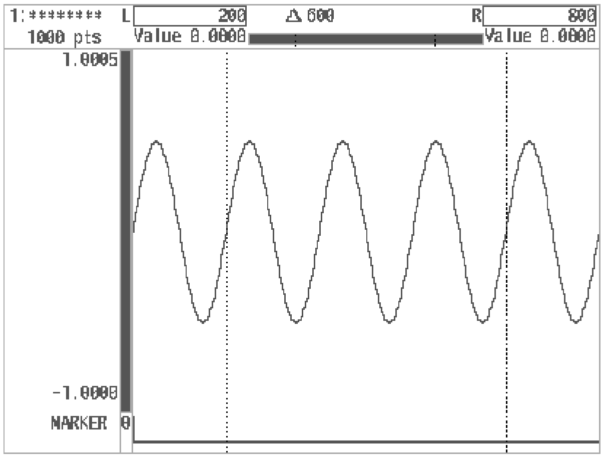
☐ **Step 3:** Select **Value** from the sub-menu.

☐ **Step 4:** Use the general purpose knob or the numeric keys to input the shift point value. This value will be expressed as either number of points or time, depending on the horizontal unit setting (the value set with **Horiz. Unit** under **Setting**).

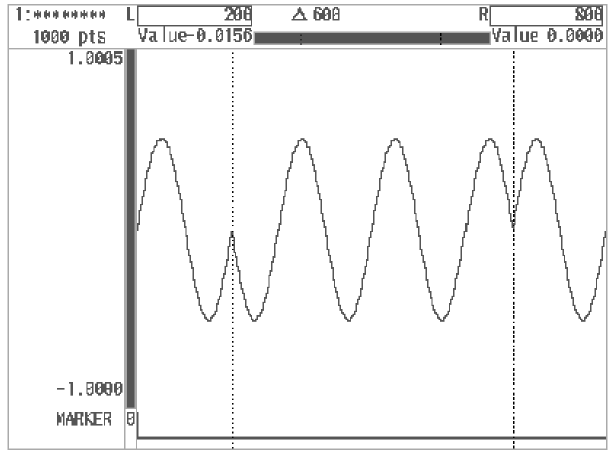
- Horizontal shift — This command allows you to shift all of the points or time values in the whole editing area; it can be set to either a positive or a negative value. When the shift value is positive, the waveform moves to the right; when it is negative, the waveform moves to the left. Data that protrudes outside the range defined by the vertical bar cursors as a result of shifting is added to the end of either the right or left vertical bar cursor, depending on whether the shift value is positive or negative.

☐ **Step 5:** Select **Execute** from the sub-menu. The waveform is shifted horizontally with the specified conditions.

Figure 4A-28 shows the waveform between the vertical bar cursors shifted right 100 points.



Before



After

Figure 4A-28: Horizontally Shifted Display

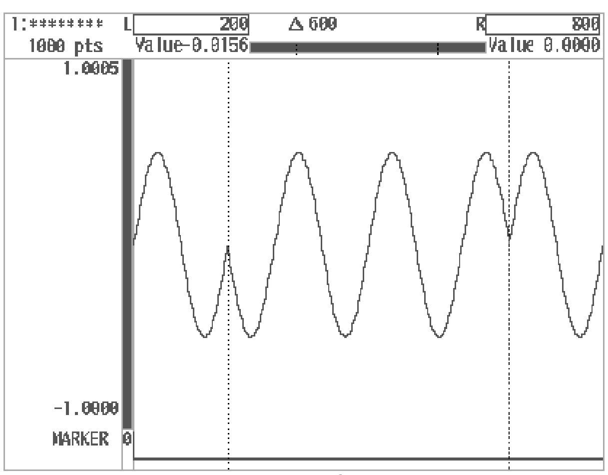
Vertical shift

☐ **Step 6:** Press the **Shift** button in the sub-menu to select **Vertical**.

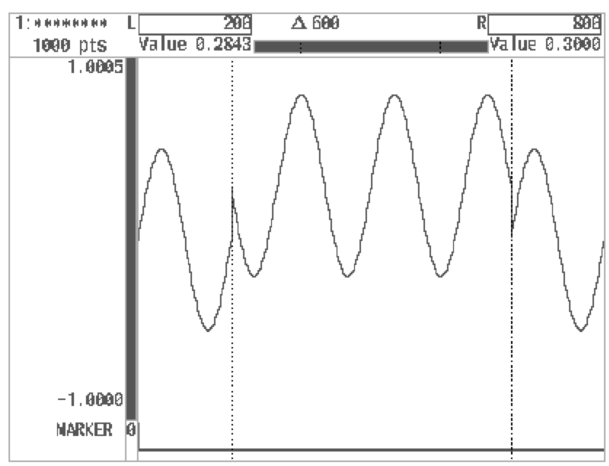
☐ **Step 7:** Select **Value** from the sub-menu. Use the general purpose knob or the numeric keys to input the shift point value.

- Vertical shift — The waveform can be shifted between −1.0000 and +1.0005 for the full scale of the vertical axis. A positive shift moves the waveform up, a negative shift down. However, any points shifted beyond the vertical full scale are clipped.

☐ **Step 8:** Select **Execute** from the sub-menu. The waveform is shifted vertically with the specified conditions. Figure 4A-29 shows the waveform between the vertical bar cursors shifted up 0.3.



Before

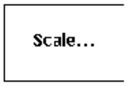


After

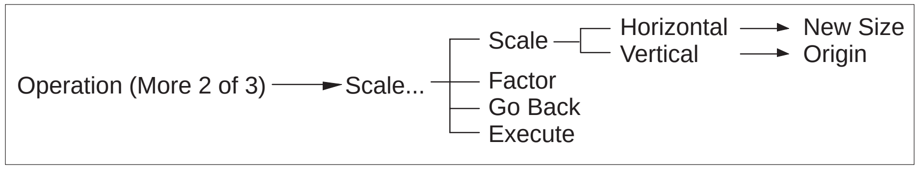
Figure 4A-29: Vertically Shifted Display

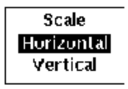
☐ **Step 9:** Select **Go Back** from the sub-menu.

Scaling Function



Use **Scale...** to change the scale for the waveform data between the vertical bar cursors. Executing scaling changes the waveform data. The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the **Scale...** item.





Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Move the left and right vertical bar cursors to define the editing area for scaling, then select **Scale...** from the second page of the side menu (**More 2 of 3**).

Horizontal Scaling

☐ **Step 2:** Press the **Scale** button in the sub-menu to select **Horizontal**.

The **Scale** sub-menu item selects the direction in which the data between the vertical bar cursors is scaled.

☐ **Step 3:** Select **Factor** or **New Size** from the sub-menu.

The magnification for scaling can be set with either **Factor** or **New Size**.

- **Factor** — The waveform data between the vertical bar cursors is expanded/reduced by this ratio. This parameter is linked with **New Size**. Factor can be set within the range ±100 in steps of 0.01. However, the total number of points for the entire waveform can not exceed 262144, so if x100 scaling would give more total points than that, the maximum setting factor drops to the one that gives 262144 points. A negative factor reverses the waveform between the vertical bar cursors creating a mirror image.

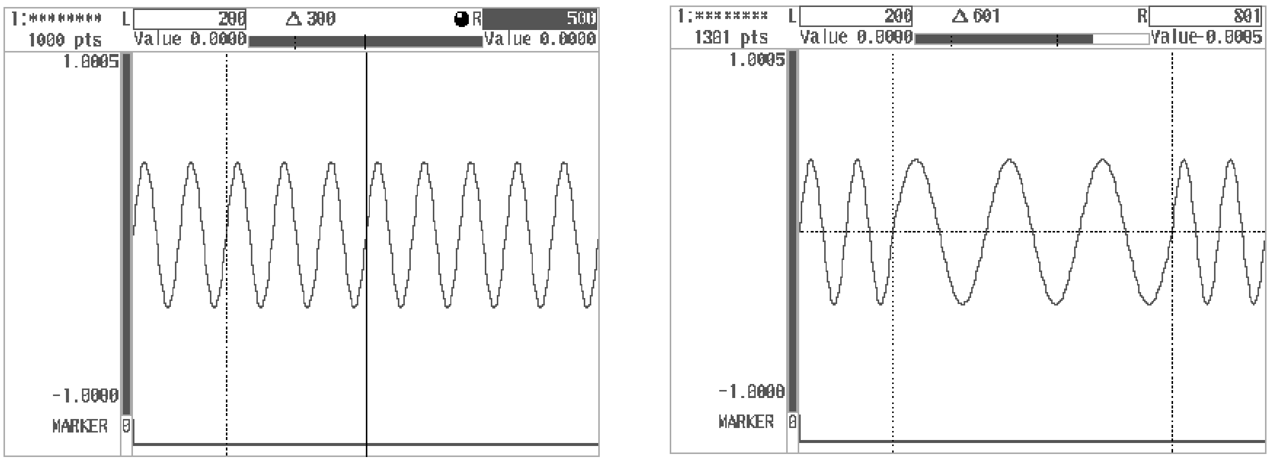
  Scaling with a factor under 1.00 and greater than −1.00 (±0.99) reduces the waveform horizontally between the vertical bar cursors and reduces the number of points for the entire waveform. Scaling with a factor greater than 1.00 or less than −1.00 expands the waveform horizontally between the vertical bar cursors and increases the number of points for the entire waveform.

- **New Size** — This parameter expands/reduces the waveform data between the vertical bar cursors in units of points. This parameter is linked with **Factor**. The limit on the range of **New Size** is that the number of points between the vertical bar cursors can not be increased to more than x100 their original number and the number of points for the entire waveform can not exceed 262144.

☐ **Step 4:** Use the numeric keys or general purpose knob to input the scaling factor or the number of points.

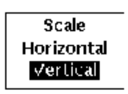
☐ **Step 5:** Select **Execute** from the sub-menu. The section of the waveform between the vertical bar cursors will be scaled horizontally in the middle of the left vertical bar cursor.

Figure 4A-30 shows a waveform expanded to x2 horizontally between the vertical bar cursors with a **Factor**.



Before *After*

Figure 4A-30: Display Expanded Horizontally



Vertical Scaling

☐ **Step 6:** Press the **Scale** button in the sub-menu to select **Vertical**.

☐ **Step 7:** Select **Origin** from the sub-menu. Use the numeric keys or the general purpose knob to input the numeric value of the origin.

- **Origin** — This value is used as a reference when scaling vertically. It may be set to any value between −1.0000 and +1.0005 for the full scale of the vertical axis.

☐ **Step 8:** Select **Factor** from the sub-menu.

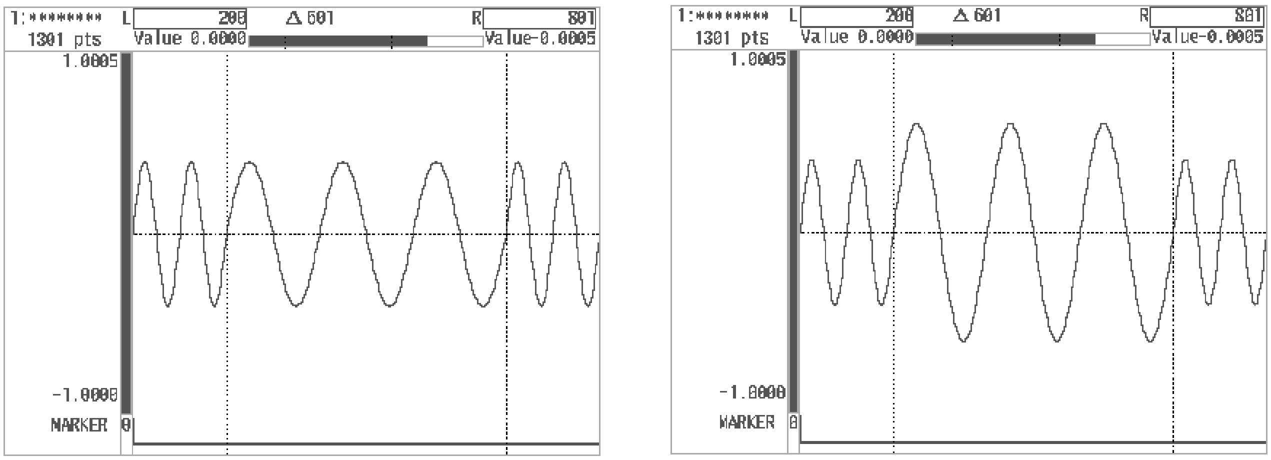
☐ **Step 9:** Use the numeric keys or general purpose knob to input the scaling factor.

- **Factor** — Factor can be set within the range ±100 in steps of 0.01. A negative factor causes the waveform between the vertical bar cursors to produce a mirror image about the origin value.

Scaling with a factor under 1.00 and greater than −1.00 (±0.99) reduces the waveform vertically between the vertical bar cursors. Scaling with a factor greater than 1.00 or less than −1.00 expands the waveform vertically between the vertical bar cursors. Waveform data pushed beyond the full scale of the vertical axis by scaling is clipped.

☐ **Step 10:** Select **Execute** from the sub-menu. The waveform is scaled with the specified conditions.

Figure 4A-31 shows an example of **Factor** being used to enlarge the section of the waveform between the vertical bar cursors. In this example, the waveform has been enlarged 1.5 times vertically around the reference line.

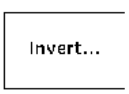


Before *After*

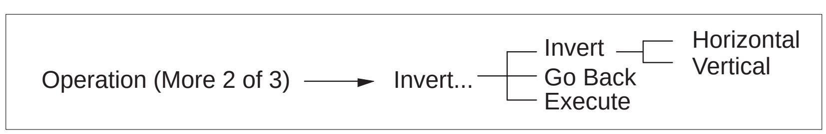
Figure 4A-31: Display Expanded to x1.5 Vertically

☐ **Step 11:** Select **Go Back** from the sub-menu. The system moves from the **Scale...** sub-menu to the previous side menu.

Invert Function



Use **Invert...** to invert the waveform data in the area specified with the vertical bar cursors either up/down or left/right. The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the **Invert...** item.



Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Move the left and right vertical bar cursors to define the editing area for inversion, then select **Invert...** from the second page of the side menu (**More 2 of 3**).

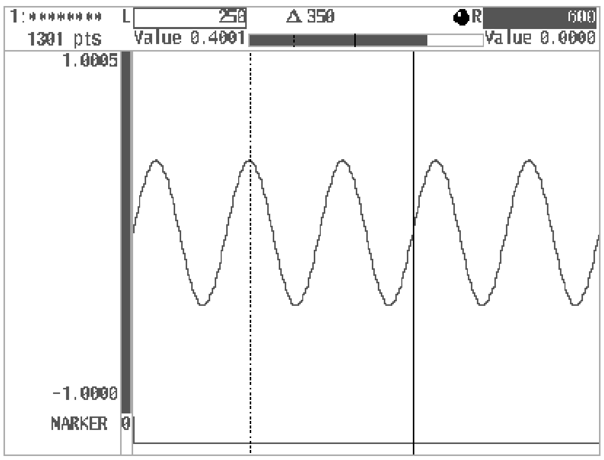
Inverting the waveform horizontally

☐ **Step 2:** Press the **Invert** button in the sub-menu to select **Horizontal**.

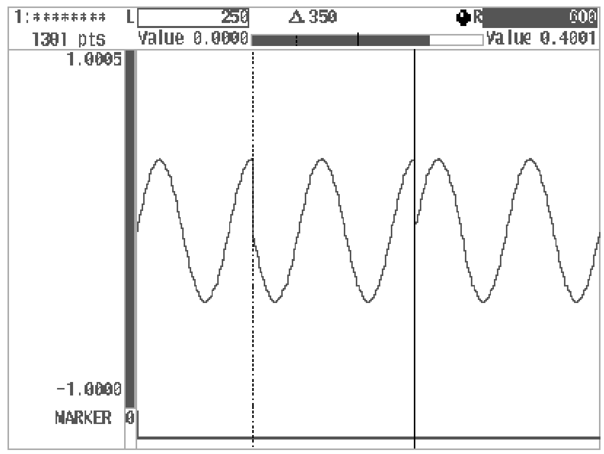
The **Invert** selects the direction in which the waveform data between the vertical bar cursors is inverted.

☐ **Step 3:** Select **Execute** from the sub-menu. The waveform is inverted horizontally with the specified conditions.

Figure 4A-32 shows an example of the waveform before and after it is inverted horizontally.



Before



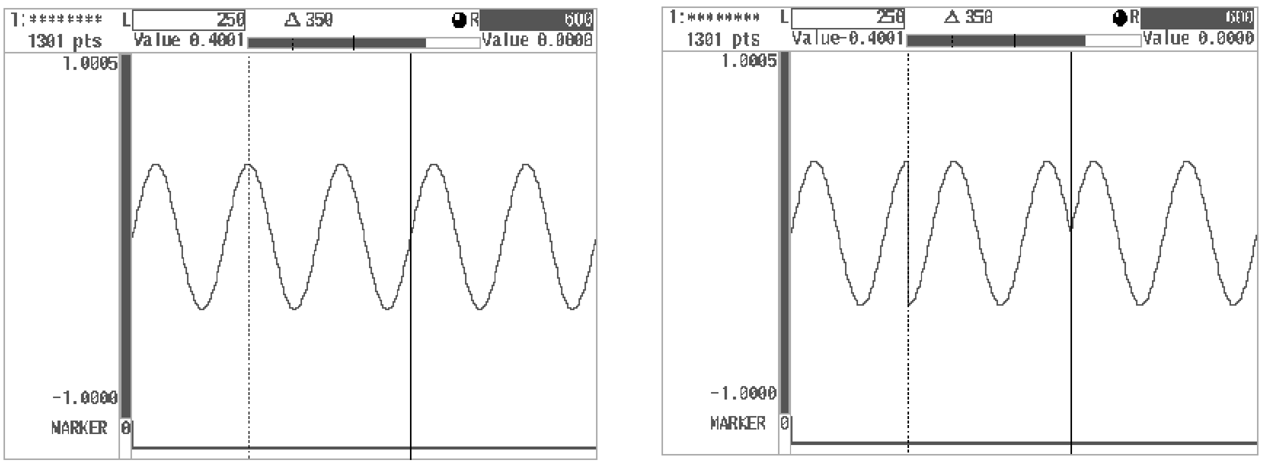
After

Figure 4A-32: Horizontally Inverted Display

Inverting the waveform vertically

☐ **Step 4:** Press the **Invert** button in the sub-menu to select **Vertical**.

☐ **Step 5:** Select **Execute** from the sub-menu. The waveform is inverted vertically with the specified conditions. Figure 4A-33 shows an example of the waveform before and after it is inverted vertically.

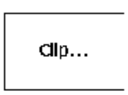


Before *After*

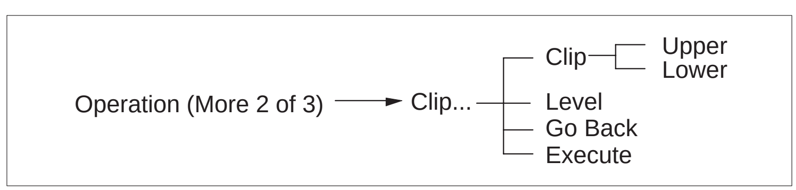
Figure 4A-33: Vertically Inverted Display

☐ **Step 6:** Select **Go Back** from the current sub-menu. The system returns from the **Invert...** sub-menu to the side menu.

Clip Function



Use **Clip...** to clip (remove) any waveform data between the vertical bar cursors that is above or below the set level. The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the **Clip...** item.



Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Move the left and right vertical bar cursors to define the editing area for clipping, then select **Clip...** from the second page of the side menu (**More 2 of 3**). A horizontal (broken) line showing the clip level will appear.

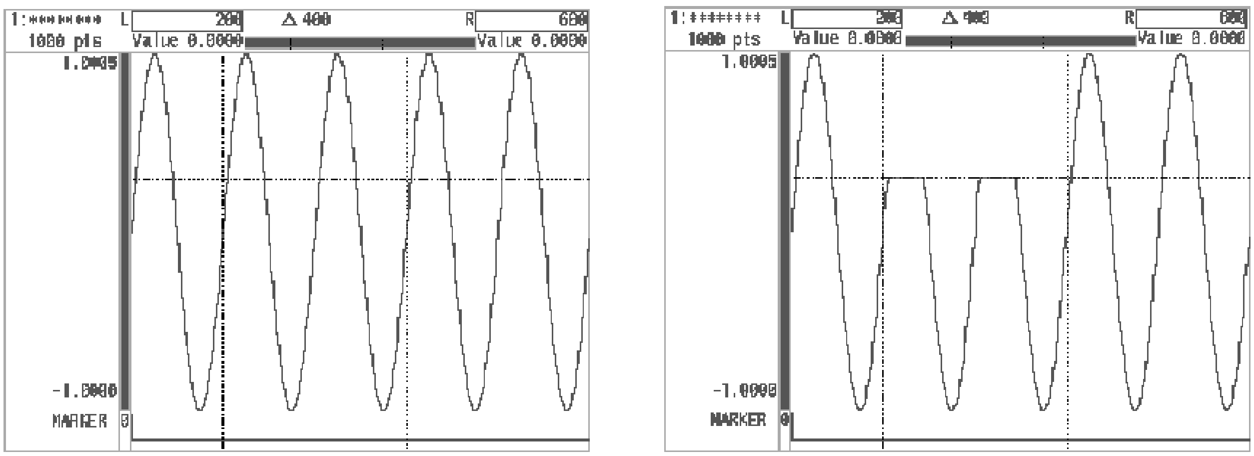
☐ **Step 2:** Press the **Clip** button in the sub-menu to select **Upper** or **Lower**.

The **Clip** sub-menu item selects the area of the waveform data between the vertical bar cursors to be clipped. Either the area above the clip level (**Upper**) or below the clip level (**Lower**) can be selected.

☐ **Step 3:** Select **Level** from the sub-menu.

☐ **Step 4:** Use the numeric keys or the general purpose knob to input the clip level.

☐ **Step 5:** Select **Execute** from the sub-menu. The waveform is clipped with the specified conditions. Figure 4A-34 shows the waveform clipped above 0.3.

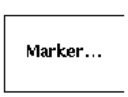


Before *After*

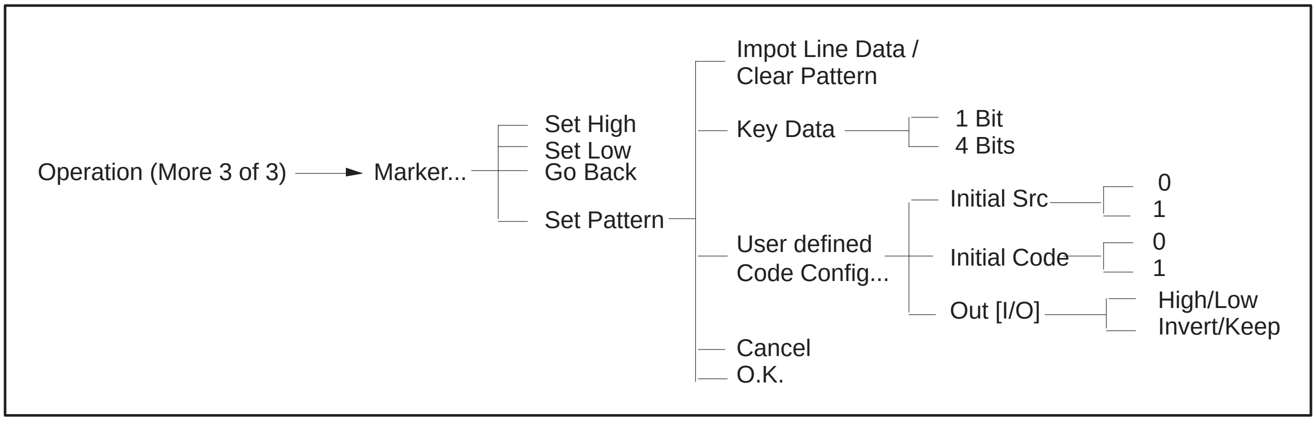
Figure 4A-34: Display of Waveform Clipped Above Clip Level

☐ **Step 6:** Select **Go Back** from the sub-menu. The system returns from the **Clip...** sub-menu to the side menu.

Setting a Marker



The **Marker...** item is used to set the marker signal (shown at the bottom of the screen) for the section of the waveform between the vertical bar cursors. This signal may be set to High, Low or Pattern. The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the **Marker...** item.



NOTE

When a new waveform file is created, the marker signal for the first point of the waveform data is set to high as a default value.

The output level for the marker signal is 2V with a termination of 50 Ω. The marker signals for CH1 and CH2 are output from the **CH1 MARKER OUT** and **CH2 MARKER OUT** connectors, respectively, on the rear panel. Similarly, when Option 02 is installed, the CH3 and CH4 marker signals are output from the **CH3 MARKER OUT** and **CH4 MARKER OUT** connectors, respectively, on the rear panel.

The marker level changes to low after waveform output is complete or when the **STOP** button in the **MODE** menu is pressed.

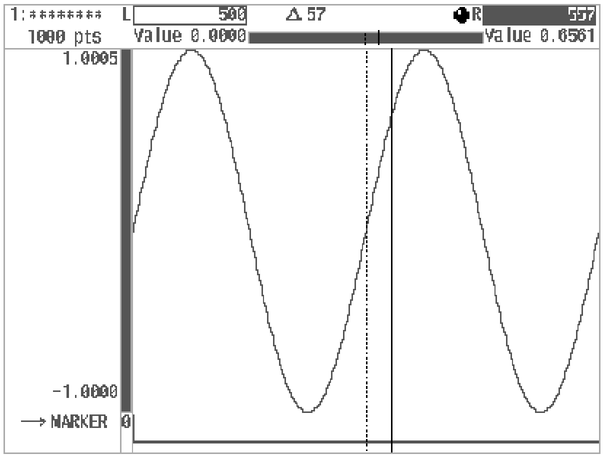
Procedure

- [ ] **Step 1:** Move the left and right vertical bar cursors to define the area for marker setting, then select **Marker...** from the third page of the side menu (**More 3 of 3**).

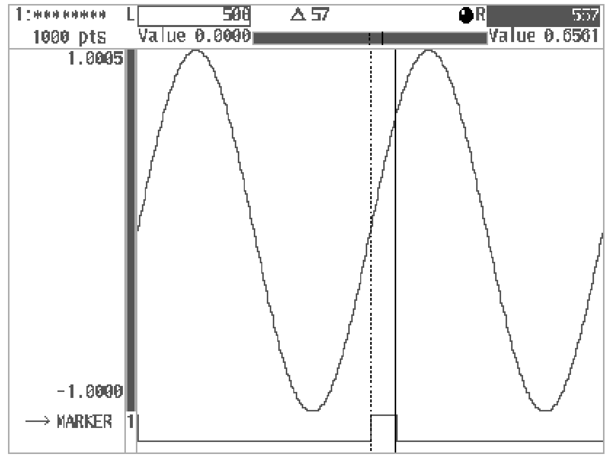
- [ ] **Step 2:** Press the sub-menu **Set High** or **Set Low** button to set the desired marker state. Figure 4A-35 shows marker signal set high between the vertical bar cursors.

  Set High — The marker signal for the section of the waveform between the vertical bar cursors will be set to High.

  Set Low — The marker signal for the section of the waveform between the vertical bar cursors will be set to Low.



Before



After

Figure 4A-35: Marker Signal Set High

☐ **Step 3:** Select **Go Back** from the sub-menu. The system returns from the **Marker...** sub-menu to the side menu.

Setting a Marker Pattern

In this example, you will set a pattern for the marker and then create a marker signal with that pattern used as the period. Marker patterns are set with the **Set Pattern** item.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Move the left and right vertical bar cursors to define the area for setting a marker pattern, then select **Marker...** from the third page of the side menu (**More 3 of 3**).

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Set Pattern** from the sub-menu. The sub-menu for this item will appear.

☐ **Step 3:** Using the numeric keys, enter the data for the marker pattern. Data can be entered in either 1-bit or 4-bits increments.

Key Data – Pressing this button toggles the increment setting from **1 Bit** to **4 Bits** and back again.

Import Line Data/**Clear Pattern** – Pressing the **Import Line Data** button imports the marker data for the designated editor as pattern data. When this is done, the menu item will change to **Clear Pattern**. This command is used to delete all of the pattern data that has been imported or created. When the **Clear Pattern** button is pressed to delete the pattern data, the menu item changes back to **Import Line Data**.

User defined Code Config... – Used to define a custom conversion table for code conversion.

For detailed instructions on pattern setting, see ”Setting Pattern Data” in the timing display in this section as well as ”Pattern Codes” in Appendix D.

For more detailed information on the method used to set patterns, see ”Setting Pattern Data” in the Timing Display in this section and ”Pattern Code” in Appendix D.

Figure 4A-36 shows an example of pattern data being entered.

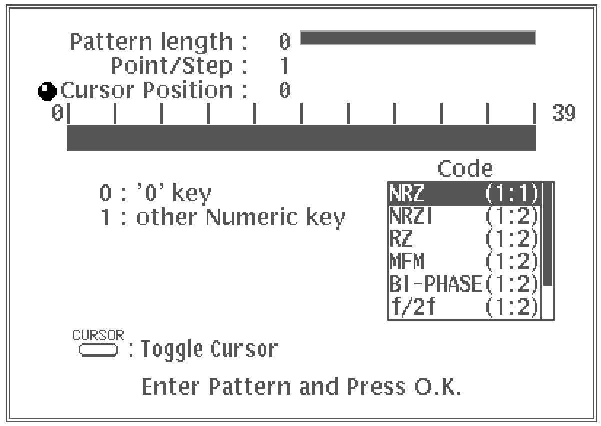
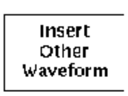


Figure 4A-36: Entering Pattern Data

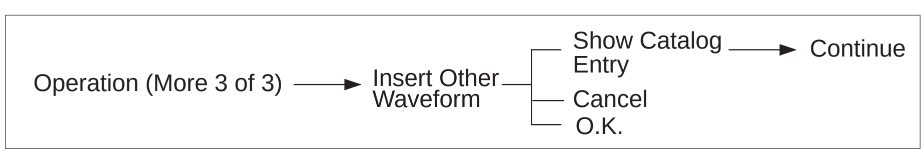
☐ **Step 4:** When you have finished creating the pattern data, select **O.K.** The marker data between the left and right vertical bar cursors will be replaced with the pattern data that you have created. To cancel the operation, select **Cancel**. Whichever option you select **O.K.** or **Cancel**, the menu that was displayed before **Set Pattern** was selected will reappear.

☐ **Step 5:** Select **Go Back** from the sub-menu. The system returns from the **Marker...** sub-menu to the side menu.

Inserting Other Waveforms



Use **Insert Other Waveform** to insert other waveforms into any desired location within the waveform being edited. The following diagram shows the menu configuration.



Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Press the front panel **CURSOR** button.

☐ **Step 2:** Use the general purpose knob to move the active vertical bar cursor to the position where the other waveform is to be inserted.

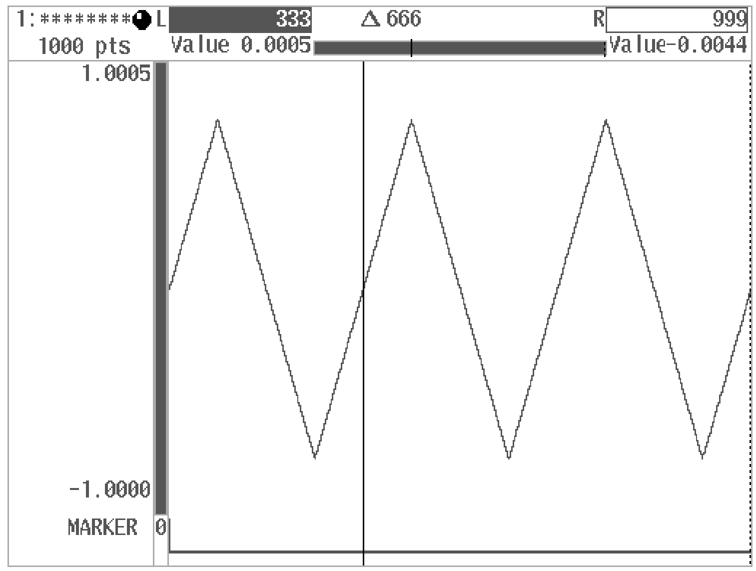


Figure 4A-37: Defining the Location for Insertion

The other waveform is inserted right before the active vertical bar cursor. However, when the cursor is at the end of the waveform, the data is inserted directly after the cursor.

☐ **Step 3:** After setting the position to insert the other waveform, select **Insert Other Waveform** from the side menu. A list of waveform files is displayed.

Data placed into the paste buffer with **Cut** or **Copy** is listed at the top of the file list with the name "**Paste Buffer.**" The data in the paste buffer can be inserted into any desired location by selecting this item.

☐ **Step 4:** Use the general purpose knob to select the waveform file to be inserted from the file list.

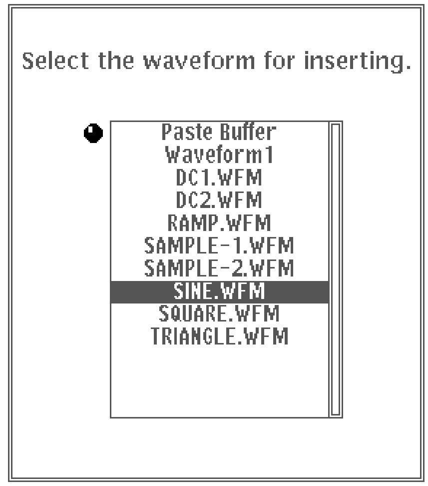


Figure 4A-38: List of Files for Insertion

☐ **Step 5:** Select the **Show Catalog Entry** from the sub-menu. The waveform for the selected file is displayed.

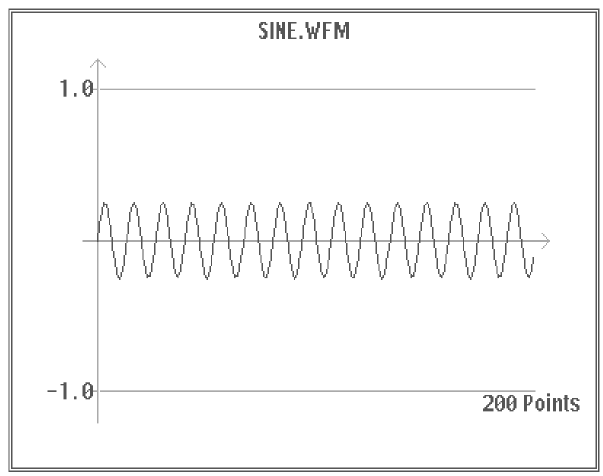


Figure 4A-39: File Waveform Display

☐ **Step 6:** Select **O.K.** from the sub-menu.

The waveform from the selected file is inserted right before the active vertical bar cursor. Select **Cancel** to cancel the waveform insertion. When **O.K.** or **Cancel** is selected, the display returns to the menu displayed before **Insert Other Waveform** was selected.

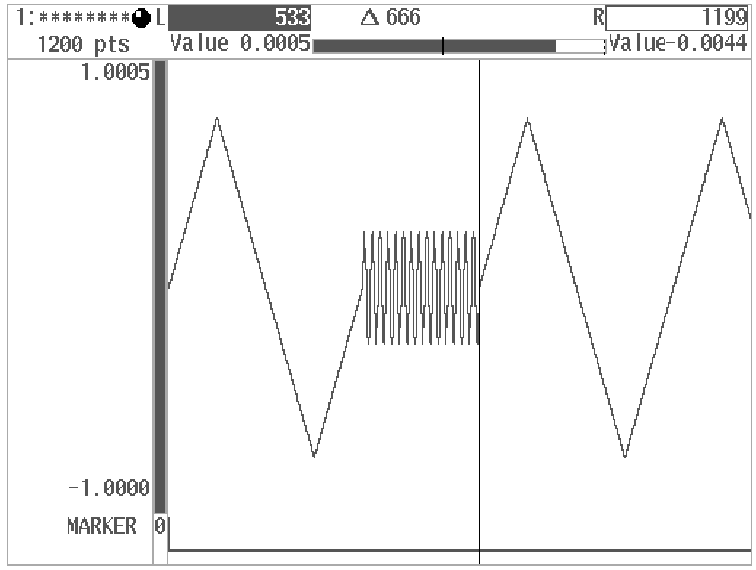
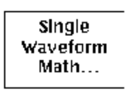


Figure 4A-40: Inserting Waveforms

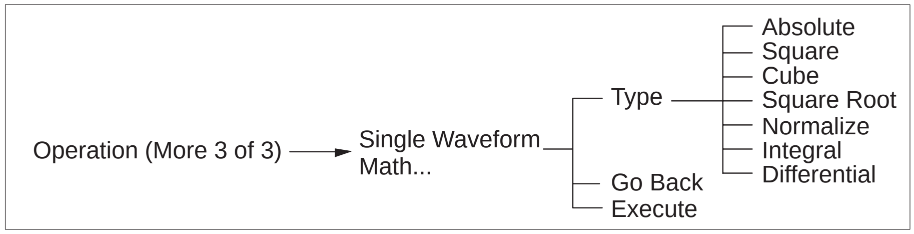
Single Waveform Calculations



The **Single Waveform Math...** item allows you to perform mathematical calculations for the waveform itself. Calculations are applied to the portion of the waveform between the vertical bar cursors.

- Absolute — Determines the absolute value for the amplitude
- Square — Doubles the absolute value for the amplitude; if the amplitude is a negative number, the calculated result is also negative
- Cube — Triples the amplitude
- Square Root — Determines the square root for the absolute value of the amplitude; if the amplitude is a negative number, the calculated result is also negative
- Normalize — Normalizes the amplitude values so that the maximum absolute value is 1.0 (i.e. a value of +1.0 or −1.0)
- Integral — Integrates the amplitude and normalizes
- Differential — Differentiates the amplitude and normalizes

The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the **Single Waveform Math...** item.



Procedure

To derive the **Absolute** value for the amplitude of a sine wave between the vertical bar cursors:

- ☐ **Step 1:** Create the sine wave to be subjected to **Absolute** calculation. Figure 4A-41 shows the sine wave before calculations are performed.

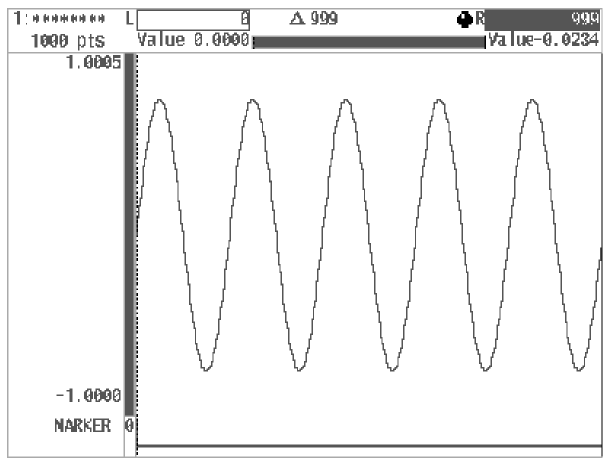


Figure 4A-41: Waveform Example before Calculation

- ☐ **Step 2:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel.
- ☐ **Step 3:** Using the general purpose knob, move the left and right vertical bar cursors to define the area for calculation.
- ☐ **Step 4:** Select **Single Waveform Math...** from the third page of the side menu (**More 3 of 3**).
- ☐ **Step 5:** Press the **Type** button in the sub-menu and select **Absolute**.
- ☐ **Step 6:** Select **Execute** from the sub-menu. The absolute value will be derived for the section of the waveform located between the vertical bar cursors. Figure 4A-42 shows the waveform after calculation.

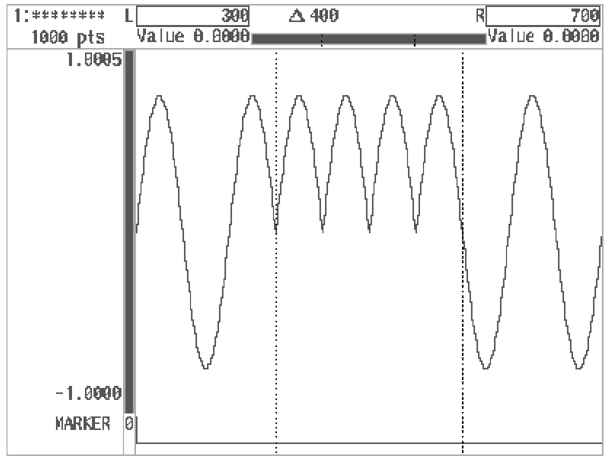
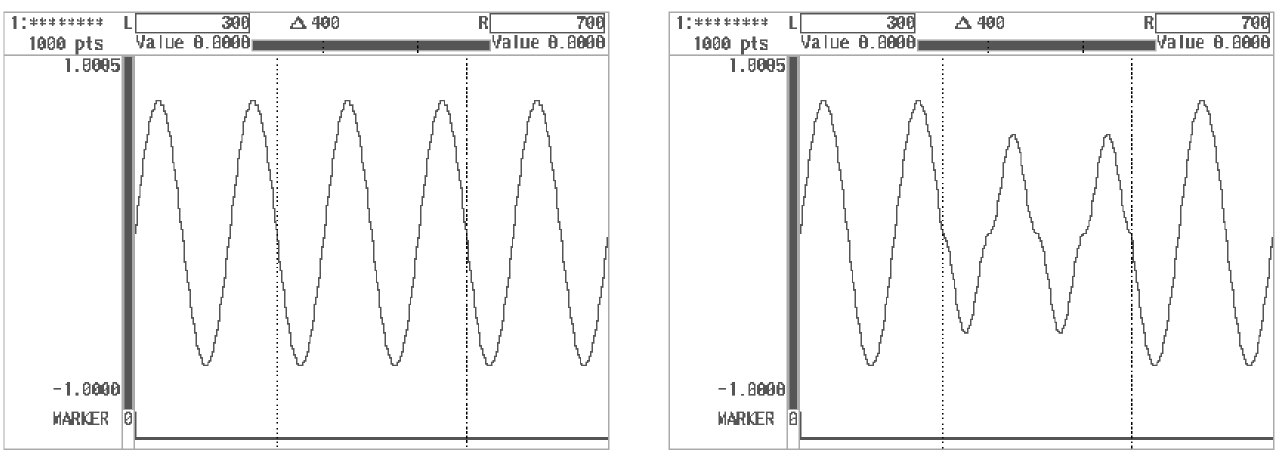


Figure 4A-42: Absolute Calculation

☐ **Step 7:** Select **Go Back** from the sub-menu. The system returns from the **Single Waveform Math...** sub-menu to the side menu.

The following diagrams show examples of a waveform before and after various calculations are performed.

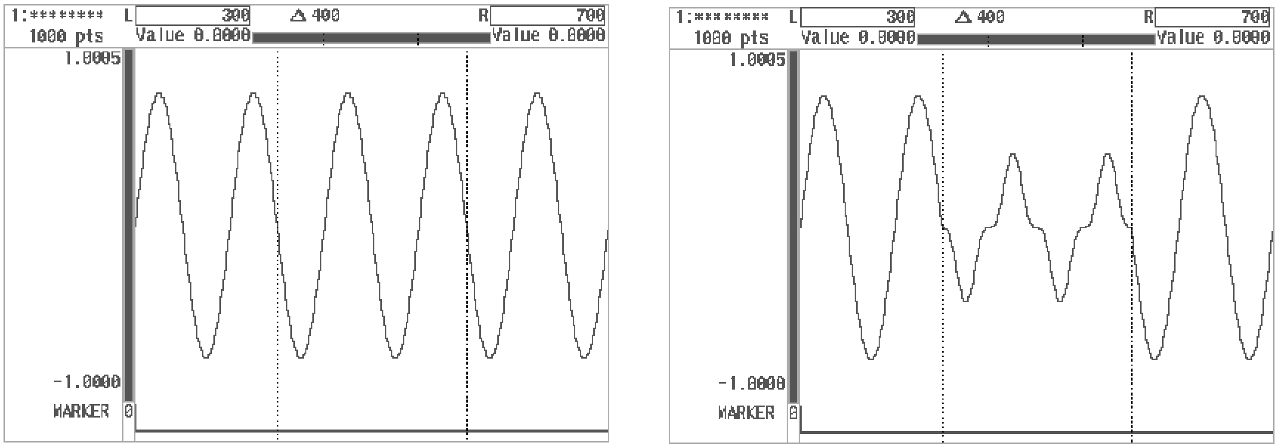
Square — Doubles the absolute value for the amplitude



Before *After*

Figure 4A-43: Square Calculation

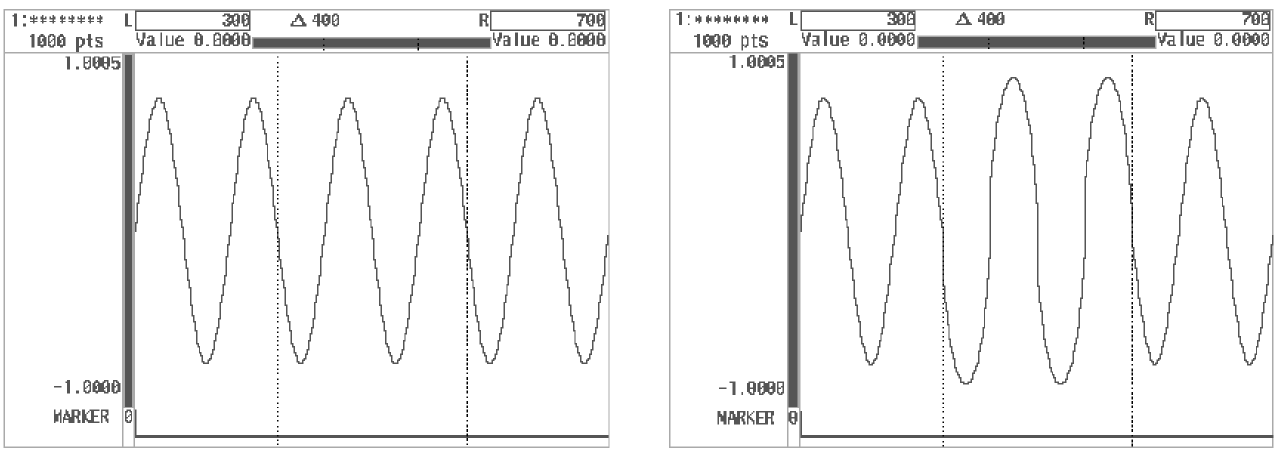
Cube — Triples the amplitude



Before *After*

Figure 4A-44: Cube Calculation

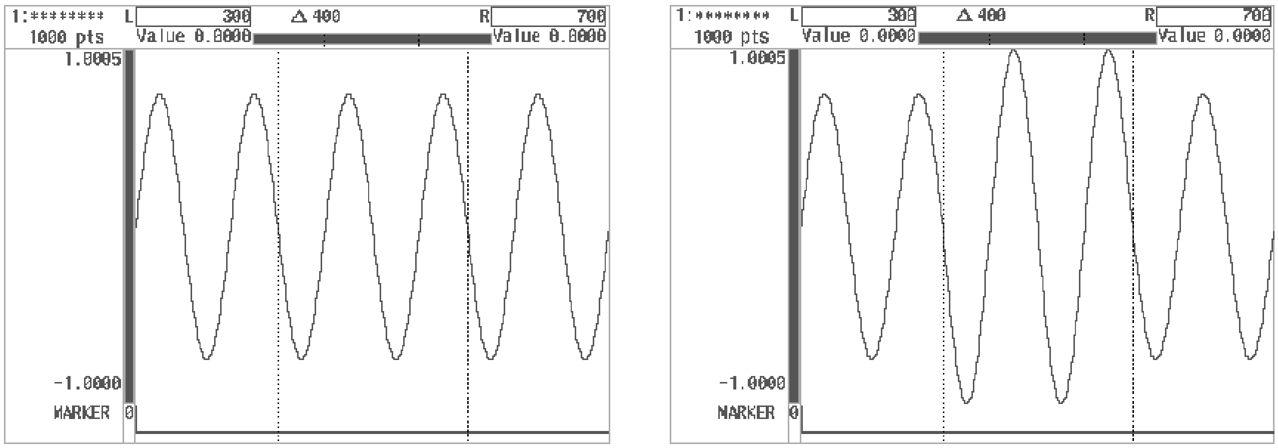
Square Root — Determines the square root for the absolute value of the amplitude



Before *After*

Figure 4A-45: Square Root Calculation

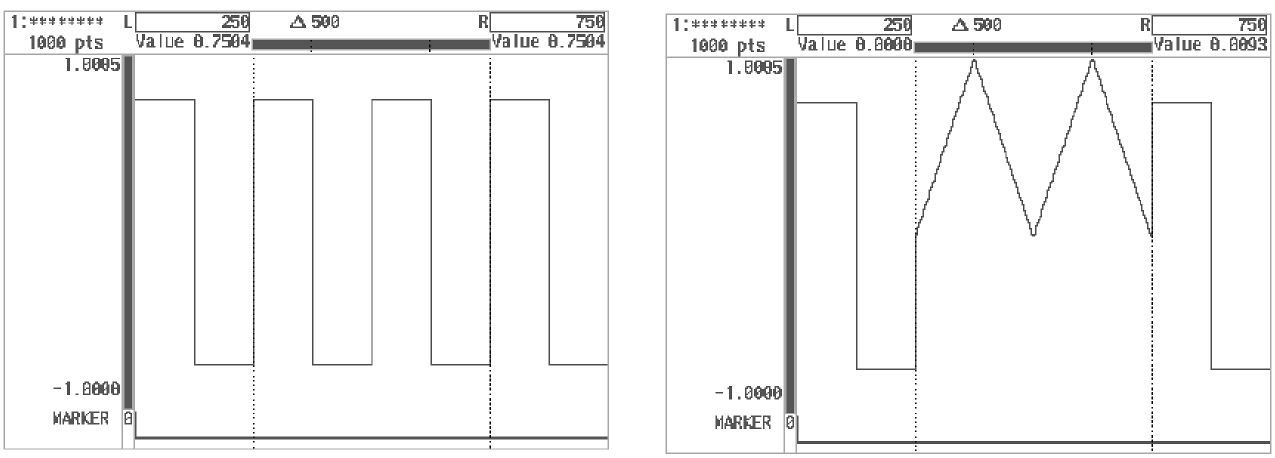
Normalize — Normalizes the amplitude



Before *After*

Figure 4A-46: Normalize Calculation

Integral — Integrating the amplitude



Before *After*

Figure 4A-47: Integral Calculation

Differential — Differentiating the amplitude

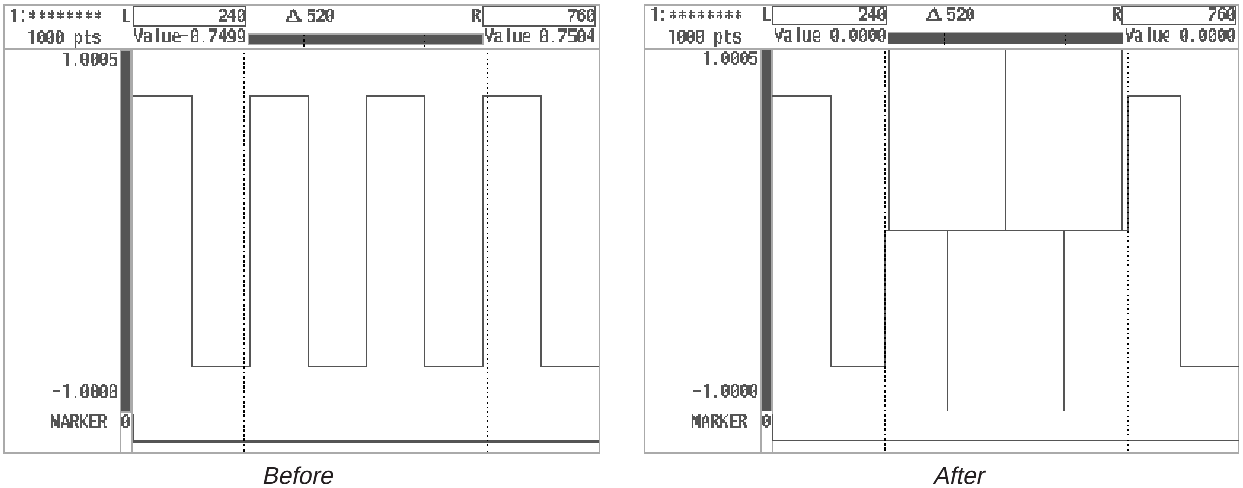
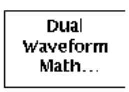


Figure 4A-48: Differential Calculation

Calculations With Other Waveform Data



Use **Dual Waveform Math...** to perform math calculations with the waveform currently being edited and other waveform data. The following calculations can be performed:

- Add — Adds the waveform data being edited and the other waveform file data.
- Sub — Subtracts the other waveform file data from the wave from data being edited.
- Mul — Multiplies the waveform file data being edited by the other waveform file data.

The region pushed out beyond the vertical axis full scale by the calculations is clipped.

The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the **Dual Waveform Math...** item.

Operation (More 3 of 3) → Dual Waveform Math...
- Add
- Sub
- Mul
- Cancel
- Show Catalog Entry

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Create the waveform to be operated on with the other waveform file data. Figure 4A-49 shows the example of waveform before the arithmetic operations.

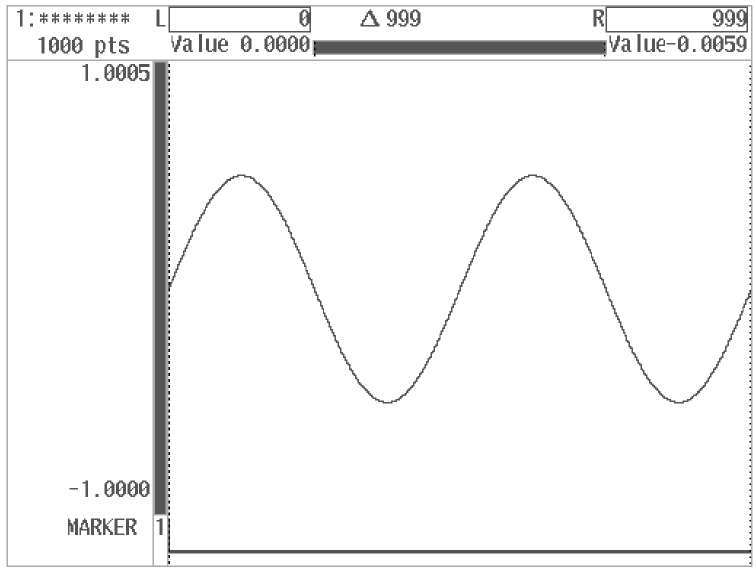


Figure 4A-49: Example of Waveform Before Arithmetic Operations

☐ **Step 2:** Press the front panel **CURSOR** button.

☐ **Step 3:** Using the general purpose knob, move the vertical cursor bars to define the area for calculation.

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Dual Waveform Math...** from the third page of the side menu (**More 3 of 3**).

☐ **Step 5:** A list of files will be displayed on the screen. Using the general purpose knob, select the file for which the calculations will be performed. Calculations will be executed for both the section of the waveform data being edited between the vertical bar cursors and the selected waveform file.

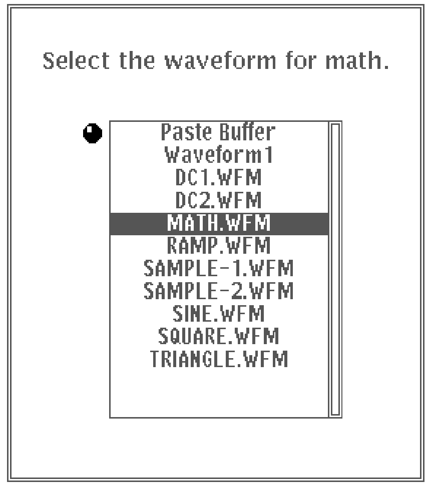


Figure 4A-50: List of Files for Waveform Calculation

☐ **Step 6:** Select **Show Catalog Entry** from the sub-menu. The waveform for the selected file is displayed. See Figure 4A-51.

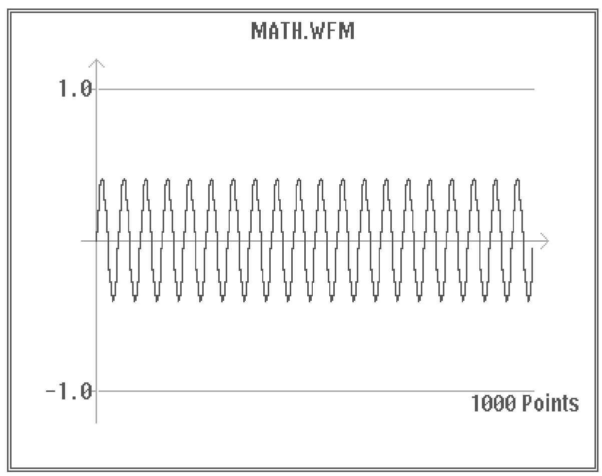


Figure 4A-51: Selected File Waveform Display

☐ **Step 7:** After verifying the waveform, select **Continue** from the sub-menu. The waveform will disappear and the system returns to previous **Dual Waveform Math...** sub-menu.

☐ **Step 8:** Select the desired calculation type from the sub-menu. The moment a calculation type is selected, the calculation is carried out and the results are displayed on the CRT screen. The display returns to the menu on display before **Dual Waveform Math...** was selected. Figure 4A-52 displays the waveforms added (**Add**) between the vertical bar cursors.

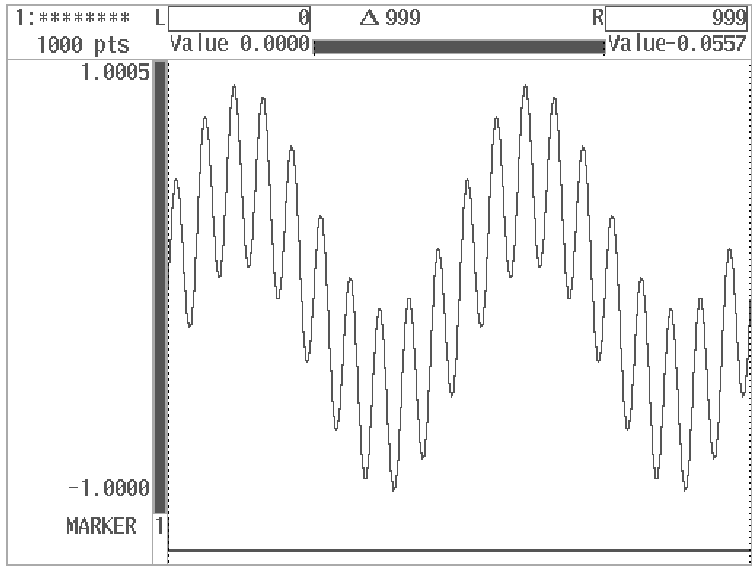


Figure 4A-52: Waveform Addition Display

If you select **Cancel**, the menu returns to the menu on display before **Dual Waveform Math...** was selected without any calculations being made.

Data placed into the paste buffer with **Cut** or **Copy** is listed at the top of the file list with the name "**Paste Buffer.**" When this item is selected, an operation is carried out with the data in the paste buffer.

Specified Region Shift

The **Region Shift...** item shifts a user-specified region of a waveform in one of the following ways.

- Right or left
- Expand (out from the center)
- Compress (in toward the center)

If the specified amount of the shift is less than the sampling interval, the original waveform is resampled using data interpolation to derive the shifted values. The **Region Shift...** item has the following menu configuration.

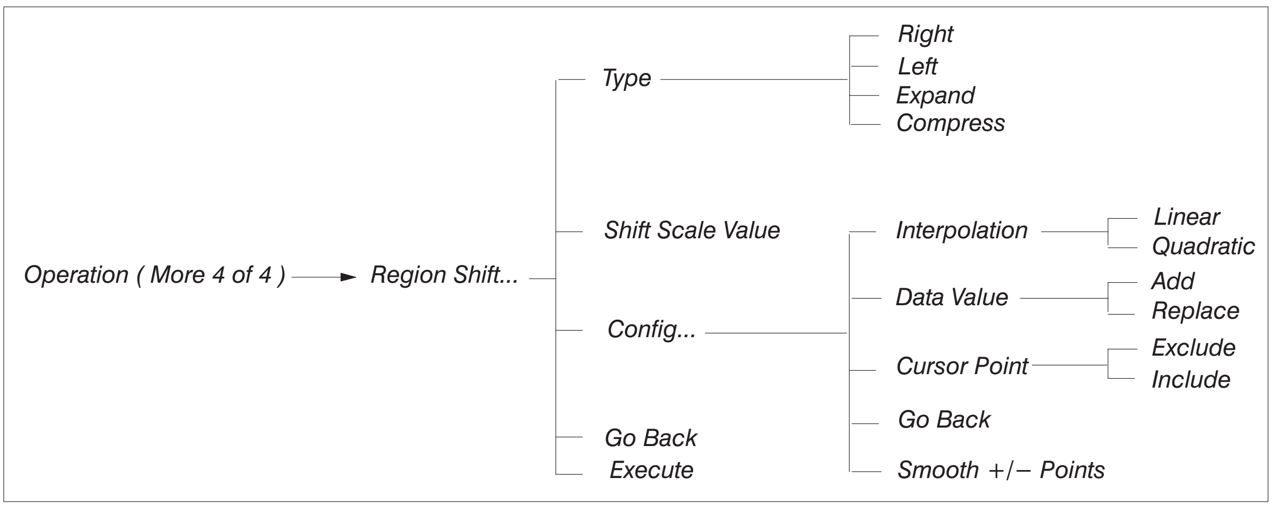


Table 4A-3 lists the differences between the **Specified Region Shift** function and the **Shift** function described on page 4A-48.

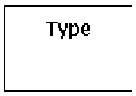
Table 4A-3: Differences Between the Shift Operations

Item	Shift	Region Shift
Area affected	Rotates the area inside the range delimited by the cursors	Shifts the area inside the range delimited by the cursors to a different area
Shift amount	Data point spacing	Amounts less than the data point spacing
Interpolation at intersection	None	Interpolation performed

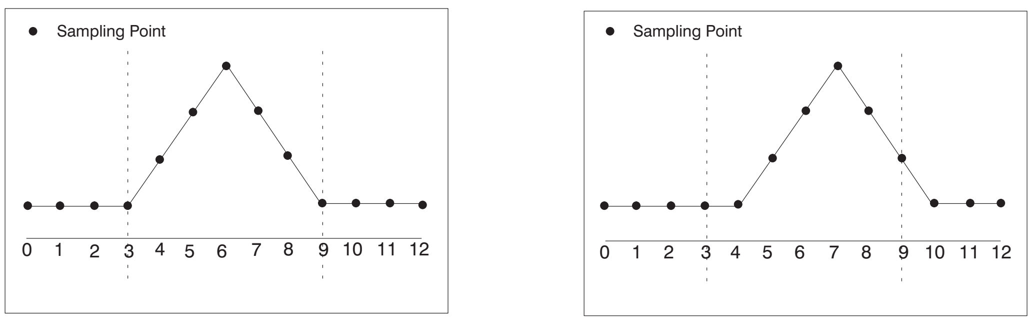
Data changed by manipulations performed from the **Region Shift...** menu can be restored to the prior state (for one operation only) using the **Undo** item on the bottom menu. If the result of the operation was not what was intended, use the **Undo** function to restore the original data. You can obtain optimal settings for shift parameters using the **Undo** function. If the new shift parameters do not produce the desired results, use **Undo** to cancel the operation. Then enter new shift parameters and use **Undo** to cancel each operation until you achieve the desired results.

Shift Type Selection

There are four types of specified region shifts. The **Type** item selects which shift operation will be performed. **Right** or **Left** shifts the selected region to the right or left, respectively. **Expand** moves the data out from the center. **Compress** moves the data toward the center.



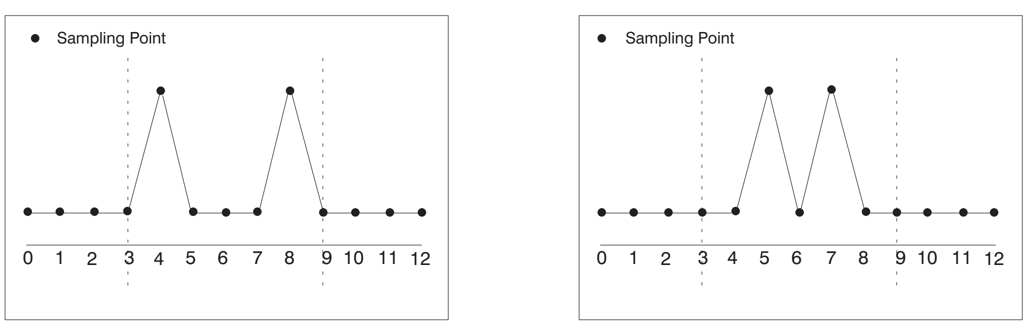
Right or **Left** — Shifts the area delimited by the left and right vertical bar cursors the amount specified by the **Shift Scale Value** item. When the shift type is **Right** the data shifts to the right; when **Left** the data shifts left. In the example of Figure 4A-53 the shift type is **Right**. The original data shifts to the right by one sampling point (Data Shifted to Right by 1). The maximum value that you can specify for a right or left shift is the number of waveform data points. If a section of data is shifted beyond the maximum number of data points, the data contained in that section is lost after the shift.



Original Data **Data Shifted to Right by 1**

Figure 4A-53: Data Shifted Using the ”Right” Item

Expand or **Compress** — The area delimited by the left and right vertical bar cursors is divided into two adjacent regions located between the cursors. For the **Compress** shift type, the two regions shift toward the center point. For the **Expand** shift type, the two regions shift away from the center. The **Shift Scale Value** item determines the amount of shift for the **Compress** and **Expand** operations. In the example of Figure 4A-54 the shift type is **Compress**. The original data (left side of figure) is compressed as shown by the right example (Data Compressed by 1).



Original Data **Data Compressed by 1**

Figure 4A-54: Data Compressed Using the ”Compress” Item

The Shift Values For Selecting Expand or Compress

Expand — The maximum value that you can specify for a shift is the number of waveform data points. If a section of data is shifted beyond the maximum number of data points, the data contained in that section is lost after the shift.

Compress — The value of the shift must be less than one-half the size of the area surrounded by the left and right vertical bar cursors. If the **Data Value** item (described on page 4A-76) is set to **Replace**, the section that exceeds the position of one-half the region is lost after the shift.

Shift Scale Value

Shift
Scale Value

When shifting waveform data, it is possible to specify a **Shift Scale Value** with a precision that exceeds that of the sampling points. In the AWG2040 arbitrary waveform generator, values may be specified with a resolution as fine as $^{1}/_{1000}$ point. However, it is not always possible to realize a shift of that precision due to the form of the waveform itself. Changes in the lowest digit of the shift value will not be reflected in the output unless the amplitude of the original waveform spans the full scale of the data representation.

NOTE

Since data values between the data points are calculated by interpolation when shifting by a fractional value, certain characteristics of the original waveform may be lost. Therefore, a filter must be inserted to prevent aliasing.

If the changes in the waveform are extremely smooth, fractional shift amounts may not result in the intended effect.

Procedure

- [ ] **Step 1:** Specify the region to be shifted with the left and right vertical bar cursors, and select the **Region Shift...** item on the fourth page of the side menu (**More 4 of 4**).
- [ ] **Step 2:** Select the shift type by pressing the sub menu **Type** button.
- [ ] **Step 3:** Select **Shift Scale Value** from the sub menu.
- [ ] **Step 4:** Enter the shift amount using either the general purpose knob or the numeric keys. The shift value can also be displayed as a time value.
- [ ] **Step 5:** If other settings related to the shift need to be specified, select the **Config...** item from the sub menu. See the ”Other Shift Settings” item on page 4A-74 for more information.
- [ ] **Step 6:** Select **Execute** from the sub menu. The waveform in the edit region will be shifted with the specified conditions.

Other Shift Settings

Config...

The following parameters can be set from the **Config...** item.

Interpolation	Selecting the interpolation method
Data Value	Handling of overlapping regions in the shift result
Cursor Point	Interpolation of the data on the cursors
Smooth +/– Points	Setting the smoothing width at the data boundary positions

Interpolation

Interpolation

The data is resampled when shifting by fractional amounts. Data values between data points are acquired by interpolation. The **Interpolation** item selects the interpolation method used. The following options are provided.

- **Linear** interpolation is appropriate if the original waveform consists of straight lines, such as triangle or square waves. However, the peaks in waveforms with extremely sharp peaks may be slightly flattened.
- **Quadratic** interpolation is appropriate for waveforms with curves, such as sine waves. However, in waveforms with extremely sharp peaks, some peaks may become wider.

Linear Interpolation — Figure 4A-55 provides an example of linear interpolation. If the point X_2 is shifted to the left by 0.2, the new value is calculated by interpolating with the next point to the left.

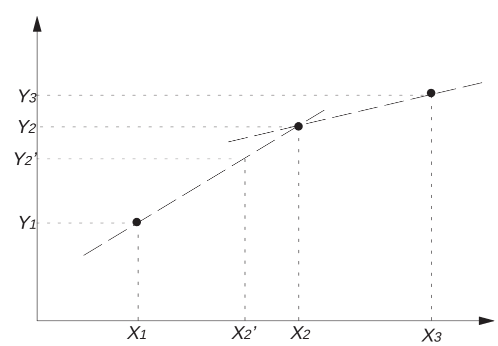


Figure 4A-55: Linear Interpolation

If the coordinate of the shifted point is X_2', then the value of point Y_2' is given by the following formula.

$$Y'_2 = 0.2 \times Y_1 + (1 - 0.2) \times Y_2$$

Quadratic Interpolation — Figure 4A-56 provides an example of quadratic interpolation. If point X_2 is shifted to the left by 0.2, the new value is calculated by interpolation using three points: the shifted point, the point preceding the shifted point, and the point following the shifted point.

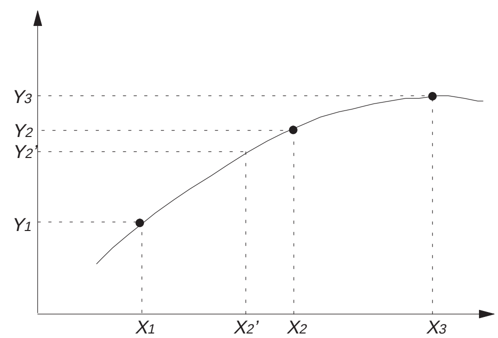


Figure 4A-56: Quadratic Interpolation

Quadratic interpolation is expressed as follows.

$$f(x) = Ax^2 + Bx + C$$

The coefficients *A*, *B*, and *C* in the above formula are derived using the three points including those directly preceding and following the position to be derived.

$$y_1 = Ax_1^2 + Bx_1 + C$$
$$y_2 = Ax_2^2 + Bx_2 + C$$
$$y_3 = Ax_3^2 + Bx_3 + C$$

Simplifying by letting $x_1 = -1, x_2 = 0, x_3 = 1,$ gives:

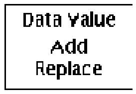
$$y_1 = A - B + C$$
$$y_2 = C$$
$$y_3 = A + B + C$$

This allows the coefficients *A*, *B*, and *C* to be derived as follows:

$$A = \frac{y_1 + y_3}{2} - y_2$$
$$B = \frac{y_3 - y_1}{2}$$
$$C = y_2$$

Using these values, the value y_2' at position x_2' can be derived as follows.

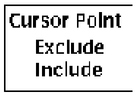
$$y_2' = (\frac{y_1 + y_3}{2} - y_2) \times (-0.2)^2 + (\frac{y_3 - y_1}{2}) \times (-0.2) + y_2$$



Data Value

This item selects how overlapping regions in the shift result are handled.

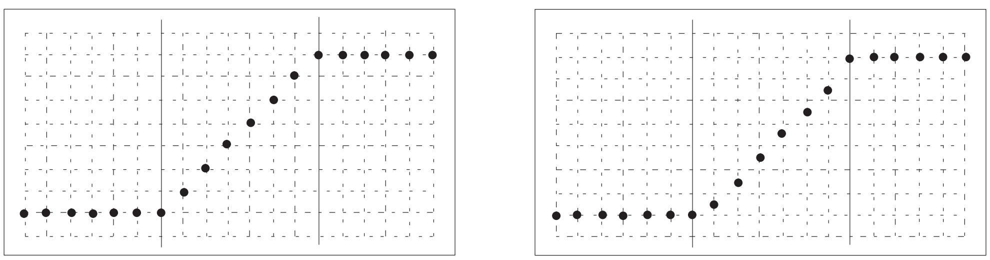
- **Add** — Adds the shifted data and the overlapping data.
- **Replace** — Replaces the region with the shifted data. When **Type** is **Compress**, the data for points shifted beyond the center are lost.



Cursor Point

This item selects whether the data boundary points are interpolated. The selections are **Exclude** and **Include**.

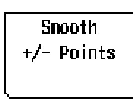
When the **Cursor Point** is **Exclude**, the points on the left and right vertical bar cursors are not interpolated. Figure 4A-57 shows how the original data will appear when **Exclude** is selected following a shift to the right. In this example, the first and last data points remain at their original values. You can minimize this error by inserting an appropriate anti-aliasing filter.



Original Data **Data Shifted to Right by 0.5**

Figure 4A-57: Shift with ”Cursor Point” Set to ”Exclude”

When the **Cursor Point** is **Include**, the points on the left and right vertical bar cursors are interpolated.

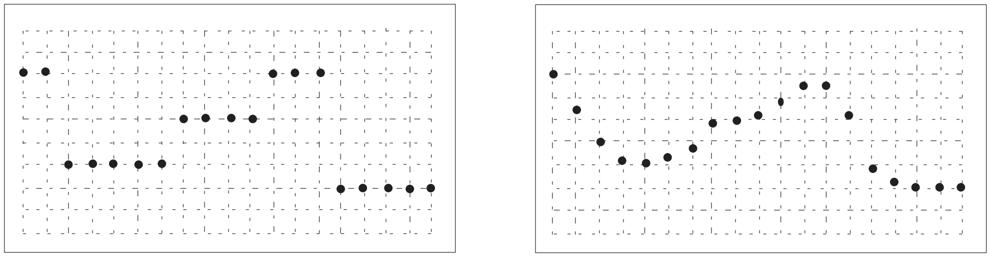


Smooth +/– Points

This item specifies the smoothing width with points at the data boundary positions. Smoothing is only performed over the points specified for the area around the boundary positions. No smoothing is performed if this point is set to zero. Points can be set within the range 0 through 20.

Smoothing is performed on a specified region without regard for the shift. The smoothing technique used takes the average of the point itself and the two adjacent points (three points) as the new value of the point. Smoothing is performed over regions centered on the end points of the pre-shift region and the post-shift region, respectively, and is extended in both directions by the smoothing points.

Figure 4A-58 shows an example of smoothing. The original data appears on the left and the smoothed data is on the right.



Before Smoothing **After Smoothing**

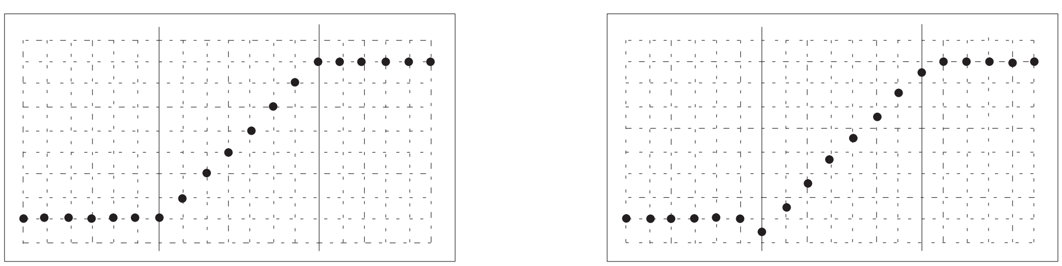
Figure 4A-58: Smoothing

NOTE

Since smoothing is equivalent to low pass filtering, features of the original waveform can be lost resulting in significant changes to the waveform. To acquire appropriate output waveforms, experiment with a variety of values for the ***Smooth +/– Points*** *parameter.*

Side Effects from Shifting

The left side of Figure 4A-59 shows data before shifting. The right side of the figure shows the result of shifting the data between the cursors (solid vertical lines) by 0.5 units to the right. In the example of Figure 4A-59, the data location must be determined 0.5 units to the left of each point in order to achieve the 0.5 unit shift to the right. **Linear** interpolation is used in this example to determine the data location.



Original Data **Data Shifted to Right by 0.5**

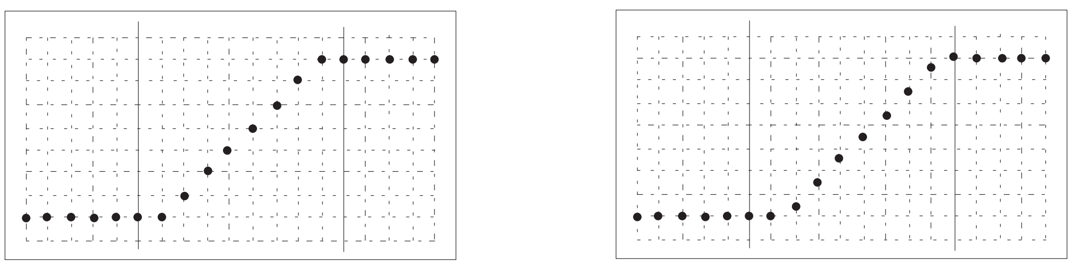
Figure 4A-59: Data Shifting

When the resulting data is output through an appropriate filter, the waveform will be shifted to the right by 0.5 units. After the shift operation is completed, the data point at the position of the left cursor is lowered. This is a side effect of the interpolation process. Following are several ways that you can prevent this data lowering phenomenon.

- Increase the size of the area
- Set the **Cursor Point** setting to **Exclude**
- Apply smoothing (there are waveforms for which smoothing may not be effective)

Increasing the Size of the Area

Data that is identical across the operation can be acquired by increasing the size of the area (Figure 4A-60). Smooth data is acquired when this area is shifted, as shown by the right example of Figure 4A-60.

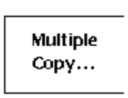


Original Data **Data Shifted by 0.5 to Right**

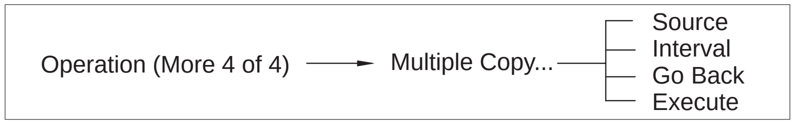
Figure 4A-60: Increasing the Size of the Area

The smooth data results when using linear interpolation because the value of the data does not change when interpolating between points with the same value. An unchanged data value is the same as not performing a shift. However, you can minimize this error by inserting an appropriate anti-aliasing filter.

Multiple Copy



The **Multiple Copy...** item appears in the menu when two or more waveforms are being edited simultaneously. It is used to copy the section of the waveform between the two vertical bar cursors in one editing area to the waveform between the vertical bar cursors in another editing area, at the interval specified with **Interval**. The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the **Multiple Copy...** item.



See "Opening and Selecting Editing Areas" on page 4A-14 for further information on designating multiple editing areas.

Procedure

In this example, we will copy the waveform between the vertical bar cursors in editing area 1 to editing area 2. We will start from the point at which only one waveform has been designated in the waveform editor.

To designate a second editing area in the waveform editor:

☐ **Step 1:** Choose **Select**/**Open** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Another Waveform** from the side menu.

☐ **Step 3:** Using the general purpose knob, select **New Waveform** from the waveform list and then select **O.K.** A second editing area will appear, as shown in Figure 4A-61.

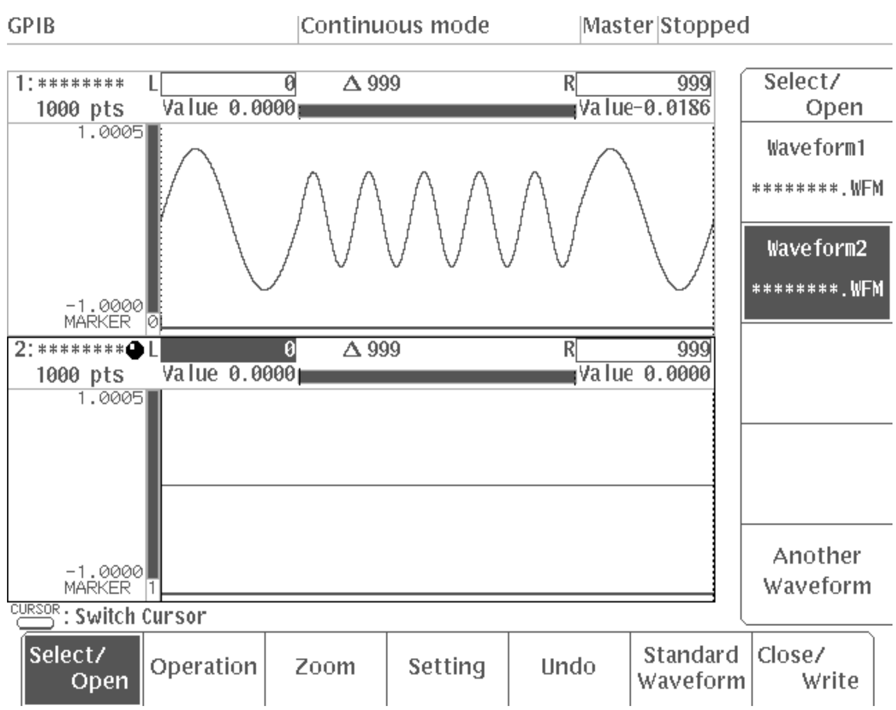


Figure 4A-61: Two Waveform Editing Areas Designated

To select the area for waveform copying:

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Waveform1** from the side menu to designate this waveform area as the source for copying.

☐ **Step 5:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel.

☐ **Step 6:** Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, move the vertical bar cursors to designate the section of the waveform to be copied. In this example, we will set the left cursor to point 250 and the right cursor to point 749.

NOTE

Copying will include the point at which the cursor is located. The value indicated by △ at the top of the waveform area indicates the number of points between the two cursors, so the number of points that will be copied will be this value plus one point (the point at which the cursor is located).

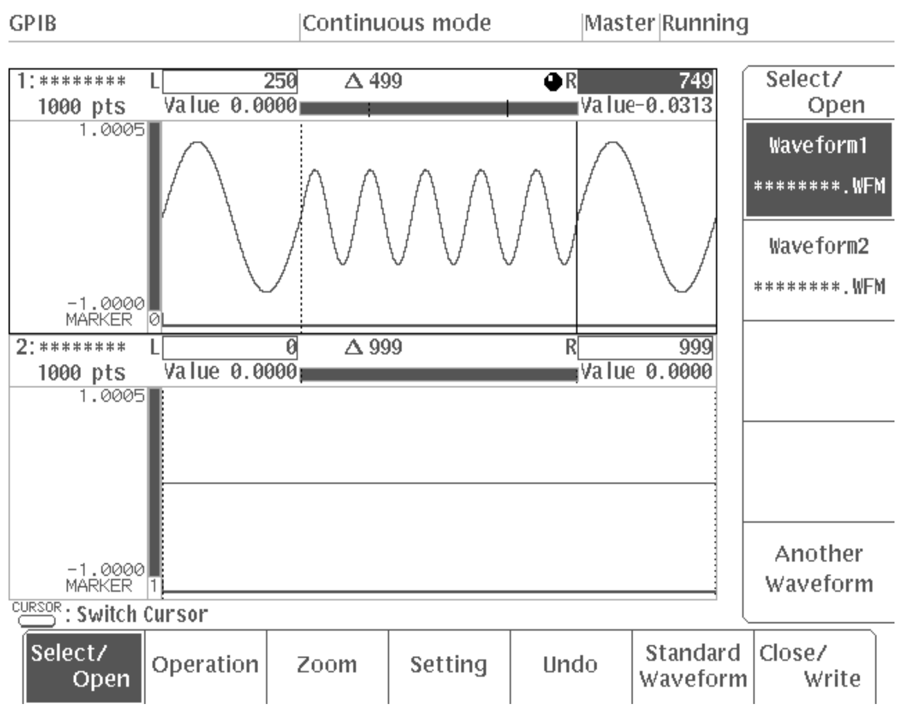


Figure 4A-62: Setting the Copy Source

Setting the Destination for Waveform Copying

☐ **Step 7:** Select **Waveform2** from the side menu to designate this area as the destination for copying (the area to which the waveform will be copied).

☐ **Step 8:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel.

☐ **Step 9:** Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, move the vertical bar cursors to set the area within which the waveform will be copied. In this example, we will set the left cursor to point 0 and the right cursor to point 999.

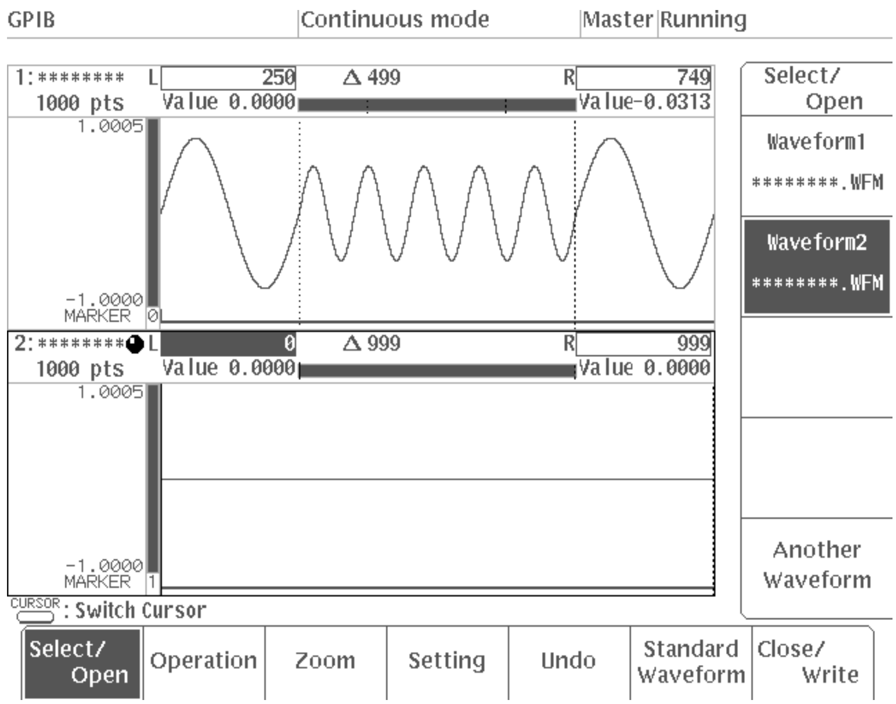


Figure 4A-63: Setting the Copy Destination

To copy the waveform:

- [ ] **Step 10:** Select **Operation** from the bottom menu.

- [ ] **Step 11:** Select **Multiple Copy...** from the fourth page of the side menu (**More 4 of 4**).

  When three waveform areas have been designated in the waveform editor, select one of the remaining two editing areas as the source for waveform copying with **Source** item in the sub-menu.

- [ ] **Step 12:** Select **Interval** from the sub-menu.

- [ ] **Step 13:** Using the numeric keys, set the interval value to 500 points. When copying the section of a waveform between the bar cursors in one editing area to the area between the bar cursors in another editing area, the **Interval** value determines the interval at which the waveform will be repeated horizontally (in points).

- [ ] **Step 14:** Select **Execute** from the sub-menu.

  If the number of points in the waveform between the vertical bar cursors in the copy source is the same as the value set for **Interval**, the copied waveform will be displayed repeating at the interval designated with **Interval**. In the example shown in Figure 4A-64, both the waveform point size and the **Interval** value are set to 500.

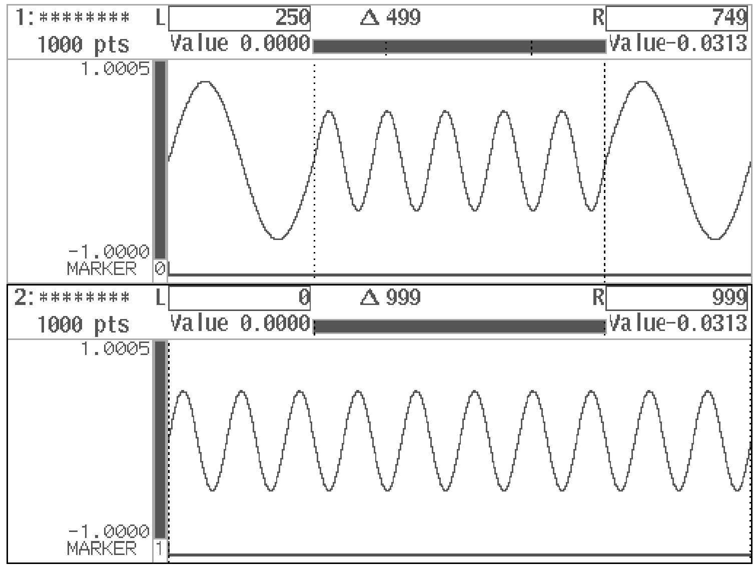


Figure 4A-64: Waveform Copying (number of points in waveform = Interval value)

If the number of points in the waveform between the vertical bar cursors in the copy source is less than the value set for **Interval**, data at level 0 (in other words, a straight line) will be added at the end of the waveform. Figure 4A-65 shows an example in which the waveform point size has been set to 500 and the **Interval** has been set to 600. Data at level 0 has been added from point 500 to point 599; the next waveform begins from point 600.

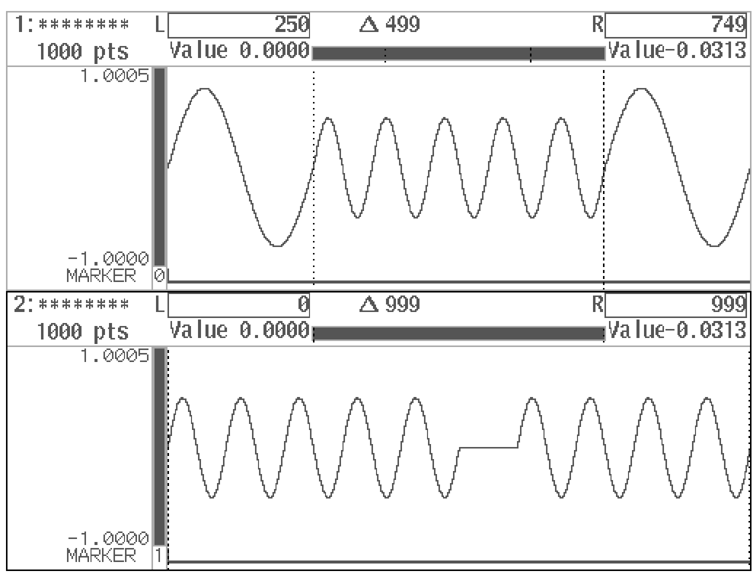


Figure 4A-65: Waveform Copying (number of points in waveform < Interval value)

If the number of points in the waveform between the vertical bar cursors in the copy source is greater than the value set for **Interval**, the overlapping portion will be added to the waveform. Figure 4A-66 shows an example in which the waveform point size has been set to 500 and the **Interval** value has been set to 300. The copied waveform will be pasted at intervals of 300, starting from points 0, 300, 600 and 900, and so the waveform will overlap in phase between points 300 – 499, 600 – 799 and 900 – 999. As a result, the amplitude in these areas will be doubled.

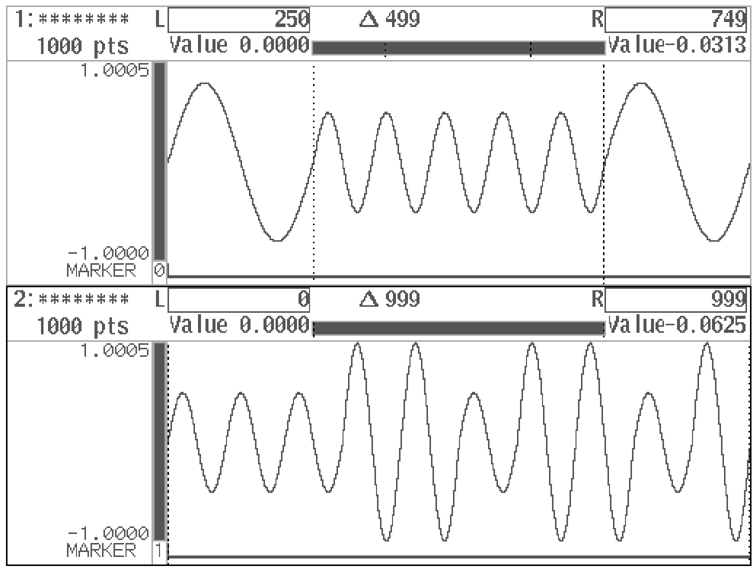
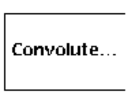


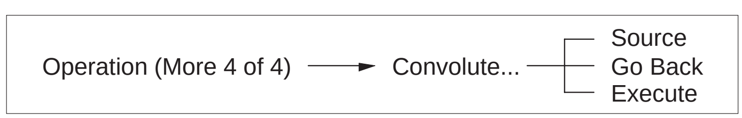
Figure 4A-66: Waveform Copying
(number of points in waveform > Interval value)

☐ **Step 15:** Select **Go Back** from the current sub-menu. The display moves from the **Multiple Copy...** sub-menu to the side menu.

Convolution Calculations



The **Convolute...** menu item appears when two or more waveforms are being edited. It is used to convolute the section of the waveform between the two vertical bar cursors in one editing area with the waveform between the vertical bar cursors in another editing area. The result is normalized. The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the **Convolute...** item.



See ”Opening and Selecting Editing Areas” on page 4A-14 for further information on designating multiple editing areas.

On a discrete system, convolution is called discrete convolution. The convolution y (n) of waveform x (n) and waveform h (i) can be expressed by the following formula, where N is the number of data items :

$$y\ (n)\ =\ \sum_{I=0}^{N-1} x\ (i) h(n-i)$$

The operation expressed by this formula is called convolution.

Procedure

With the waveform between the vertical bar cursors in editing area 1 as the **Source**, in this example we will perform convolution between this waveform and the one in editing area 2.

In the following example, a Gaussian pulse of 500 points is used for **Waveform1**, while a pulse waveform of 1000 points is used for **Waveform2**. Use the Gaussian pulse included on the Sample Waveform Library Disk that came with the instrument, and change its point size to 500 using the **Scaling** function for graphic display. Figure 4A-67 shows the waveforms for **Waveform1** and **Waveform2**. The pulse waveform is created using the waveform editor as shown in the figure.

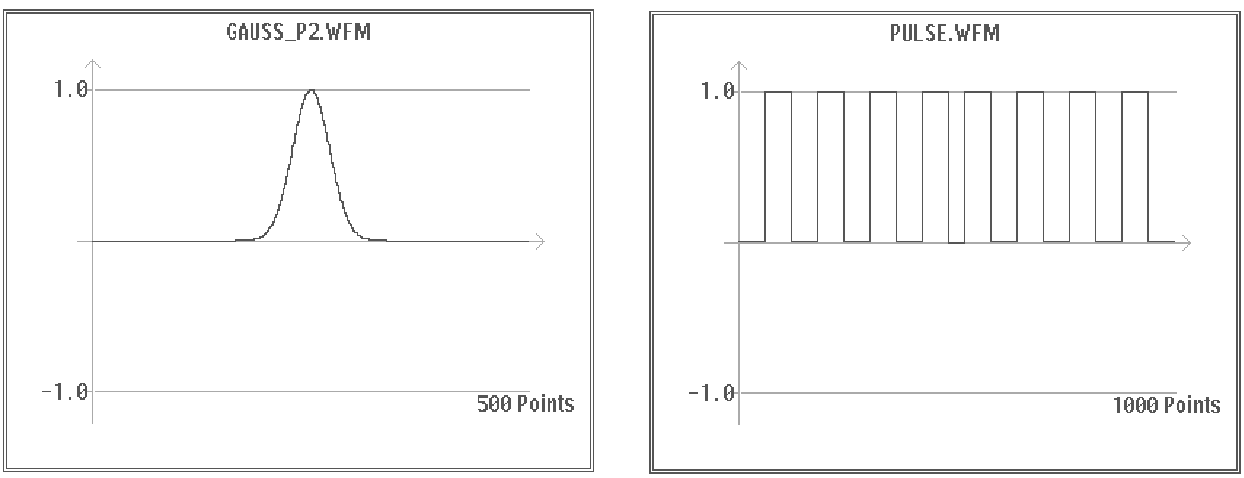


Figure 4A-67: Waveforms Used for Waveform1 and Waveform2

The procedure after the two waveforms have been set in each editing area is as follows:

Setting the convolution range

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Select**/**Open** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Waveform1** from the side menu.

☐ **Step 3:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel.

☐ **Step 4:** Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, set the positions of the left and right vertical bar cursors to define the section of the waveform for convolution. In this example, we will set the left cursor to point 125 and the right cursor to point 375.

☐ **Step 5:** Select **Waveform2** from the side menu.

☐ **Step 6:** Select **Setting** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 7:** Select **Waveform Points** from the side menu and, using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, set the waveform point size to 1250.

1000 points is sufficient for the range of operation for **Waveform2**; in order to display all of the results of operation, the **Waveform2** editing area (where the results will be displayed) must be enlarged. The area needed is the sum of the point sizes for the two waveforms.

☐ **Step 8:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel.

☐ **Step 9:** Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, set the positions of the left and right vertical bar cursors to define the section of the waveform for convolution. In this example, we will set the left cursor to point 0 and the right cursor to point 1250.

Calculating the waveforms

☐ **Step 10:** Select **Operation** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 11:** Select **Convolute...** from the fourth page of the side menu (**More 4 of 4**).

When three waveform areas have been designated in the waveform editor, select one of the other two editing areas as the source for waveform convolution with **Source** item in the sub-menu.

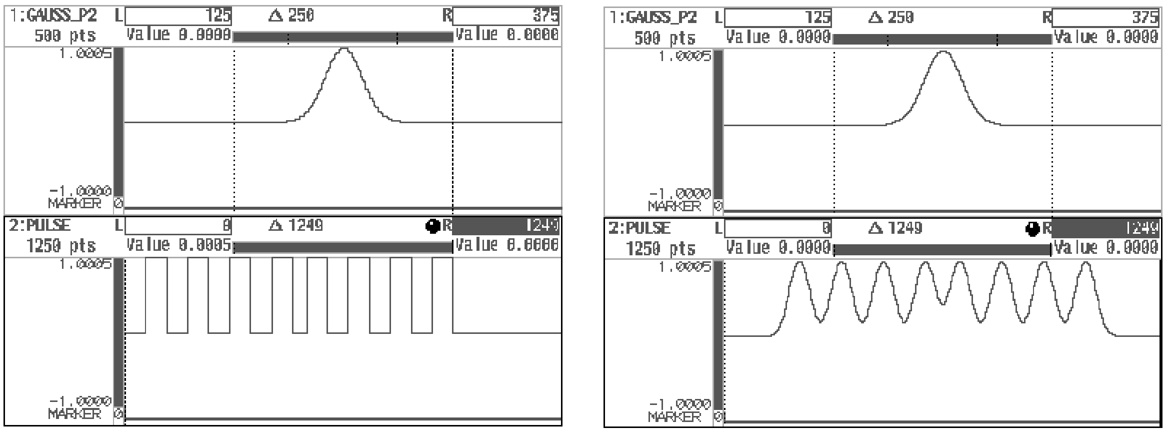
☐ **Step 12:** Select **Execute** from the sub-menu.

Figure 4A-68 shows the screen before and after convolution.

In this example, the results of operation will be displayed between the left and right vertical bar cursors in editing area 2 (the one enclosed by a box on the screen) where editing is being performed. The convolution process will take approximately 30 seconds.

NOTE

The convolution process will take around 80 seconds for two waveforms consisting of 1000 points each; the time will vary slightly depending on the type of waveform. An instrument with Option 09 installed is equipped with the convolution waveform editor which performs convolution at high speed.



Before *After*

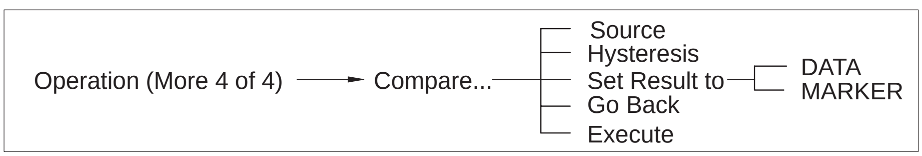
Figure 4A-68: Convolution

☐ **Step 13:** Select **Go Back** from the current sub-menu. The display moves from the **Convolute...** sub-menu to the side menu.

Comparing Waveforms

Compare...

The **Compare...** item appears when two or more waveforms are being edited simultaneously. It is used to compare the section of the waveform between the two vertical bar cursors in one editing area to the waveform between the vertical bar cursors in another editing area. The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the **Compare...** item.



See ”Opening and Selecting Editing Areas” on page 4A-14 for more detailed information regarding how to designate multiple editing areas.

Depending on whether the result of comparison is displayed in the editing area or in the **MARKER** area (as determined by the **Set Result to** item), the results are displayed in one of the following formats.

DATA selected in **Set Result to**

Comparison	Result (waveform level)
Destination > Source	1.000 (FFE in hexadecimal format)
Destination ≤ Source	0.000 (7FF in hexadecimal format)

MARKER selected in **Set Result to**

Comparison	Result (MARKER)
Destination > Source	1
Destination ≤ Source	0

Procedure

In this example, we will designate the portion of the waveform between the vertical bar cursors in editing area 1 as the reference (**Source**) and then compare it with the waveform between the vertical bar cursors in editing area 2. The procedure begins from the point at which two waveforms have been selected in the waveform editor.

Designating the Section for Comparison

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Select**/**Open** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Waveform1** from the side menu. This waveform will be the reference for comparison.

☐ **Step 3:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel.

☐ **Step 4:** Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, set the positions of the left and right vertical bar cursors to define the section of the waveform for comparison. In this example, we will set the left cursor to point 125 and the right cursor to point 625.

NOTE

The value indicated by △ shows the difference in points between the left and right vertical bar cursors. This value includes the point occupied by the cursor, so the number of points in the waveform is △ + 1.

☐ **Step 5:** Select **Waveform2** from the side menu. This waveform will be compared to the reference waveform.

☐ **Step 6:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel.

☐ **Step 7:** Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, set the positions of the left and right vertical bar cursors to define the section of the waveform for comparison. In this example, we will set the left cursor to point 125 and the right cursor to point 875.

☐ **Step 8:** Select **Operation** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 9:** Select **Compare...** from the fourth page of the side menu (**More 4 of 4**). Figure 4A-69 shows the menu with the **Compare...** item selected.

When three waveform areas have been designated in the waveform editor, select one of the remaining two editing areas as the source for waveform comparison with **Source** item in the sub-menu.

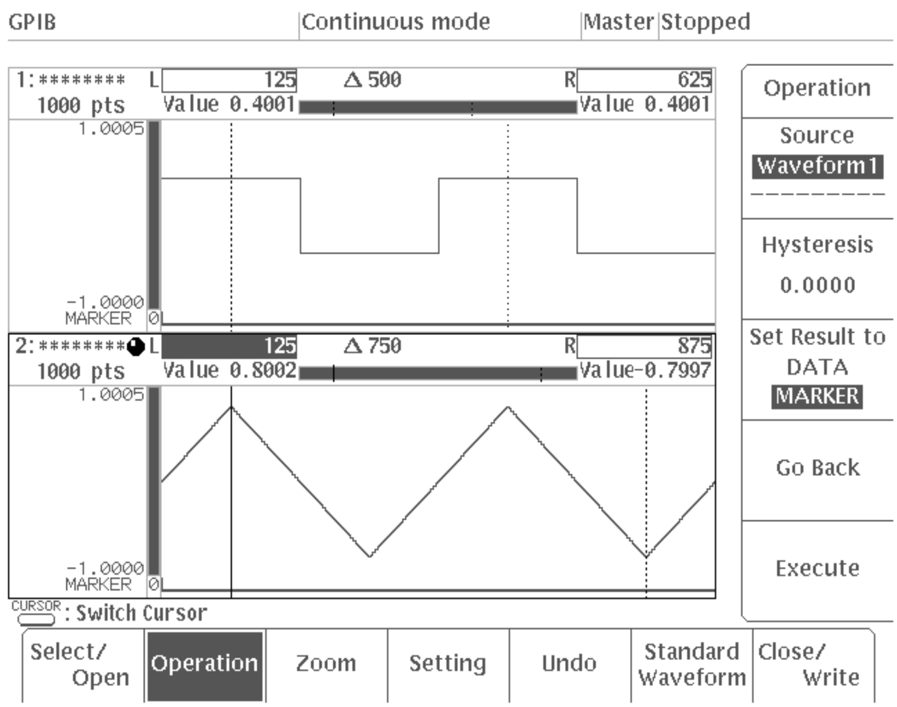


Figure 4A-69: Compare... Item Selected

☐ **Step 10:** Press the **Set Result to** button in the sub-menu to select **MARKER**.

This item is used to set where the results of comparison will be displayed.

☐ **Step 11:** If you would like to apply hysteresis to the reference waveform, select **Hysteresis** and enter a value. If hysteresis is not necessary, this item should be set to 0.

Hysteresis comparison uses a higher and lower signal level than the **Source** signal level; the degree is determined by the value set with the **Hysteresis** item.

☐ **Step 12:** Select **Execute** from the sub-menu.

Comparison Without Hysteresis

The left part of Figure 4A-70 shows a comparison of a triangular wave for **Waveform2** and a square wave for **Waveform1**, with the results output to the **Waveform2 MARKER** display area. The figure on the right has been provided as an aid to understanding this process.

Comparison is only performed for the section of **Waveform2** between the vertical bar cursors (in other words, from point 125 to point 875). Data outside this range is preserved as it was before comparison. The figure on the right shows the default marker set at point 0 remains "1."

As there is less data in the **Source** waveform than the destination waveform, data at level 0 (in other words, a straight line) has been automatically added from point 626 to point 875 in the **Source** waveform.

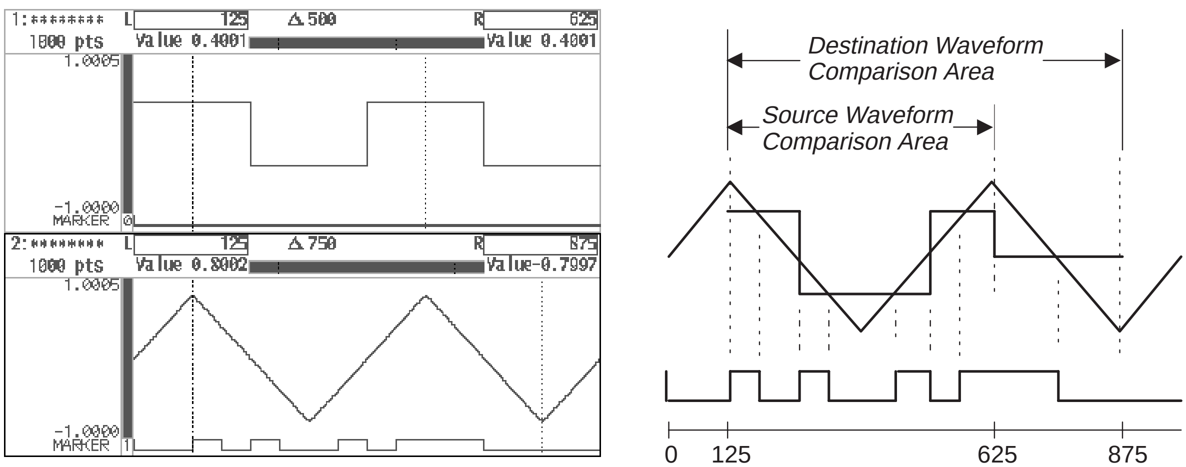


Figure 4A-70: Comparison Without Hysteresis

Comparison With Hysteresis

The left part of Figure 4A-71 shows a hysteresis comparison between a triangular wave as **Waveform2** and a square wave as **Waveform1**, with the results output to the **MARKER** display area in the **Waveform2** area. The figure on the right has been provided as an aid to understanding this process.

In hysteresis comparison, the waveform only becomes high level when the destination waveform exceeds the level above the **Source** waveform set for **Hysteresis**. The waveform only becomes low level when the destination waveform exceeds the level below the **Source** waveform set for **Hysteresis**.

Comparison is only performed for the section of the waveform between the vertical bar cursors (in this example, from point 0 to point 999).

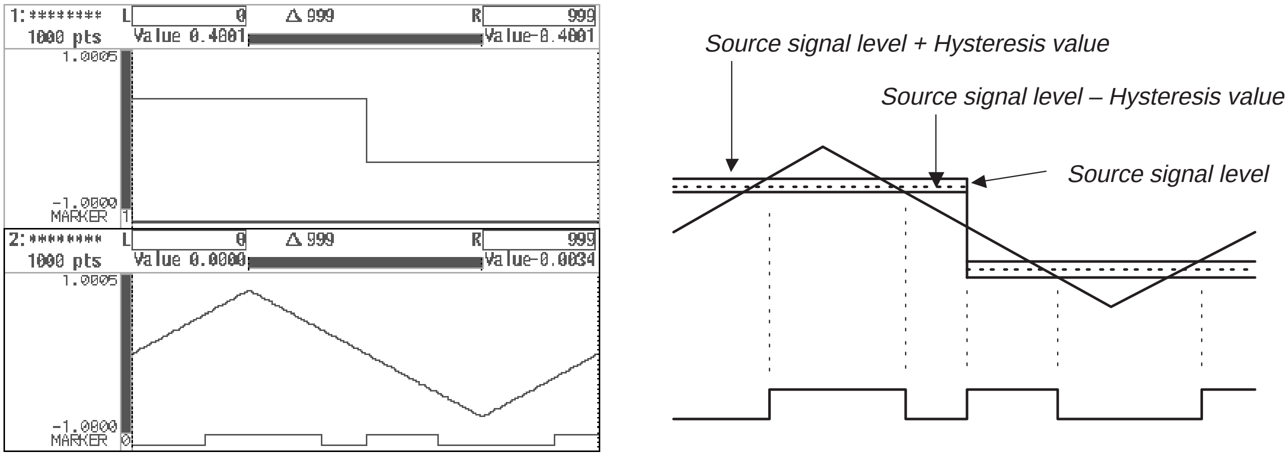


Figure 4A-71: Comparison With Hysteresis

☐ **Step 13:** Select **Go Back** from the current sub-menu. The display moves from the **Compare...** sub-menu to the side menu.

Zooming Waveforms

Zoom

The **Zoom** item is used to enlarge or reduce the waveform being displayed, either horizontally or vertically. This process is for display purposes only; it does not affect the waveform data. The side menu consists of 2 pages: the first page contains the horizontal zoom items and the second page contains the vertical zoom items.

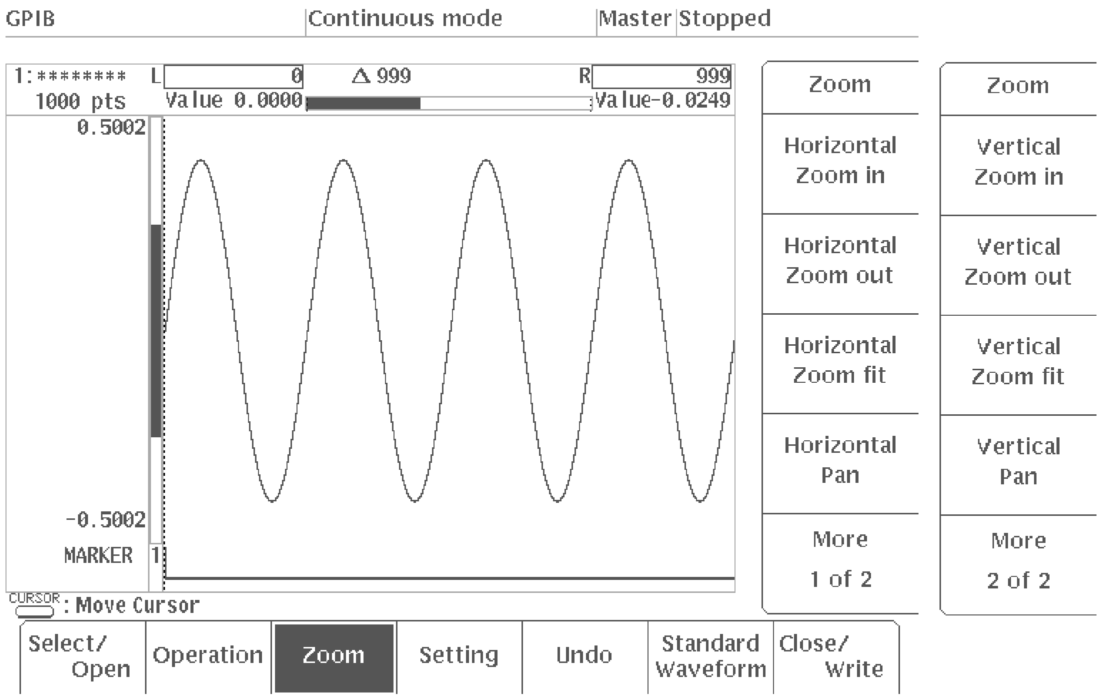
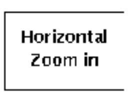


Figure 4A-72: Zoom Menu

Horizontal Zooming



When the waveform is enlarged horizontally using the **Horizontal Zoom in** item, three additional items are displayed in the side menu:

- Horizontal Zoom out — Used to reduce the waveform
- Horizontal Zoom fit — Used to return to normal waveform size (x1)
- Horizontal Pan — Used to scroll through the waveform when it is enlarged

Procedure

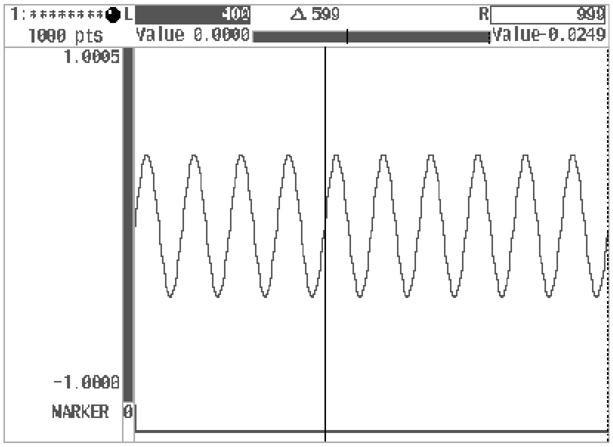
☐ **Step 1:** Select **Zoom** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel.

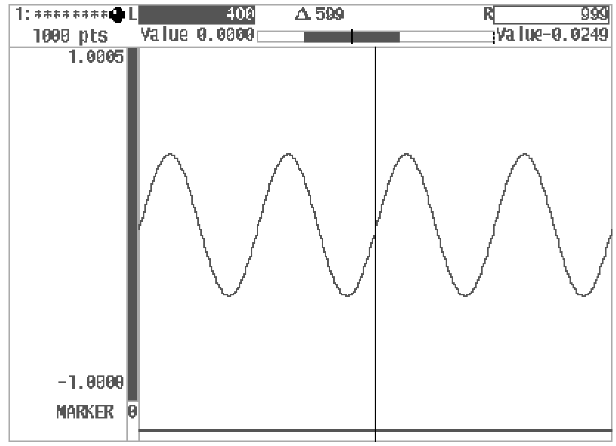
☐ **Step 3:** Using the general purpose knob, move the active vertical bar cursor to the center of the position at which you want the waveform to be displayed.

Horizontal waveform enlargement will be centered around the active vertical bar cursor.

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Horizontal Zoom in** from the side menu. The waveform will be enlarged horizontally.



Before



After

Figure 4A-73: Horizontal Zoom

☐ **Step 5:** Select **Horizontal Zoom in** again from the side menu.

The degree of enlargement will increase each time the button is pressed. When the maximum enlargement is reached, the **Horizontal Zoom in** item will disappear. The displayed inverted portion of the horizontal scroll indicator above the waveform editing area indicates which section of the waveform is currently being displayed on the screen.

☐ **Step 6:** Select **Horizontal Zoom out** from the side menu.

The degree of enlargement will decrease each time the button is pressed. When normal size (x1) is reached, the **Horizontal Zoom out** item will disappear.

☐ **Step 7:** Select the **Horizontal Zoom in** item once again to enlarge the waveform.

☐ **Step 8:** Select **Horizontal Pan** from the side menu.

This item enables you to scroll through the entire waveform by turning the general purpose knob. The displayed inverted portion of the horizontal scroll indicator above the waveform editing area indicates which section of the waveform is currently being displayed on the screen.

☐ **Step 9:** Turn the general purpose knob and check to make sure the waveform moves horizontally.

☐ **Step 10:** Select **Horizontal Zoom fit** from the side menu. The waveform will revert to normal size (x1).

Vertical Zooming

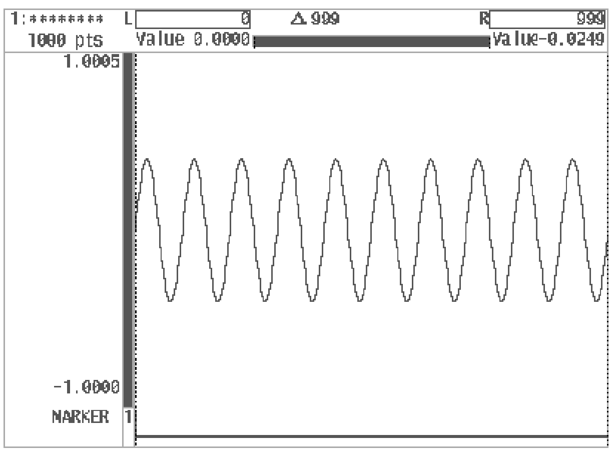
Vertical
Zoom in

When the waveform is enlarged vertically with the **Vertical Zoom in** item, three new items will be added to the side menu:

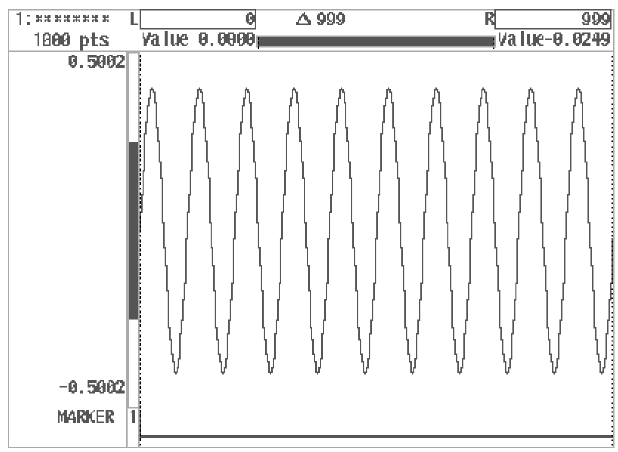
- Vertical Zoom out — Used to reduce the waveform
- Vertical Zoom fit — Used to return to normal waveform size (x1)
- Vertical Pan — Used to scroll through the waveform when it is enlarged

The process of vertical zooming is the same as that for horizontal zooming. However, the waveform is enlarged/reduced as the reference for the center of the vertical axis.

Figure 4A-74 shows an example of a waveform before and after vertical zooming.



Before



After

Figure 4A-74: Vertical Zoom

Timing Display

To show the timing display for the waveform editor using the **View type....** item in the **Setting** menu:

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Setting** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Select **View type...** from the side menu.

Three items will be displayed in the sub-menu: **Graphic**, **Timing** and **Table**.

☐ **Step 3:** Select **Timing** from the sub-menu.

The timing display of the waveform editor will appear. See Figure 4A-75.

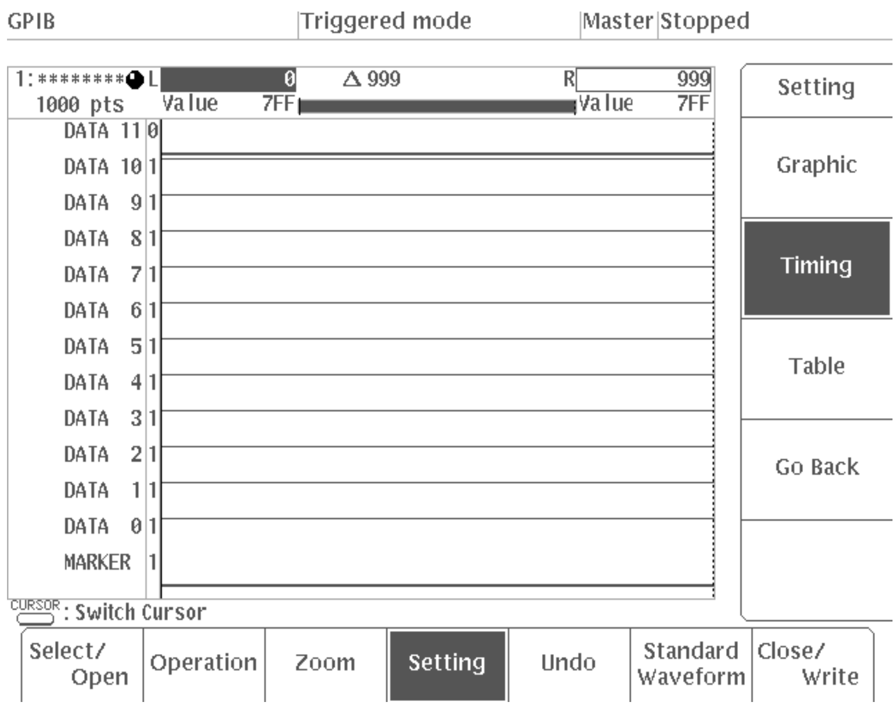
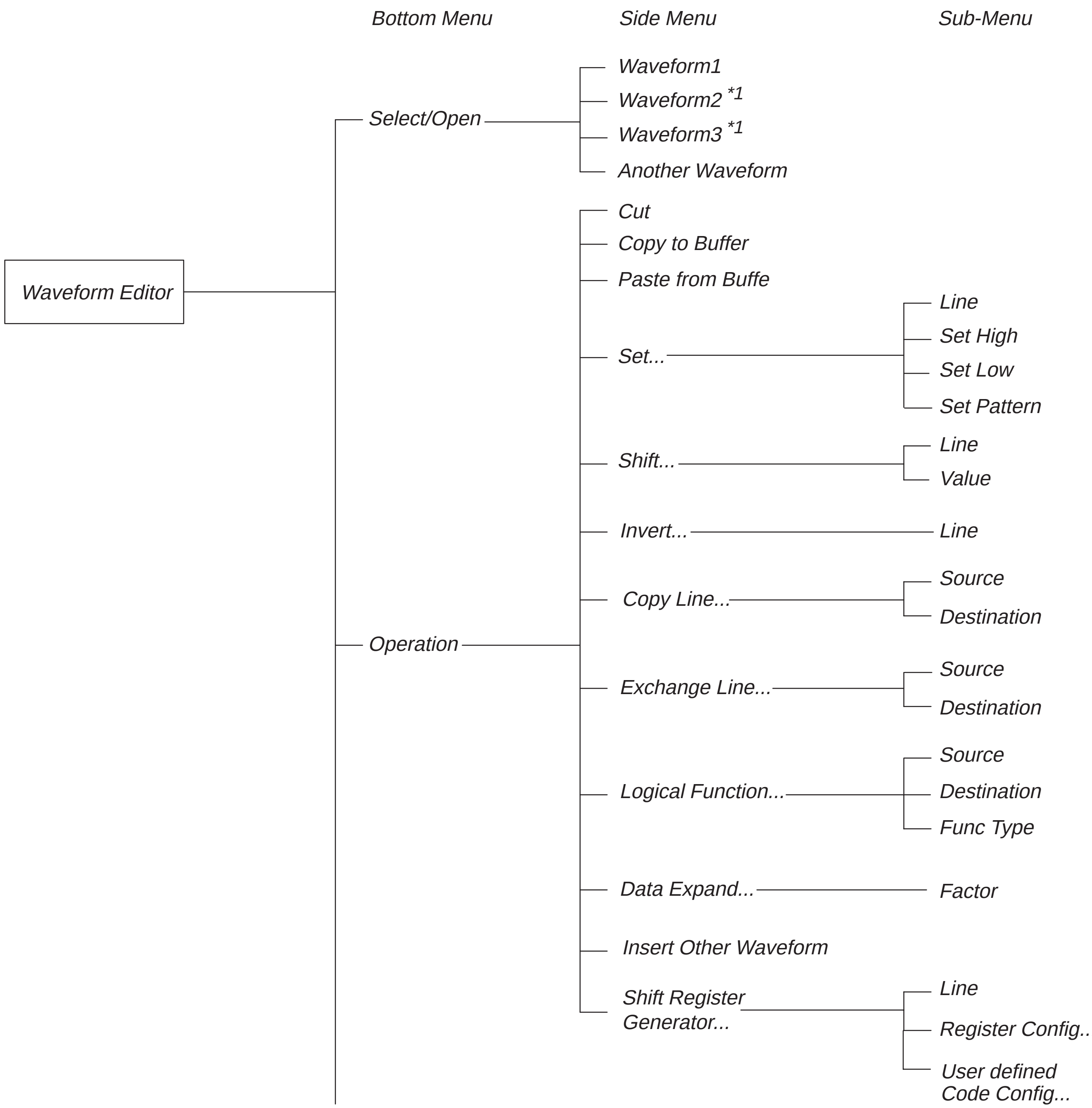


Figure 4A-75: Timing Display

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Go Back** from the sub-menu. The system moves to the previous **Setting** side menu.

Timing Display Menu Structure

Figure 4A-76 shows the menu configuration for the timing display.



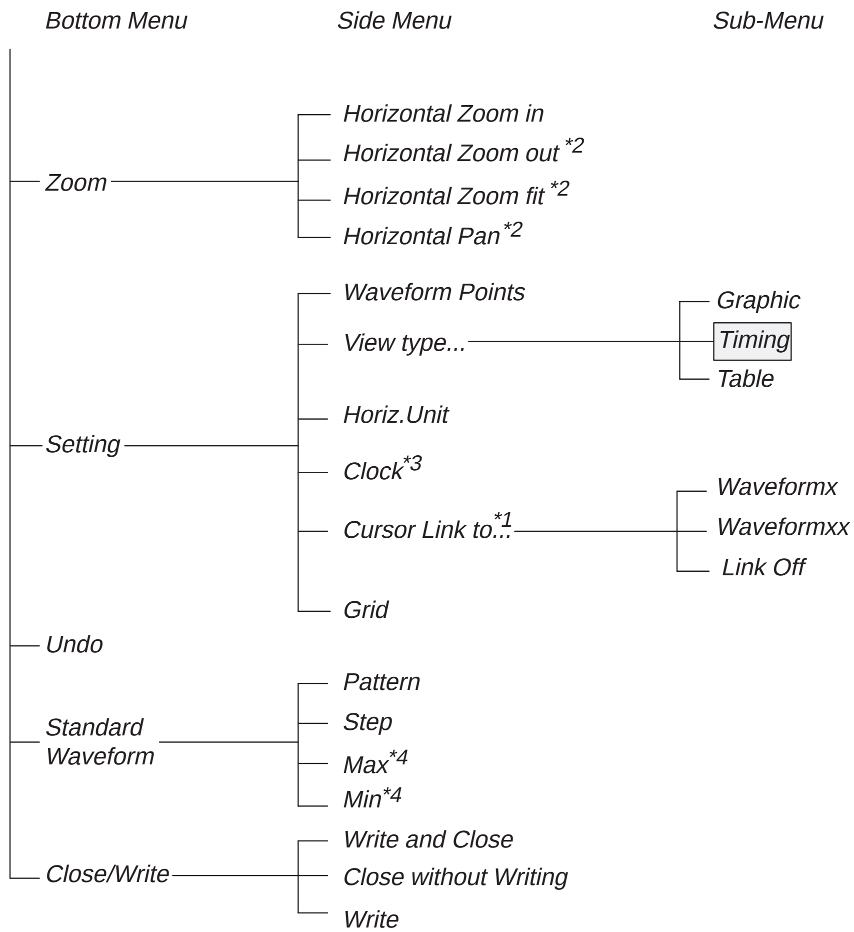


Figure 4A-76: Waveform Editor Timing Display Menu Structure

*1 This item appears when two or more waveforms are being edited simultaneously with **Another Waveform** in the side menu (under **Select**/**Open** in the bottom menu).

*2 These items appear when the displayed waveform data has been zoomed in the horizontal direction with **Horizontal Zoom in** in the side menu (under **Zoom** in the bottom menu).

*3 This item appears when **Time** has been selected for **Horiz. Unit** in the side menu (under **Setting** in the bottom menu).

*4 These items appear when **Count Up** or **Count Down** has been selected for **Pattern** in the side menu (under **Standard Waveform** in the bottom menu).

Menu Functions

The following list shows the functions available for each menu item and the page on which you can find a description of that function.

Table 4A-4: Menu Functions

Menu	Function	Page
Select /Open	Opening and selecting the editing area	4A-14
Operation	Editing waveform data in timing display	4A-102
Cut	Cutting waveforms	4A-42, 4A-102
Copy to Buffer	Copying waveforms	4A-43, 4A-102
Paste from Buffer	Pasting waveforms	4A-43, 4A-102
Set...	Setting waveform data	4A-102
Shift...	Shifting waveform data	4A-115
Invert...	Inverting waveform data	4A-116
Copy Line...	Copying lines	4A-117
Exchange Line...	Exchanging lines	4A-118
Logical Function...	Applying logical operations to lines	4A-119
Data Expand...	Expanding waveform data	4A-120
Insert Other Waveform	Inserting other waveform data	4A-59, 4A-121
Shift Register Generator...	Pseudo-random pulse generator using shift register	4A-121
Zoom	Zooming displayed waveform data	4A-90, 4A-127
Setting	Settings for the waveform to be edited	4A-28, 4A-99
Waveform Points...	Setting waveform point count	4A-29
View type...	Selecting the waveform data display format	4A-28
Horiz. Unit	Setting horizontal axis units	4A-31
Clock	Setting clock frequency	4A-32
Cursor Link to...	Linking the vertical bar cursors	4A-33
Grid	Displaying a grid in the editing area	4A-35
Undo	Canceling function execution	4-2
Standard Waveform	Creating standard waveform data	4A-99
Close/Write	Saving files and exiting the editor	4A-19

Timing Display Screen

Figure 4A-77 shows the timing display screen. This section will describe each portion of the screen; however, descriptions of areas that are identical to the graphic display will be omitted. See "Graphic Display Screen" for a description of the graphic display.

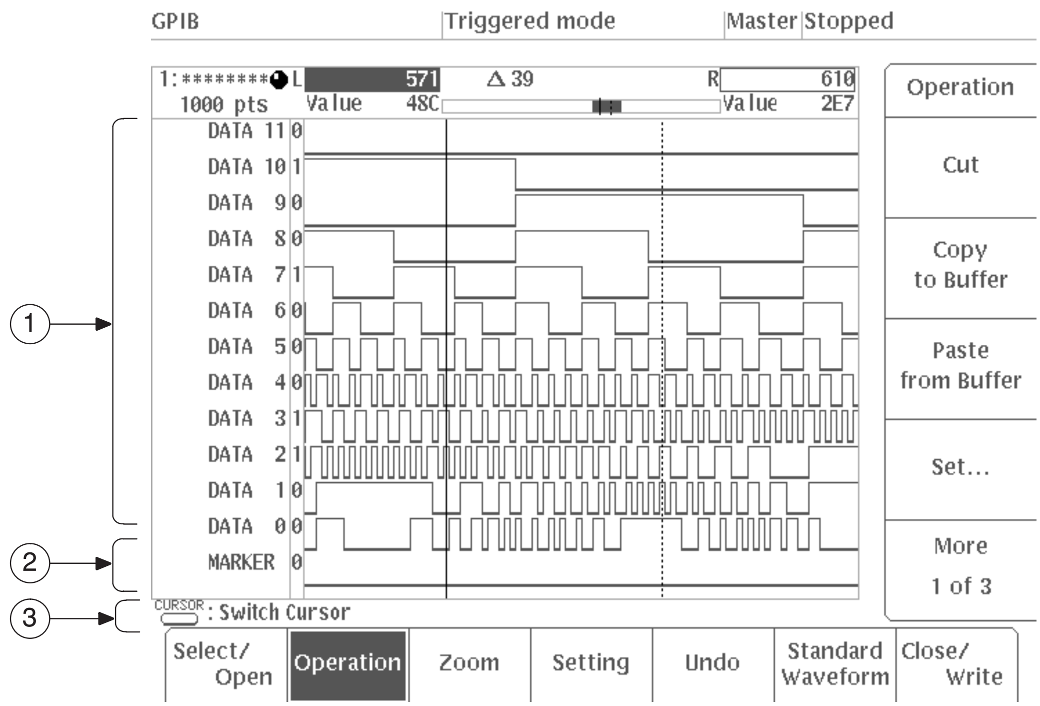


Figure 4A-77: Timing Display Screen

(1) DATA 11 – DATA 0

This area shows the timing for each of the data lines (11 – 0). Data line 11 is the MSB. The number next to the data lines (11 – 0) indicates the time or point value at the location of the active vertical bar cursor.

(2) Marker

This area shows the timing for the marker. The number to the right of the word "**MARKER**" indicates the state of the marker for the time or point value at the location of the active vertical bar cursor.

(3) Button Operations

This area shows how the front panel buttons operate in this menu.

CURSOR : Switch Cursor

Pressing the **CURSOR** button toggles the active vertical bar cursor between left and right.

CURSOR : Move Cursor

When the **CURSOR** button is pressed, the vertical bar cursor can be moved.

Settings for the Waveform to be Edited

Setting

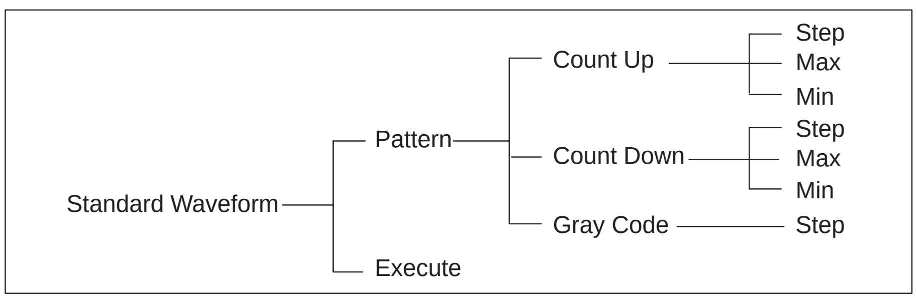
Before waveform data is created, you must use the **Setting** item in the side menu to set the environment for editing. The method used to set values is the same as for the graphic display. See "Setting for the Waveform to be Edited" for a description of the graphic display.

Creating Standard Waveform Data

Standard Waveform

Use this item to create waveform data in the area between the designated vertical bar cursors.

The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the **Standard Waveform** item.



Pattern Types

Pattern

Use this item to select the waveform to be created. You can choose from the following three pattern options:

- **Count Up** — Data is created sequentially, increasing from the initial value designated with **Min** to the maximum value designated with **Max**. When the maximum value is exceeded, the waveform will return to the initial value and begin counting up again. In the example shown in Figure 4A-78, the waveform point size is 4096, **Step** has been set to 1, and the **Min** and **Max** values have been set to 0 and 4095, respectively.

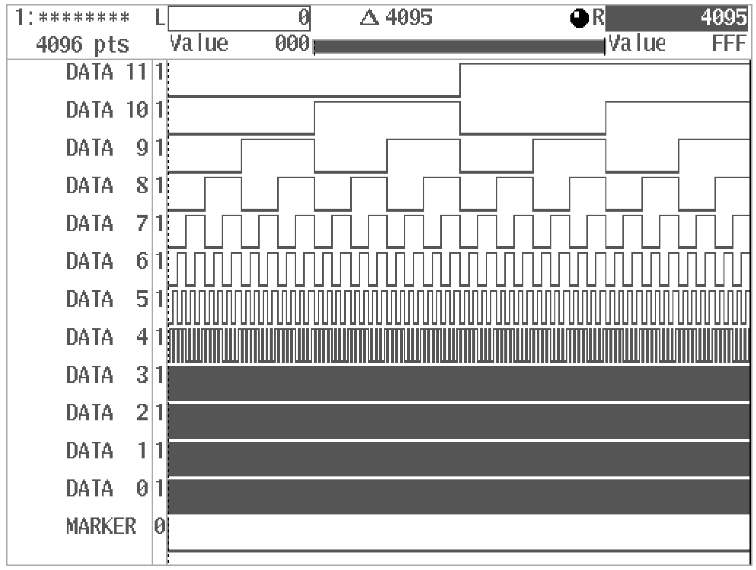
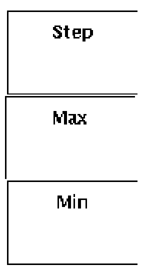


Figure 4A-78: Count Up Pattern Display

The following parameters can be set:



Step — The number of points for each data item. This value can be set to 1 – 10.

Max — The maximum value for the data. This value can be set anywhere between (**Min** value + 1) and 4095.

Min — The minimum value for the data. This value can be set anywhere between 0 and (**Max** value – 1).

- **Count Down** — Data is created sequentially, decreasing from the initial value designated for **Max** to the minimum value designated for **Min**. When the minimum value is exceeded, the value returns to the maximum value and countdown begins again. The values for **Step**, **Max** and **Min** can be set in the same manner as with **Count Up**.

- **Gray Code** — A data pattern is created in which the difference between adjacent data is only 1 bit. When the 4096 items of 12-bit data end, the data repeats again from the beginning. In the example shown in Figure 4A-79, the waveform point size has been set to 4096 and **Step** has been set to 1. Only the **Step** parameter is set for the **Gray Code** pattern option.

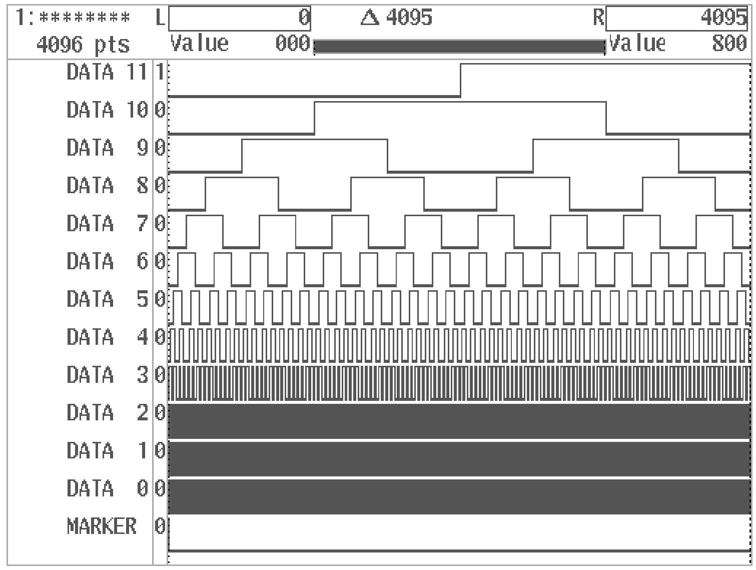


Figure 4A-79: Gray Code Pattern Display

Example of Waveform Data Creation

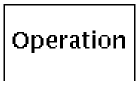
In the following operation, you will replace the data between the vertical bar cursors with a **Count Up** pattern, with the waveform point size set to 4096.

Procedure

- ☐ **Step 1:** Select **Standard Waveform** from the bottom menu.
- ☐ **Step 2:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel. Using the general purpose knob, move the left and right vertical bar cursors all the way to the left and right, respectively, so the entire editing area is selected.
- ☐ **Step 3:** Select **Pattern** from the side menu, then select **Count Up** by turning the general purpose knob or pressing the **Pattern** button in the side menu.
- ☐ **Step 4:** Select **Step** from the side menu. Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, set the step to 1.
- ☐ **Step 5:** Select **Max** from the side menu. Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, set the end point for the **Count Up** pattern to 4095.
- ☐ **Step 6:** Select **Min** from the side menu. Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, set the starting point for the **Count Up** pattern to 0.
- ☐ **Step 7:** Select **Execute** from the side menu.

The data between the vertical bar cursors will be replaced by the **Count Up** pattern that you have designated. Figure 4A-78 shows the **Count Up** pattern created with the values used in this example.

Editing Waveform Data in Timing Display

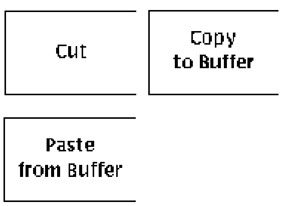


Use **Operation** to edit the waveform data in a variety of ways.

The side menu is made up of 3 pages. To get to the next page of the menu, select **More**. The following list shows the names and functions of the items in the side menu.

- **Cut** — Cutting waveforms
- **Copy to Buffer** — Copying waveforms
- **Paste from Buffer** — Pasting waveforms
- **Set...** — Setting the waveform data
- **Shift...** — Shifting waveform data
- **Invert...** — Inverting waveform data
- **Copy Line...** — Copying lines
- **Exchange Line...** — Exchanging lines
- **Logical Function...** — Applying logical operations to lines
- **Data Expand...** — Expanding waveform data
- **Insert Other Waveform** — Inserting other waveform data
- **Shift Register Generator...** — Pseudo-random pulse generator Using shift register

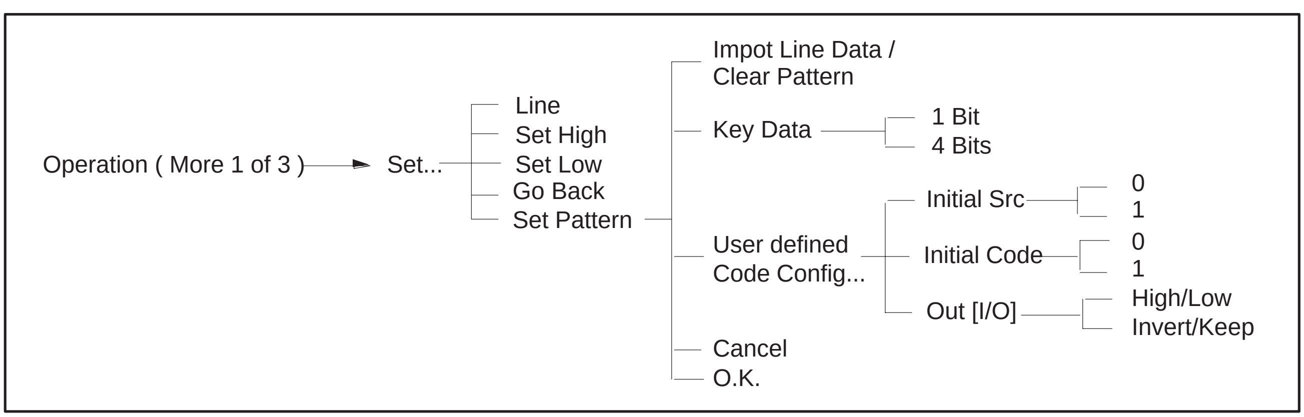
Cut, Copy, and Paste Processing Function



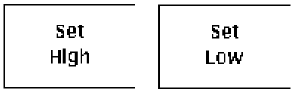
Use these functions cut, copy to the buffer, and paste to any other time or point value within the waveform data area between the vertical bar cursors. The functions for these items are the same as for the corresponding items in waveform editor graphic display. See pages 4A-42 and 4A-43.

Setting Waveform Data

Use **Set...** to designate data for each data line and marker in the editing area between the designated vertical bar cursors. The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the **Set...** item.



Setting Data to High/Low



Use **Set High** and **Set Low** to set the data lines or marker in the area designated by the right and left vertical bar cursors to either High or Low.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Set...** from the side menu displayed.

☐ **Step 2:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel.

☐ **Step 3:** Using the general purpose knob, move the vertical bar cursors to designate the area for the High or Low state.

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Line** from the sub-menu. Using the general purpose knob, select the data line (**DATA 11** – **DATA 0**) or the marker (**MARKER**) that you want to set to High or Low.

☐ **Step 5:** Select **Set High** or **Set Low** to set the state between the vertical bar cursors for the selected line.

Set High — Sets the state to High
Set Low — Sets the state to Low

Figure 4A-80 shows an example in which the state of the **DATA 5** line between the vertical bar cursors has been set to Low.

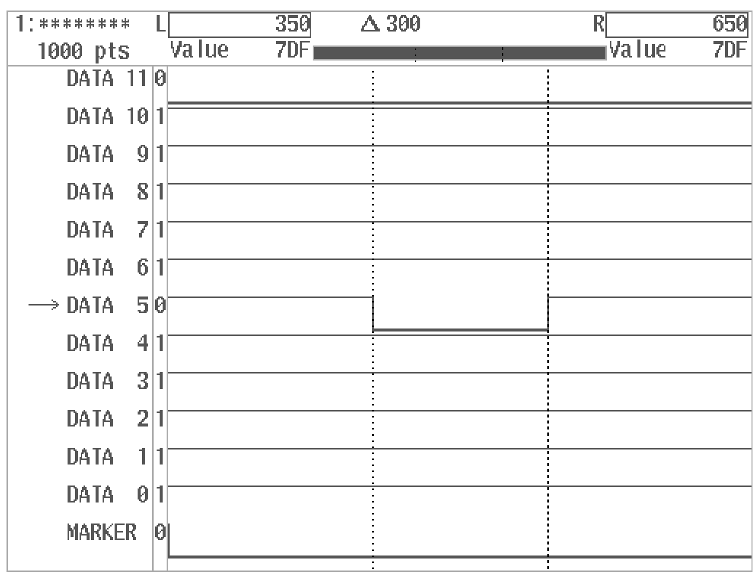
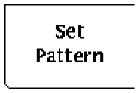


Figure 4A-80: Setting Waveform Data to High/Low

☐ **Step 6:** Select **Go Back** from the current sub-menu. The system moves from the **Set...** sub-menu to the previous side menu.

Setting Pattern Data



Use **Set Pattern** to designate pattern data for the part of a data line or marker between the designated vertical bar cursors. Figure 4A-81 shows the pattern data menu that appears when you select **Set Pattern** from the sub-menu.

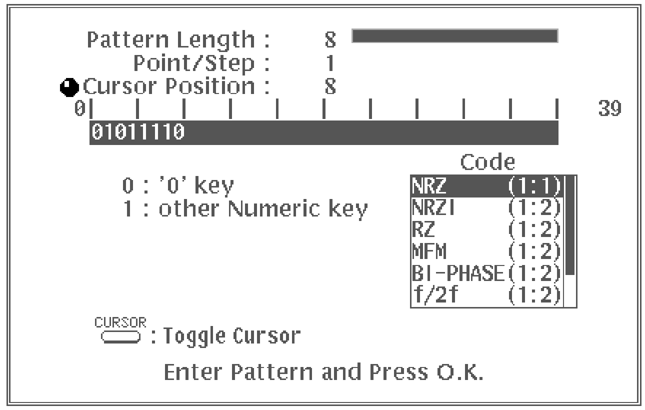


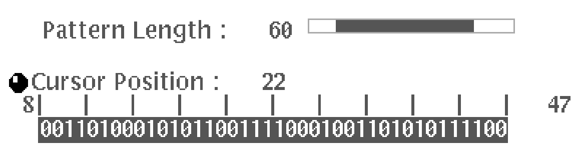
Figure 4A-81: Pattern Data Setting Menu

When the designated pattern is shorter than the area between the vertical bar cursors, the pattern data is repeated. You can create a variety of bit strings for the same pattern data by selecting **Code** in the menu.

Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel to select the items needed for setting the pattern data. The following items can be selected; use the general purpose knob to set the desired value.

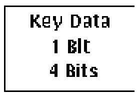
- **Cursor Position** (sets the position of the cursor)
- **Point/Step** (sets the number of points per step)
- **Code** (used to select the data code)

Entering Pattern Data and Pattern Length
To enter the pattern data, press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel and select **Cursor Position**. A knob icon will appear to the left of the **Cursor Position** area. The value next to "**Cursor Position**" in the menu indicates the current position of the cursor.



Now you can use the numeric keys to enter the pattern data. Any value up to 32,768 bits can be entered for pattern data. However, only 40 bits can be displayed on the screen at one time; use the general purpose knob to scroll through the rest of the data. The inverted display area in the **Pattern Length** indicates the portion of the pattern data currently being displayed on the screen.

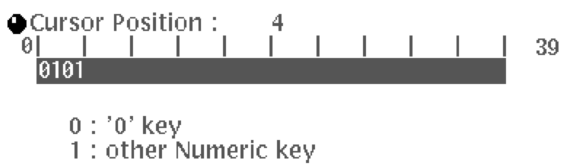
Pattern Length indicates the length of the pattern data that has been entered. This value will increase each time more pattern data is entered.



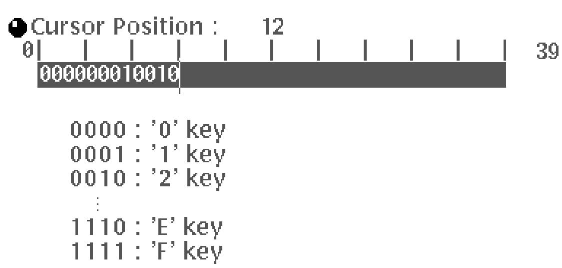
Changing the Data Bits

When entering pattern data, you can enter data either 1 bit at a time (for each keystroke) or 4 bits at a time, depending on the setting for **Key Data** in the side menu.

Key Data 1 Bit — When **Key Data** is set to **1 Bit**, the **0** key has a value of 0 and the other numeric keys have a value of 1, meaning that 1-bit data is inserted each time one of these keys is pressed. In the figure shown below, numeric key values of **0**, **1**, **0** and **1** have been entered in that order.



Key Data 4 Bits — When **Key Data** is set to **4 Bits**, a hexadecimal number (4-bit data) is entered each time one of the numeric keys is pressed. In the figure shown below, numeric key values of **0**, **1** and **2** have been entered in that order.



Point/Step

Point/Step is used to set how many points make up each item of pattern data. The data after **Code** conversion will be one item of pattern data. For example, when **NRZ** is selected for **Code** and **Point/Step** is set to 2, each pattern will consist of 2 points.

To set the point size for each item of pattern data, press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel and then select **Point/Step**. A knob icon will appear to the left of the **Point/Step** area.

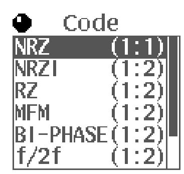
Pattern Code

Code is used to select the coding system used when the pattern strings are output. Depending on the designated length of the area between the vertical bar cursors, the code may be cut off in the middle.

To select the code, use the following procedure:

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel and select **Code**. A knob icon will appear in the upper left-hand corner of the **Code** area.



☐ **Step 2:** Using the general purpose knob, select the desired code from the choices listed. The following 8 code options are available:

- NRZ
- NRZI
- RZ
- MFM
- BI-PHASE
- f/2f
- 1-7 RLL
- 2-7 RLL
- ueer defined

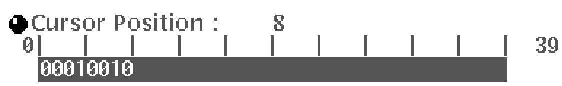
The ”**user defined**” code allows the user to create a custom conversion table. See ”User defined Code Conversion” later in this section. For a description of the other codes, see ”Pattern Codes” in Appendix D.

Sample Pattern Data Setting

In the following example, pattern data (at **DATA** 5; **Point**/**Step**: 2, **Code**: NRZI) will be created in the area between the vertical bar cursors.

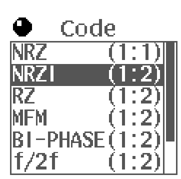
Procedure

- ☐ **Step 1:** Select **Set...** from the side menu.
- ☐ **Step 2:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel.
- ☐ **Step 3:** Using the general purpose knob, move the vertical bar cursors to define the area in which the pattern will be set. In this example, we will set the left vertical bar cursor to 250 and the right vertical bar cursor to 750.
- ☐ **Step 4:** Select **Line** from the sub-menu. Turning the general purpose knob, select **DATA5** for which you want to set the pattern.
- ☐ **Step 5:** Select **Set Pattern** from the sub-menu.
- ☐ **Step 6:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel to select **Cursor Position**.
- ☐ **Step 7:** Press the **Key Data** button in the sub-menu to select **4 Bits**.
- ☐ **Step 8:** Press **1, 2** in that order.



- ☐ **Step 9:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel to select **Point/ Step**.
- ☐ **Step 10:** Using the general purpose knob, set **Point**/**Step** to **2**.

- ☐ **Step 11:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel to select **Code**.
- ☐ **Step 12:** Using the general purpose knob, select **NRZI**.



- ☐ **Step 13:** Select **O.K.** from the sub-menu. The pattern that you have set in the preceding steps will appear between the vertical bar cursors. See Figure 4A-82.

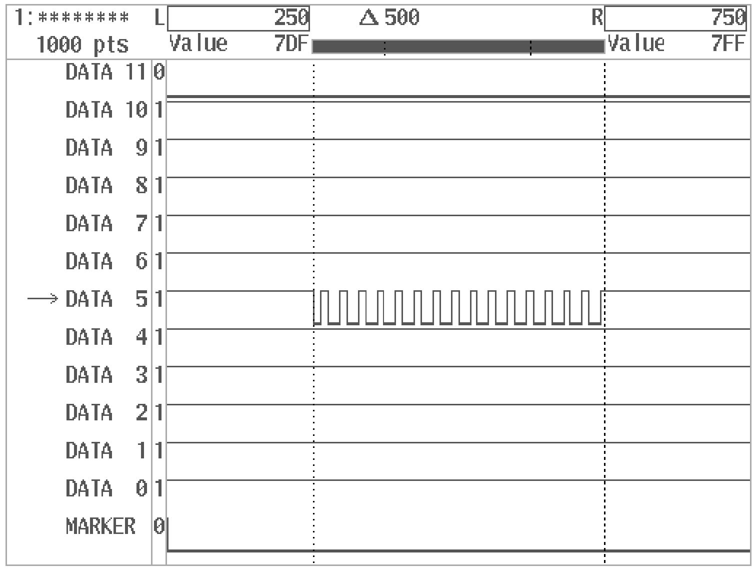


Figure 4A-82: Setting Pattern Data

User defined Code Config...

User defined Code Config...

Users can define their own conversion tables for code conversion. This function enables RLL codes, etc. to be freely defined. For sample codes, see ”Pattern Codes” in Appendix D. Conversion tables defined with this menu item are protected by the backup battery, so they are preserved even after the power is turned off. To reset this item to the factory default (**NRZ**), select **Reset to Factory** in the **UTILITY** menu.

Procedure

The following process is used to create a user-defined conversion table.

☐ **Step 1:** Perform steps 1 through 5 of the sample process for defining pattern data.

☐ **Step 2:** Select **User defined Code Config...** from the side menu. See Figure 4A-83.

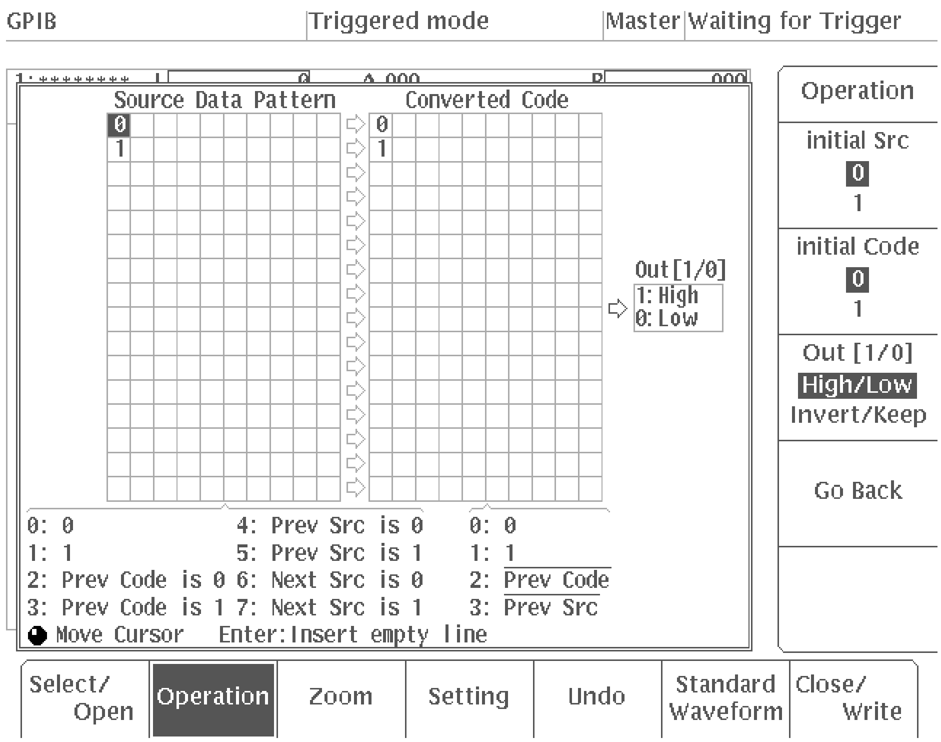


Figure 4A-83: User defined Code Conversion Menu

☐ **Step 3:** Define the codes as desired (see ”Basic Operations” below).

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Go Back** to return to the **Set Pattern** menu.

☐ **Step 5:** Define the pattern data, using the same procedure as in steps 6 – 10 of the sample process for defining pattern data.

☐ **Step 6:** Press the **CURSOR** button to select **Code** menu item. A knob icon will appear in the upper left side of the code selection menu.

☐ **Step 7:** Turn the general purpose knob to select **user defined**.

☐ **Step 8:** Press **O.K.** in the sub-menu to execute code conversion. The result will be inserted between the cursors on the data line defined in Step 1.

Basic Operations

Moving the Cursor

To move the cursor, turn the general purpose knob. The cursor can be moved throughout the area where data has already been defined, plus one more space. From the **Source Data Pattern** item, the cursor moves to the **Converted Code** item. When the cursor reaches the last data item, it will return to the beginning. The cursor can also be moved using the left and right arrow buttons.

Inserting a Blank Line

Pressing the **ENTER** key causes a blank line to be inserted above the data item marked by the cursor.

NOTE

Blank lines cannot be inserted if there are more than two consecutive blank lines or if there are more than 16 lines in all.

Defining Data

Move the cursor to the desired location to enter a value on the numeric keys. The value at that location will be replaced by the one you have entered. Enterable values will vary depending on the location of the cursor:

In the **Source Data Pattern** area, only numeric keys 0 through 7 are operational.

In the **Converted Code** area, only numeric keys 0 through 3 are operational.

Deleting Data

Pressing the delete key will delete the data indicated by the cursor. When a data item is deleted, all of the subsequent data items will move forward one space. If there is no data at the cursor position, the cursor will move one position to the left.

Deleting a Line

When all of the data on the line indicated by the cursor has been deleted, that line will also be deleted and all subsequent data will move up one line.

Setting Items

```
Source Data Pattern

      0: 0
      1: 1
      2: Prev Code is 0
      3: Prev Code is 1
      4: Prev Src is 0
      5: Prev Src is 1
      6: Next Src is 0
      7: Next Src is 1
```

Used to write the pattern for input data.

0 Data at that position is LOW

1 Data at that position is HIGH

2 The preceding Converted Code data item is 0

3 The preceding Converted Code data item is 1

4 The preceding Source Data Pattern data item is 0

5 The preceding Source Data Pattern data item is 1

6 The following Source Data Pattern data item is 0

7 The following Source Data Pattern data item is 1

Limitations

- 2, 3, 4 and 5 can only be written at the beginning of **Source Data Pattern**
- 6 and 7 cannot be written at the beginning of **Source Data Pattern**
- Only the data for the immediately preceding time can be referenced with 2, 3, 4 and 5
- 6 and 7 are effective as long as the pattern can be written
- After the first time 6 and 7 appear, 0 will be treated as 6 and 1 will be treated as 7
- 6 and 7 read the input data and search for the same pattern; when the same pattern has been detected, the portion of the data that has been read is returned to its original status and then the next pattern is analyzed
- 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 7 can be used together

```
Converted Code

      0: 0
      1: 1
      2: Prev Code
      3: Prev Src
```

Writes the output data pattern

0 Sets the output data to LOW

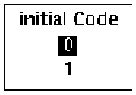
1 Sets the output data to HIGH

2 Turns the inverse of the preceding **Converted Code** data item into output data

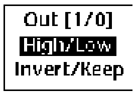
3 Turns the inverse of the preceding **Source Data Pattern** data item into output data

```
initial Src
    0
    1
```

The default value for the source pattern. Affects output data when the **Source Data Pattern** is 4 and 5 and when 3 is used for **Converted Code**.



The default value for the output pattern. Affects output data when the **Source Data Pattern** is 2 and 3; when 2 is used for **Converted Code**; and when **Out [1/0]** is set to **Invert**/**Keep**.



Determines the handling of 1/0 for data converted using **Converted Code**.

High/**Low** 1: data HIGH 0: data LOW
Invert/**Keep** 1: output is inverted 0: data is output as is

Sample Conversion

(1) When **Source Data Pattern** is unaffected by other conditions

Intial Sr	**0**
Initial Code	**0**
Out[1/0]	**High/Low**

Source Data Pattern	Converted Code
00	00
01	11
10	20
11	30

In the case of the above conversion, the data will be as follows:

Position	−3	−2	−1	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Source Data Pattern	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0
Converted Code	0	0	1	3	0	1	1	2	0	2	0
Result	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	0

NOTE

1) 3 of 30 in pattern 11 starting from position 0 is the inverse of the 0 in the **Source Data Pattern** at position −1.

2) 2 of 20 in pattern 10 starting from position 4 is the inverse of result 1 at position 3.

3) 2 of 20 in pattern 10 starting from position 6 is the inverse of result 0 at position 5.

When **Out[1/0]** is set to **Invert**/**Keep** for the same tsble, the data will be as follows:

Source Data Pattern	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	0
Converted Code	0	0	1	3	0	1	1	2	0	2	0
Invert/**Keep** (Previous)	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	0
Result	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	1

(2)When **Source Data Pattern** is affected by other conditions

- If 4 and 5 are used:

Intial Sr 0
Initial Code 0
Out[1/0] High/Low

Source Data Pattern	Converted Code
40	0001
41	010
50	0100
51	1000

Time	–1	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Input	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	0
Pattern	40	40	41	50	41	51	50	41	50	40

- If 6 and 7 are used (1):

Intial Sr 0
Initial Code 0
Out[1/0] High/Low

Source Data Pattern	Converted Code
07	0001
17	0010
06	0100
16	1000

In the case of the above conversion, the data will be as follows:

Time	–1	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Input	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	0
Pattern	06	07	16	07	17	16	07	16	06	

- If 6 and 7 are used (2):

Intial Sr **0**
Initial Code **0**
Out[1/0] **High/Low**

Source Data Pattern	Converted Code
077	00000001
076	00000010
177	00000100
176	00001000
067	00010000
066	00100000
167	01000000
166	10000000

In the case of the above conversion, the data will be as follows:

Time	–1	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Input	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	0
Pattern	067	076	167	077	176	167	076	166		

Importing Waveform or Marker Data as Pattern Data

Import
Line Data

This command is used to import the selected bit data as pattern data. It can be used to perform code conversion even for waveform data.

The commands in the **Import Line Data** menu will change depending on whether or not there is data in the pattern data area. When there is no data, the **Import Line Data command** will appear in the sub-menu. When data has been entered, this command will change to **Clear Pattern**.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Set...** from the side menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Select the data to be imported and then use the cursors to specify the required range.

☐ **Step 3:** Select **Set Pattern** from the sub-menu.

☐ **Step 4:** If pattern data exists, press **Clear Pattern** button in the sub-menu to clear the existing data.

☐ **Step 5:** Select **Import Line Data** from the sub-menu.
The selected bit data will be read into the pattern data input area.

Clear Pattern

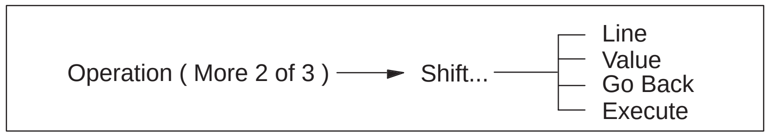
Clear Pattern

When data has been entered in the pattern data input area, the **Import Line Data** item in the sub-menu will change to **Clear Pattern**. Pressing the **Clear Pattern** button will delete all pattern data.

Shifting Waveform Data

Shift...

Use the shift function to shift the data between the designated vertical bar cursors in individual data lines or markers by the specified points or time. The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the **Shift...** item.



Procedure

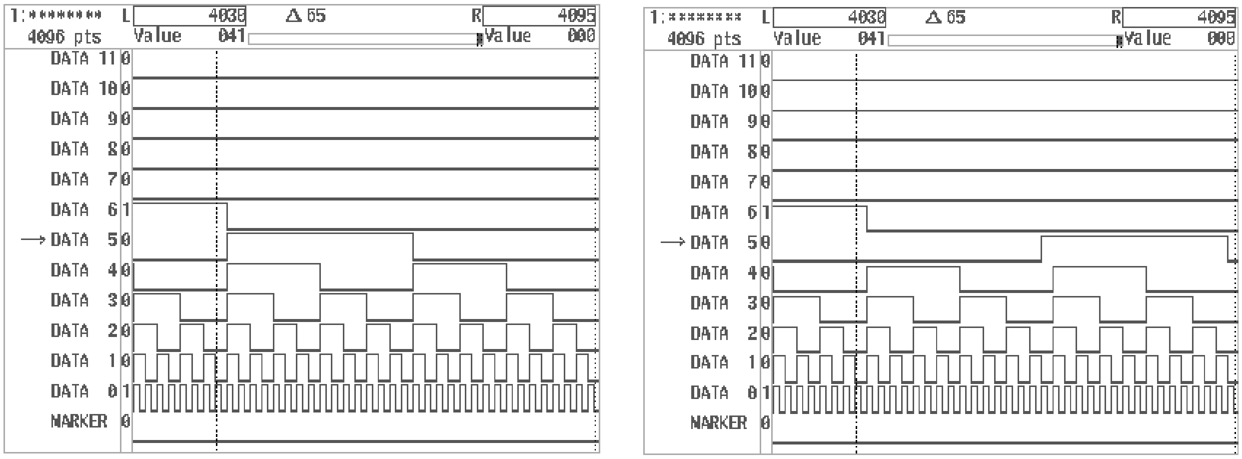
- [ ] **Step 1:** Move the vertical bar cursors to define the part of the waveform data to be shifted, then select **Shift...** from the second page of the side menu (**More 2 of 3**).

- [ ] **Step 2:** Select **Line** from the sub-menu. Turning the general purpose knob, select the data line (**DATA 11** – **DATA 0**) or marker (**MARKER**) on which the data is to be shifted.

- [ ] **Step 3:** Select **Value** from the sub-menu. Using the general purpose knob or the numeric keys, input the shift point value.

  Value sets the amount of the shift in points or time. The range for the shift value is ± (designated waveform point size). To shift the data between the vertical bar cursors to the right, enter a positive value; points that shift out beyond the right cursor will be shifted in from the left. To shift the data to the left, enter a negative number; points that shift out beyond the left cursor will be shifted in from the right.

- [ ] **Step 4:** Select **Execute** from the side menu. The waveform data is shifted with the specified conditions. Figure 4A-84 shows the screen before and after the data on line **DATA 5** between the vertical bar cursors is shifted 30 points to the right.



Before *After*

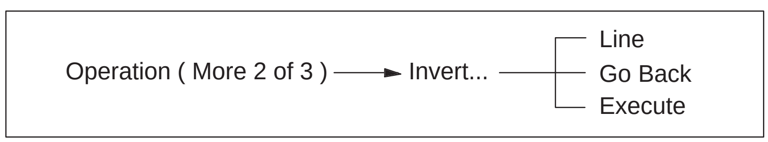
Figure 4A-84: Shifting Waveform Data

☐ **Step 5:** Select **Go Back** from the current sub-menu. The system returns from the **Shift...** sub-menu to the previous side menu.

Inverting Waveform Data

Invert...

Use **Invert...** to invert each data line or marker between the designated vertical bar cursors. The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the Invert... item.

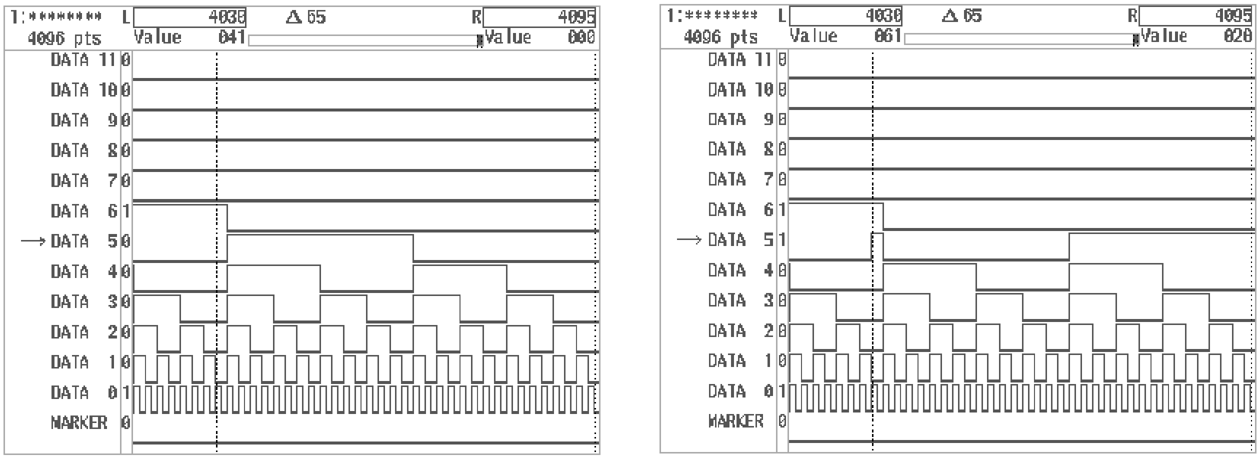


Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Move the vertical bar cursors to define the section of the data to be inverted. Then select **Invert...** from the second page of the side menu (**More 2 of 3**).

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Line** from the sub-menu. Turning the general purpose knob, select the data line or marker whose state is to be inverted.

☐ **Step 3:** Select **Execute** from the sub-menu. The state is inverted with the specified conditions. Figure 4A-85 shows the screen before and after the data between the vertical bar cursors on line **DATA 5** is inverted.

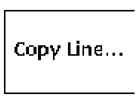


Before *After*

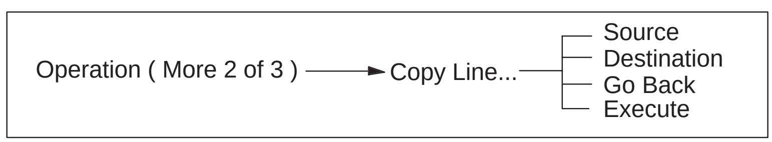
Figure 4A-85: Inverting Waveform Data State

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Go Back** from the current sub-menu. The system returns from the **Invert...** sub-menu to the previous side menu.

Copying Lines



Use **Copy line...** to copy the waveform data between the designated vertical bar cursors from one data line to another data line. Copy processing replaces the previous value of the copy destination line with the data of the copy source. The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the **Copy Line...** item.



Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Move the vertical bar cursors to define the section of the data to be copied. Then select **Copy Line...** from the second page of the side menu (**More 2 of 3**).

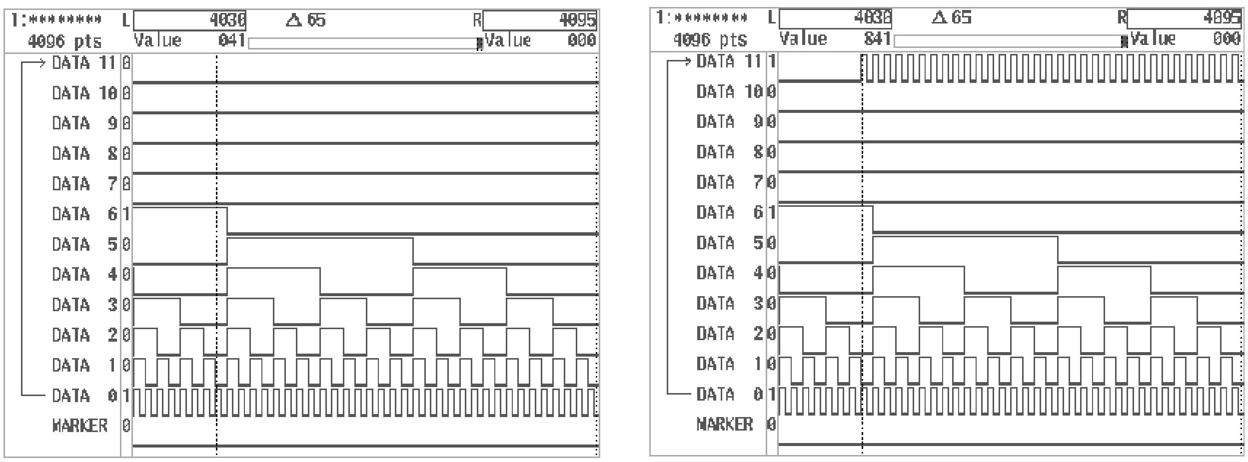
☐ **Step 2:** Select **Source** from the sub-menu. Turning the general purpose knob, select the copy source data line or marker.

Source selects the waveform data copy source. Data line **DATA 11** – **DATA 0** or marker (**MARKER**) can be selected.

☐ **Step 3:** Select **Destination** from the sub-menu. Turning the general purpose knob, select the copy destination data line or marker.

Destination selects the destination to which the waveform data selected with **Source** will be copied. Data line **DATA 11** – **DATA 0** or marker (**MARKER**) can be selected as the copy destination. From the copy source to the copy destination is indicated with an arrow.

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Execute** from the sub-menu. The data is copied with the specified conditions. Figure 4A-86 shows the screen before and after the section of waveform data between the vertical bar cursors on line **DATA 0** is copied to line **DATA 11**.



Before *After*

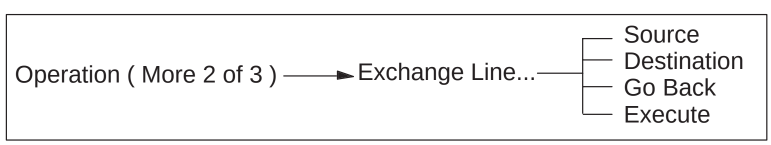
Figure 4A-86: Copying Lines

☐ **Step 5:** Select **Go Back** from the current sub-menu. The system returns from the **Copy Line...** sub-menu to the previous side menu.

Exchanging Lines

Exchange Line...

Use **Exchange Line...** to take the data between the designated vertical bar cursors on one line and interchange it with the data on another line. The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the **Exchange Line...** item.



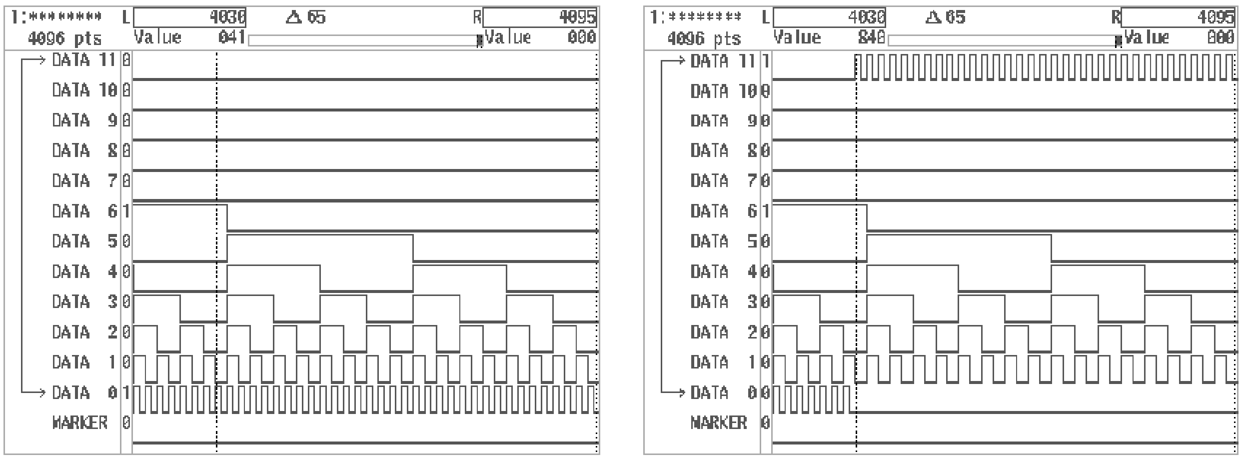
Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Move the vertical bar cursors to define the section of the data to be exchanged. Then select **Exchange Line...** from the second page of the side menu (**More 2 of 3**).

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Source** from the sub-menu. Turning the general purpose knob, select one of the data lines or marker for data interchange.

☐ **Step 3:** Select **Destination** from the sub-menu. Turning the general purpose knob, select the other data line or marker for data interchange.

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Execute** from the sub-menu. The data will be exchanged as designated. Figure 4A-87 shows the screen before and after the data on line **DATA 0** is exchanged with the data on line **DATA 11**.

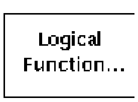


Before *After*

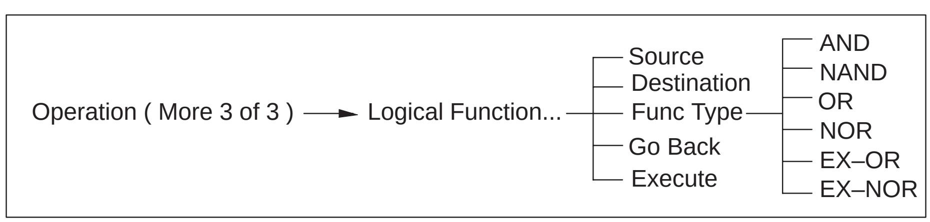
Figure 4A-87: Exchanging Lines

☐ **Step 5:** Select **Go Back** from the current sub-menu. The system returns from the **Exchange Line...** sub-menu to the previous side menu.

Applying Logical Operations to Lines



Use **Logical Function...** to apply a logical operation to the data between the vertical bar cursors on one data line with the data on another line and replace the data on the designated line with the result. The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the **Logical Function...** item.



Types of Logical Operations

You can choose from the following six logical operation options in the **Func Type** sub-menu:

- AND
- NAND
- OR
- NOR
- EX–OR
- EX–NOR

See "Logical Operation" in Appendix D for a description of each of these operations.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Move the vertical bar cursors to define the section of the data to which a logical operation is applied. Then select **Logical Function...** from the third page of the side menu (**More 3 of 3**).

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Source** from the sub-menu. Turning the general purpose knob, select the first data line or marker for logical operation.

☐ **Step 3:** Select **Destination** from the sub-menu. Turning the general purpose knob, select the other data line or marker for logical operation. The calculated result will replace the data line or marker designated with **Destination**.

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Execute** from the sub-menu. Logical operation will be performed for the selected lines.

☐ **Step 5:** Select **Go Back** from the current sub-menu. The system returns from the **Logical Function...** sub-menu to the previous side menu.

Expanding Waveform Data

Data Expand...

Use **Data Expand...** to expand the section between the designated vertical bar cursors for all of the data lines and marker. The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the **Data Expand...** item.

Operation (More 3 of 3) → Data Expand... → Factor / Go Back / Execute

Procedure

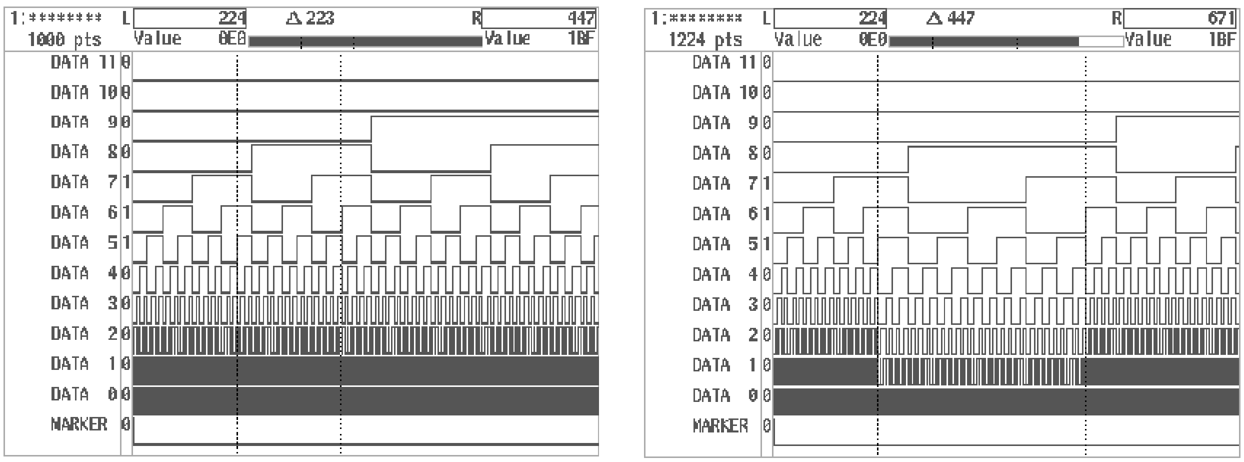
☐ **Step 1:** Move the vertical bar cursors to define the section of the data to be expanded. Then select **Data Expand...** from the third page of the side menu (**More 3 of 3**).

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Factor** from the sub-menu.

Factor is used to set the degree of expansion to any value between 2x and 10x.

- [ ] **Step 3:** Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, set the degree of expansion.

- [ ] **Step 4:** Select **Execute** from the sub-menu. The section of the waveform between the vertical bar cursors will be expanded to the designated degree, and the waveform point size will increase accordingly. Figure 4A-88 shows the screen before and after the data between the vertical bar cursors is expanded by a factor of 2.

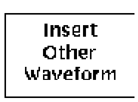


Before *After*

Figure 4A-88: Expanding Waveform Data

- [ ] **Step 5:** Select **Go Back** from the current sub-menu. The system returns from the **Data Expand...** sub-menu to the previous side menu.

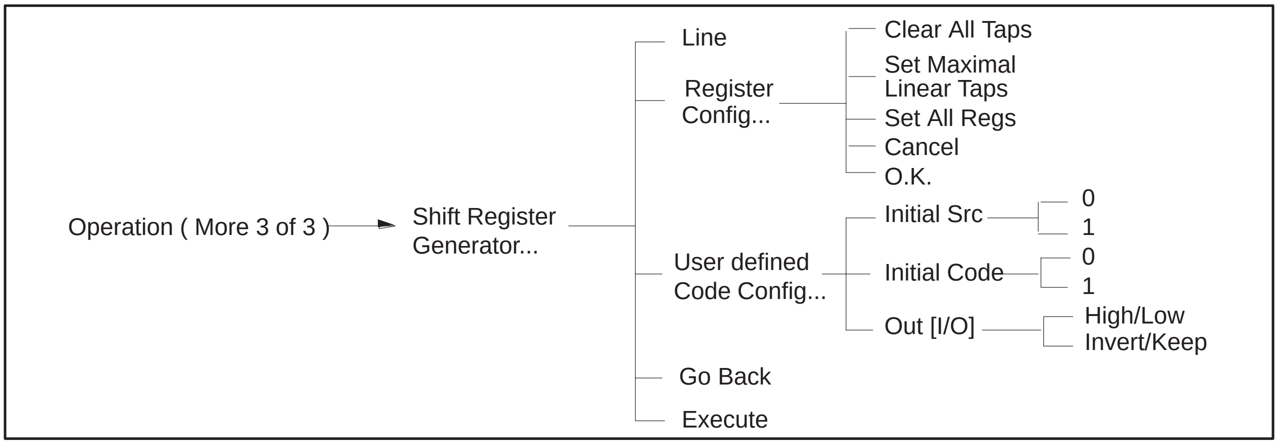
Inserting Other Waveform Data



Use **Insert Other Waveform** to insert data from another waveform at a designated point in the waveform being edited. This item is located on the third page(**More 3 of 3**) of the side menu. The functions of this item are the same as for the **Insert Other Waveform** item for the graphic display of the waveform editor. See Page 4A-59.

Pseudo-Random Pulse Generator Using Shift Register

Use **Shift Register Generator...** to set a pseudo-random pulse pattern using a shift register for the data between the designated vertical bar cursors on a data line or marker. The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the **Shift Register Generator...** item.



Register Configuration

The pseudo-random pulse generator (with shift register) consists of 2 to 32 registers together with the register output for each and the tap of the feed-back loop that performs the EX-OR operation. Selecting **Register Config...** from the sub-menu enables you to set the pattern for the shift register generator. Figure 4A-89 shows the menu used to set the shift register.

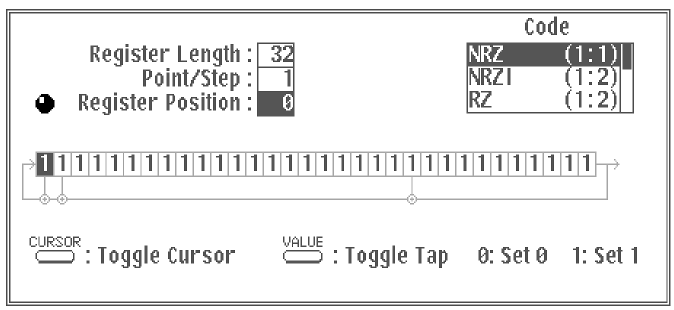


Figure 4A-89: Shift Register Configuration Menu

Use the **CURSOR** button on the front panel to select the items needed for the shift register. The following items can be selected; the general purpose knob is used to set the desired value for each item.

- Register Length (sets the length of the register)
- Register Position (sets the position of the cursor)
- Point/Step (sets the number of points per step)
- Code (used to select the data code)

Setting the Register Length

The register length may be set to any value between 2 and 32. The register length is displayed at the top of the shift register configuration menu, as shown below. In this example, the shift register is made up of 32 items.

Entering the Register Value and Setting Taps

To enter the register value and set taps, press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel and select **Register Position**. A knob icon will be displayed to the left of the **Register Position** area. Turn the general purpose knob to move the cursor. The current location of the cursor is shown beside the **Register Position** item.

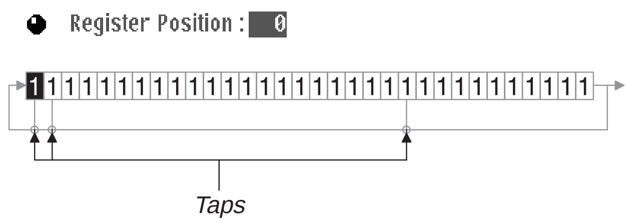


Figure 4A-90: Register Values and Taps

The numeric keys can now be used to enter the register value at the position of the cursor.

Press **0** to set the register value to 0
Press **1** to set the register value to 1

Pressing the **VALUE** button on the front panel toggles the tap between on and off.

Clearing All Taps
Use **Clear All Taps** in the sub-menu to delete all taps that have been set.

Setting the Maximum Length Code Series for Taps
Set Maximal Linear Taps in the sub-menu allows you to easily create M series (maximum length code series) bit strings. M series bit strings are combined with several different kinds of tap arrangements. The tap arrangement will change each time the **Set Maximal Linear Taps** button is pressed.

Setting Register Values
Use **Set All Regs** in the sub-menu to set all register values to 1.

Sample Settings for Register Values and Taps

Set simply set register and tap values as follows:

Register Length: 3
Register Value: 101
Use **Set Maximal Linear Taps** to set taps

Figure 4A-91 shows the output for the above settings. This output will be the maximum length code series.

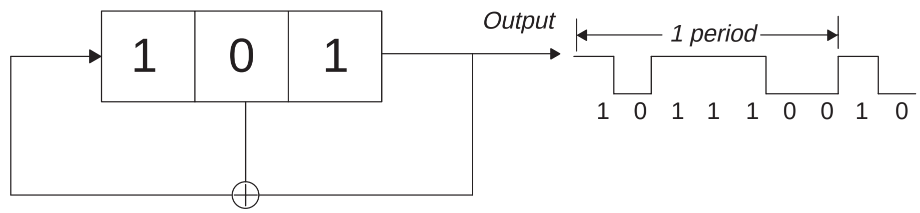


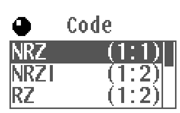
Figure 4A-91: Sample Settings for Register Values and Taps

Point/Step

Point/Step is used to set how many points make up each data bit. The data after **Code** conversion will be one item of bit data. For example, when **NRZI** is selected for **Code** and **Point/Step** is set to 2, each data bit will consist of 4 points.

Code

This command selects the code system used when data pattern strings are output. The **user defined** code enables you to define a custom conversion table. For a detailed description of each code, see ”Pattern Codes” in Appendix D.



User defined Code Config...

The following process is used to execute a user-defined code conversion.

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Shift Register Generator...** from the side menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Select **User defined Code Config...** from the sub menu.

☐ **Step 3:** Define the codes as desired. For the basic operations used when defining codes, see ”User defined Code Config...” on page 4A-108.

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Go Back** to return to the **Shift Register Generator...** menu.

☐ **Step 5:** Select **Register Config...** from the side menu.

☐ **Step 6:** Set the values for **Register Length** and **Point/Step** as well as the register value and tap.

☐ **Step 7:** Press the **CURSOR** button to select Code menu item. A knob icon will appear in the upper left side of the **Code** selection menu.

☐ **Step 8:** Turn the general purpose knob to select **user defined**.

☐ **Step 9:** Press **O.K**. in the sub-menu to confirm the settings. The **Shift Register Generator...** menu will automatically reappear.

☐ **Step 10:** Using the general purpose knob, define the data line and area where the pattern will be inserted.

☐ **Step 11:** Press **Execute** in the sub-menu. The result will be inserted between the cursors on the data line selected in the previous step.

Creating the M Series Pseudo-Random Signal

An M series pseudo-random signal has a length of 2^n-1 assuming the number of levels for the shift register is n. In this example, we will create an M series pseudo-random signal of $2^{15}-1$ bits (15 levels) with 2 points for each step. This signal is included on the Sample Waveform Llibrary Disk that came with the AWG2005.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Setting** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Waveform Points** from the side menu. Then set the waveform point size to 65534 using the numeric keys. The waveform point size needed to display all the bits of the pseudo-random signal is given by the following formula:

$$(\text{Value for } \mathbf{Point/Step})\_(2^n-1)=2\_(2^{15}-1)=65534$$

☐ **Step 3:** Select **Shift Register Generator...** from the third page of the side menu (**More 3 of 3**).

☐ **Step 4:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel.

☐ **Step 5:** Using the general purpose knob, move the vertical bar cursors to designate the area to which pseudo-random signals are inserted. In this example, we will set the left cursor to point 0 and the right cursor to point 65533.

☐ **Step 6:** Select **Line** from the sub-menu. Turning the general purpose knob, select **DATA11** for which you want to set the pattern.

☐ **Step 7:** Select **Register Config...** from the sub-menu.

☐ **Step 8:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel to select **Register Length**.

☐ **Step 9:** Using the general purpose knob, set the register length to 15.

☐ **Step 10:** Select **Clear All Taps** in the sub-menu to delete all taps.

☐ **Step 11:** Select **Set All Regs** in the sub-menu to set all registers to 1.

☐ **Step 12:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel to select **Register Position**.

☐ **Step 13:** Using the general purpose knob, set the **Register Position** to 13.

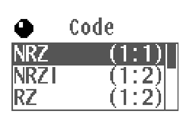
☐ **Step 14:** Press the **VALUE** button on the front panel to set the tap.

☐ **Step 15:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel to select **Point/Step**.

☐ **Step 16:** Using the general purpose knob, set **Point/Step** to 2.

☐ **Step 17:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel to select **Code**.

☐ **Step 18:** Using the general purpose knob, select **NRZ**.



☐ **Step 19:** Select **O.K.** from the sub-menu.

☐ **Step 20:** Select **Execute** from the sub-menu. The timing display shown below will appear.

☐ **Step 21:** Select **Go Back** from the sub-menu.

Zooming Waveforms

The function for this item is the same as for the **Zoom** item in for waveform editor graphic display. See Page 4A-90.

Table Display

To show the table display for the waveform editor using the **View type....** item in the **Setting** menu:

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Setting** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Select **View type...** from the side menu.

Three items will be displayed in the sub-menu: **Graphic**, **Timing** and **Table**.

☐ **Step 3:** Select **Table** from the sub-menu.

The table display of the waveform editor will appear. See Figure 4A-92.

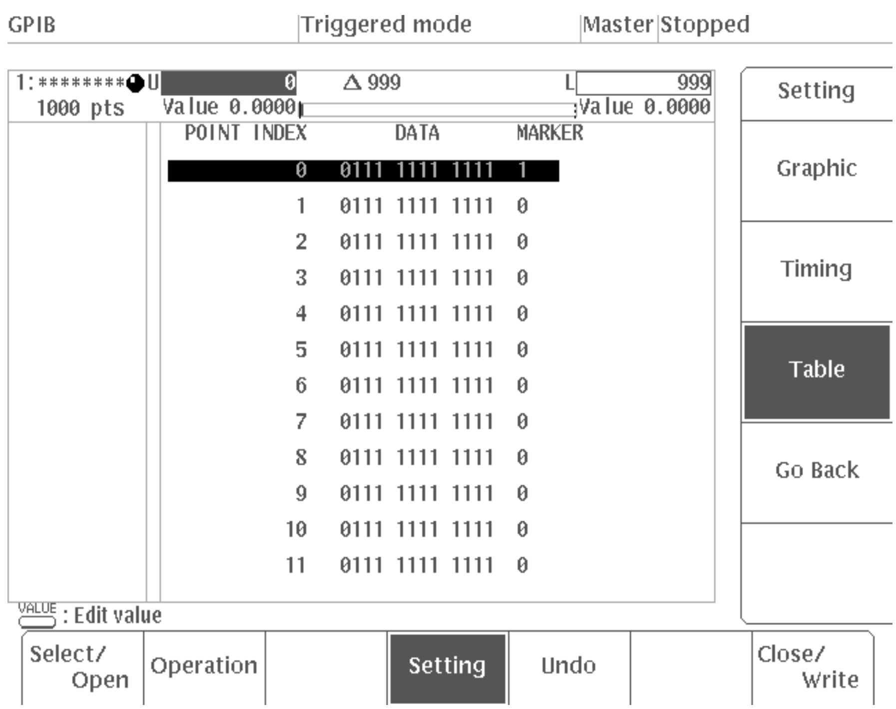


Figure 4A-92: Table Display

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Go Back** from the sub-menu. The system moves to the previous **Setting** side menu.

Table Display Menu Structure

Figure 4A-93 shows the menu configuration for the table display.

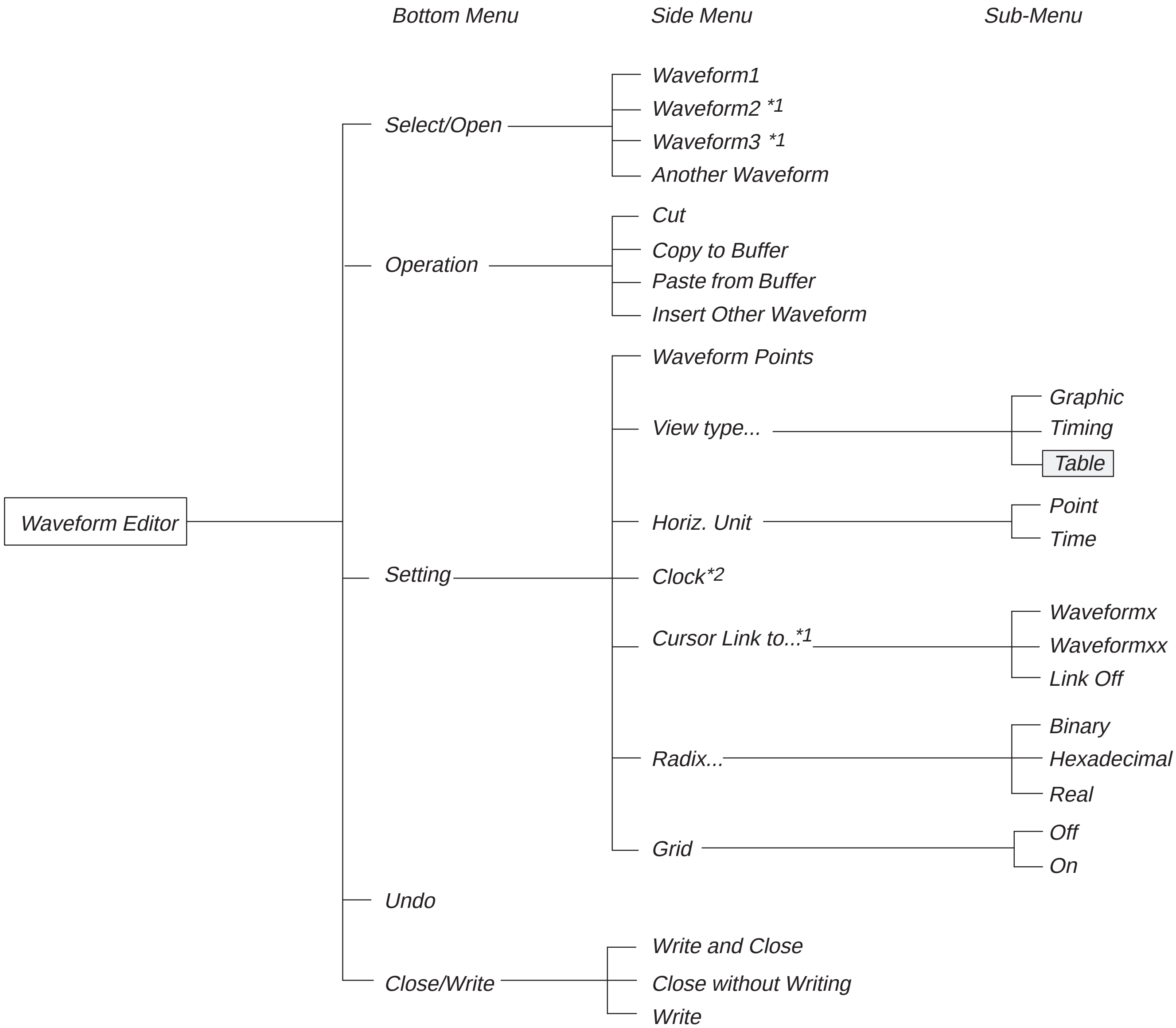


Figure 4A-93: Waveform Editor Table Display Menu Structure

*1 This item appears when two or more waveforms are being edited simultaneously with **Another Waveform** in the side menu (under **Select**/**Open** in the bottom menu).

*2 This item appears when **Time** has been selected for **Horiz. Unit** in the side menu (under **Setting** in the bottom menu).

Menu Functions

The following list shows the functions available for each menu item and the page on which you can find a description of that function.

Table 4A-5: Menu Functions

Menu	Function	Page
Select /Open	Opening and selecting the editing area	4A-14
Operation	Editing waveform data in table display	4A-134
Cut	Cutting waveforms	4A-42, 4A-134
Copy to Buffer	Copying waveforms	4A-43, 4A-134
Paste from Buffer	Pasting waveforms	4A-43, 4A-134
Insert Other Waveform	Inserting other waveform data	4A-59, 4A-134
Setting	Settings for the waveform to be edited	4A-28 4A-132
Waveform Points	Setting waveform point count	4A-29
View type...	Selecting the waveform data display format	4A-28
Horiz. Unit	Setting horizontal axis units	4A-31
Clock	Setting clock frequency	4A-32
Cursor Link to...	Linking the vertical bar cursors	4A-33
Radix...	Setting a cardinal number	4A-132
Grid	Displaying a grid in the editing area	4A-35
Undo	Canceling function execution	4-2
Close/Write	Saving files and exiting the editor	4A-19

Table Display Screen

Figure 4A-94 shows the table display screen. This section will describe each portion of the screen; however, descriptions of areas that are identical to the graphic display will be omitted. See "Graphic Display Screen" for a description of the graphic display.

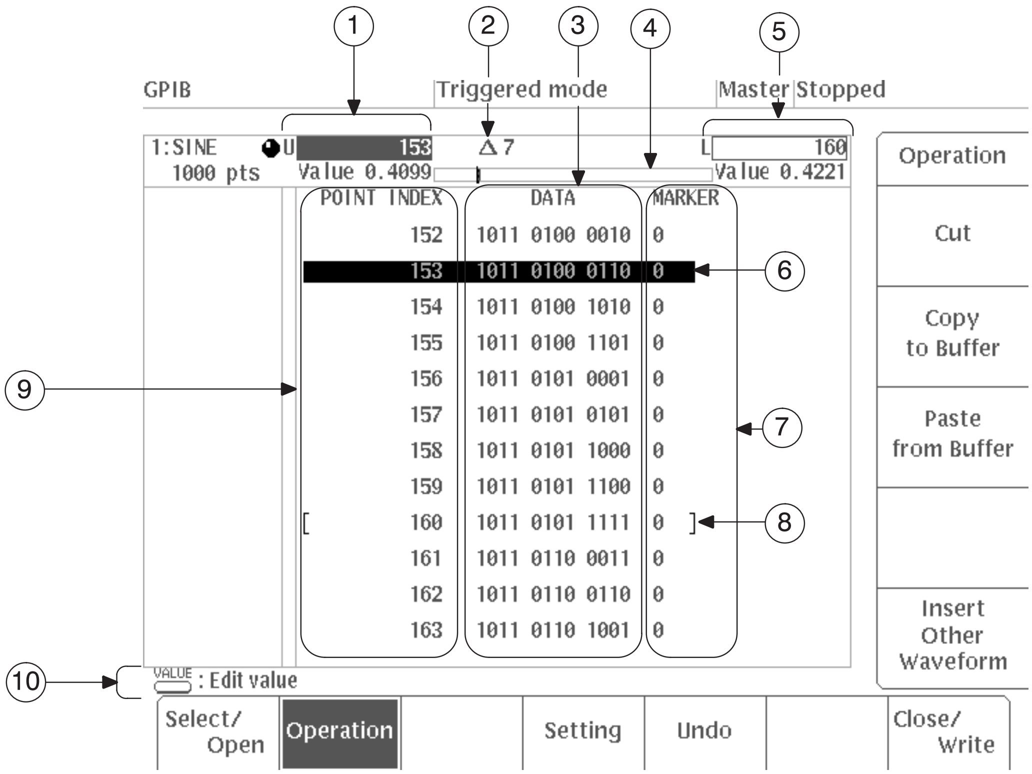


Figure 4A-94: Table Display Screen

(1) U

Value
Shows the data value (**Value**) indicated by a real number and the time or point count (**U**) for the current position of the upper line cursor. The value in the displayed inverted field can be changed using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob.

(2) Δ

Shows the time or point count between the upper and lower line cursors.

(3) Data

This shows the waveform data for the point count or time. The waveform data can be displayed as binary, hexadecimal, or decimal data, depending which base has been selected. If binary numbers have been selected, the left end of the data is the most significant bit (**MSB**).

(4) Horizontal Scroll Indicator

Indicates which portion of the waveform is currently displayed on the screen. The displayed inverted portion of the indicator shows the portion of the waveform currently being displayed.

(5) L

Value
Shows the data value (**Value**) indicated by a real number and the time or point count (**L**) for the current position of the lower line cursor.

(6) Upper Line Cursor

The line that is brightly highlighted by the upper line cursor is active.

(7) Marker

Binary display of the state of Marker for the waveform point or time.

(8) Lower Line Cursor

The line cursor enclosed in a frame (**[ ]**) is inactive.

(9) Point Index or Time

Shows the waveform point or time. The units are set with the **Setting** item in the bottom menu.

(10) Button Operations

This area shows how the front panel buttons operate in this menu.

VALUE : Edit value

When the **VALUE** button is pressed, a block cursor appears within the inverted display cursor and the numeric keys can be used to input the data. Pressing an arrow button (←/→) moves the block cursor left/right.

CURSOR : Move Line Cursor

When the **CURSOR** button is pressed, the line cursor can be moved.

Settings for the Waveform to be Edited

Setting

Before waveform data is created, you must use the **Setting** item in the side menu to set the environment for editing. Apart from the cardinal number settings, the procedure for setting values is the same as for the graphic display. See "Setting for the Waveform to be Edited" for a description of the graphic display.

Setting a Cardinal Number

Radix...

Use **Radix...** to set a cardinal number to display waveform data in a table format. Waveform data can be displayed in numeric form as **Binary**, **Hexadecimal** or **Real** numbers.

When **Radix...** is selected, the following items appear in the sub-menu:

- **Binary**
- **Hexadecimal**
- **Real**
- **Go Back**

The description of these cardinal numbers is given below.

Binary — 12-bit waveform data is created using the **0** or **1** numeric keys.

Hexadecimal — Waveform data is created using the **0**–**9** and **A**–**F** numeric keys. When the cardinal numbers are changed to **Hexadecimal**, numeric keys and unit keys are allocated to **A**–**F**.

Real — The data is input, as with regular number input, by pressing numeric keys, then pressing the **ENTER** key to enter the number. Any real number (**Real**), up to the vertical axis full scale, can be entered in the graphic display.

The markers are displayed in binary notation even when the cardinal numbers are set to **Hexadecimal** or **Real**.

Procedure

- [ ] **Step 1:** Select **Setting** from the bottom menu.
- [ ] **Step 2:** Select **Radix...** from the second page of the side menu (**More 2 of 2**).
- [ ] **Step 3:** Select the desired cardinal number (**Binary**, **Hexadecimal** or **Real**) from the sub-menu. Figure 4A-95 shows how the same waveform data is displayed in each of the cardinal numbers.

Binary

POINT INDEX	DATA	MARKER
150	1011 0011 1011	0
151	1011 0011 1111	0
152	1011 0100 0010	0
153	1011 0100 0110	0
154	1011 0100 1010	0
155	1011 0100 1101	0
156	1011 0101 0001	0
157	1011 0101 0101	0
158	1011 0101 1000	0
159	1011 0101 1100	0
160	1011 0101 1111	0
[161	1011 0110 0011	0]

Hexadecimal

POINT INDEX	DATA	MARKER
150	B3B	0
151	B3F	0
152	B42	0
153	B46	0
154	B4A	0
155	B4D	0
156	B51	0
157	B55	0
158	B58	0
159	B5C	0
160	B5F	0
[161	B63	0]

Real

POINT INDEX	DATA	MARKER
150	0.4045	0
151	0.4064	0
152	0.4079	0
153	0.4099	0
154	0.4118	0
155	0.4133	0
156	0.4152	0
157	0.4172	0
158	0.4187	0
159	0.4206	0
160	0.4221	0
[161	0.4240	0]

Figure 4A-95: Numeric Displays for Waveform Data

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Go Back** from the current sub-menu. The system returns from the **Binary...** sub-menu to the previous side menu.

Editing Waveform Data

Waveform data can be edited at the waveform point, regardless of what item is selected in the bottom menu.

Procedure

Move the line cursor to the data point to be edited.

☐ **Step 1:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel to move the line cursor.

☐ **Step 2:** When the **CURSOR** button is pressed, the active line cursor is toggled between **Upper** and **Lower**.

☐ **Step 3:** Use the general purpose knob to move the active line cursor to the time or point value to be edited.

Enter the waveform data

☐ **Step 4:** Press the **VALUE** button on the front panel to input the waveform data with the set cardinal number.

Within the inverted display active line cursor is a block cursor. The data in the block cursor can be changed.

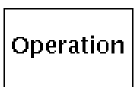
☐ **Step 5:** Use the ← and → buttons on the front panel to move the block cursor to the data to be changed.

When the block cursor is at the left end of the **DATA**, pressing the ← button moves the block cursor to **MARKER** for the previous waveform point or time value. When the block cursor is at the **MARKER**, pressing the → button moves the block cursor to the left and of the **DATA** for the subsequent waveform point or time value.

☐ **Step 6:** Data can be input with the numeric keys. Pressing numeric or character keys unrelated to the cardinal number you have designated will have no effect on the data.

When a number or character is input, the block cursor moves to the next character to the right.

Editing Waveform Data in Table Display

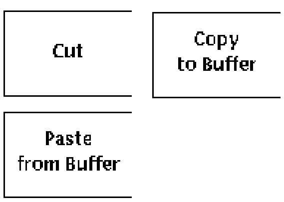


Use **Operation** to edit waveform data for the area between the upper and lower line cursors.

The following list shows the names and functions of the items in the side menu.

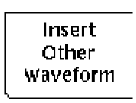
■ **Cut**	Cutting waveforms
■ **Copy to Buffer**	Copying waveforms
■ **Paste from Buffer**	Pasting waveforms
■ **Insert Other Waveform**	Inserting other waveform data

Cut, Copy, and Paste Processing Function



Use these functions cut, copy to the buffer, and paste to any other time or point value within the waveform data area between the upper and lower line cursors. The functions for these items are the same as for the corresponding items in waveform editor graphic display. See pages 4A-42 and 4A-43.

Inserting Other Waveform Data



Use **Insert Other Waveform** to insert data from another waveform at a designated point in the waveform being edited. The functions of this item are the same as for the **Insert Other Waveform** item for the graphic display of the waveform editor. See Page 4A-59.

Equation Editor

Use the equation editor to edit files with the extension of **.EQU**. Equation file data takes the form of mathematical equations. An equation program file can have up to 100 lines. An equation file is compiled to create a waveform file and to output the waveform.

Figure 4A-96 shows an example of a waveform obtained by compiling the data from an equation file and its equation.

Equation File

```
range(0,5ms)
sin(4*pi*x)
```

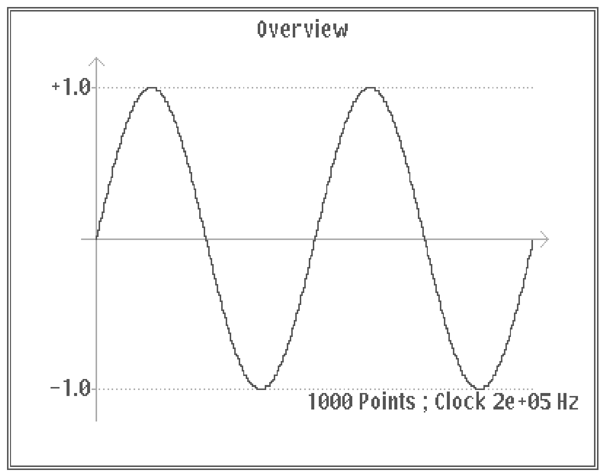
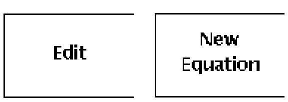


Figure 4A-96: Example of Equation File Data and Resulting Waveform

Entering the Equation Editor



Procedure

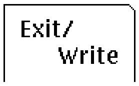
- ☐ **Step 1:** Press the **EDIT** button in the **MENU** column. The initial **EDIT** menu will appear.
- ☐ **Step 2:** Select **Edit** or **New Equation** from the side menu.

  Edit — Used to select and edit an existing equation file **(.EQU)**

  New Equation — Used to create a new equation file

The equation editor screen will appear.

Saving Files and Exiting the Editor



Use **Exit/Write** in the bottom menu to save the file to the internal memory of the AWG2005 and exit from the editor depending on the selected side menu item.

The same procedure is used to save the file and exit from the equation editor as for the waveform editor. See ”Saving Files and Exiting the Editor” in the section on the waveform editor.

When you compile the equation then exit the equation editor, the waveform file and the equation file are saved in internal memory with the same name but different extension.

NOTE

*If there is already a waveform file in internal memory with the name the compiled waveform file will be given, a message is displayed asking if you are sure you want to overwrite the old file. Answer either **Cancel** or **O.K**.*

Equation Editor Menu Structure

The Equation Editor menu has the structure shown in Figure 4A-97.

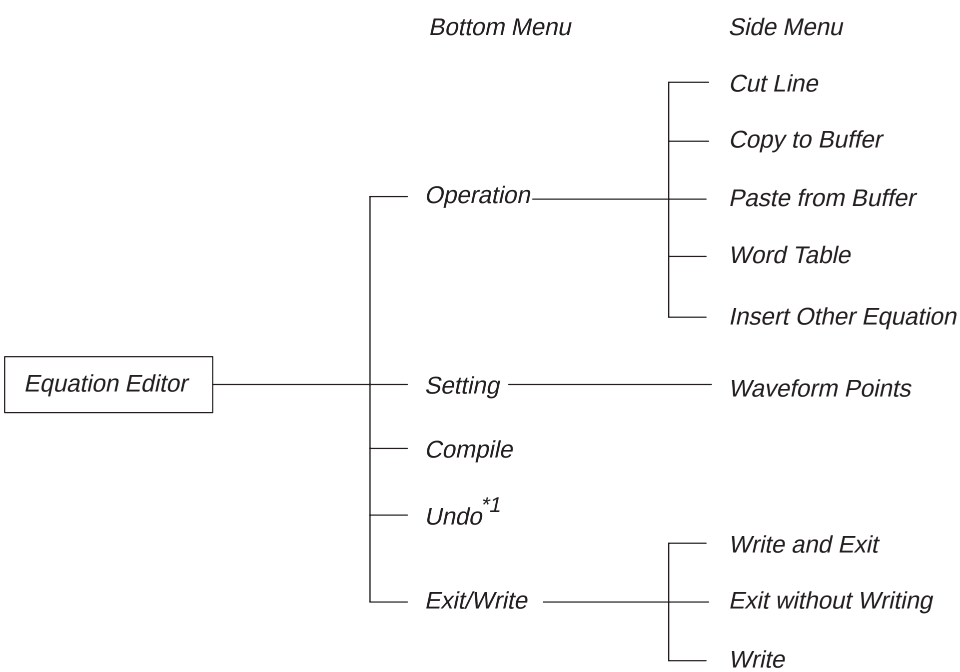


Figure 4A-97: Equation Editor Menu Structure

*1 This item appears when **Operation** in the bottom menu has been selected.

Menu Functions

The following list shows the functions available for each menu item and the page on which you can find a description of that function.

Table 4A-6: Menu Functions

Menu	Function	Page
Operation	Editing functions	4A-153
Cut Line	Cutting a line	4A-153
Copy to Buffer	Copying a line	4A-153
Paste from Buffer	Pasting a line	4A-153
Word Table	Changing the component menu	4A-142
Insert Other Equation	Inserting other equation file	4A-154
Setting		
Waveform Points	Setting waveform point count	4A-155
Compile	Compiling equations into waveform data	4A-156
Undo	Canceling function execution	4-2
Exit/Write	Saving files and exiting the equation editor	4A-19, 4A-136

Equation Editor Menu Display

Figure 4A-98 shows the general equation editor display. A description for each callout follows.

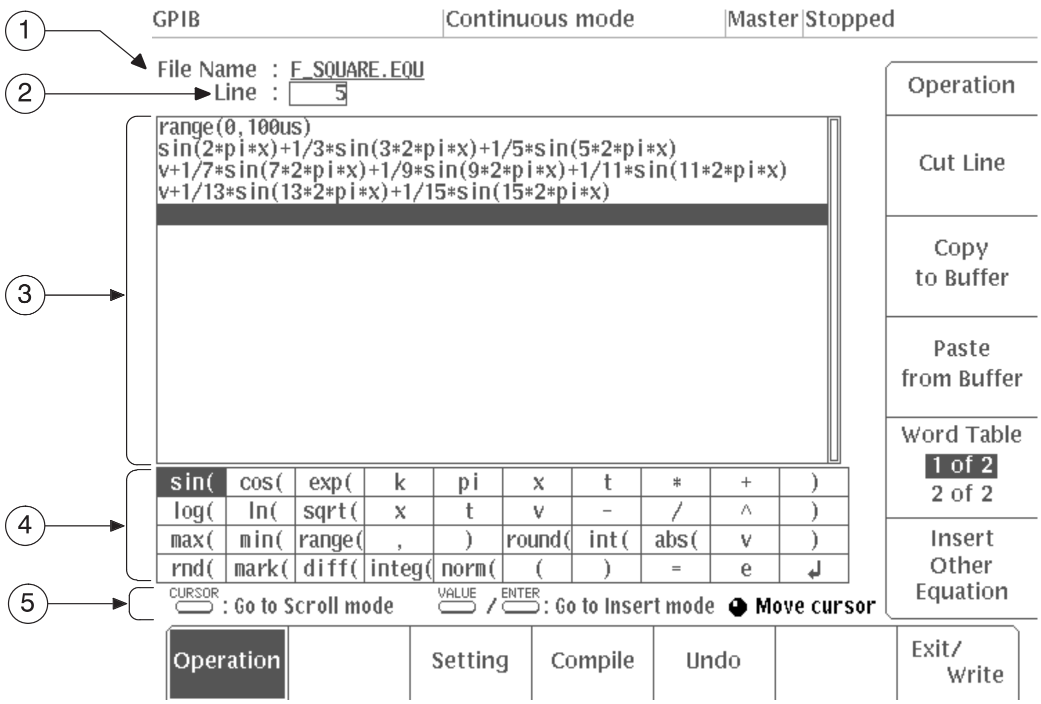


Figure 4A-98: Equation Editor CRT Display

(1) File Name

This is the name of the file being edited. If the file has not been named yet, the display is **********.EQU**.

(2) Line

This is the line number of the equation or range displayed inverted within the equation list.

(3) Equation List

An equation list contains two components: equations and a range for which the equations apply. The equation is input from the component menu, with the numeric keys or unit keys.

(4) Component Menu

The component menu contains the elements used to create an equation. The menu consists of two pages. The first page contains functions, operators, constants, variables and syntax items. The second page contains characters and symbols. These items are selected with the general purpose knob. Use **Word Table** under **Operation** to move between pages.

(5) Button Operation

This area shows how the front panel buttons operate in this menu.

CURSOR : Go to Cursor mode

When you press the **CURSOR** button, the line cursor within the inverted cursor in the equation list can be moved with the general purpose knob.

VALUE / ENTER : Go to Insert mode

When the **VALUE** or **ENTER** button is pressed, the system goes into a mode in which you can insert an item into the equation list from the component menu. Pressing the **VALUE** or **ENTER** button again inserts the item inverted in the component menu.

VALUE / ENTER : Insert word

Pressing the **VALUE** or **ENTER** key inserts the item selected from the component menu into the equation list.

CURSOR : Go to Scroll mode

When you press the **CURSOR** button, the inverted cursor in the equation list can be moved with the general purpose knob.

Move cursor

Turning the general purpose knob moves the cursor (I) in the equation list.

Creating and Editing Equation Files

Select **Operation** in the bottom menu to create or edit an equation file. When this item is selected, the time range can be designated with the component menu and the equation can be created. Figure 4A-99 shows a menu with **Operation** in the bottom menu selected.

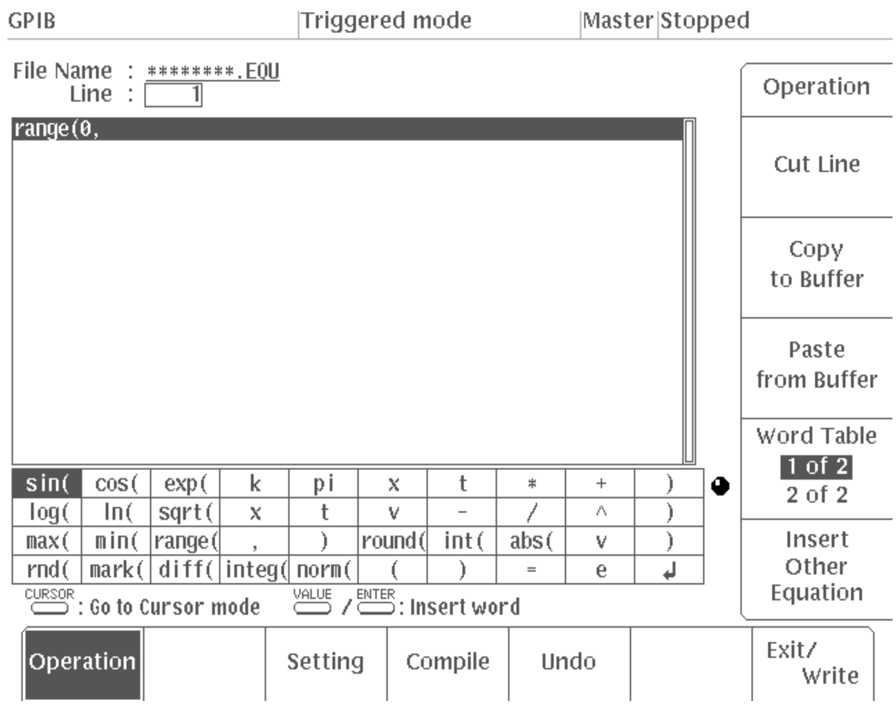


Figure 4A-99: Menu With Operation Selected

Specifying the Time Domain

The equation must specify the time domain. If the time domain is not defined, this is an error. The time domain is specified with **range()**.

When making a new equation file, **range(0**, is input in the first line of equation. Next, the time is specified. This setting is valid until the next **range(** item is specified. With the first **range()** specification, any number of lines of equation can be input. Text written after the **range()** on the same line is invalid. Here is the format for the **range(** item.

range(Equation starting time, Equation ending time)

Specification of subsequent time ranges use the component menu **range(** item.The clock frequency is obtained from the total time (period) set with **range()** and the waveform point count set with **Setting**, thus:

$$\text{Clock frequency} = \frac{\text{Waveform point count}}{\text{Equation period}}$$

Procedure

In this example, you will create a sine wave with a period of 1ms, using the following equation:

range(0,1ms)	Time range
sin(2*pi*x)	Equation

- ☐ **Step 1:** Select **Operation** from the bottom menu.
- ☐ **Step 2:** After **range(0,** in the equation list, use the numeric keys and the unit keys to enter **1,ms**. The expression now reads **range(0,1ms**.
- ☐ **Step 3:** Using the general purpose knob, select **)** from the component menu.
- ☐ **Step 4:** Press **VALUE** or **ENTER** on the front panel. The **)** that you selected in the component menu will be inserted in front of the position of the cursor (**I**) , in the inverted line cursor in the equation list. The expression now reads **range(0,1ms)**.
- ☐ **Step 5:** Press the → key. The inverted line cursor will move to the next line.
- ☐ **Step 6:** Using the general purpose knob, select **sin(** from the component menu.
- ☐ **Step 7:** Press **VALUE** or **ENTER** on the front panel. The expression **sin(** will appear on the screen.
- ☐ **Step 8:** Using the numeric keys, enter **2**. The expression now reads **sin(2**.
- ☐ **Step 9:** Repeat steps 6 and 7 to enter ***, pi, *, x**, and **)**. The expression now reads **sin(2*pi*x)**.

Using the Front Panel Buttons in Editing

The functions of the **CURSOR**, **VALUE**, and **ENTER** button affect the operation of the general purpose knob and the cursor. Here are details on these functions.

CURSOR Button — When you press the **CURSOR** button, you can move the inverted line cursor and the cursor (**I**) with the general purpose knob. Each time you press the **CURSOR** button, the cursor that can be moved with the general purpose knob toggles between the inverted line cursor and the cursor. While the inverted line cursor can be moved with the general purpose knob, you can also move the inverted line cursor directly to the desired line by using the numeric keys to enter the desired line number.

VALUE/**ENTER** Buttons — After the **CURSOR** button has been pressed, pressing the **VALUE** or **ENTER** button makes it possible to select an item from the component menu. In this state, pressing the **VALUE** or **ENTER** button again inserts the items selected from the component menu into the equation list. At this time, input with the numeric keys is also possible.

The cursor (I) can also be moved using the ← and → keys on the front panel.

Decimal Point

When Option 09 is installed, all internal calculations use 32-bit floating point precision (IEEE 754 compatible). If Option 09 is not installed, 32-bit fixed precision is used when precision is not required (minimum unit 15 μs or greater). When precision is required, 32-bit floating point precision (IEEE 754 compatible) is used.

For fast and highly precise calculations, we recommend that Option 09 be installed.

Component Menu

The component menu contains the items used to set the time range as well as functions, operators, variables, constants, syntax items and characters. You can use these items to create equations and enter comments.

Word Table
1 of 2
2 of 2

To display the other page of the menu, press **Word Table** in the side menu under **Operation**. Figure 4A-100 shows the two pages of the components menu.

Word Table
1 of 2
2 of 2

sin(	cos(	exp(	k	pi	x	t	*	+	)
log(	ln(	sqrt(	x	t	v	–	/	^	)
max(	min(	range(	,	)	round(	int(	abs(	v	)
rnd(	mark(	diff(	integ(	norm(	(	)	=	e	↲

Word Table
1 of 2
2 of 2

#	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i
j	k	l	m	n	o	p	q	r	s
t	u	v	w	x	y	z	%	$	&
@	^	~	*	+	–	/	=	_	

Figure 4A-100: Component Menu

- Syntax Items
  These are parentheses – **(** and **)** – for specifying the order of operations. Each opening (left) parenthesis must be paired with a closing (right) parenthesis. When there are two arguments – for example, **range**, **max**, **min** – they are separated with a **,**(comma).

- Variables

  Here are the variables that can be used in an equation.

  t : Time from the head of that range() statement.
  x : Variable taking on a value from 0.0 to 1.0 within that range ( ) statement.
  v : Variable showing the current value of the waveform data at that position.

- Operators

  +, **–**, *****, /

  These add, subtract, multiply, or divide the components. The priorities are the same as usual for these four operators – ***** and / have priority over **+** and **–**.

  ^

  Expresses exponents. Only integers can be raised to a higher power. **^** has the same priority as ***** and /. Therefore, parentheses are required to give priority to multiplication.

  Example) pi * (2^3) * x where 2^3 = two raised to the third power.

- Comment

  Comments are preceded by a number sign (**#**). When a number sign is entered, all characters after that until the end of the line are treated as a comment. All of the items in the component menu can be used in a comment.

- Characters

  The characters available in the component menu are the letters of the alphabet (**a–z**) and several symbols (**%, $, &, @, A** and **_**). These are used in comments.

- Other items
  pi, e, k, =, ↵

  pi
  The circumferential ratio.

  e
  Exponent (for an implied 10)
  The range for numbers expressed in this scientific notation is from |5.9e–39| to |3.4e38|.
  (Examples: **1e6**=1,000,000, **1e–3**=0.001)

k
The **k0–k9** can be specified; these are constants that may be used in equations. Specifying a new value for the same **k#** replaces the old value with the new one. If no constant is defined for **k**, this value will be automatically set to 0.

=
Equals sign. = is used with **k** constants.
Example: **k0=2*pi**

↵
Ends the line for the range or equation; inserting a return (↵) in the middle of the line partitions it.

- Functions

  Here are the functions that make up the equation.

  - **sin(**, **cos(** — The arguments for these trigonometric functions are in radians.

Example: range(0,100 μs)
cos(2*pi*x)

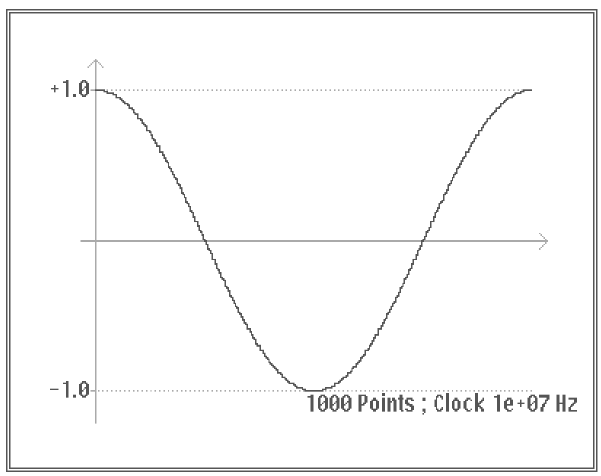


Figure 4A-101: Trigonometric Function Waveform Expressed With Variable x

Example: range(0,100 μs)
sin(2*pi*1e4*t)

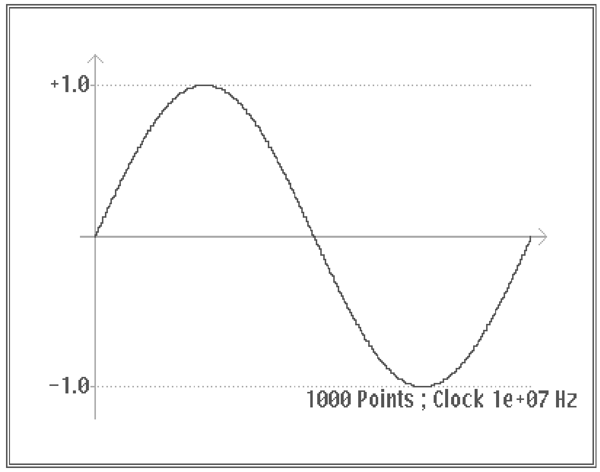


Figure 4A-102: Trigonometric Function Waveform Expressed With Variable t

- **exp(**, **log(**, **ln(**
  Exponential function, common log function, natural log function. The **log** and **ln** arguments must be positive.

Example: range(0,50 μs)
1−exp(−5*x)
range(50μs,100μs)
exp(−5*x)

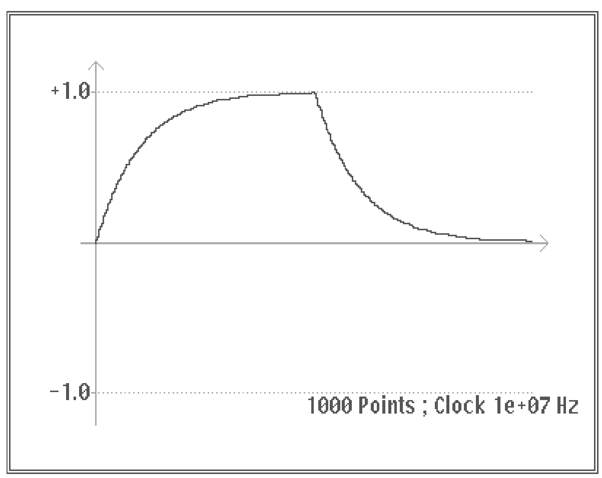


Figure 4A-103: Equation Using exp(

Example: range(0,100 μs)
log(10*(x+0.1))

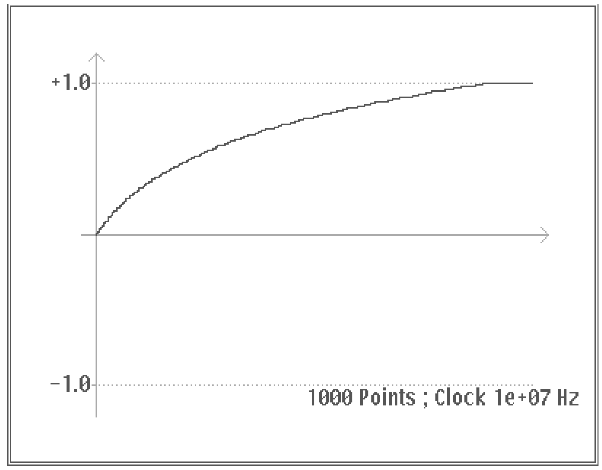


Figure 4A-104: Equation Using log(

Example: range(0,100 μs)
ln(2*(x+0.2))

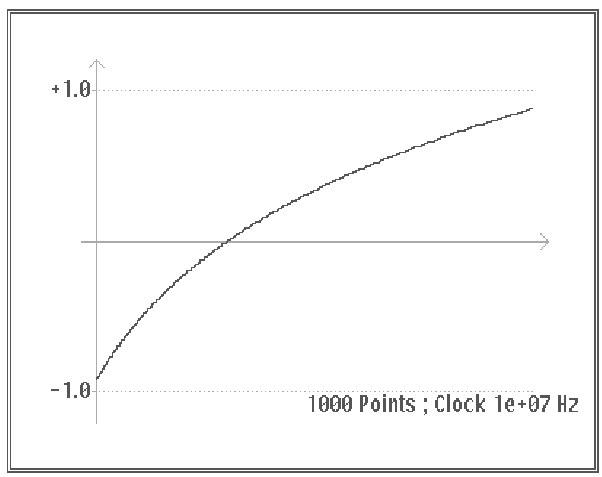


Figure 4A-105: Equation Using ln(

- **sqrt(**
  The square root; the argument must be a positive value.

Example: range(0,100 µs)
sqrt(sin(pi*x))

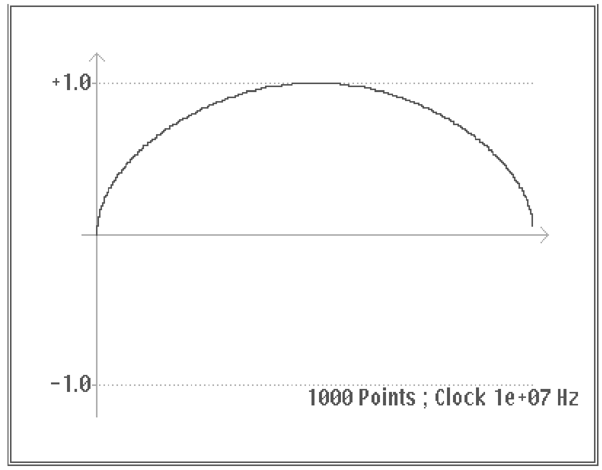


Figure 4A-106: Equation Using sqrt(

- **abs(**
  The absolute value.

Example: range(0,100 µs)
abs(sin(2*pi*x))

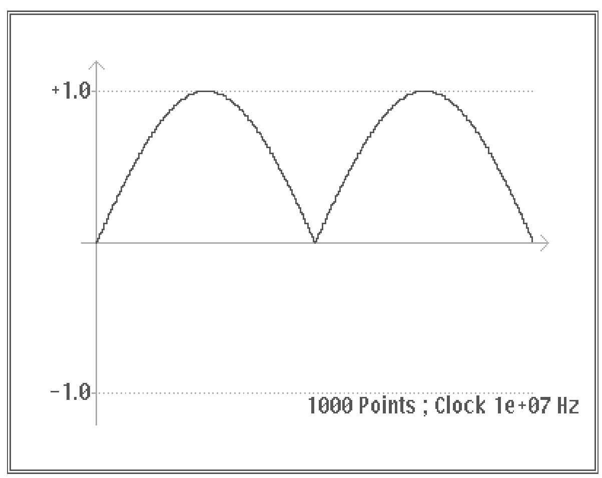


Figure 4A-107: Equation Using abs(

- **int(**
  Truncates the fraction to obtain the integer.

Example: range(0,100 µs)
int(5*sin(2*pi*x))/5

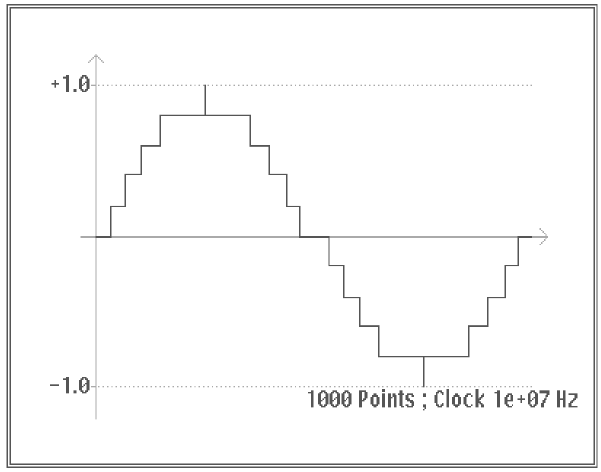


Figure 4A-108: Equation Using int(

- **round(**
  Rounds off the fraction to obtain the integer.

Example: range(0,100 µs)
round(5*sin(2*pi*x))/5

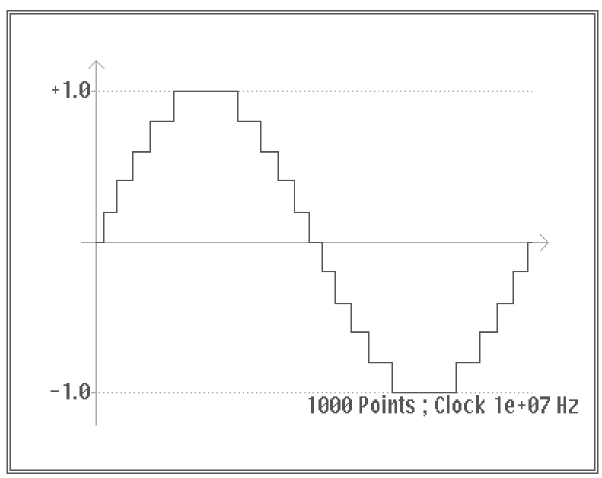


Figure 4A-109: Equation Using round(

- **norm(**
  Normalizes the range specified with **range()** and scales the amplitude values so that the maximum absolute value is 1.0 (i.e. a value of +1.0 or −1.0). The **norm()** statement comprises an entire line.

Example: range(0,100 µs)
sin(2*pi*x)+rnd()/10
norm()

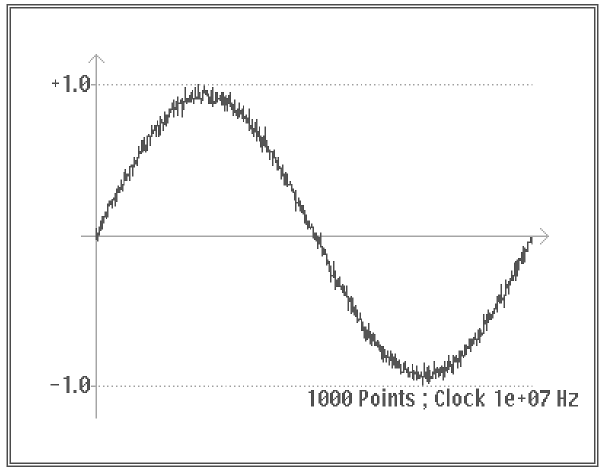


Figure 4A-110: Equation Using norm(

- **max(** — Takes the larger of two values.
  min(— Takes the smaller of two values.

Example: range(0,100 µs)
sin(2*pi*x)
range(0,50µs)
min(v,0.5)
range(50µs,100µs)
max(v,−0.5)

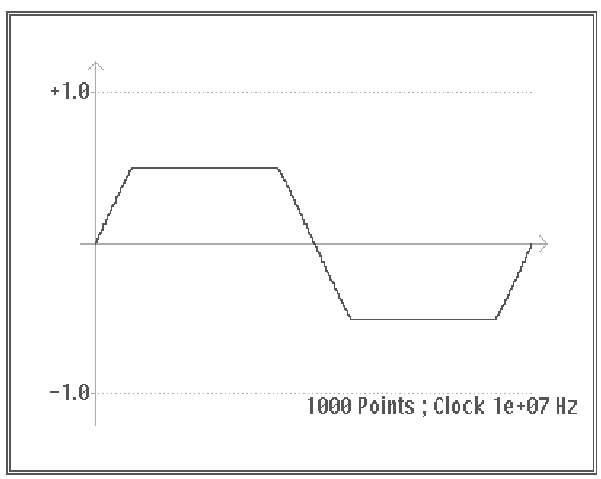


Figure 4A-111: Equation Using max(and min(

- **rnd (**integer from 1 to 16777215)
  !When an argument is specified, generates a random number sequence using that argument as the initial value. If the argument is omitted, 1 is used.

Example: range(0,100 µs)
rnd(2)/3

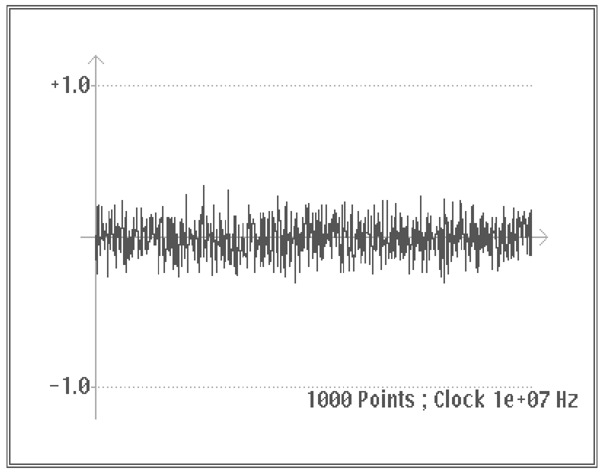


Figure 4A-112: Equation Using rnd(

See ”Random (rnd) Function” in Appendix D for a discussion of the algorithms for **rnd** functions.

- **diff(**
  Differentiates the function over the range specified with **range()**. Specified with **diff()**. The **diff()** comprises an entire line.

Example: range(0,33 µs)
−0.5
range(33µs,66µs)
0.5
range(66µs,100µs)
−0.5
range(0,100µs)
diff()

Differentiating the waveform in Figure 4A-113 gives the waveform shown in Figure 4A-114.

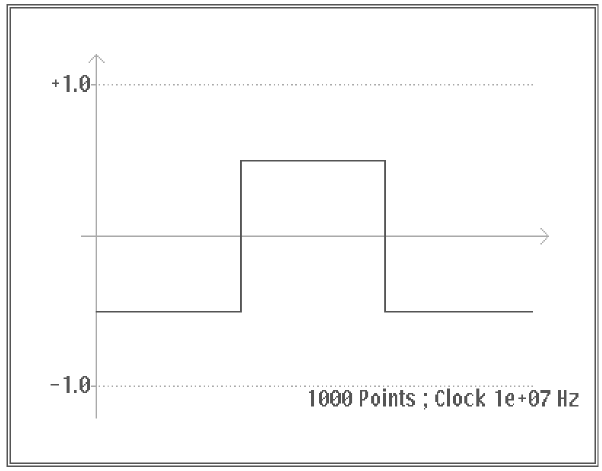


Figure 4A-113: Waveform Before Calculation

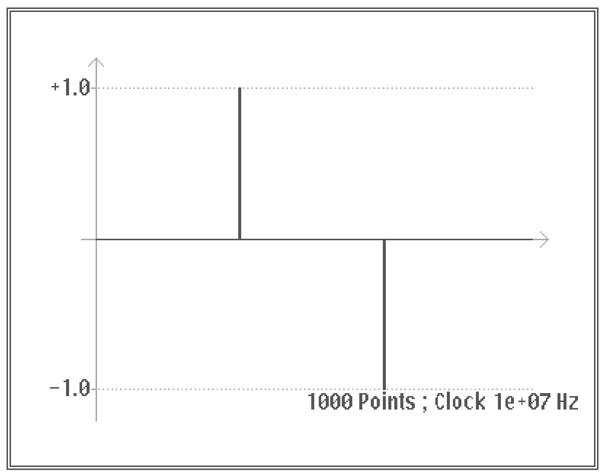


Figure 4A-114: Waveform After Differentiation Using diff(

See ”Differentiation” in Appendix D for a discussion of the algorithms for **diff** functions.

- **integ(**
  Integrates the function over the range specified with **range()**. Specified with **integ()**. The **integ()** comprises an entire line. After **integ()**, specify normalization (**norm()**) as necessary.

Example: range(0,33 μs)
−0.5
range(33μs,66μs)
0.5
range(66μs,100μs)
−0.5
range(0,100μs)
integ()
norm()

Figure 4A-113 shows the waveform before integration.Figure 4A-115 shows the waveform after integration.

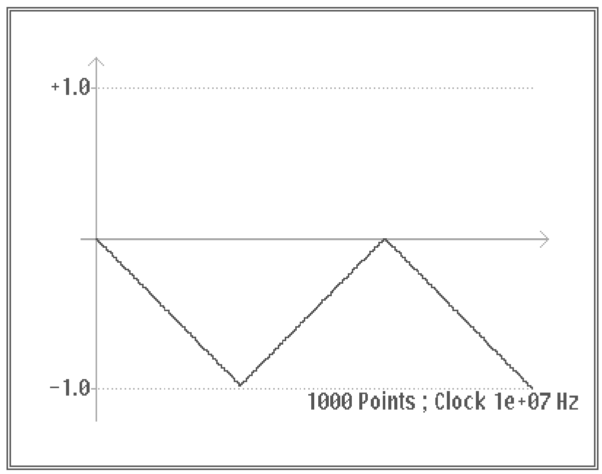
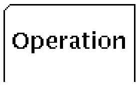


Figure 4A-115: Waveform After Integration Using integ(

See ”Integration” in Appendix D for a discussion of the algorithms for **integ** functions.

- **mark(Marker 1)**
  Sets the marker for the range set with **range()**. After compiling, there is no marker display, but the set marker can be verified with the waveform editor. The **mark()** statement comprises an entire line. For example, when **mark(1)** is input, nothing else can be input on that line.

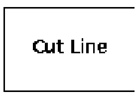
Editing Functions



When you select **Operation** in the bottom menu, the following items appear in the side menu:

- Cut Line
- Copy to Buffer
- Paste from Buffer
- Word Table
- Insert Other Equation

Cutting a Line



Use **Cut Line** to cut out a line in the equation list.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Operation** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Pressing the front panel **CURSOR** button twice puts the system into scroll mode. Pressing the **CURSOR** button toggles the unit between cursor mode and scroll mode.

Cursor mode — Cursor moves between items in the equation list, item by item.

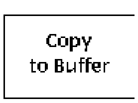
Scroll mode — A inverted line cursor moves through the lines in the equation list, line by line.

☐ **Step 3:** Use the general purpose knob to move the displayed inverted line cursor to the line to be deleted from the created equation list.

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Cut Line** from the side menu.

When **Cut Line** is selected, the line displayed inverted in the equation list is deleted. The deleted line is placed in the paste buffer. To restore this line to its original state, select **Undo** from the bottom menu or **Paste from Buffer** from the side menu.

Copying and Pasting a Line



Use the **Copy to Buffer** and **Paste from Buffer** items to copy a line in the equation list and paste it to another line.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Use the same procedure as described in Cutting a Line to line up the inverted display cursor with the line to be copied.

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Copy to Buffer** from the side menu.

When **Copy to Buffer** is selected, the line displayed inverted in the equation list is placed in the paste buffer. This item has no effect on the CRT display.

☐ **Step 3:** Use the general purpose knob to specify the position to paste the copied line with the inverted display cursor. The position for pasting is directly before the inverted display cursor in the equation list.

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Paste from Buffer** from the side menu.

Insert Other Equation File

Insert Other Equation

Use **Insert Other Equation** to select an equation file from internal memory (see Figure 4A-116). An equation file is inserted from this list into the equation list.

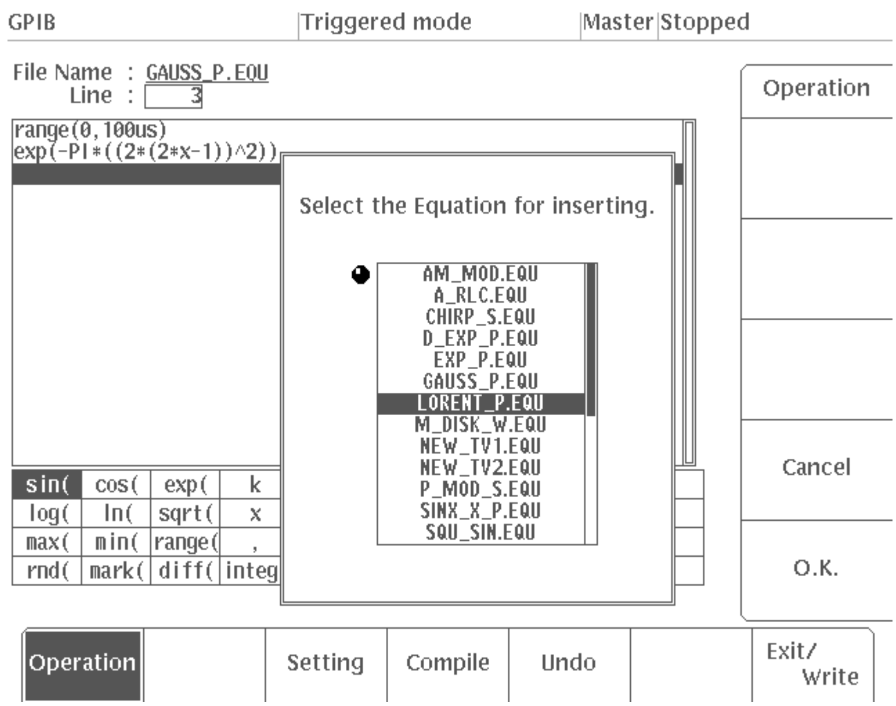


Figure 4A-116: Menu Displayed When Insert Other Equation is Selected

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Use the same procedure as described in Cutting a Line to line up the inverted display cursor with the line where the other equation file is to be inserted.

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Insert Other Equation** from the side menu.

☐ **Step 3:** Use the general purpose knob to select the equation file to be inserted.

☐ **Step 4:** After selecting the file, press the **O.K.** side menu button to insert the selected file directly before the inverted cursor within the equation list. Press the **Cancel** side menu button to cancel the selection and return the system to the equation editor.

Setting Waveform Point Count

Setting

When **Setting** is selected from the bottom menu, the number of waveform points for equation file compilation and waveform file creation can be set. Figure 4A-117 shows the menu for when **Setting** is selected.

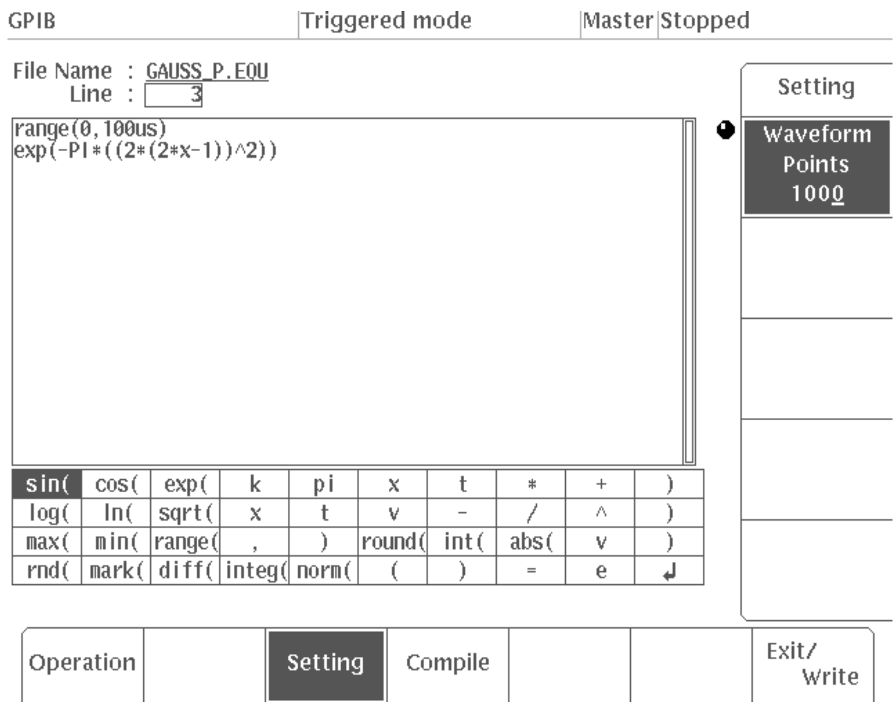


Figure 4A-117: Setting Waveform Point Count

Waveform Points

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Setting** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Use the numeric keys or the general purpose knob to set the number of waveform points.

The default value for the number of waveform points is 1000. The waveform point size can be set to any value between 16 and 32,768. However, when the set value causes the calculated clock frequency to become greater than 20MHz, the clock frequency will be limited to the maximum value of 20MHz and the following message will appear, asking you to confirm that this is all right. If it is, select **O.K.** from the side menu. In such cases, the waveform period will change.

> The clock calculated (xxxxx Hz)
> is not supported by this instrument.
> The waveform will be output
> with the maximum clock of 2e+07Hz.

Compiling Equations into Waveform Data

Compile

Use the **Compile** item to convert the assembled equation into waveform data and to create a waveform file. This waveform file is given the same name as the equation file it was compiled from.

Procedure

Here is the procedure for compiling the equation to make a waveform file.

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Compile** from the bottom menu. The equation is compiled.

The busy icon is displayed on the status line of the CRT display to show that the compilation is being processed. **Cancel** is displayed in the side menu. Selecting this item cancels the compilation.

☐ **Step 2:** The equation is converted into waveform data and the waveform is displayed. Along with the waveform, the set number of waveform points and clock frequency are displayed. Figure 4A-118 is an example of the display of a compiled waveform.

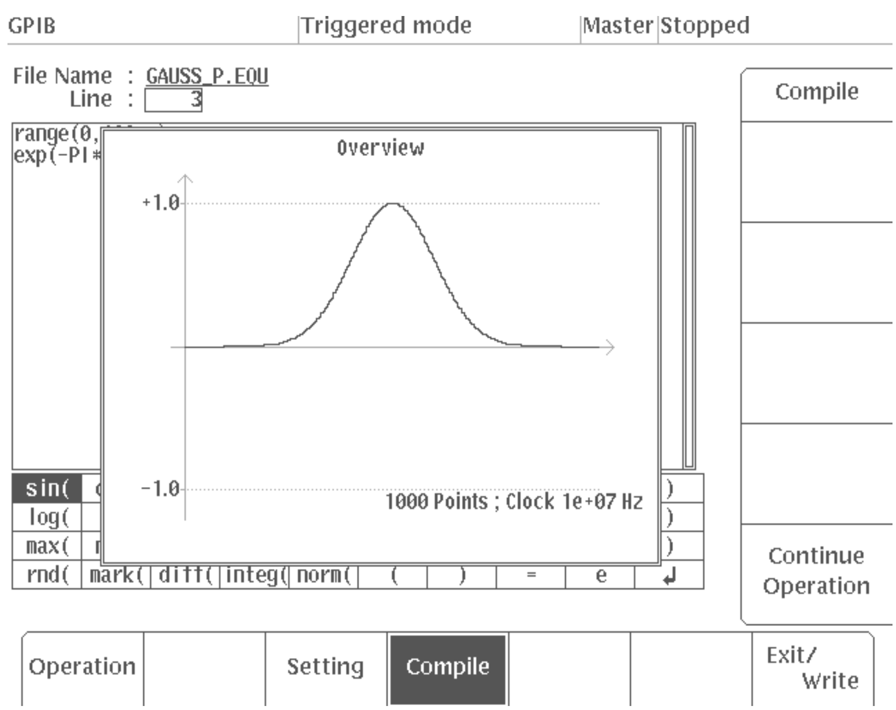


Figure 4A-118: Example of Compiled Waveform Display

☐ **Step 3:** Verify the waveform, then select **Continue Operation** from the side menu. The system returns to the equation editor.

When an error is detected, an error message is displayed at the top of the screen at high intensity and the inverted display cursor is moved to the equation or time domain with the syntactical error. In this case, correct the error as instructed by the message, and then compile again.

The compiled waveform file contains the settings for the number of waveform points (set with Setting) and the clock frequency (obtained from the total time set with the range item.) Other output parameters are set to the default values.

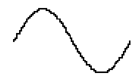
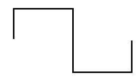
The compiled waveform also has a vertical axis on which −1.0 is data value 0 and +1.0 is data value 4094. There is no relation between these values and the actual output voltage.

Sequence Editor

Use the sequence editor to edit files with the extension of **.SEQ**. Sequence files assemble a number of waveforms or sequence files in order. The file data contains waveform file names in sequence, their repetition counts, and the sequence waveform output parameters. Sequences may be up to approximately 4000 lines long.

Figure 4A-119 shows an example of the data in a sequence file and the waveform display for that data.

Sequence File

File name	Number of repetitions	Waveform
WAVE–1.WFM	2	
WAVE–2.WFM	1	
WAVE–3.WFM	2	

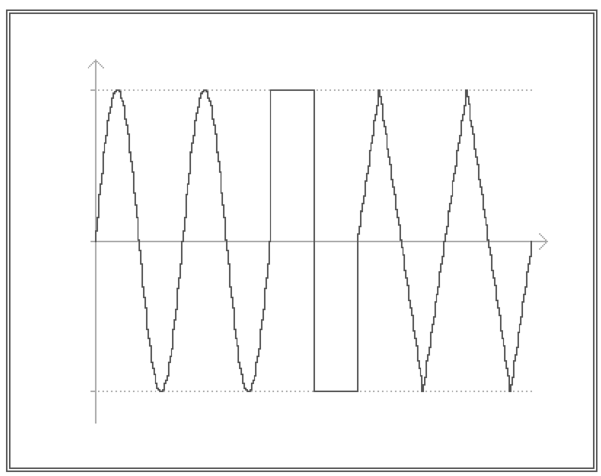
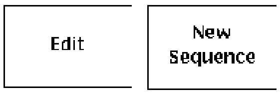


Figure 4A-119: Sequence File Data and Sample Waveform Display

Entering the Sequence Editor



Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Press the **EDIT** button in the **MENU** column. The initial **EDIT** menu will appear.

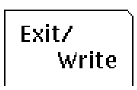
☐ **Step 2:** Select **Edit** or **New Sequence** from the side menu.

Edit — Used to select and edit an existing sequence file (**.SEQ**)

New Sequence — Used to create a new sequence file

The sequence editor screen will appear.

Saving Files and Exiting the Editor



Use **Exit**/**Write** in the bottom menu to save the file to the internal memory of the AWG2005 and exit from the editor depending on the selected side menu item.

The same procedure is used to save the file and exit from the equation editor as for the waveform editor. See ”Saving Files and Exiting the Editor” in the section on the waveform editor.

Sequence Editor Menu Structure

The Sequence Editor menu has the structure shown in Figure 4A-120.

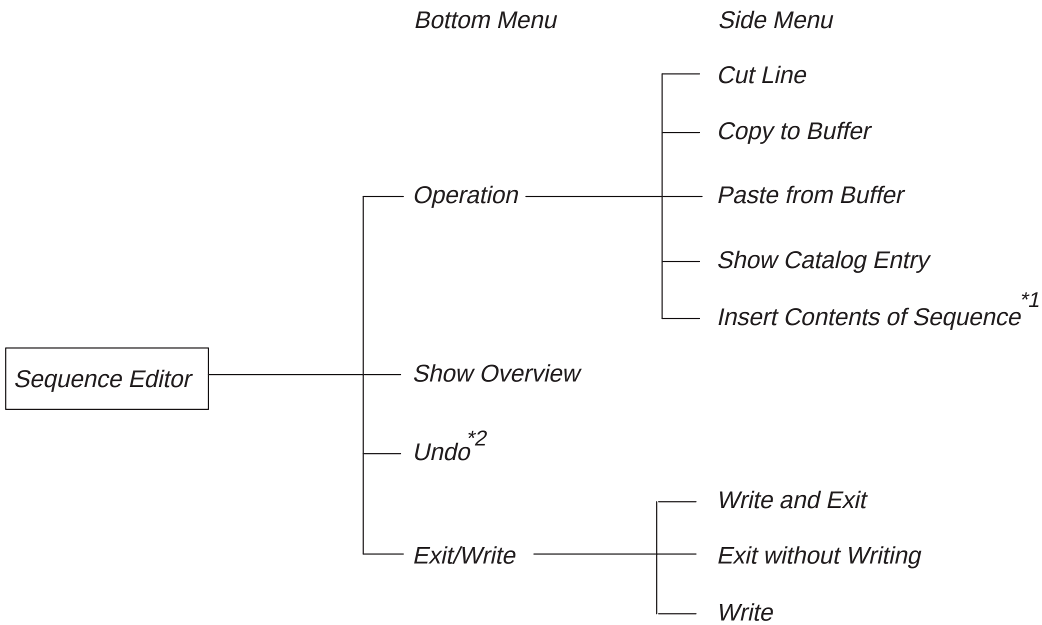


Figure 4A-120: Sequence Editor Menu Structure

*1 This item appears in the side menu when a sequence file (**XXX.SEQ**) has been selected with **Catalog** in the menu.

*2 This item appears when **Operation** in the bottom menu has been selected.

Menu Functions

The following list shows the functions available for each menu item and the page on which you can find a description of that function.

Table 4A-7: Menu Functions

Menu	Function	Page
Operation	Editing functions	4A-165
Cut Line	Cutting a line	4A-165
Copy to Buffer	Copying a line	4A-165
Paste from Buffer	Pasting a line	4A-165
Show Catalog Entry	Catalog file waveform display	4A-166
Insert Contents of Sequence	Inserting a sequence file	4A-167
Show Overview	Sequence file display	4A-167
Undo	Canceling function execution	4-2
Exit/Write	Saving files and exiting the sequence editor	4A-19, 4A-159

Sequence Editor Menu Display

Figure 4A-121 shows the general sequence editor display. A description for each callout follows.

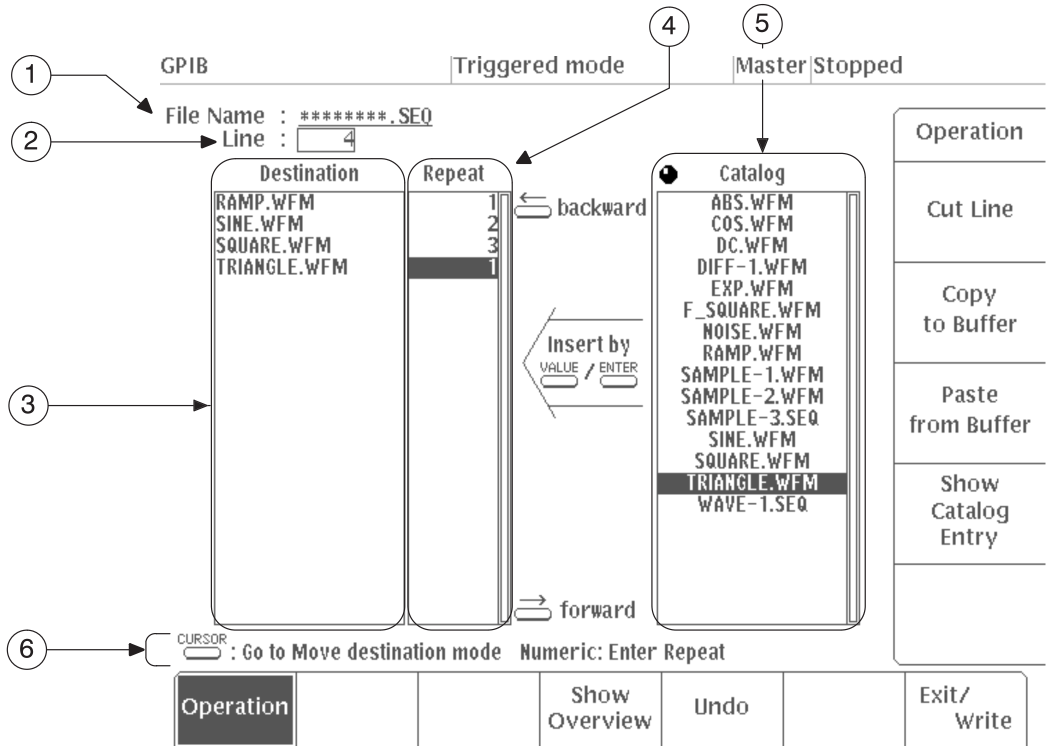


Figure 4A-121: Sequence Editor CRT Display

(1) File Name

The name of the sequence file being edited; if the name has not been set yet, **********.SEQ** is displayed.

(2) Line

The line number displayed inverted in the **Destination** list or **Repeat** column.

(3) Destination

List of the waveform or sequence files included in the sequence file being edited.

(4) Repeat

The repetition count for the file in (3), above. The waveform or sequence file is repeated the specified number of times. This number can be set from 1 to 65535.

(5) Catalog

List of the waveform or sequence files in internal memory; a sequence file is created by selecting files from this list.

(6) Button Operations

This area shows how the front panel buttons operate in this menu.

CURSOR: Go to Move destination mode

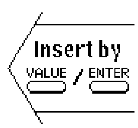
When you press the **CURSOR** button, you can scroll through the files in the **Destination** list or **Repeat** column with the general purpose knob.

Numeric: Enter Repeat

The repetition count is set with the numeric keys. Pressing the **VALUE** or **ENTER** button enters the input value into the **Repeat** column.

VALUE / ENTER: Go to Insert mode

Pressing the **VALUE** or **ENTER** button puts the system into insert mode. In this mode, files can be selected from the **Catalog** and the selected files can be inserted into the **Destination** list.



Pressing the **VALUE** or **ENTER** button inserts the file that is displayed inverted within the **Catalog** directly before the inverted display cursor in the **Destination** list.

← backward

Pressing the ← button moves the inverted cursor left or up one step in the **Destination** list or **Repeat** column.

→ forward

Pressing the → button moves the inverted cursor right or down one step in the **Destination** list or **Repeat** column.

Creating and Editing Sequence Files

Select **Operation** in the bottom menu to create or edit a sequence file. After you have done this, you can select a waveform or sequence file from **Catalog** and then put together a sequence and set the number of repetitions for that file to create the sequence file.

Creating a Sequence File

In this example you will create a new sequence file.

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Operation** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Use the general purpose knob to select the file from the **Catalog** to insert into the **Destination** list.

☐ **Step 3:** Press the front panel **VALUE** button or **ENTER** button. The file selected from the **Catalog** is inserted into the **Destination** list. The file being inserted is placed directly before the inverted display cursor. When the file is inserted, the inverted cursor will move to **Repeat** on the same line.

☐ **Step 4:** Use the numeric keys to input the repetition count, then press the **ENTER** button to enter the value. The inverted cursor will move to **Destination** on the next line.

The default value for repetition counts is 1. If there is no need to change this value, press the → button. The inverted cursor will move to **Destination** on the next line.

☐ **Step 5:** Repeat Steps from 2 to 4 to create the desired sequence. As long as there is enough memory, the sequence may be up to approximately 4000 lines long.

Figure 4A-122 shows an example of sequence creation.

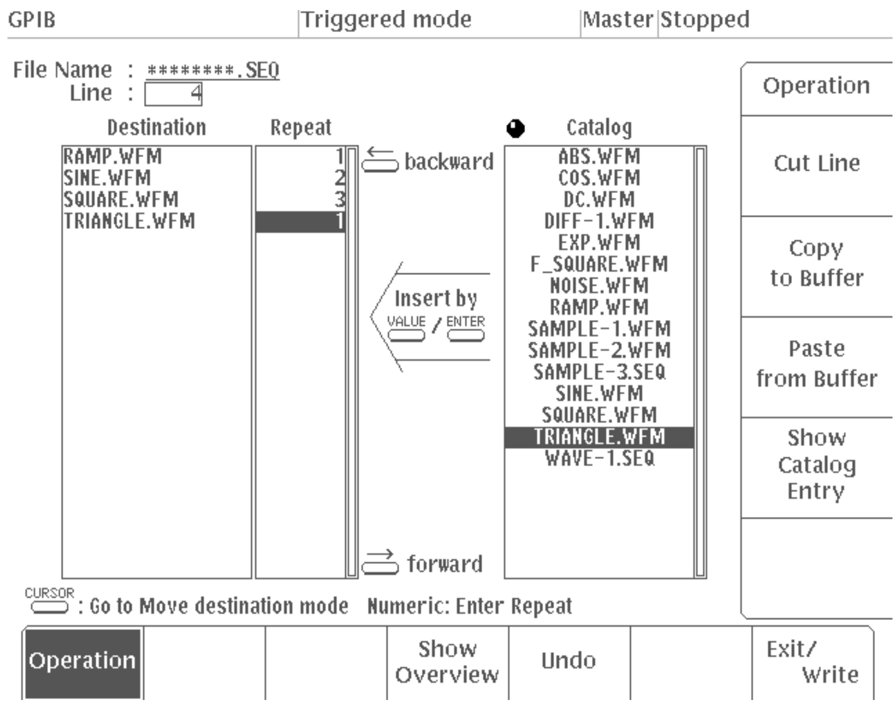


Figure 4A-122: Sequence File Creation Example

Button Functions

To select files within the **Destination** list, press the **CURSOR** button, then select with the general purpose knob or numeric keys. When the numeric keys are used, input the specified line number in the **Line** input column at the top left of the CRT screen. Pressing the **VALUE** or **ENTER** button enters this line number and moves the inverted display cursor to the specified line number.

When the **CURSOR** button has been pressed, if the **VALUE** button or **ENTER** button is pressed, the system goes into Insert mode. Pressing either of these buttons again inserts the file selected from the **Catalog** into the **Destination** list.

Pressing the → button causes the inverted cursor to move to the right or downward. Pressing the ← button causes the inverted cursor to move to the left or upward.

Editing Functions

Operation

When you select **Operation** in the bottom menu, the following items appear in the side menu:

- Cut Line
- Copy to Buffer
- Paste from Buffer
- Show Catalog Entry
- Insert Contents of Sequence
  (Appears when a sequence file has been selected with **Catalog**)

Cutting a Line

Cut Line

Use **Cut Line** to cut out a line in the **Destination** list.

Procedure

- [ ] **Step 1:** Select **Operation** from the bottom menu.
- [ ] **Step 2:** Press the front panel **CURSOR** button.
- [ ] **Step 3:** Use the general purpose knob to select the line to be cut from the **Destination** list.
- [ ] **Step 4:** Select **Cut Line** from the side menu.

  When **Cut Line** is selected, the line displayed inverted in the **Destination** list is deleted. This deleted line is put into the paste buffer. To return the Destination list to its original state, select **Undo** from the bottom menu or **Paste from Buffer** from the side menu.

Copying and Pasting a Line

Copy to Buffer | Paste from Buffer

Use **Copy to Buffer** and **Paste from Buffer** items to copy a line in the **Destination** list and paste it to another line.

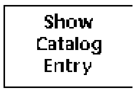
Procedure

- [ ] **Step 1:** Select **Operation** from the bottom menu.
- [ ] **Step 2:** Press the front panel **CURSOR** button. Use the general purpose knob to select the line to copy from the **Destination** list.
- [ ] **Step 3:** Select **Copy to Buffer** from the side menu. When **Copy to Buffer** is selected, the line displayed inverted in the **Destination** list is copied into the paste buffer. This operation does not affect the display on the CRT.
- [ ] **Step 4:** Use the general purpose knob to specify the position to paste the copied line with the inverted display cursor. The position for pasting is directly before the inverted display cursor in the **Destination** list.

☐ **Step 5:** Select **Paste from Buffer** from the side menu.

Each time **Paste from Buffer** is selected, the line copied into the paste buffer with the copy processing are pasted into whatever line you want.

Catalog File Waveform Display



Use this item to observe the waveforms of the files being assembled into the sequence.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Operation** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Use the general purpose knob to select the file you want to observe from the **Catalog**.

☐ **Step 3:** Select **Show Catalog Entry** from the side menu.

The waveform is displayed and the file name, the vertical axis voltage, the number of waveform points, and the clock frequency data are shown. Figure 4A-123 is an example of waveform display for when **Show Catalog Entry** is selected.

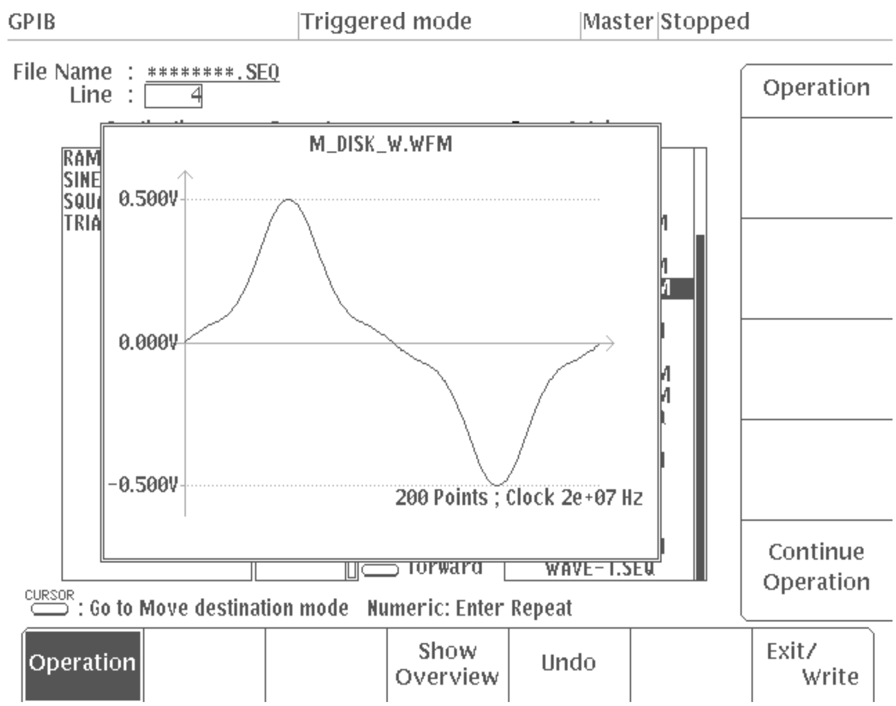


Figure 4A-123: Example of Waveform Display When Show Catalog Entry is Selected

☐ **Step 4:** After observing the waveform, select **Continue Operation** from the sub menu to return to the sequence editor.

Inserting a Sequence File

Insert Contents of Sequence

Select a sequence file in the **Catalog** to display the **Insert Contents of Sequence** item in the side menu. When this item is selected, the contents of the sequence file are developed and inserted into the **Destination** list.

NOTE

*When creating sequence file, you cannot use as sources sequence files that contain other sequence files. If you try to do this, a message will be displayed telling you that you cannot. In this case, you can use the **Insert Contents of Sequence** item to develop the sequence and insert it.*

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Operation** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Press the front panel **CURSOR** button.

☐ **Step 3:** Use the general purpose knob to select the line where the developed sequence file is to be inserted from the **Destination** list. The developed file is inserted directly before the inverted display cursor in the **Destination** list.

☐ **Step 4:** Press the front panel **VALUE** button.

☐ **Step 5:** Use the general purpose knob to select the sequence file from the **Catalog**. The **Insert Contents of Sequence** item will appear in the side menu.

☐ **Step 6:** Select **Insert Contents of Sequence** from the side menu. The contents of the selected sequence file are inserted directly before the inverted display cursor in the **Destination** list.

Sequence File Display

Show Overview

Use **Show Overview** from the bottom menu to display the waveform for the created or edited sequence file.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Show Overview** from the bottom menu.

The waveform will be displayed, together with such information as the voltage indicated by the vertical axis, the waveform point size and the clock frequency. Figure 4A-124 shows an example of a waveform display with the **Show Overview** item selected.

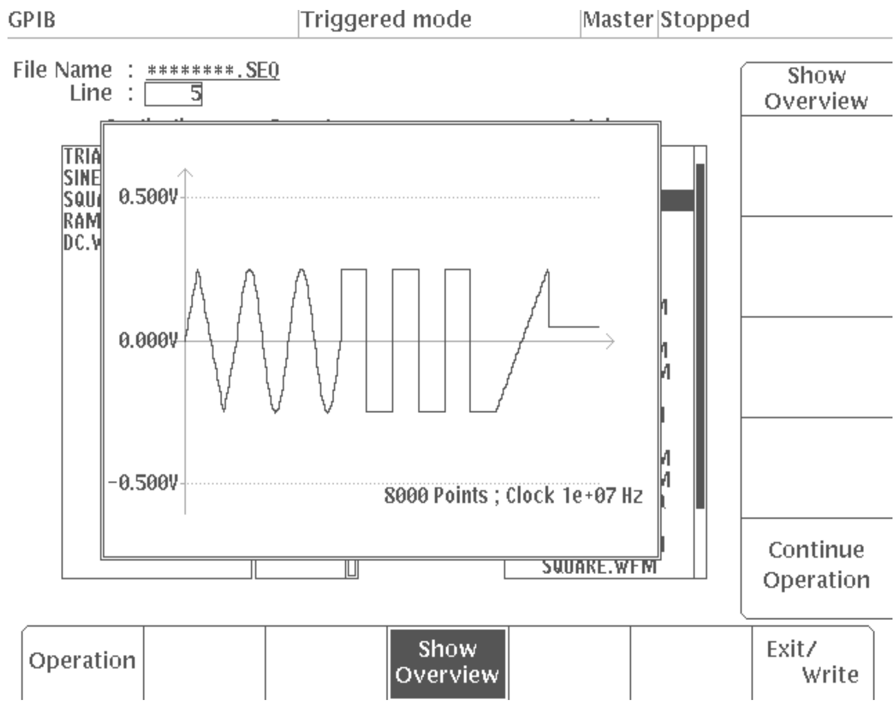


Figure 4A-124: Example of CRT Display When Show Overview is Selected

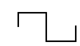
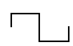
☐ **Step 2:** After observing the waveform, select **Continue Operation** from the side menu to return to the sequence editor.

Autostep Editor

Use the autostep editor to edit files with the extension of **.AST**. Autostep files are created by programming waveforms or sequence files for each channel. Each time a trigger signal is received, the waveform changes to the waveform for the next step, in accordance with the program. Each waveform or sequence file contains the output conditions that have been set for that file, so the output conditions can be changed for each waveform.

Files created with the autostep editor are started up using **Autostep** in the **MODE** menu. At this point of time, it is not possible to change the output parameters in the **SETUP** menu. Figure 4A-125 shows an example of the data and output waveform for an autostep file.

Autostep File

CH1				CH2			
Step	**File Name**	**Output Conditions**	**Waveform**	**Step**	**File Name**	**Output Conditions**	**Waveform**
1	SIN–1.WFM	Amplitude 2 V Offset 0 V		1	SQUARE.WFM	Amplitude 3 V Offset 0 V	
2	SQUARE.WFM	Amplitude 3 V Offset 0 V		2	SIN–1.WFM	Amplitude 2 V Offset 0 V	
3	RAMP.WFM	Amplitude 1 V Offset 0.5 V		3	SIN–2.WFM	Amplitude 4 V Offset 0.5 V	

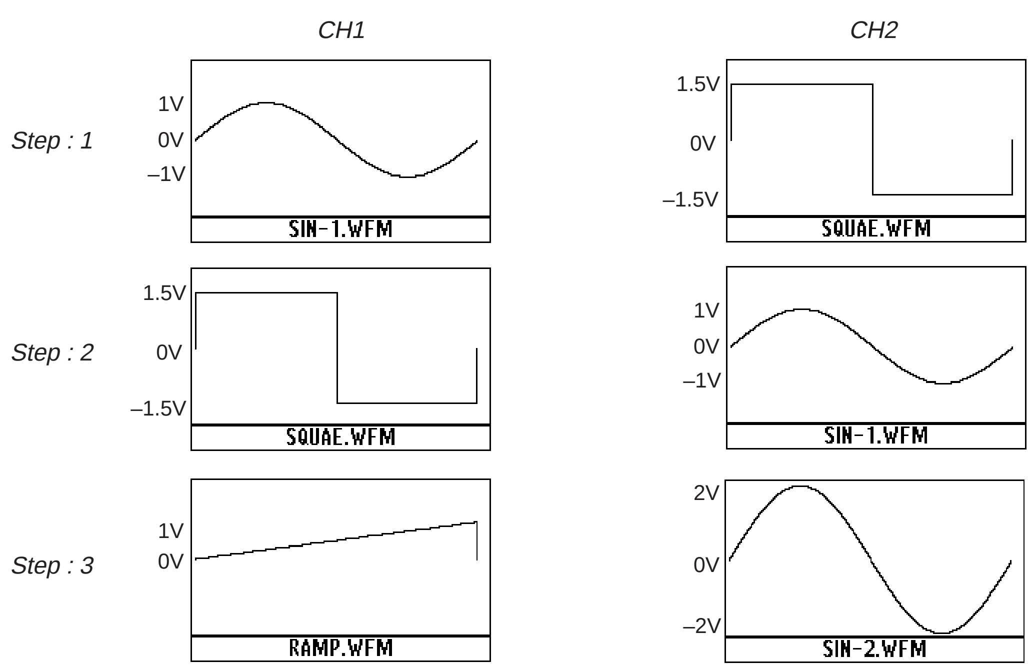


Figure 4A-125: Autostep File Data and Output Waveforms

Entering the Autostep Editor

Edit | New Autostep

Procedure

- [ ] **Step 1:** Press the **EDIT** button in the **MENU** column. The initial **EDIT** menu will appear.
- [ ] **Step 2:** Select **More** from the side menu to display the second page of the side menu: **More 2 of 2**.
- [ ] **Step 3:** Select **Edit** or **New Autostep** from the side menu.

    Edit — Used to select and edit an existing autostep file (**.AST**)

    New Autostep — Used to create a new autostep file

The autostep editor screen will appear.

Saving Files and Exiting the Editor

Exit/ Write

Select **Exit**/**Write** from the bottom menu in the autostep editor to save the file (which you have either created or edited, depending on the side menu) to the internal memory of the AWG2005 and exit from the editor.

The same procedure is used to save the file and exit from the autostep editor as for the waveform editor. See ”Saving Files and Exiting the Editor” in the section on the waveform editor.

Autostep Editor Menu Structure

The Autostep Editor menu has the structure shown in Figure 4A-126.

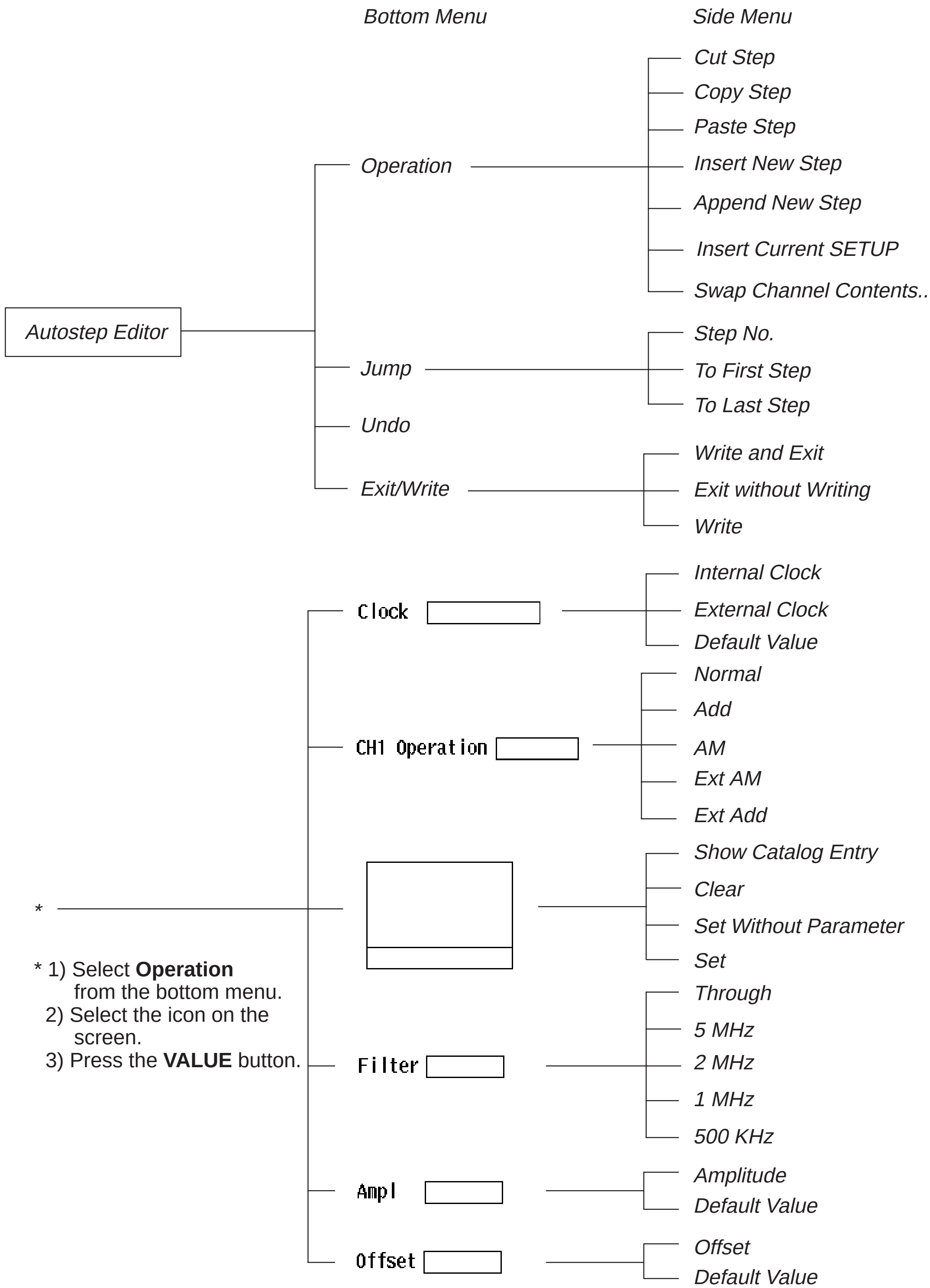


Figure 4A-126: Autostep Editor Menu Structure

Menu Functions

The following list shows the functions available for each menu item and the page on which you can find a description of that function.

Table 4A-8: Menu Functions

Menu	Function	Page
Operation	Editing function	4A-184
Cut Step	Cutting a step	4A-184
Copy Step	Copying a step	4A-184
Paste Step	Pasting a step	4A-184
Insert New Step	Adding a step	4A-185
Append New Step	Adding a step	4A-185
Insert Current SETUP	Inserting SETUP menu waveforms and output parameters	4A-185
Swap Channel Contents...	Swapping steps between channels	4A-185
Jump	Jumping to a step	4A-186
Undo	Canceling function execution	4-2
Exit/Write	Saving files and exiting the editor	4A-19, 4A-170
Items selected on the screen		
Clock	Clock settings	4A-179
CH1 Operation	CH1 operation settings	4A-180
Waveform/Sequence	Setting files	4A-175
Filter	Filter settings	4A-181
Amplitude	Amplitude settings	4A-182
Offset	Offset settings	4A-183

Autostep Editor Menu Display

Figure 4A-127 shows the general autostep editor display. A description for each callout follows.

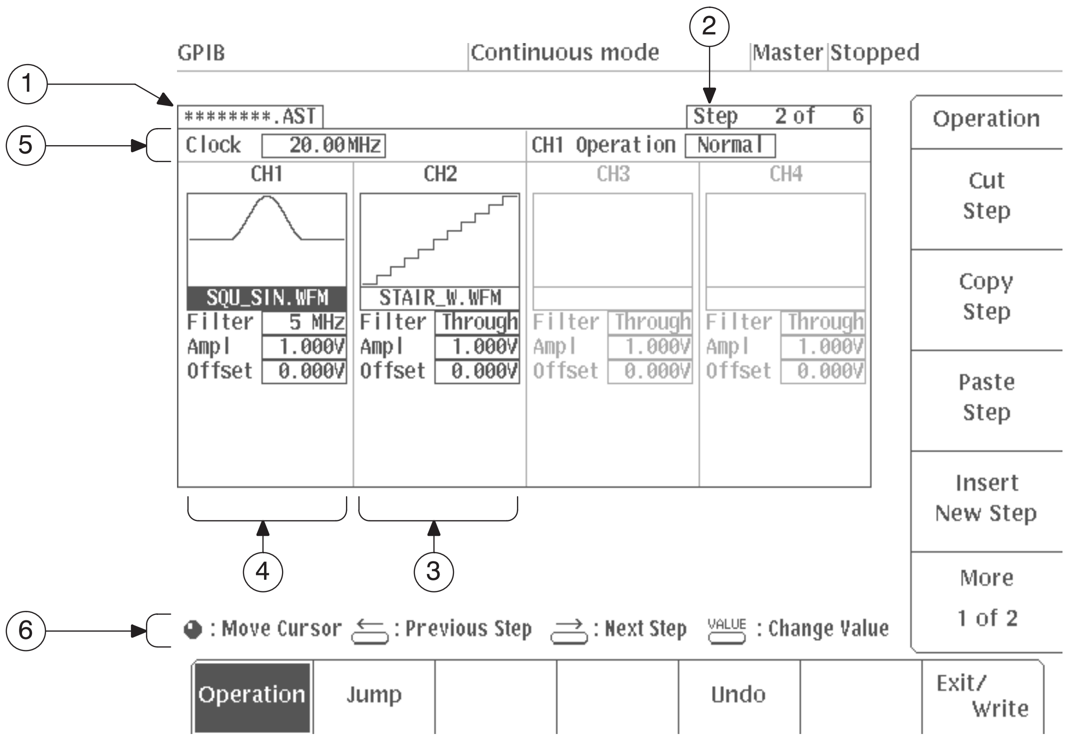


Figure 4A-127: Autostep Editor CRT Display

(1) File Name

The name of the autostep file being edited; if the name has not been set yet, **********.AST** is displayed.

(2) Step No.

Indicates the step number in the program. In the example shown in the figure above, the step shown is step 2 out of a total of 6.

(3) CH2 File Setting Area

Indicates the file set for CH2 in the step indicated by (2). The waveform and output parameters for that file are shown in this area. These output parameters may be changed.

(4) CH1 File Setting Area

Indicates the file set for CH1 in the step indicated by (2). The waveform and output parameters for that file are shown in this area. These output parameters may be changed.

(5) Clock Frequency and CH1 Operation

Indicates the clock frequency and CH1 operation mode that have been saved to the CH1 file. These output parameters may be changed.

(6) Button Operation

This area shows how the front panel buttons operate in this menu.

: Move Cursor

Output parameters can be selected by turning the general purpose knob.

: Previous Step

Pressing this key at a programmed step moves to the previous step.

: Next Step

Pressing this key at a programmed step moves to the next step.

VALUE : Change Value

Pressing the **VALUE** button makes it possible to set the selected output parameter. Use the general purpose knob to select the output parameter to be set.

Creating and Editing Autostep Programs

Select **Operation** from the bottom menu to create or edit autostep programs. Up to 100 steps can be programmed for each channel. If blank steps exist in both CH1 and CH2 in the autostep program that has been created, these steps will be deleted when you quit the editor. If blank steps exist in both CH1 and CH2 in an autostep file created on an instrument with Option 02 (4-channel output) installed, the instrument will stop at a blank step when the file is started up.

Setting Files

The following procedure is used to set a new file at each step.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Operation** from the bottom menu.

To set a file for Step 1 of the autostep program:

☐ **Step 2:** Using the general purpose knob, select the item for which a file will be set on CH1.

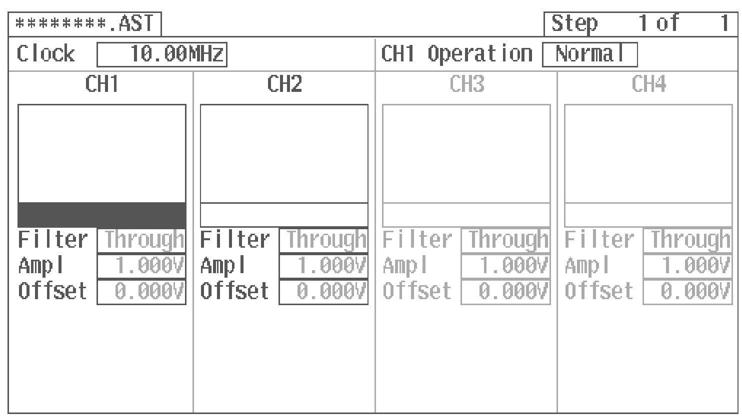


Figure 4A-128: Selecting the Item for File Setting

☐ **Step 3:** Press the **VALUE** button on the front panel. A list of files that can be set will appear.

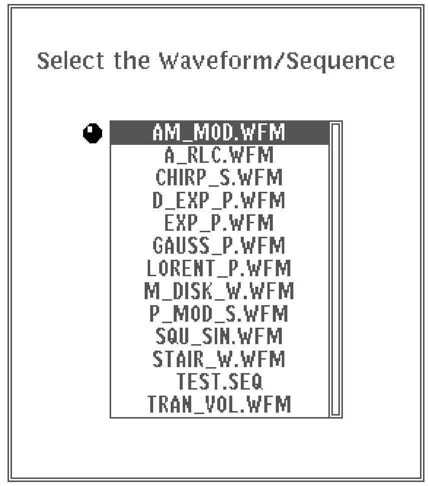


Figure 4A-129: File Selection List

☐ **Step 4:** Using the general purpose knob, select the desired file.

Show Catalog Entry

☐ **Step 5:** If you want to check the waveform of the selected file, select **Show Catalog Entry** from the side menu.

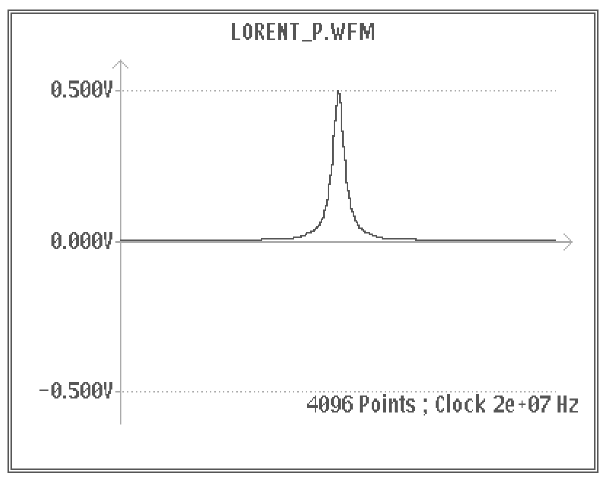


Figure 4A-130: Sample File Waveform Display

The waveform for that file will appear along with the waveform point size, the clock frequency and the voltage value.

☐ **Step 6:** Select **Continue** from the sub-menu.

The menu shown before you selected **Show Catalog Entry** will reappear.

☐ **Step 7:** Select **Set** from the side menu.

The selected file will be inserted and the output parameters for that waveform will be set.

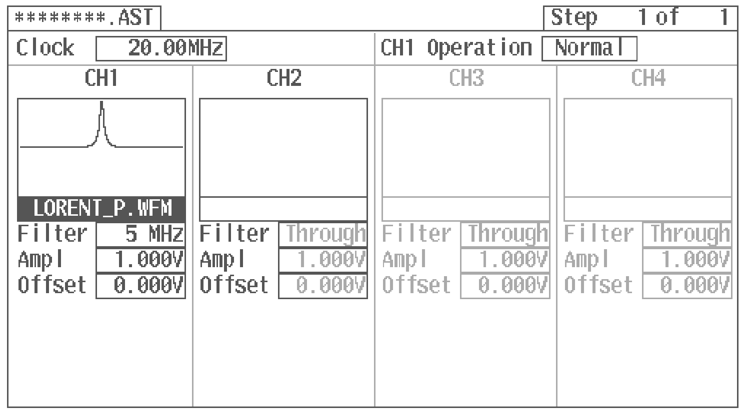


Figure 4A-131: Setting a File

Selecting **Cancel** will cancel the setting operation and the previous menu will appear.

Use **Set Without Parameter** instead of **Set** when you want to designate the waveform without changing the parameters. The default parameters will be set when the editor is opened using **New Autostep** or when a waveform is designated for a new step added with **Insert New Step** or **Append New Step**. The default values for the output parameters are shown below.

Clock	10.00MHz
CH1 Operation	Normal
Filter	Through
Ampl	1.000V
Offset	0.000V

Among them, **Clock** and **CH1 Operation** depend on the CH1 file.

Use **Clear** to delete the file setting for the channel indicated by the cursor.

☐ **Step 8:** Repeat Steps 2 through 7 to set a file for CH2.

To add a step:

☐ **Step 9:** Select **More 1 of 2** from the side menu and then select **Append New Step**. The instrument will proceed to Step 2. See ”Adding a Step” in this section.

Repeat this procedure to create the program.

Changing Parameters

It is possible to change the output parameters for a file that has been set. Changing the output parameter values does not change the parameters in the original file.

Procedure

- ☐ **Step 1:** Use the ← and → buttons on the front panel or the **Jump** item in the bottom menu to move to the step whose parameters you want to change.
- ☐ **Step 2:** Select **Operation** from the bottom menu.
- ☐ **Step 3:** Turn the general purpose knob to select the parameter to be changed.
- ☐ **Step 4:** Press the **VALUE** button on the front panel. The menu for that parameter will appear.
- ☐ **Step 5:** Set the parameters as desired. See the descriptions of the individual parameters on the following pages.
- ☐ **Step 6:** Select **O.K**. from the side menu. The parameters will be updated to the selected items or set values. Selecting **Cancel** will cancel the setting operation and the previous menu will reappear.

Clock Settings

Select Clock [ ] using the general purpose knob. Then press the **VALUE** button on the front panel. The menu shown in Figure 4A-132 will appear.

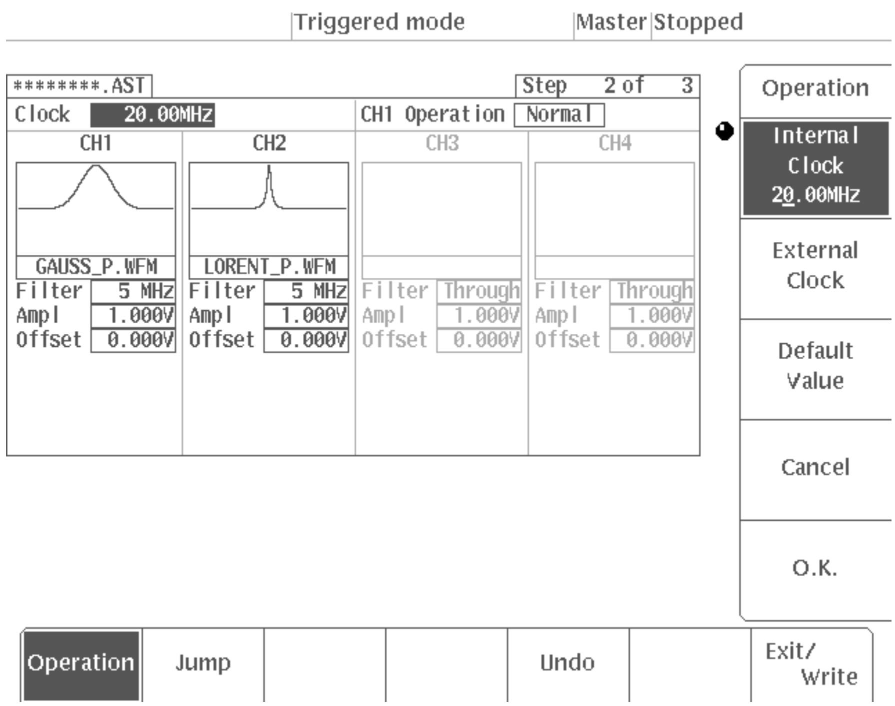


Figure 4A-132: Clock Setting Menu

Set the clock source and the clock frequency by selecting the appropriate items in the side menu. The settings for clock source and clock frequency are used for both channel 1 and channel 2.

Internal Clock

Internal Clock

Selects the internal clock. Use the numeric keys or the general purpose knob to set the internal clock frequency.

External Clock

External Clock

Selects the external clock. The external clock signal is input through the **CLOCK IN** connector on the rear panel of the instrument.

Default Value

Default Value

Sets the internal clock frequency to the default value of 10.00 MHz.

After setting the clock source and clock frequency, select **O.K.** from the side menu. The values for clock source and clock frequency will be updated to the values you have set.

CH1 Operation Settings

Select `CH1 Operation` [ ] using the general purpose knob. Then press the **VALUE** button on the front panel. The menu shown in Figure 4A-133 will appear.

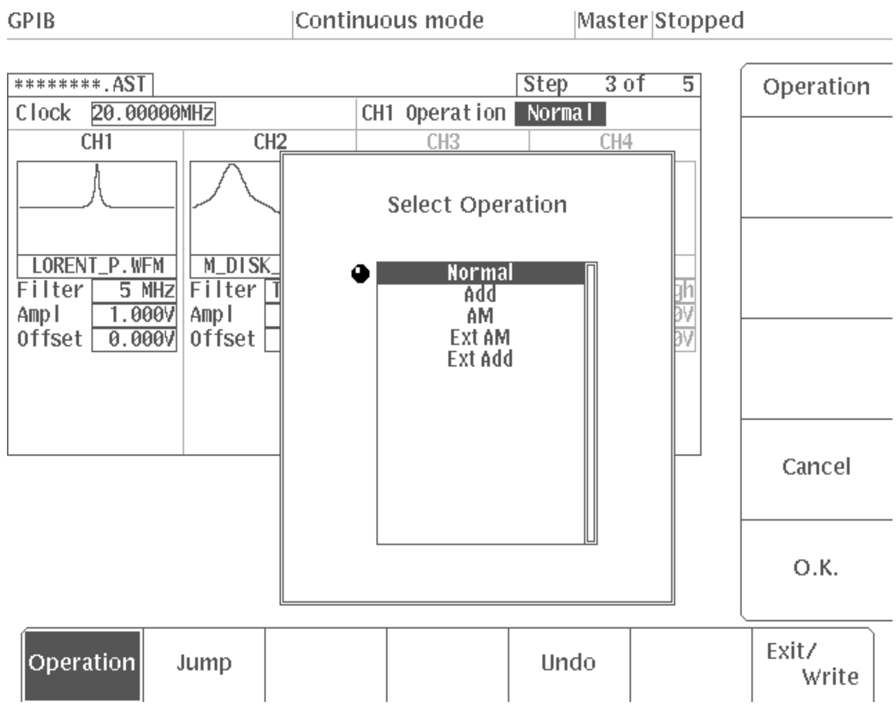


Figure 4A-133: CH1 Operation Setting Menu

Using the general purpose knob, select the type of operation to be performed with the CH1 waveform. See ”CH1 Waveform Operations” Section 4B ”**SETUP** Menu.” After selecting the type of operation, select **O.K.** from the side menu. The operation type will be updated to what you have set.

Filter Settings

Using the general purpose knob, select the Filter [ ] for the channel that you want to change and then press the **VALUE** button on the front panel. The menu shown in Figure 4A-134 will appear.

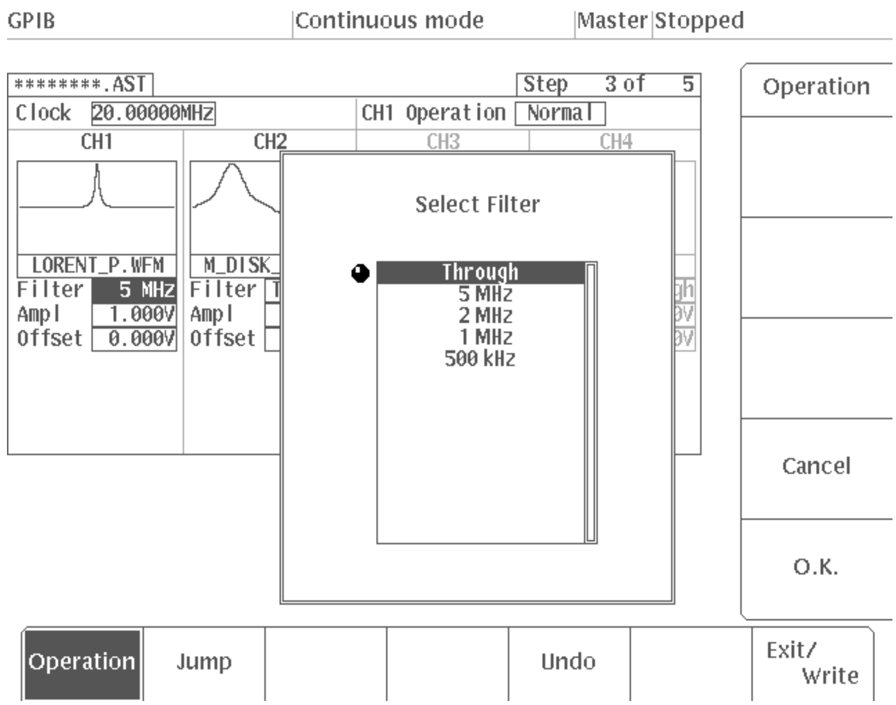


Figure 4A-134: Filter Setting Menu

Using the general purpose knob, select the type of filter. After selecting the filter type, select **O.K.** from the side menu. The filter type will be updated to what you have set.

Amplitude Settings

Using the general purpose knob, select the Ampl [ ] for the channel that you want to change and then press the **VALUE** button on the front panel. The menu shown in Figure 4A-135 will appear.

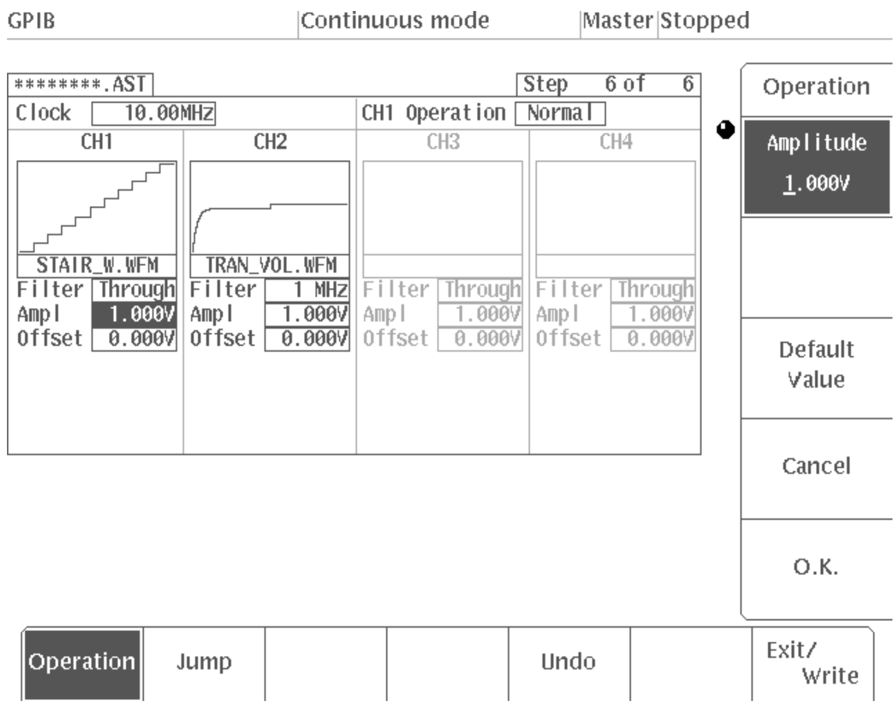


Figure 4A-135: Amplitude Setting Menu

Select the appropriate item in the side menu and set the amplitude.

Amplitude

Amplitude

Select this item and use the numeric keys or the general purpose knob to set the desired amplitude value.

Default Value

Default Value

This item sets the amplitude to the default value of 1.000 V .

After setting the amplitude, select **O.K.** from the side menu. The value for amplitude will be updated to the value you have set.

Offset Settings

Using the general purpose knob, select the Offset for the channel that you want to change and then press the **VALUE** button on the front panel. The menu shown in Figure 4A-136 will appear.

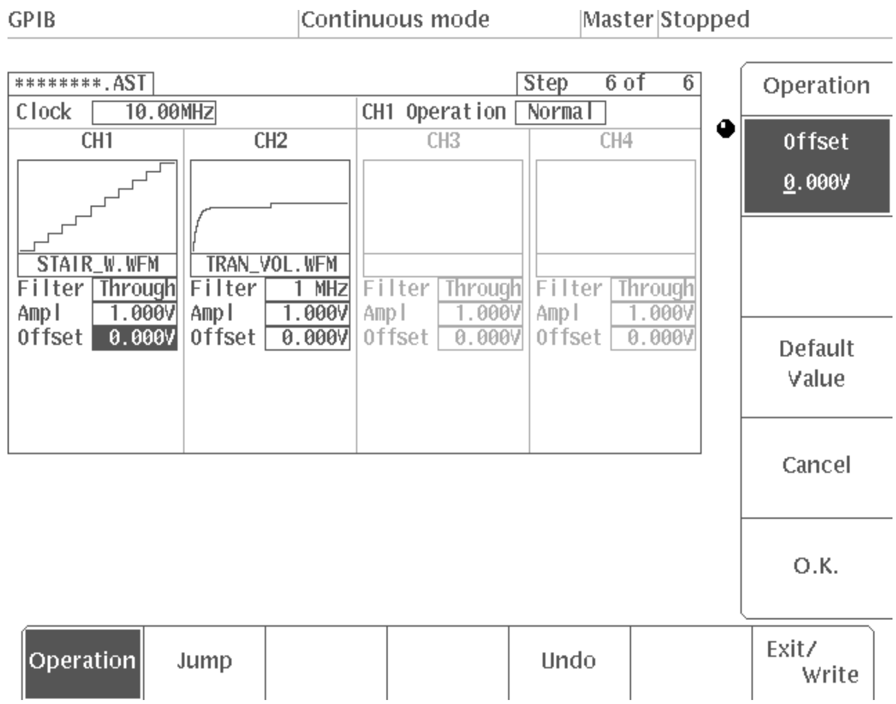


Figure 4A-136: Offset Setting Menu

Select the appropriate item in the side menu and set the offset.

Offset

Offset

Select this item and use the numeric keys or the general purpose knob to set the desired offset value.

Default Value

Default Value

This item sets the offset to the default value of 0.000 V .

After setting the offset, select **O.K.** from the side menu. The value for offset will be updated to the value you have set.

Editing Functions

Operation

When you select **Operation** in the bottom menu, the following items appear in the side menu:

- Cut Step
- Copy Step
- Paste Ste
- Insert New Step
- Append New Step
- Insert Current Setup
- Swap Channel Contents...

Cutting a Step

Cut Step

Use **Cut Step** if you wish to delete a step in the autostep file that you have programmed.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Operation** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Using the ← and → buttons on the front panel, move to the step to be deleted.

☐ **Step 3:** Select **Cut Step** from the side menu.

When **Cut Step** is selected, the current step is deleted. All of the steps after the one that you have deleted will move up one step. To restore this step to its original state, select **Undo** from the bottom menu or **Paste from Buffer** from the side menu.

Copying and Pasting a Step

Copy Step

Paste Step

Use the **Copy Step** and **Paste Step** items to copy a step in the program and paste it to another step.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Move to the step to be copied, using the same procedure as in ”Cutting a Step” above.

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Copy Step** from the side menu.

When **Copy Step** is selected, the current step is placed in the paste buffer. This item has no effect on the CRT display.

☐ **Step 3:** Use the ← and → buttons on the front panel or the **Jump** item in the bottom menu to move to the step to which the step in the paste buffer is to be pasted.

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Paste Step** from the side menu.

All of the steps after the one that has been pasted will move down one step.

Adding a Step

Use **Insert New Step** and **Append New Step** when you wish to add a step to an autostep file being created.

Insert New Step

Used to insert a step at the current step number.

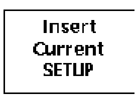
For example, suppose the current step number is **Step 2 of 3**. Selecting **Insert New Step** at this point will add a blank step at Step 2 and the step display will read **Step 2 of 4**.

Append New Step

Used to add a step after the current step number.

For example, suppose the current step number is **Step 2 of 3**. Selecting **Append New Step** at this point will add a blank step at Step 3 and the step display will read **Step 3 of 4**.

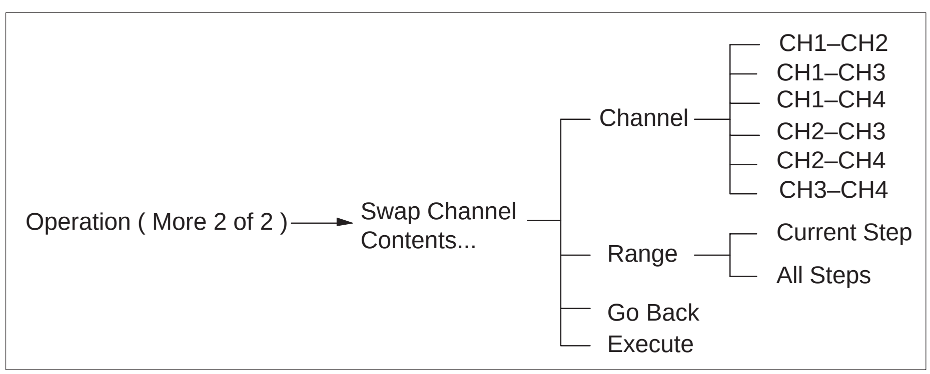
Inserting the SETUP Menu Waveforms and Output Parameters



Use **Insert Current SETUP** to insert the waveforms and output parameters for all channels that are currently set in the **SETUP** menu at the current step.

Swapping Steps Between Channels

Use **Swap Channel Contents...** to interchange the contents of steps on different channels. The following diagram shows the menu configuration.



Autostep files created on instruments with Option 02 installed may have files set for CH3 and CH4. In such cases, it is possible to swap step contents with CH3 or CH4.

Procedure

- ☐ **Step 1:** Select **Operation** from the bottom menu.
- ☐ **Step 2:** Using the ← and → buttons on the front panel, move to the step whose contents are to be swapped with another channel.
- ☐ **Step 3:** Select **More 1 of 2** from the side menu and then select **Swap Channel Contents...**

Channel

- ☐ **Step 4:** Select **Channel** from the sub-menu.
- ☐ **Step 5:** Using the general purpose knob, select the channel with which the step contents are to be swapped.

Range
Current Step
All Steps

- ☐ **Step 6:** Press **Range** in the sub-menu and select **Current Step** or **All Steps**.

  Current step

  Swaps only the contents of the current step.

  All Steps

  Swaps the contents of all steps.

- ☐ **Step 7:** Select **Execute** in the sub-menu.

  Data will be exchanged between the designated steps in the designated channels.

Jumping to a Step

Jump

Use **Jump** in the bottom menu to go quickly to a certain step in the autostep program. Using the items in the side menu, you can jump to the first step, the last step or to any step in between.

Step No.

Step No.

Used to move to a step other than the first or last step.

Use the numeric keys or the general purpose knob to enter the number of the desired step.

To
First Step

To First Step

Used to move to the first step.

To
Last Step

To Last Step

Used to move to the last step.

Clock Sweep Editor (Option 05)

On instruments with Option 05 installed, there is a clock sweep editor that enables you to create or edit clock sweeps. Using this editor, you can easily create arbitrary sweeps for clock frequencies. Clock sweep files are denoted by the extender **.CLK**. Figure 4A-137 shows an example of a simple linear up/down clock sweep waveform. In the actual clock sweep waveform, the frequency will change in steps. The vertical axis indicates frequency and the horizontal axis indicates time.

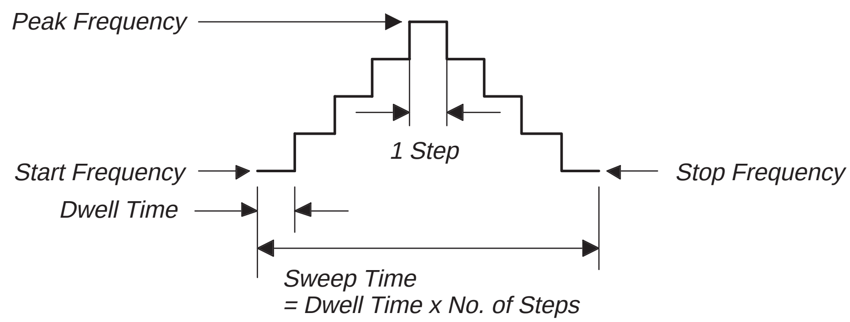
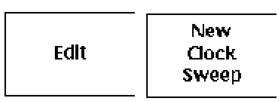


Figure 4A-137: Sample Linear Up/Down Clock Sweep Waveform

Use the **Clock** item in the **SETUP** menu to select files created with the clock sweep editor.



Entering the Clock Sweep Editor

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Press the **EDIT** button in the **MENU** column. The initial **EDIT** menu will appear.

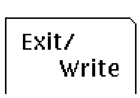
☐ **Step 2:** Select **More** from the side menu to display the second page of the side menu: **More 2 of 3**.

☐ **Step 3:** Select **Edit** or **New Clock Sweep** from the side menu.

Edit — Used to select and edit an existing clock sweep file (**.CLK**)

New Clock Sweep — Used to create a new clock sweep file

The clock sweep editor screen will appear.



Saving Files and Exiting the Editor

Use **Exit/Write** in the bottom menu to save the file (which you have either created or edited, depending on the side menu) to the internal memory of the AWG2005 and exit from the editor.

The same procedure is used to save the file and exit from the equation editor as for the waveform editor. See ”Saving Files and Exiting the Editor” in the section on the waveform editor.

Clock Sweep Editor Menu Structure

The clock sweep editor menu has the structure shown in Figure 4A-138. An ellipsis (...) next to an item in the side menu indicates that the item also has a sub-menu below that level. In the sub-menu, there are two additional commands besides those listed here: **Execute** is used to execute a function, while **Go Back** is used to return to the side menu.

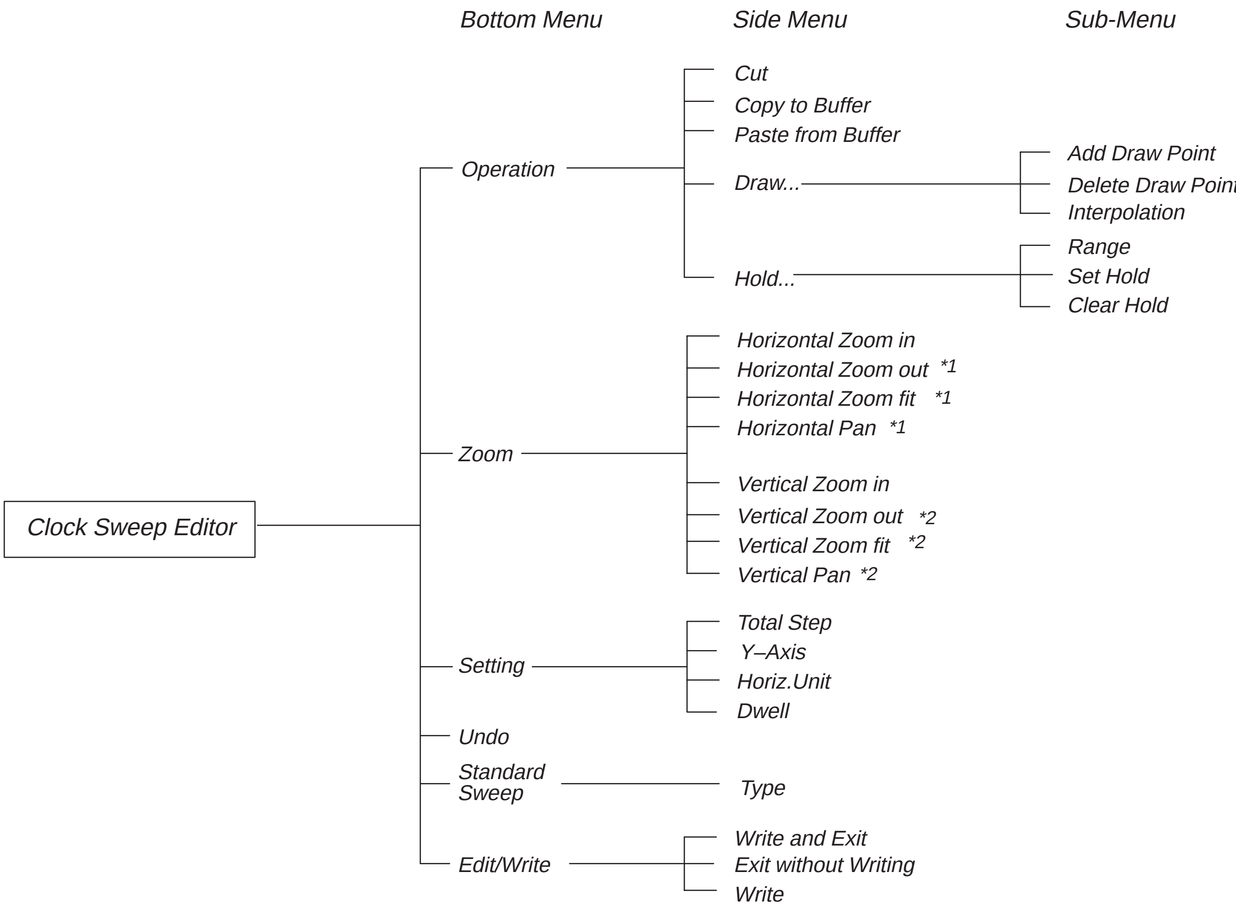


Figure 4A-138: Clock Sweep Editor Menu Structure

*1 These items appear when the displayed waveform has been zoomed in the horizontal direction with **Horizontal Zoom in** in the side menu (under **Zoom** in the bottom menu).

*2 These items appear when the displayed waveform has been zoomed in the vertical direction with **Vertical Zoom in** in the side menu (under **Zoom** in the bottom menu).

Menu Functions

The following list shows the functions available for each menu item and the page on which you can find a description of that function.

Table 4A-9: Menu Functions

Menu	Function	Page
Operation	Editing clock sweep data	4A-200
Cut	Cutting data	4A-42, 4A-200
Copy to Buffer	Copying data	4A-43, 4A-200
Paste from Buffer	Pasting data	4A-43, 4A-200
Draw...	Draw function	4A-45, 4A-200
Hold...	Setting hold bits	4A-201
Zoom	Zooming clock sweep waveforms	4A-90, 4A-203
Setting	Settings for editing clock sweep data	4A-200
Total Time	Setting number of steps	4A-200
Y−Axis	Setting Y-axis scale	4A-193
Horiz.Unit	Setting horizontal unit	4A-193
Dwell	Setting dwell time	4A-194
Undo	Canceling function execution	4-2
Standard Sweep	Creating a standard clock sweep waveform	4A-195
Exit/Write	Saving files and exiting the editor	4A-19, 4A-187

Clock Sweep Editor Menu Display

Figure 4A-139 shows the general clock sweep editor display. A description for each callout follows.

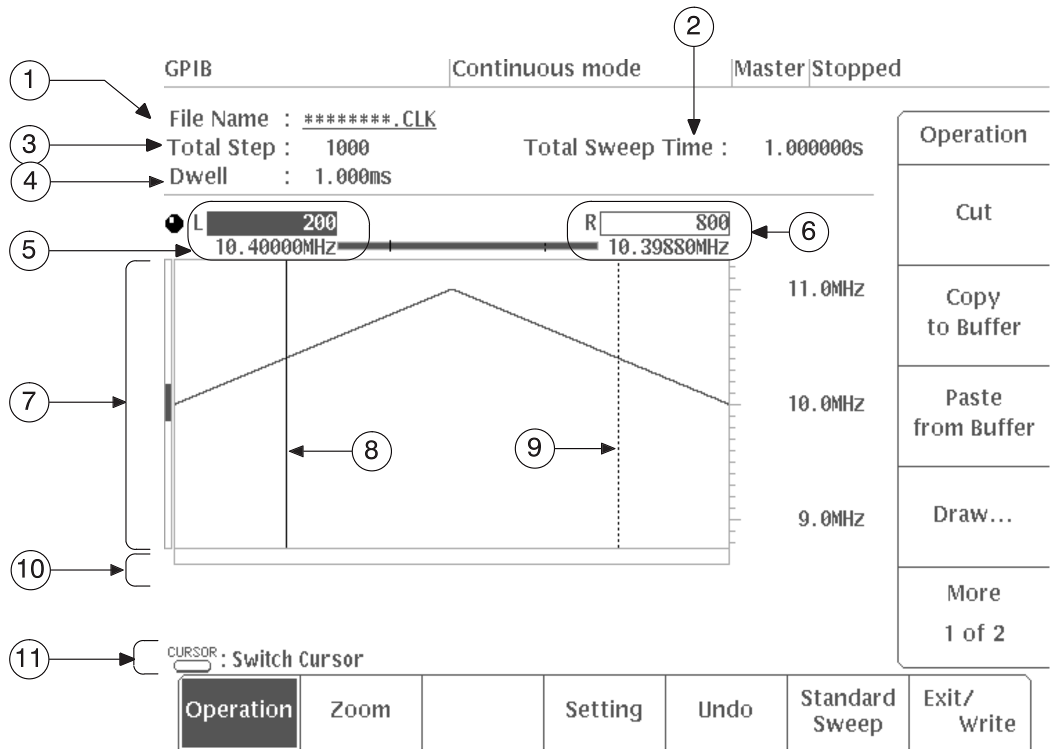


Figure 4A-139: Clock Sweep Editor CRT Display

(1) File Name

The name of the clock sweep file being edited; if the name has not been set yet, **********.CLK** is displayed.

(2) Total Sweep Time

Indicates the time for one period of the sweep waveform. This is the dwell time multiplied by the number of steps.

(3) Total Steps

Indicates the number of data items in the sweep waveform. This value can be set to a maximum of 8,192.

(4) Dwell

Indicates the sweep time for each step of the sweep. This value can be set anywhere between 1µs and 65.535ms.

(5) L

xxx Hz

Indicates the time or step value (**L**) and frequency (**xxx Hz**) at the current position of the left vertical bar cursor.

(6) R

xxx Hz

Indicates the time or step value (**R**) and frequency (**xxx Hz**) at the current position of the right vertical bar cursor.

(7) Sweep Waveform Display Area

This area shows the sweep waveform currently being edited. The vertical axis indicates frequency and the horizontal axis indicates either time or the number of steps. Horizontal and vertical scroll indicators are located above and to the left of the sweep display area. This indicator is displayed to show where the CRT display area is in terms of the full scale. The area displayed on the CRT is shown with inverted display.

(8) Left Vertical Bar Cursor

The left cursor indicates the left starting point for editing. The active cursor is displayed with solid lines and the non-movable is displayed with broken lines.

(9) Right Vertical Bar Cursor

Indicates the right end point for editing.

(10) Hold Bit Display Area

This area shows the hold bits that have been set. When **Sweep Mode** has been set to **Triggered**, the instrument will wait for a trigger signal before reading the data item for which a hold bit has been set.

(11) Button Operations

This area shows how the front panel buttons operate in this menu.

CURSOR : Switch Cursor

Press the **CURSOR** button to toggle the active vertical bar cursor between left and right.

CURSOR : Move Cursor

The vertical bar cursor can be moved by pressing the **CURSOR** button.

Settings for Editing Clock Sweep Data

Setting

Before creating clock sweep data, you should use the items in the side menu under **Setting** to set the environment for the clock sweep data. The following items can be set:

Total Steps	No. of steps for clock sweep
Y–Axis	Y-axis scale (**Linear** or **Log**)
Horiz. Unit	The unit for the horizontal axis (**Step** or **Time**)
Dwell	The dwell time

Each of these items will be explained in detail in the following pages.

Setting the Number of Steps

Total Step

Use **Total Step** to set the number of steps for each period of clock sweep data. Multiplying this value by the dwell time (**Dwell**) gives the total time of the clock sweep:

Sweep time (**Total Sweep Time**) = **Total Step** x **Dwell**

For example, if **Total Step** is set to 1000 and **Dwell** is set to 1ms, **Total Sweep Time** will be 1s.

When creating a new clock sweep file, the default setting for **Total Step** is 1000. This value can be set to any value up to 8192.

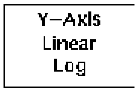
Procedure

To set the number of steps to 500:

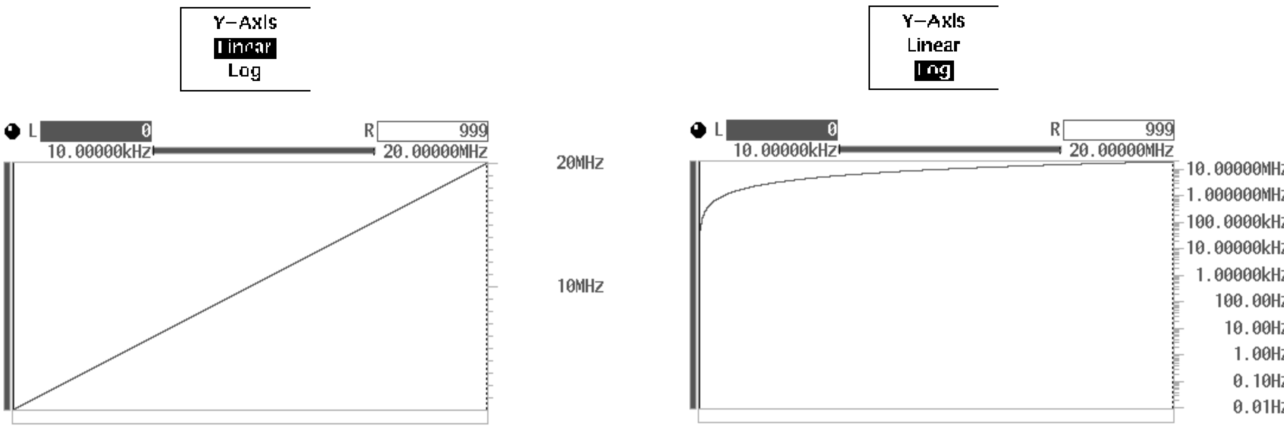
- ☐ **Step 1:** Select **Setting** from the bottom menu.
- ☐ **Step 2:** Select **Total Step** from the side menu.
- ☐ **Step 3:** Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, input 500.

When using the numeric keys, press **5**, **0**, **0** and **ENTER**.

Setting the Y-Axis Scale



The Y-axis scale for the clock sweep waveform can be changed to linear (**Linear**) or logarithmic (**Log**) scale. Figure 4A-140 shows an example of a clock sweep waveform with the Y-axis scale set to **Linear** and **Log**.



Linear *Log*

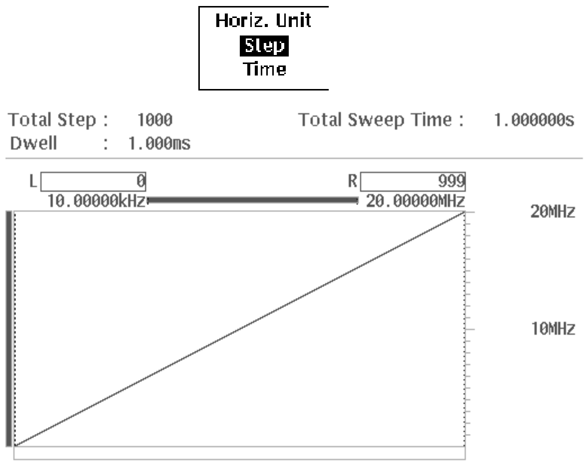
Figure 4A-140: Y-Axis Scale Settings

Setting the Horizontal Unit

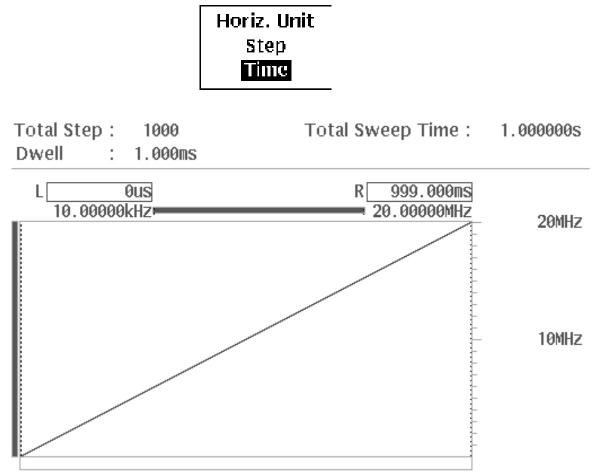
Use **Horiz. Unit** to set the unit for the horizontal axis of the clock sweep waveform to either **Step** or **Time**. Pressing the **Horiz. Unit** button in the side menu toggles the unit between **Step** and **Time**. Figure 4A-141 shows an example of a clock sweep waveform with the horizontal unit set to **Step** and **Time**.

Time — Sets the horizontal axis to express time. The cursor position data at the top of the screen is expressed in terms of time and editing is also done in time units.

Step — Sets the horizontal axis to express steps. The cursor position data at the top of the screen is expressed in terms of steps and editing is also done in step units.



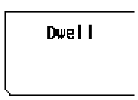
Step



Time

Figure 4A-141: Horizontal Unit Settings

Setting the Dwell Time



The sweep frequency actually changes in steps. The time for each step of the sweep is called the dwell time. Multiplying the dwell time (**Dwell**) by the number of steps (**Total Step**) gives the total time of the clock sweep (**Total Sweep Time**).

When creating a new clock sweep file, the default setting for **Dwell** is 1.000ms. The dwell time can be set to any value between 1μs and 65.535ms.

Procedure

To set the dwell time to 2ms:

- [ ] **Step 1:** Select **Setting** from the bottom menu.
- [ ] **Step 2:** Select **Dwell** from the side menu.
- [ ] **Step 3:** Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, input 2ms.

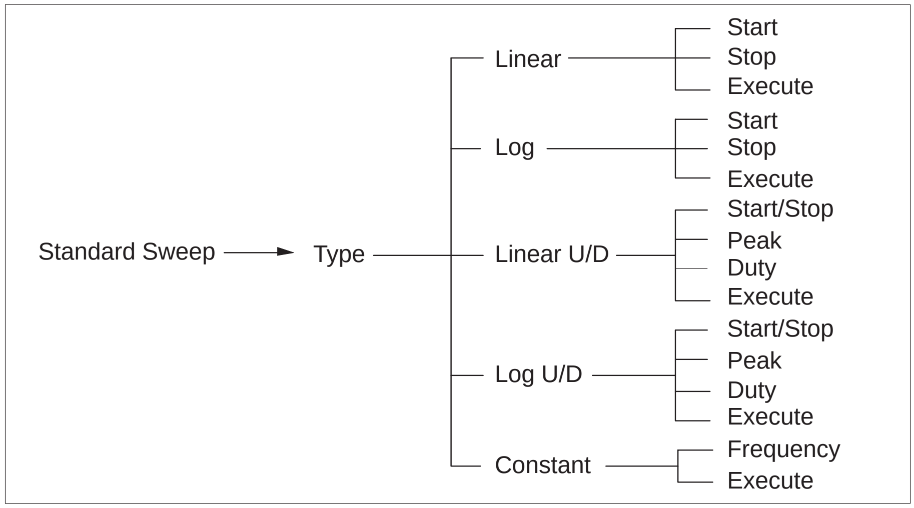
  If the value for **Total Step** is 1000, the **Total Sweep Time** will be 2s.

Creating a Standard Clock Sweep Waveform

Standard Sweep

Use **Standard Sweep** to create a standard clock sweep waveform in the area designated by the vertical bar cursors.

The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the **Standard Sweep** item.



Each of these items will be discussed in detail in the following pages.

Setting the Parameters and Type of Standard Clock Sweep

Type

Use **Type** to select the type of clock sweep waveform to be created. You can select any one of five types of clock sweep.

Linear — The frequency changes linearly. You can set the **Start** and **Stop** frequencies.

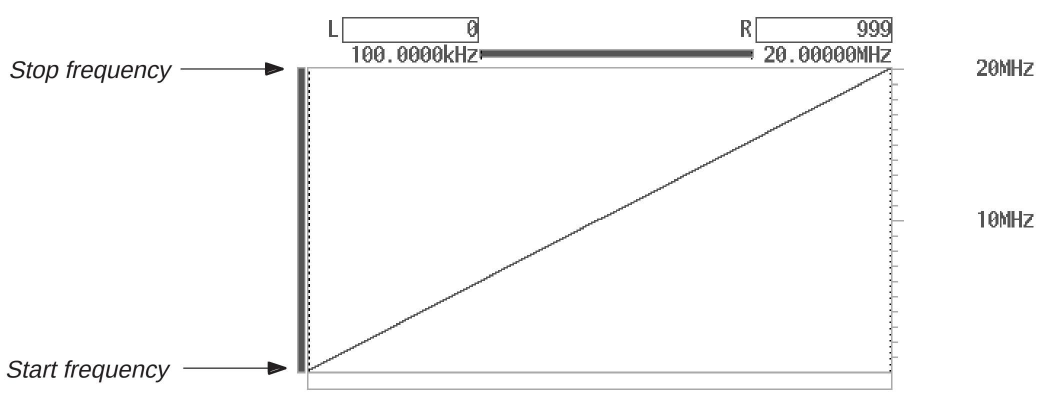


Figure 4A-142: Sample Linear Clock Sweep

Log — The frequency changes logarithmically. You can set the **Start** and **Stop** frequencies.

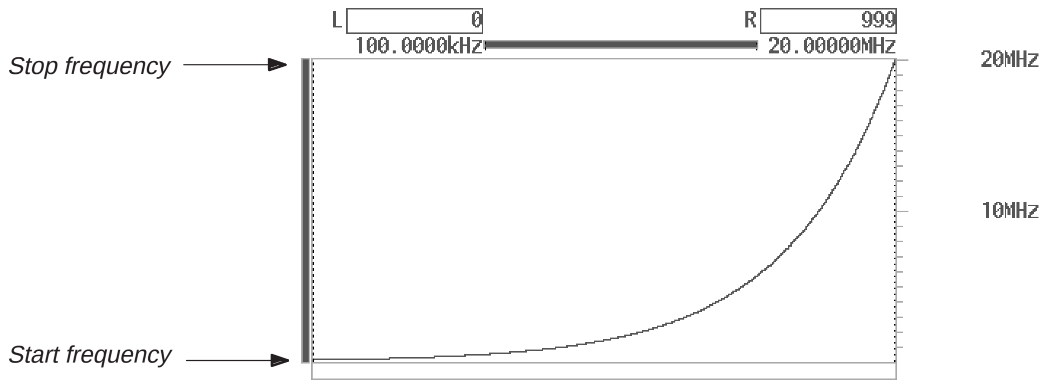


Figure 4A-143: Sample Log Clock Sweep

Linear U/D — The frequency changes linearly from the start to the peak frequency and from the peak to the stop frequency. You can set the **Start**/**Stop** frequency, the **Peak** frequency, and the **Duty**.

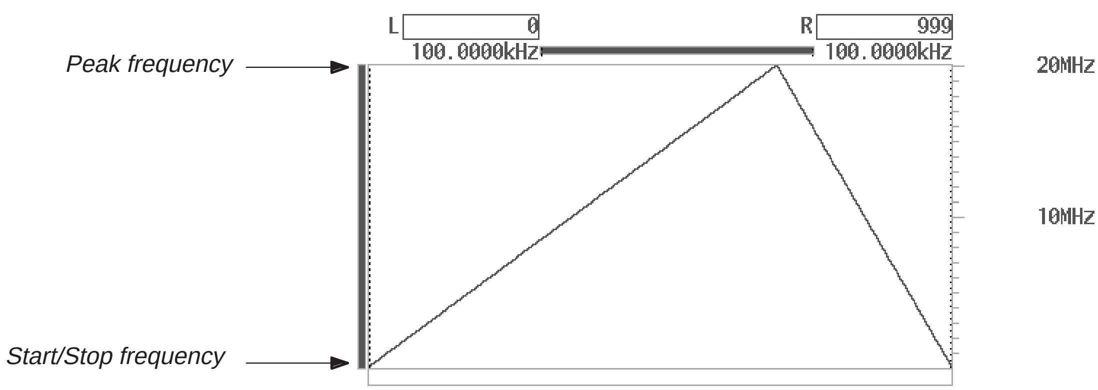


Figure 4A-144: Sample Linear U/D Clock Sweep

Log U/D — The frequency changes logarithmically from the start to the peak frequency and from the peak to the stop frequency. You can set the **Start**/**Stop** frequency, the **Peak** frequency, and the **Duty**.

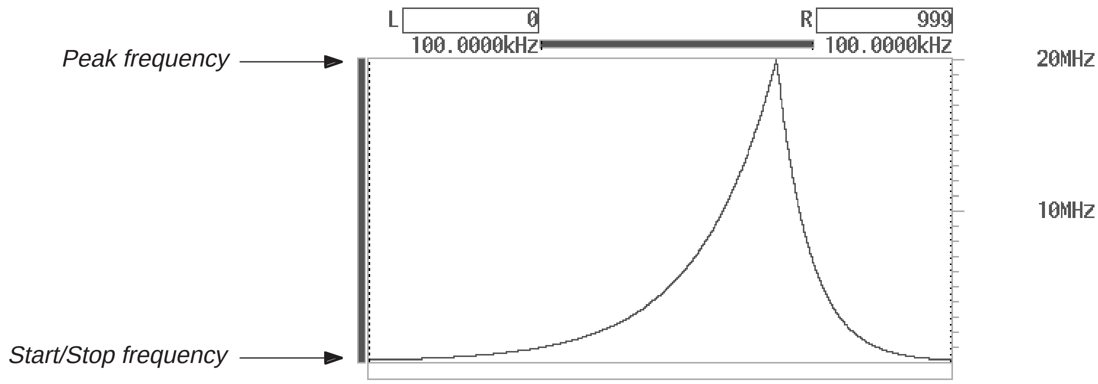


Figure 4A-145: Sample Log U/D Clock Sweep

Constant — In this clock sweep, the frequency is constant. You can set the value for **Frequency**.

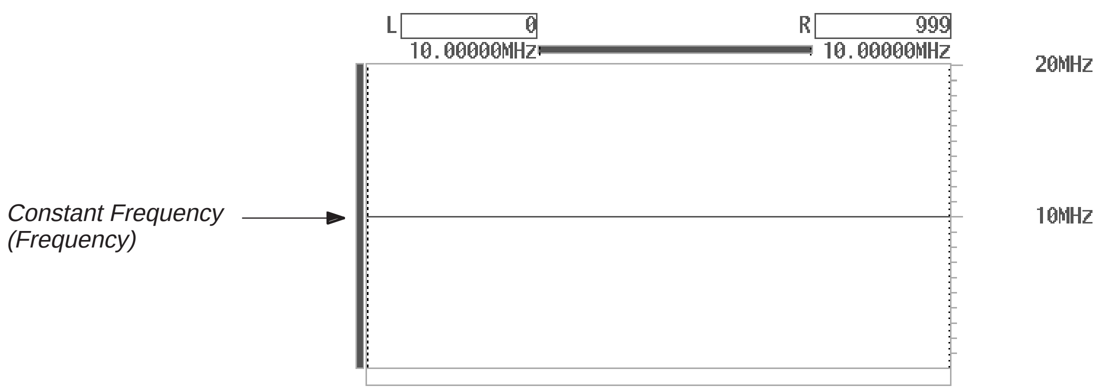


Figure 4A-146: Sample Constant Clock Sweep

Setting Parameters for Clock Sweep Waveform

The following parameters can be set for the clock sweep designated with **Type**. Values can be set using either the numeric keys or the general purpose knob. Each frequency can be set anywhere between 0.01Hz and 20MHz.

Start

Start

Used to set the frequency for the start point of the **Linear** or **Log** clock sweep.

Stop

Stop

Used to set the frequency for the stop point of the **Linear** or **Log** clock sweep.

Start/Stop

Start/Stop

Used to set the frequency for the start/stop point of the **Linear U/D** or **Log U/D** clock sweep.

Peak

Peak

Used to set the frequency for the peak point of the **Linear U/D** or **Log U/D** clock sweep.

Frequency

Frequency

Used to set the frequency for the **Constant** clock sweep.

Duty

Duty

Used to set the duty for the **Linear U/D** or **Log U/D** clock sweep. The duty can be set anywhere between 0 and 100%.

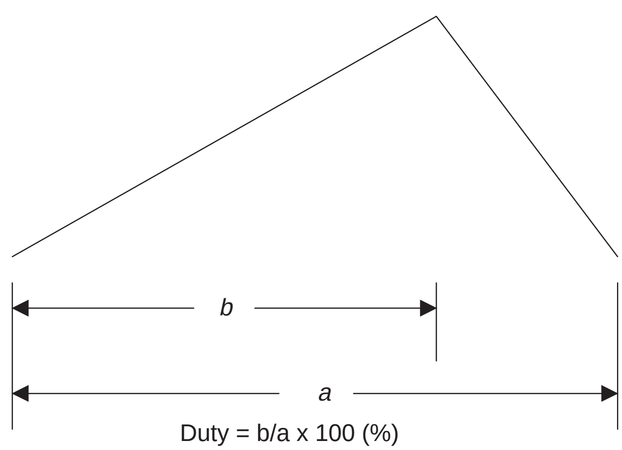


Figure 4A-147: Duty for U/D Clock Sweep

Sample Creation of a Linear U/D Clock Sweep

In this example, you will replace the data between the vertical bar cursors with a **Linear U/D** clock sweep. The **Start/Stop** frequency will be 1 MHz, the **Peak** frequency will be 20MHZ, and the **Duty** will be 70%. The procedure begins from the point at which you have selected **New Clock Sweep** from the initial **EDIT** menu.

- [ ] **Step 1:** Select **Standard Sweep** from the bottom menu.
- [ ] **Step 2:** Check to make sure that the vertical bar cursors are all the way to the left and right to encompass the entire editing area. If they are not, use the general purpose knob to move them to these positions.
- [ ] **Step 3:** Press **Type** in the side menu and select **Linear U/D**.
- [ ] **Step 4:** Select **Start/Stop** from the side menu. Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, set the **Start/Stop** frequency to 1MHz.
- [ ] **Step 5:** Select **Peak** from the side menu. Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, set the peak frequency to 20MHz.
- [ ] **Step 6:** Select **Duty** from the side menu. Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, set the duty to 70%.
- [ ] **Step 7:** Select **Execute** from the side menu.

When you select **Execute**, the data between the vertical bar cursors will be replaced by the **Linear U/D** clock sweep that you have specified. See Figure 4A-148.

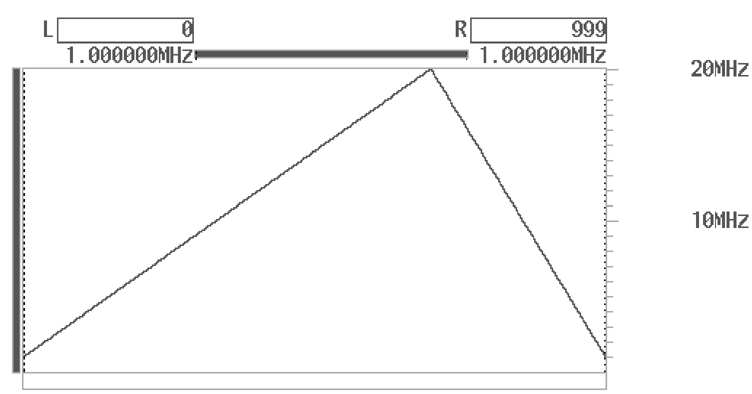
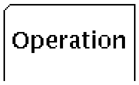


Figure 4A-148: Creating a Linear U/D Clock Sweep

Editing Clock Sweep Data



When **Operation** is selected with the clock sweep editor, it is possible to edit the clock sweep data in various ways. The side menu has two pages. Select **More** to switch the side menu to the next page. The following is a list of the items in the side menu and their functions.

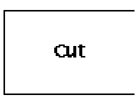
Cut	Cutting data
Copy to Buffer	Copying data
Paste from Buffer	Pasting data
Draw...	Draw function
Hold...	Hold function

Items with ”**...**” have further low-level side menus, called sub-menus.

Setting Editing Areas

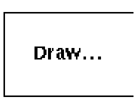
The editing operations available under **Operation** are all performed in the editing area located between the left and right vertical bar cursors. Before beginning the editing process, you should define the editing area. For a description of the procedure used to define the editing area, see ”Setting Editing Areas” in the section on the waveform editor graphic display.

Cutting, Copying and Pasting Data

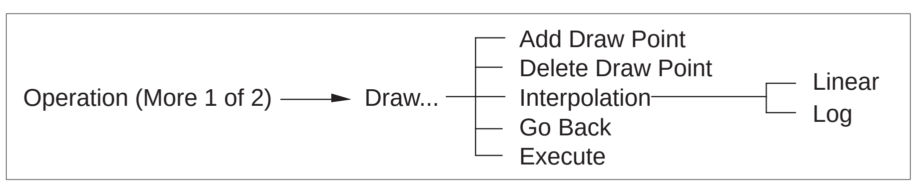


Cut, **Copy to Buffer** and **Paste from Buffer** have the same functions as the identical commands in the waveform editor graphic display. See ”Cutting Waveforms” and ”Copying/Pasting Waveforms” in the section on the waveform editor graphic display.

Draw Function

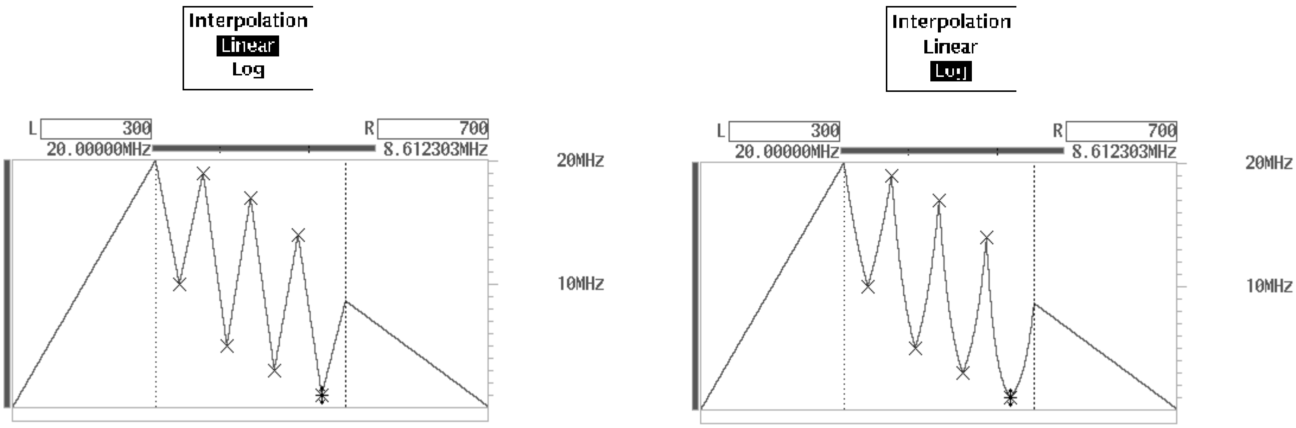


This command is used to draw points between the specified vertical bar cursors and connect these points to create an arbitrary clock sweep waveform. The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the **Draw...** item.



Draw... has the same function as the identical command in the waveform editor graphic display. See ”Draw Function” in the section on the waveform editor graphic display. However, the points will be connected through linear or logarithmic interpolation rather than by smoothing.

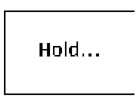
Interpolation — There are two types of interpolation, **Linear** and **Log** (logarithmic); the **Interpolation** button toggles between these two. When **Interpolation** is set to **Linear**, the points are connected with straight lines. When **Interpolation** is set to **Log**, the points are connected in a logarithmic curve.



Linear Interpolation *Logarithmic Interpolation*

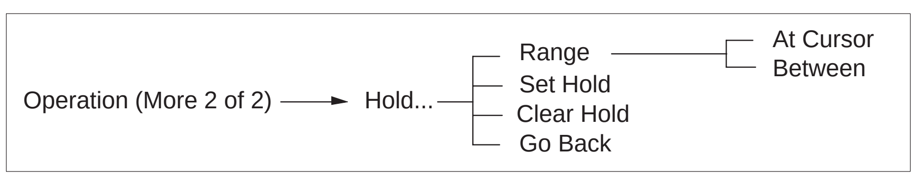
Figure 4A-149: Connecting Points

Setting Hold Bits



If **Sweep Mode** in the **SETUP** menu has been set to **Triggered**, when the instrument encounters data with a hold bit, it will wait for a trigger signal before reading that data.

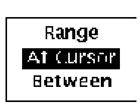
Use **Hold...** to set or reset a hold bit at the position of the active vertical bar cursor or between the vertical bar cursors. The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the **Hold...** item.



Procedure

In this example, you will set a hold bit at the step indicated by the active vertical bar cursor.

- ☐ **Step 1:** Select **Operation** from the bottom menu.
- ☐ **Step 2:** Select **More 1 of 2** and **Hold...** from the side menu.



- ☐ **Step 3:** Press **Range** in the sub-menu and select **At Cursor**. This specifies that the hold bit will be set for the step indicated by the active vertical bar cursor.

- [ ] **Step 4:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel to make the desired vertical cursor active.

- [ ] **Step 5:** Using the general purpose knob, move the active vertical bar cursor to the step at which you want to set the hold bit.

- [ ] **Step 6:** Select **Set Hold** from the sub-menu.

A hold bit will be set for the step indicated by the active vertical bar cursor. Figure 4A-150 shows an example in which a hold bit has been set at the position of the active vertical bar cursor.

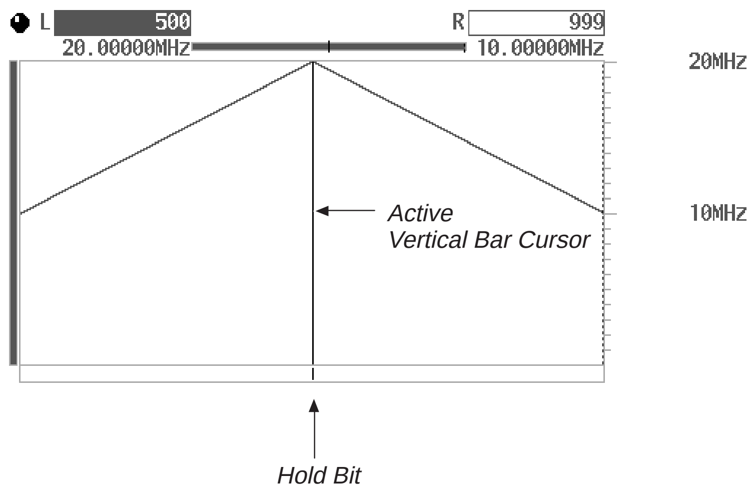
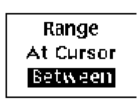


Figure 4A-150: Hold Bit Set at Active Vertical Bar Cursor

- [ ] **Step 7:** Select **Clear Hold** from the sub-menu. The hold bit set in Step 6 will be cleared.

In the next example, you will set hold bits for the steps between the vertical bar cursors.



- [ ] **Step 8:** Press **Range** in the sub-menu and select **Between**. This specifies that the hold bits will be set for the steps between the vertical bar cursors.

- [ ] **Step 9:** Using the general purpose knob, move the vertical bar cursors to define the steps for which you want to set the hold bits.

- [ ] **Step 10:** Select **Set Hold** in the sub-menu.

Hold bits will be set for the steps between the vertical bar cursors. Figure 4A-151 shows an example in which hold bits have been set between the vertical bar cursors.

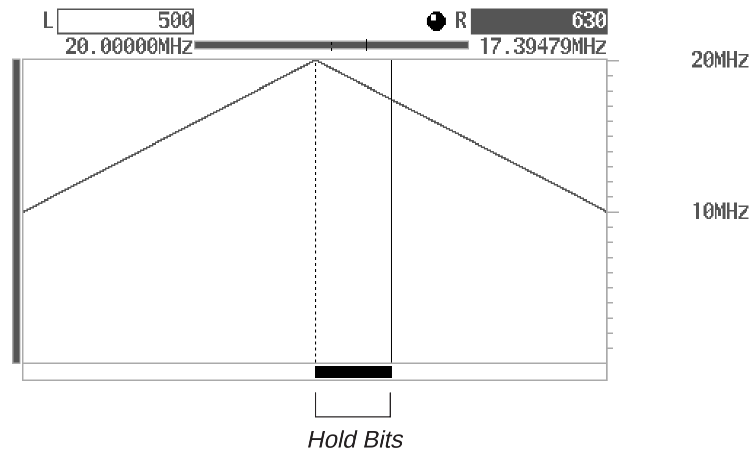


Figure 4A-151: Hold Bits Set Between Vertical Bar Cursors

Clear Hold

☐ **Step 11:** Select **Clear Hold** from the sub-menu. The hold bits set in Step 10 will be cleared.

☐ **Step 12:** Select **Go Back** from the current sub-menu. The system moves from the **Hold...** sub-menu to the side menu.

Zooming Clock Sweep Waveforms

Zoom

The **Zoom** item is used to enlarge or reduce the clock sweep waveform, either horizontally or vertically. This process is for display purposes only; it does not affect the waveform data. The side menu consists of 2 pages: the first page contains the horizontal zoom items and the second page contains the vertical zoom items.

For a description of the zooming function for clock sweep waveforms, see ”Zooming Waveforms” in the section on the waveform editor graphic display.

Convolution Waveform Editor (Option 09)

On instruments with Option 09 installed, high-speed convolution and correlation can be performed for up to 32,000 words of waveform data in existing waveform files (those bearing the extender **.WFM**).

The number of points in the waveform after calculation will be the sum of the point sizes of the two selected waveform files. The calculated amplitude will be normalized.

NOTE

The calculated result of waveforms consisting of P number of points and N number of points will be P + N − 1. For the sake of convenience, however, on this instrument a final value of 0.0 is added , so the result is P + N.

On discrete systems, the convolution y(n) of waveform x(n) and waveform h(i) is expressed by the following formula. Here N is the number of data items. The operation expressed by this formula is called convolution.

$$y\ (n) = \sum_{I=0}^{N-1} x\ (i)h(n-i)$$

Alternately, the correlation y(n) of waveform x(n) and waveform h(i) is expressed by the following formula. Here N is the number of data items. The only difference between this equation and the one expressing convolution above is the minus sign in the parentheses, so with left-right symmetrical waveforms the results will be identical.

$$y\ (n) = \sum_{I=0}^{N-1} x\ (i)h(n + i)$$

Entering the Convolution Waveform Editor

Convolve Waveform

In this editor, you select an existing waveform file and perform either convolution or correlation and then create a new file. Use the following procedure to open the editor:

Procedure

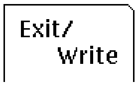
☐ **Step 1:** Press the **EDIT** button in the **MENU** column. The initial **EDIT** menu will appear.

☐ **Step 2:** Select **More** from the side menu to display the third page of the side menu: **More 3 of 3**.

☐ **Step 3:** Select **Convolve Waveform** from the side menu.

The convolution waveform editor screen will appear.

Saving Files and Exiting the Editor



When you select **Exit/Write** from the bottom menu, depending on what you have selected in the side menu, a file name will be assigned to the calculated result and the file will be saved to internal memory, after which the editor will close. When you quit the editor, the initial **EDIT** menu will reappear.

The same procedure is used to save the file and exit from the convolution waveform editor as for the waveform editor. See "Saving Files and Exiting the Editor" in the section on the waveform editor.

Convolution Waveform Editor Menu Structure

The Convolution Waveform Editor menu has the structure shown in Figure 4A-152.

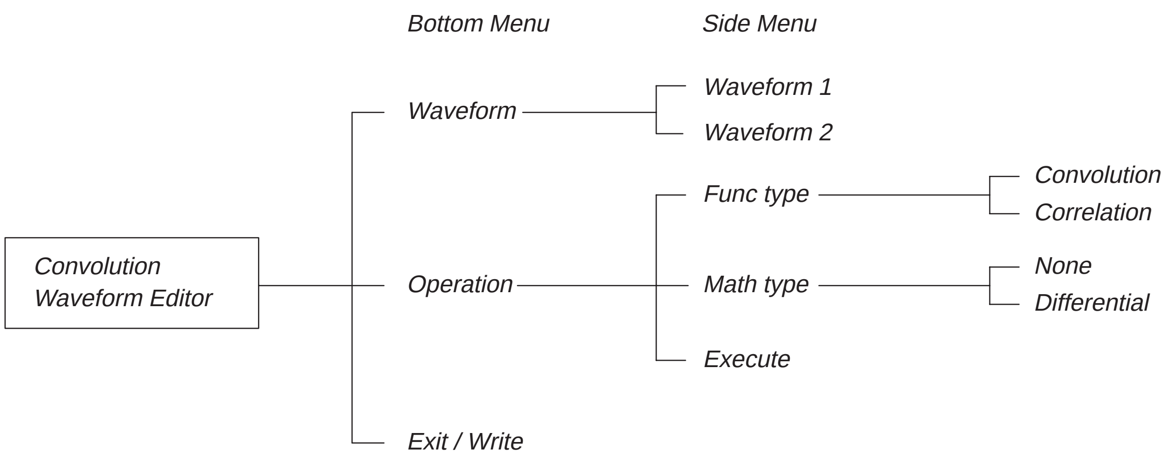


Figure 4A-152: Convolution Waveform Editor Menu Structure

Menu Functions

The following list shows the functions available for each menu item and the page on which you can find a description of that function.

Table 4A-10: Menu Functions

Menu	Function	Page
Waveform	Selecting a waveform file	4A-207
Operation	Executing convolution/correlation	4A-208
Exit/Write	Saving files and exiting the editor	4A-19, 4A-205

Convolution Waveform Editor Menu Display

Figure 4A-153 shows the general convolution waveform editor display.

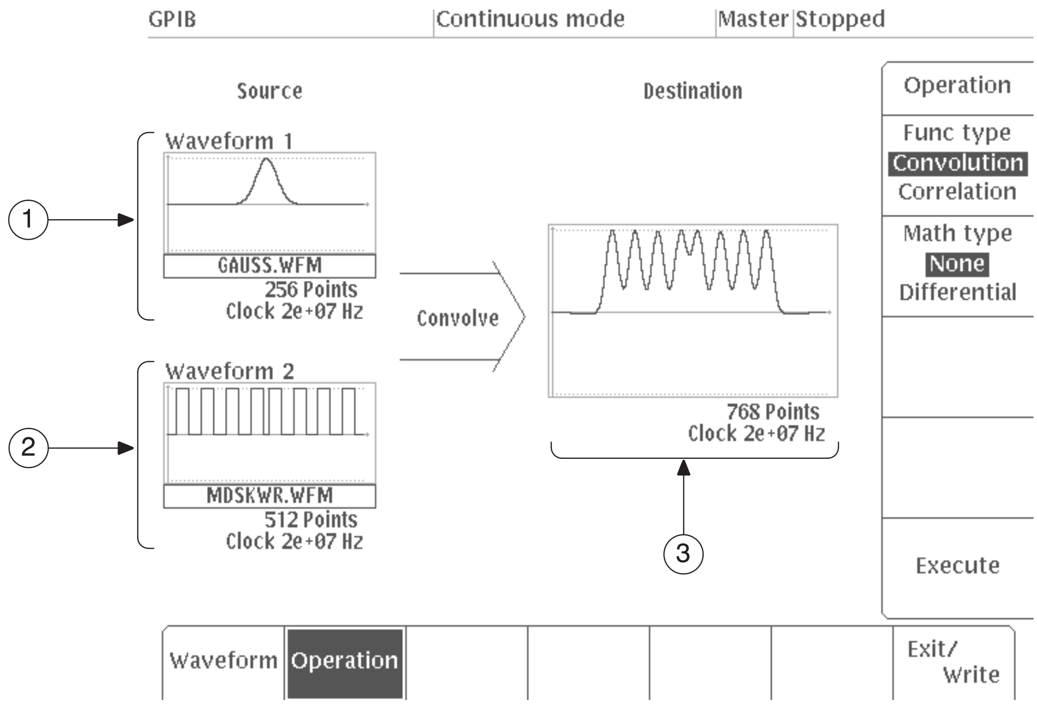


Figure 4A-153: Convolution Waveform Editor CRT Display

(1) Source Waveform1 Display Area

When the waveform file for operation is selected from internal memory, the waveform for that file will be displayed in this area along with the file name, clock frequency and number of points making up the waveform.

(2) Source Waveform2 Display Area

When the other waveform file for operation is selected from internal memory, the waveform for that file will be displayed in this area along with the file name, clock frequency and number of points making up the waveform.

(3) Destination Waveform Display Area

The result of operations for **Waveform1** and **Waveform2** will be displayed in this area as a waveform. The waveform point size will be the sum of the point sizes for **Waveform1** and **Waveform2**. When the data is saved, the clock frequency for **Waveform1** will be saved to that file.

Selecting a Waveform File

In this example, you will select a waveform file for operation.

Procedure

- ☐ **Step 1:** Select **Waveform** from the bottom menu.
- ☐ **Step 2:** Select **Waveform1** from the side menu.
- ☐ **Step 3:** Using the general purpose knob, select the waveform file for operation from the **Select Waveform** list and then select **O.K.** The waveform you have selected will be displayed in the **Waveform1** display area under **Source**.
- ☐ **Step 4:** Select **Waveform2** from the side menu.
- ☐ **Step 5:** Using the general purpose knob, select the other waveform file for operation from the **Select Waveform** list and then select **O.K.** The waveform you have selected will be displayed in the **Waveform2** display area under **Source**.

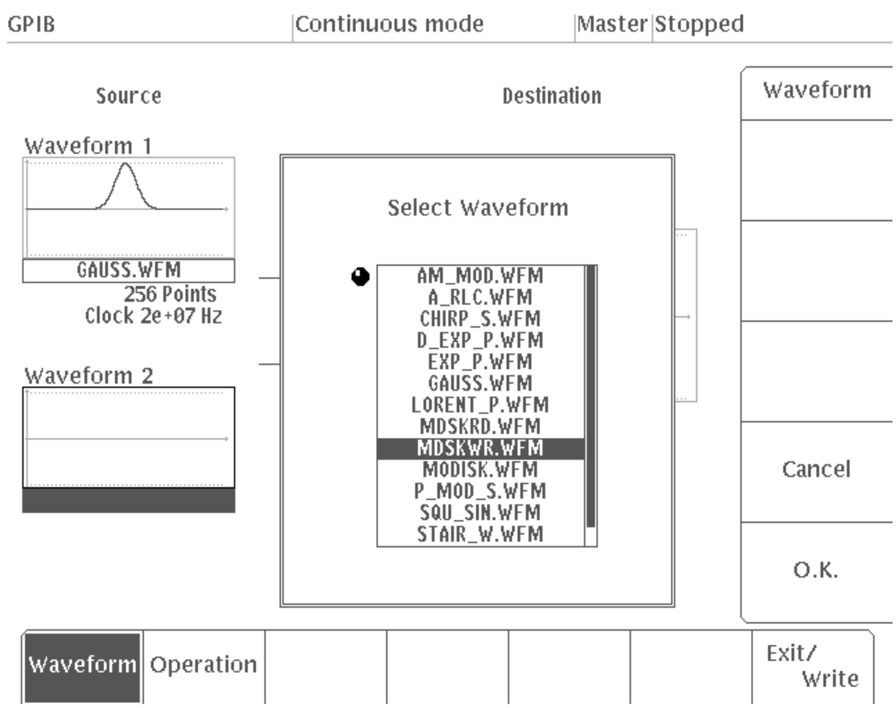


Figure 4A-154: Selecting a Waveform File

Executing Convolution/Correlation

Operation

When you select **Operation** in the bottom menu, convolution or correlation will be performed. If **Differential** has been selected for the **Math type** item, the calculated result will be differentiated.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Operation** from the bottom menu.

Func type
Convolution
Correlation

☐ **Step 2:** Press **Func type** in the side menu and select either **Convolution** or **Correlation**.

Math type
None
Differential

☐ **Step 3:** If you would like to differentiate the calculated result, select **Differential** for the **Math type** item. Differentiation will be used when reading waveforms from magnetic disks.

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Execute** from the side menu to execute the operation.

The point size of the waveform data after operation will be the sum of the point sizes of the two waveform files you have selected.

Figure 4A-155 shows an example of convolution for which differentiation has been performed. Figure 4A-156 shows an example of correlation.

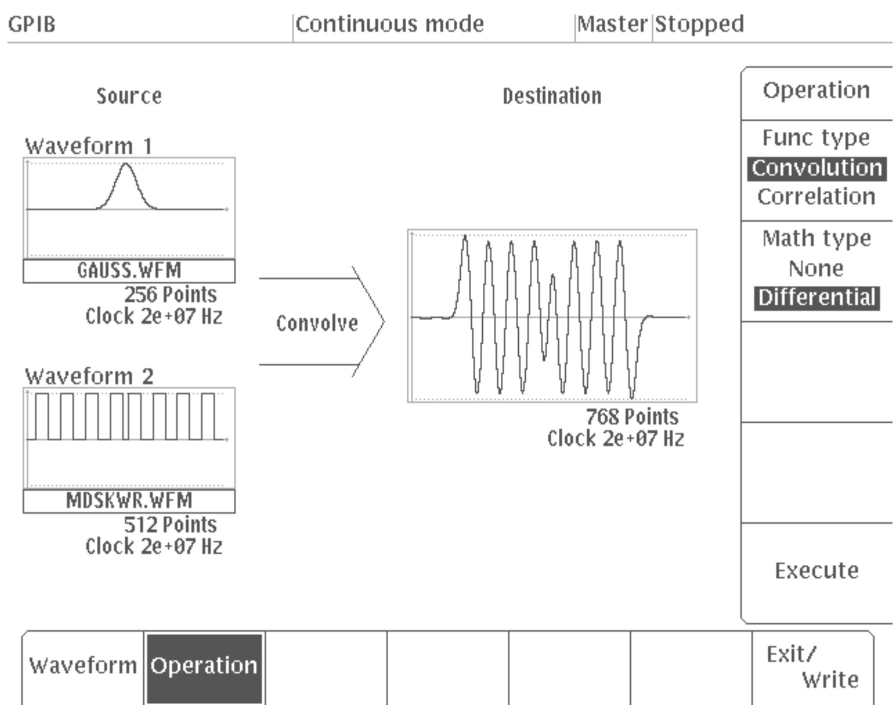


Figure 4A-155: Sample Convolution

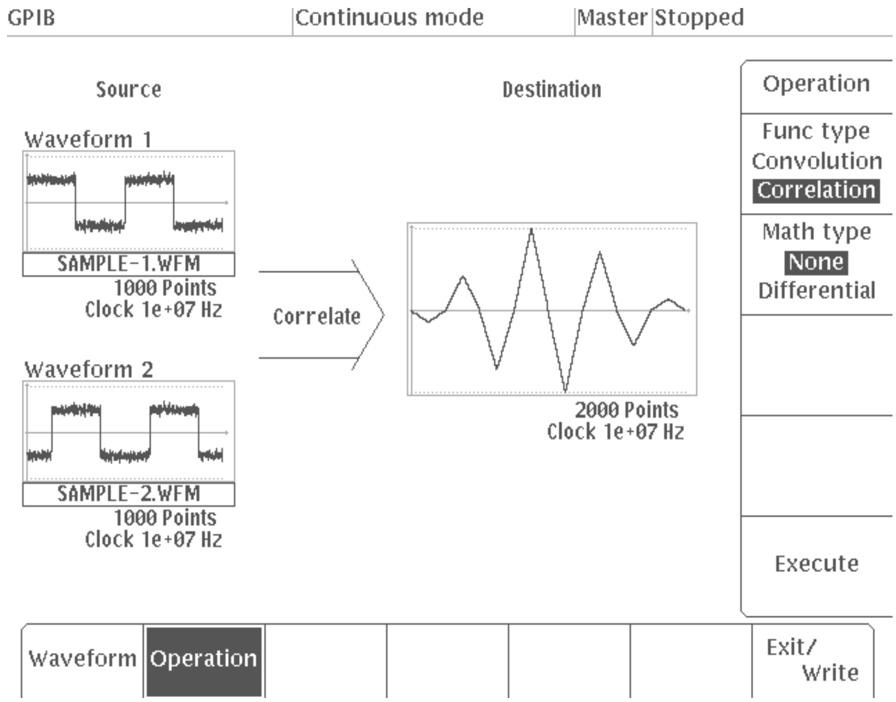


Figure 4A-156: Sample Correlation

FFT Editor (Option 09)

On instruments with Option 09 installed, existing waveform files with the extension **.WFM** can be edited in the frequency domain. When the editor is started, Fast Fourier transformation occurs automatically and the data is transformed into the frequency domain. When you leave the editor, inverse fast Fourier transformation is carried out to convert the frequency domain data into time domain data.

The window function for fast Fourier transform is selected when the editor is started. Within the editor, filtering (high pass, low pass, band pass, band cut) and clipping are possible.

Entering the FFT Editor

Edit In Frequency Domain

This editor is not used to make new files. Rather, it edits existing waveform files in the frequency domain. Here is the procedure for editing the FFT editor.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Press the **EDIT** button in the **MENU** column. The initial **EDIT** menu will appear.

☐ **Step 2:** Select **More** from the side menu to display the third page of the side menu: **More 3 of 3**.

☐ **Step 3:** Using the general purpose knob, select the waveform file (**.WFM**) from the file list.

The **Edit in Frequency Domain** item is added to the side menu.

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Edit in Frequency Domain** from the side menu. The menu for selecting the window function is displayed. See Figure 4A-157.

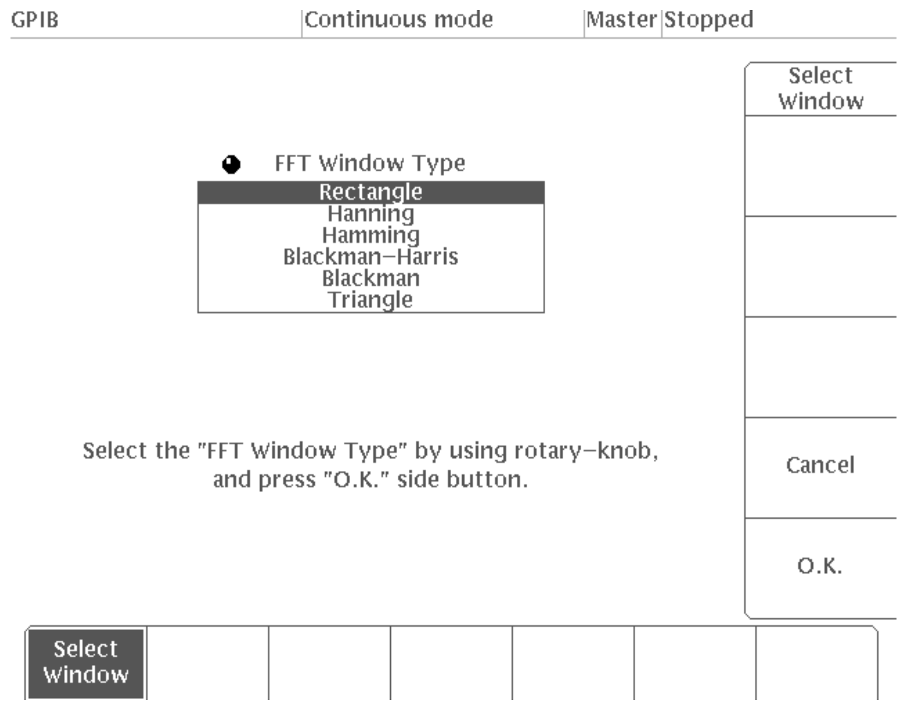


Figure 4A-157: FFT Window Selection Menu

☐ **Step 5:** Using the general purpose knob, select the window function.

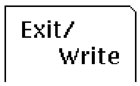
When you enter the FFT editor, you must select the window function. This instrument has the following six FFT windows.

- Rectangle
- Hanning
- Hamming
- Blackman-Harris
- Blackman
- Triangle

For repetitive waveforms in which the waveform data starting point and ending point match, the rectangle window is usually used. For details on the window functions, see the FFT (Fast Fourier Transforms) description in Appendix D.

☐ **Step 6:** Next, select **O.K.** from the side menu to enter the FFT editor. The time domain data is transformed into the frequency domain.

To cancel the FFT operation, select **Cancel**. This returns the system to the initial **EDIT** menu.



Saving Files and Exiting the Editor

Select **Exit/Write** from the bottom menu. Then select from the side menu to save the edited file to the internal memory of the AWG2005 and exit from the editor. When this is done, the frequency domain data is converted into time domain data and saved as a waveform file.

The same procedure is used to save the file and exit from the FFT editor as for the waveform editor. See "Saving Files and Exiting the Editor" in the section on the waveform editor.

FFT Editor Menu Structure

The FFT Editor menu has the structure shown in Figure 4A-158.

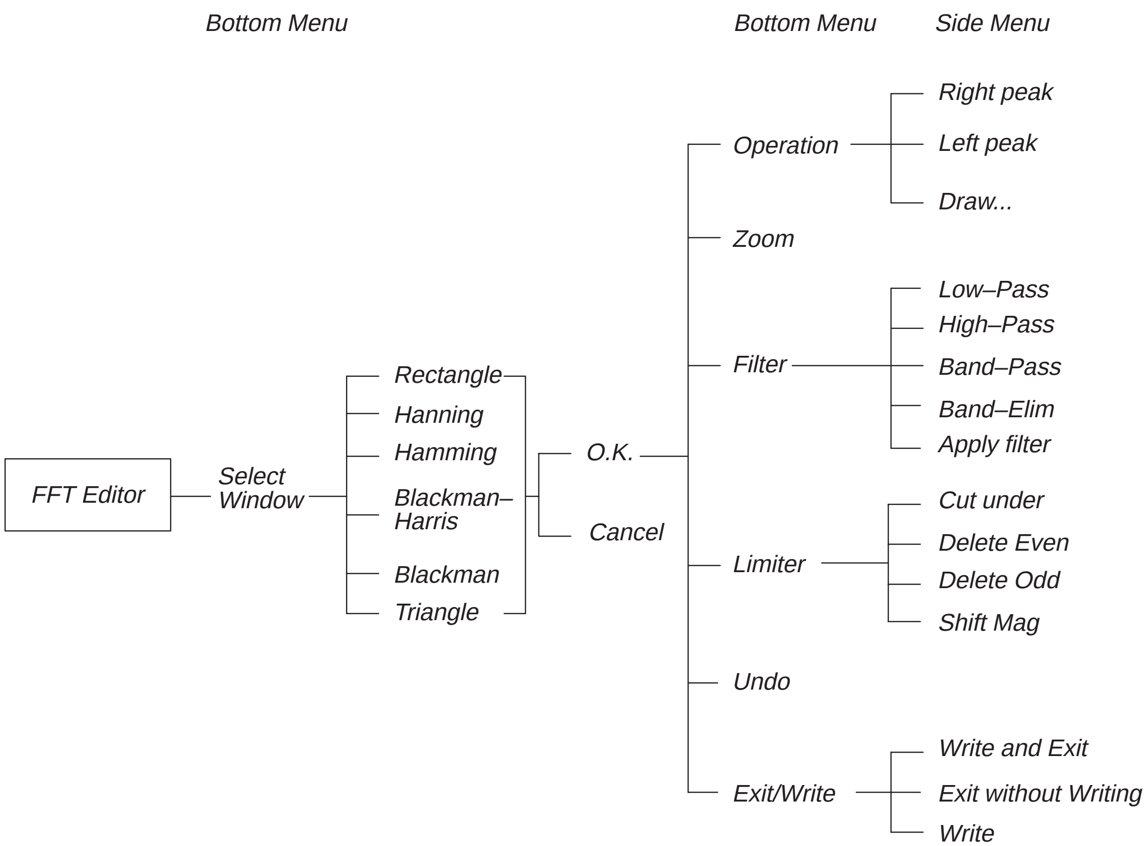


Figure 4A-158: FFT Editor Menu Structure

Menu Functions

The following list shows the functions available for each menu item and the page on which you can find a description of that function.

Table 4A-11: Menu Functions

Menu	Function	Page
Select Window	Selecting a window	4A-210
Operation	Editing in the frequency domain	4A-216
Right peak, Left peak	Searching for peaks	4A-217
Draw...	Drawing magnitude and phase	4A-217
Zoom	Magnifying a signal	4A-221
Filter	Selecting a filter	4A-222
Limiter	Selecting a limiter	4A-224
Cut under	Cutting extraneous frequency components	4A-224
Delete Even, Delete Odd	Deleting even or odd components	4A-224
Shift Mag	Shifting magnitudes	4A-225
Undo	Canceling function execution	4-2
Exit/Write	Saving files and exiting the editor	4A-19, 4A-212

FFT Editor Menu Display

Figure 4A-159 shows the general FFT editor display. A description for each callout follows.

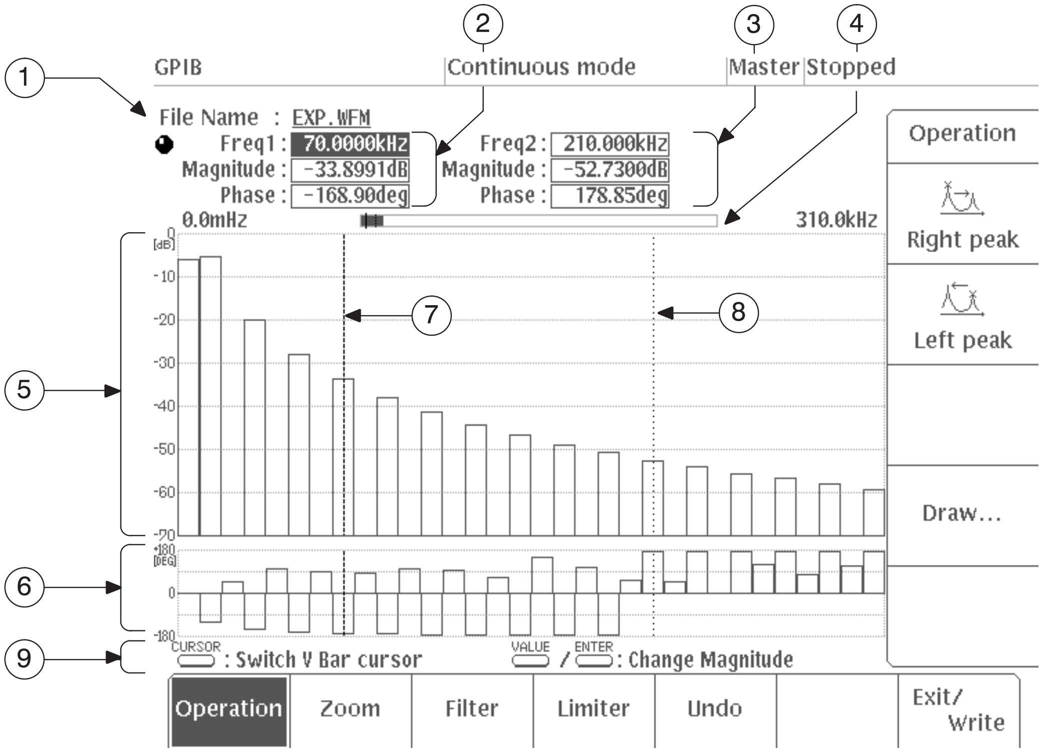


Figure 4A-159: FFT Editor CRT Display

(1) File Name

This is the name of the waveform file being edited.

(2) Freq1: Magnitude: Phase:

This section shows the frequency, magnitude and phase for the position of the left vertical bar cursor. Use the **CURSOR** button to toggle between the left and right vertical bar cursors. Use the **VALUE** button to toggle between magnitude and phase. A knob icon indicates that an item is active. Magnitude values are expressed in dB and phase values are expressed in deg.

(3) Freq2:
Magnitude:
Phase:

This section shows the frequency, magnitude and phase for the position of the right vertical bar cursor.

(4) Scroll Indicator

This item shows the position of the display area within the overall waveform. The area displayed on the screen is displayed inverted.

(5) Magnitude Display Area

This area displays the magnitudes for the frequency components.

(6) Phase Display Area

This area displays the phases for the frequency components.

(7) Left vertical bar cursor

The left cursor indicates the left starting point for editing. The active cursor will be brightly highlighted with dot lines.

(8) Right vertical bar cursor

Indicates the right end point for editing.

(9) Button Operations

This area shows how the front panel buttons operate in this menu.

CURSOR : Switch V Bar cursor

Pressing the **CURSOR** button toggles the active vertical bar cursor.

VALUE / ENTER : Change Magnitude

Pressing the **VALUE** or **ENTER** button puts the system into a mode in which the magnitude at the frequency of the active vertical bar cursor can be changed.

VALUE / ENTER : Change Phase

Pressing the **VALUE** or **ENTER** button puts the system into a mode in which the phase at the frequency of the active vertical bar cursor can be changed.

CURSOR : Move V Bar cursor

When **Draw...** has been selected, pressing the **CURSOR** button moves the active vertical bar cursor.

VALUE / ENTER: Move point cursor

When **Draw...** has been selected, pressing the **VALUE** or **ENTER** button moves the point cursor.

VALUE / ENTER: Switch point cursor dir

When **Draw...** has been selected, pressing **VALUE** or **ENTER** toggles the direction in which the point cursor moves from vertical to horizontal or vice-versa.

Editing in the Frequency Domain

Operation

Select **Operation** from the bottom menu to change the signal magnitude and phase in the frequency domain. The following items will appear in the side menu:

- Right peak
- Left peak
- Draw...

Editing Magnitude

Here is the procedure for editing the magnitudes.

Procedure

- [ ] **Step 1:** Select **Operation** from the bottom menu.
- [ ] **Step 2:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel to select the left/right vertical bar cursor. Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, move the active vertical bar cursor to the frequency to be edited.
- [ ] **Step 3:** Press the **VALUE** button on the front panel and select **Magnitude**. The knob icon is displayed on the **Magnitude** side.
- [ ] **Step 4:** Using the general purpose knob or the numeric keys, change the magnitude.
- [ ] **Step 5:** To change the magnitude for another frequency, press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel, and use the general purpose knob to move the active vertical bar cursor to the frequency to be edited. Next, repeat Steps 3 and 4.

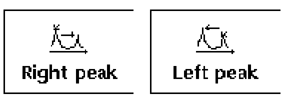
Editing Phase

Here is the procedure for editing the phase.

Procedure

- [ ] **Step 1:** Select **Operation** from the bottom menu.
- [ ] **Step 2:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel to select the left/right vertical bar cursor. Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, move the active vertical bar cursor to the frequency to be edited.
- [ ] **Step 3:** Press the **VALUE** button on the front panel and select **Phase**. The knob icon is displayed on the **Phase** side.
- [ ] **Step 4:** Using the general purpose knob or the numeric keys, change the phase.
- [ ] **Step 5:** To change the phase for another frequency, press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel, and use the general purpose knob to move the active vertical bar cursor to the frequency to be edited. Next, repeat Steps 3 and 4.

Searching for Peaks

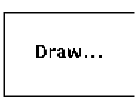


Select **Operation** from the bottom menu to display the **Right peak** and **Left peak** items on the side menu. These items detect the signal peaks.

Right peak — The active vertical bar cursor is moved to the peak in the signal to the right of the active vertical bar cursor. Each time this item is selected, the peak value moves to the right.

Left peak — The active vertical bar cursor is moved to the peak in the signal to the left of the active vertical bar cursor. Each time this item is selected, the peak value moves to the left.

Drawing Magnitude and Phase



Use **Draw...** to draw points between the left and right vertical bar cursors and then connect the points to create an arbitrary magnitude and phase. Immediately after you select the **Draw...** item, a point cursor will appear midway between the vertical bar cursors, in the center of the vertical axis. The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the **Draw...** item.

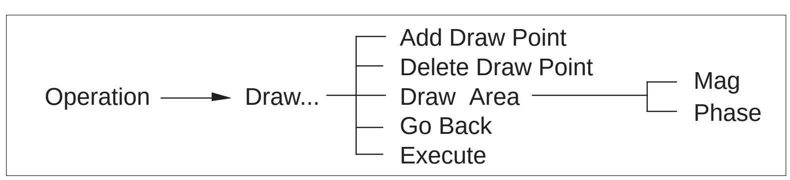


Figure 4A-160 shows an example of the screen with the **Draw...** item selected.

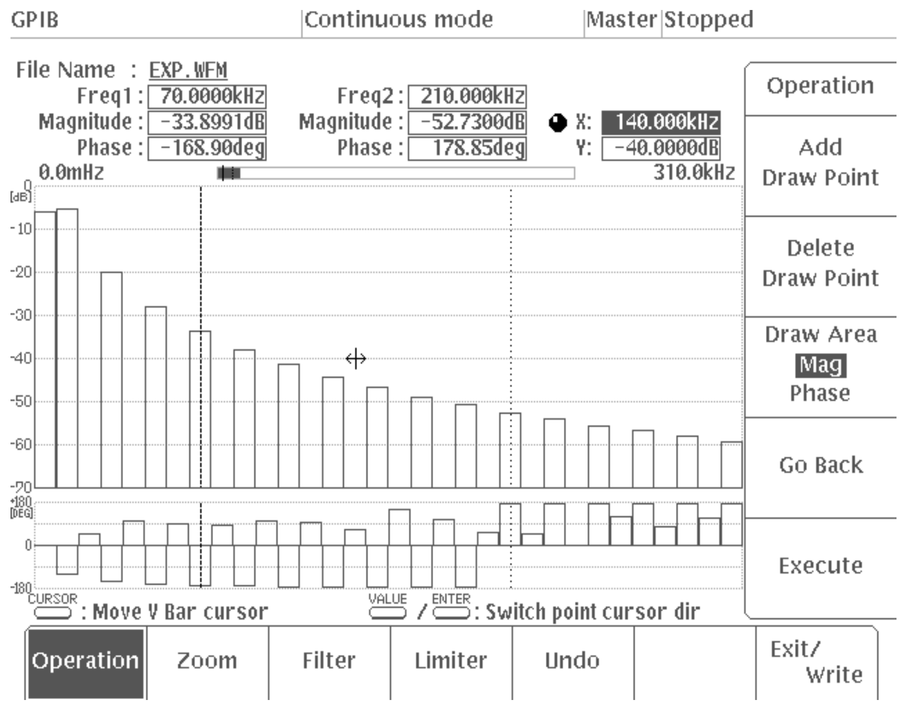


Figure 4A-160: Menu Displayed When Draw... is Selected

When you select **Draw...** from the side menu, the following items will appear in the sub-menu: **Add Draw Point**, **Delete Draw Point**, **Draw Area**, **Go Back** and **Execute.** Each of these items will be explained below in detail.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Operation** from the bottom menu, and then select **Draw...** from the side menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel. Using the general purpose knob, move the left and right vertical bar cursors to define the frequency domain for drawing the magnitude or phase. Use the **CURSOR** button to toggle between the left and right vertical bar cursors.

☐ **Step 3:** Press **Draw Area** in the sub-menu and select **Mag** (magnitude) or **Phase** (phase).

☐ **Step 4:** Press the **VALUE** button on the front panel. Using the general purpose knob, move the point cursor to the location of the new point. Pressing the **VALUE** button will toggle the direction of movement from horizontal (**X**) to vertical (**Y**) and vice-versa. The location of the point cursor is displayed in the upper right-hand corner of the screen in **X** (frequency) and **Y** (magnitude or phase) coordinates.

☐ **Step 5:** When you have placed the point cursor at the desired location, select **Add Draw Point** from the sub-menu to add a point at that location.

It is possible to add points outside the area defined by the vertical bar cursors. However, such points will be ignored when **Execute** is pressed.

NOTE

*It is not possible to draw more than one point at the same location on the horizontal axis. If you attempt to do this, a message will appear asking you to confirm that you want to change the level of the existing point. Press **O.K.** or **Cancel** in response to this message.*

☐ **Step 6:** Repeat Steps 4 and 5 to add several new points.

☐ **Step 7:** To delete a point that you have added with **Add Draw Point**, move the point cursor to that point and select **Delete Draw Point**. The point will be deleted.

If you press **Delete Draw Point** several times in succession, the points that you have added will be deleted in sequence starting with that nearest to the point cursor.

☐ **Step 8:** Select **Execute** from the sub-menu. The points that you have added will be connected to the magnitude or phase on the left and right vertical bar cursors.

Figure 4A-161 shows an example of a magnitude drawn between the vertical bar cursors.

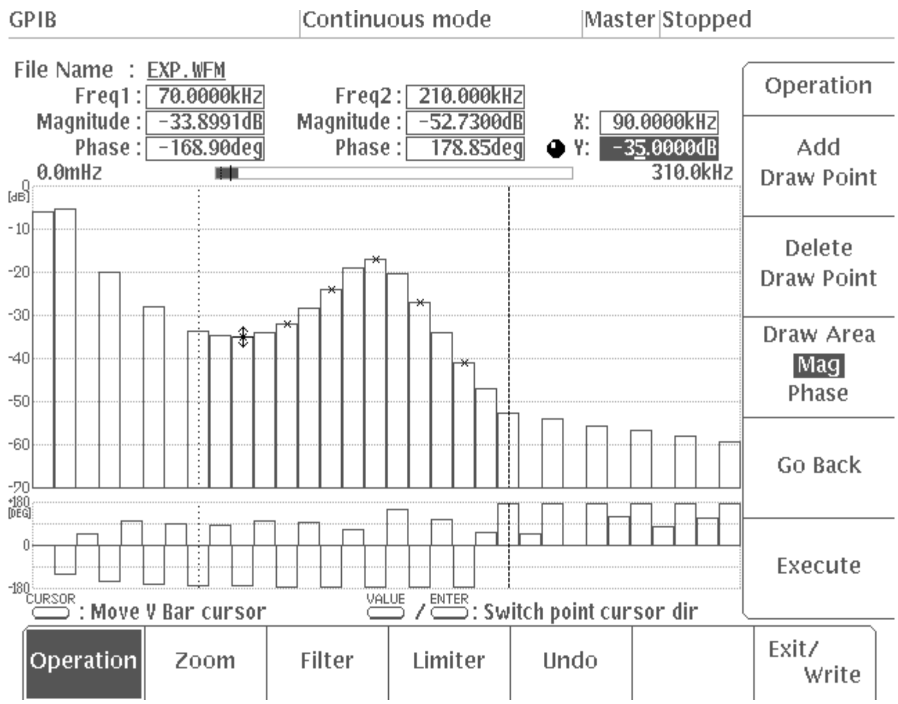


Figure 4A-161: Drawing a Magnitude

☐ **Step 9:** To cancel the execution of a draw operation, select **Undo** from the bottom menu. The screen will revert to the waveform before **Execute** was selected.

NOTE

When you quit and once again enter the waveform editor, the points you have drawn will disappear.

☐ **Step 10:** Select **Go Back** from the sub-menu. The system returns from the **Draw...** sub-menu to the previous side menu.

This concludes the draw process.

Magnifying a Signal

Zoom

Select **Zoom** from the bottom menu to display menu items that magnify the signal to **x1, x4, x8, x16**, or **x64** along the frequency axis. Figure 4A-162 shows the magnified signal display when **Zoom** is selected from the bottom menu with **x16** is selected.

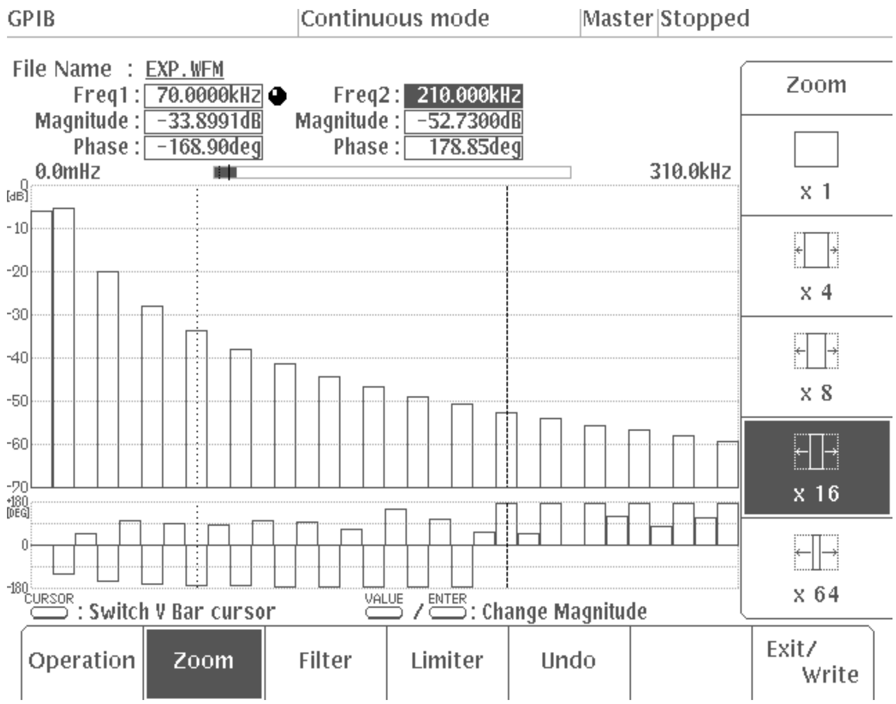


Figure 4A-162: Magnified Signal Display

In the scroll indicator at the top of the screen, the section of the signal being displayed on the screen is displayed inverted. You can scroll through the frequency domain outside the screen by turning the general purpose knob.

Selecting a Filter

Filter

When **Filter** is selected from the bottom menu, the following four frequency filters can be selected from the side menu.

- Low Frequency Pass Filter (**Low–Pass**) – This filter eliminates frequencies greater than the specified frequency.
- High Frequency Pass Filter (**High–Pass**) – This filter eliminates frequencies lower than the specified frequency.
- Band Pass Filter (**Band–Pass**) – This filter eliminates frequencies outside the specified band.
- Band Cut Filter (**Band–Elim**) – This filter eliminates frequencies in the specified band.

Figure 4A-163: Low Pass Filter

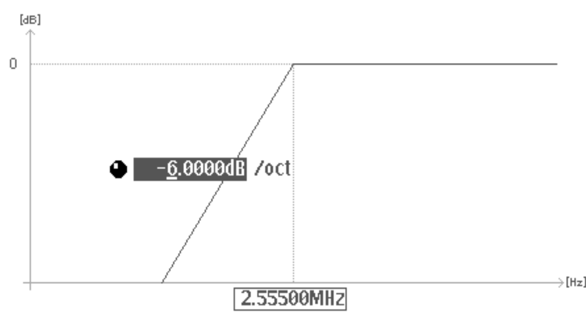


Figure 4A-164: High Pass Filter

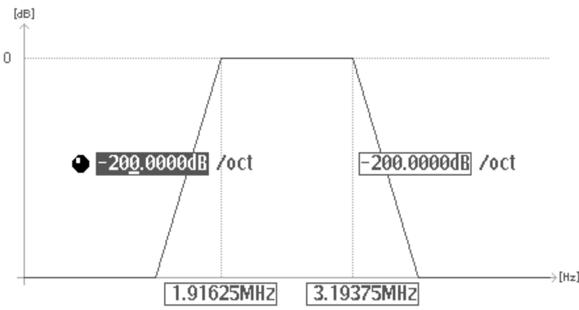


Figure 4A-165: Band Pass Filter

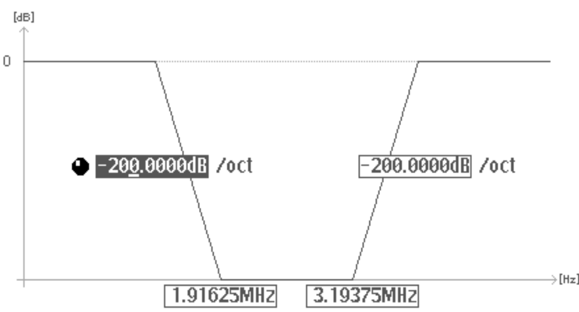


Figure 4A-166: Band Cut Filter

The procedure below applies the filters to the signal.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Filter** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Low–Pass**, **High–Pass**, **Band–Pass**, or **Band–Elim** from the side menu.

☐ **Step 3:** Press the **VALUE** button on the front panel and select the filter frequency field.

☐ **Step 4:** Using the general purpose knob or the numeric keys, set the filter frequency.

☐ **Step 5:** Press the **VALUE** button on the front panel to select the filter slope field.

☐ **Step 6:** Using the general purpose knob or the numeric keys, set the filter slope. Here octave (**oct**) indicates double the frequency.

For a band filter, set the frequency and slope for both ends of the band.

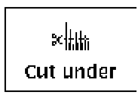
☐ **Step 7:** After setting the filter frequency and slope, select **Apply filter** from the side menu. The specified filter is applied to the signal.

Selecting a Limiter

Use **Limiter** to cut the frequency component below the limit level, to cut the even or odd components on the discrete frequency axis, or to shift the magnitude to the limit level. When **Limiter** is selected from the bottom menu, the following items will appear in the side menu.

- Cut under
- Delete Even
- Delete Odd
- Shift Mag

Cutting Extraneous Frequency Components



Here is the procedure for using the **Cut under** item to remove the extraneous frequency component.

Procedure

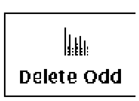
☐ **Step 1:** Select **Limiter** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel to select the left/right vertical bar cursor. Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, set the domain to remove the extraneous frequency component.

☐ **Step 3:** Press the **VALUE** button on the front panel. Using the general purpose knob or the numeric keys, set the limit level for the magnitude. The limit level is displayed at the top the screen.

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Cut under** from the side menu. The frequency component under the limit level is cut.

Deleting Even or Odd Components



Here is the procedure for using the **Delete Even** or **Delete Odd** item to delete the even component or odd component in the discrete frequency domain.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Limiter** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel to select the left/right vertical bar cursor. Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, set the domain to delete the even component or odd component.

☐ **Step 3:** Select **Delete Even** (even) or **Delete Odd** (odd) from the side menu. The even or odd component within the left and right vertical bar cursors is cut.

Figure 4A-167 shows the fundamental, even, and odd component.

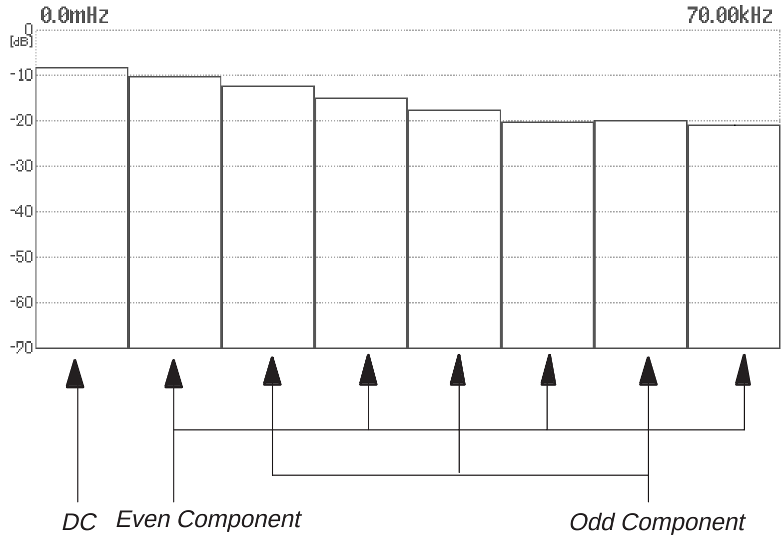
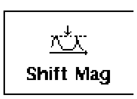


Figure 4A-167: Fundamental, Odd, and Even Components

Shifting Magnitudes



Here is the procedure for using the **Shift Mag** item to shift the magnitude to the limit level.

Procedure

- [ ] **Step 1:** Select **Limiter** from the bottom menu.
- [ ] **Step 2:** Press the **CURSOR** button on the front panel to select the left/right vertical bar cursor. Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, set the domain to be used when shifting the magnitude.
- [ ] **Step 3:** Press the **VALUE** button on the front panel. Using the general purpose knob or the numeric keys, set the limit level for the magnitude. The limit level is displayed at the top the screen.
- [ ] **Step 4:** Select **Shift Mag** from the side menu. The entire area within the left and right vertical bar cursors will shift so the signal with the maximum magnitude between the cursors becomes the limit level.

SETUP Menu

General Description

The **SETUP** menu is used to set a variety of output parameters used during actual output of the waveforms and sequence waveforms that have been created with the editors. The menu can display output parameter values and selected items in both text form and as a graphic (in other words, with items connected in the form of a circuit).

When the power to the instrument is turned on, the **SETUP** menu appears automatically. Also when the power is switched on, if you have select **from Disk** or **from NVRam** in the **Auto Load** item of the **LOAD**/**SAVE** menu, all the files on the disk or in the NVRam, whichever is selected, are loaded automatically into internal memory. If the waveform or sequence file selected with the **SETUP** menu was in internal memory the last time you switched off the power, then that file is selected.

The bottom menu consists of seven items: the six output parameters that you can set (**Clock**, **Waveform Sequence**, **CH1 Operation**, **Filter**, **Amplitude** and **Offset**) and the **Display** item which allows you to set the format for menu displays. To set these items, press the corresponding button in the bottom menu and use the general purpose knob or the numeric keys to set the desired value.

A waveform or sequence file that is created with the editor has the default output parameters set in it. When the output parameters are changed with the **SETUP** menu, the new settings are saved together with the waveform data in the file.

When the operating mode is **Autostep**, the output parameters cannot be changed at all. If the file is locked and the operating mode is any other mode, the output parameters can be changed, but the changes are not written to the waveform file. For further information on locking files, see ”Locking and Unlocking Files” item in the section on editors (Section 4A).

On instruments with Option 05 installed, the **Clock** setting can be used to turn clock sweep on and off and specify the type of sweep. You can set the type of sweep to linear, log or an arbitrary clock sweep created with the clock sweep editor.

This section will discuss the menus found on standard AWG2005 models. If Option 02 is installed on the instrument, there are two additional channels (CH3 and CH4), making a total of four.

SETUP Menu Structure

Figure 4B-1 shows the configuration of the **SETUP** menu.

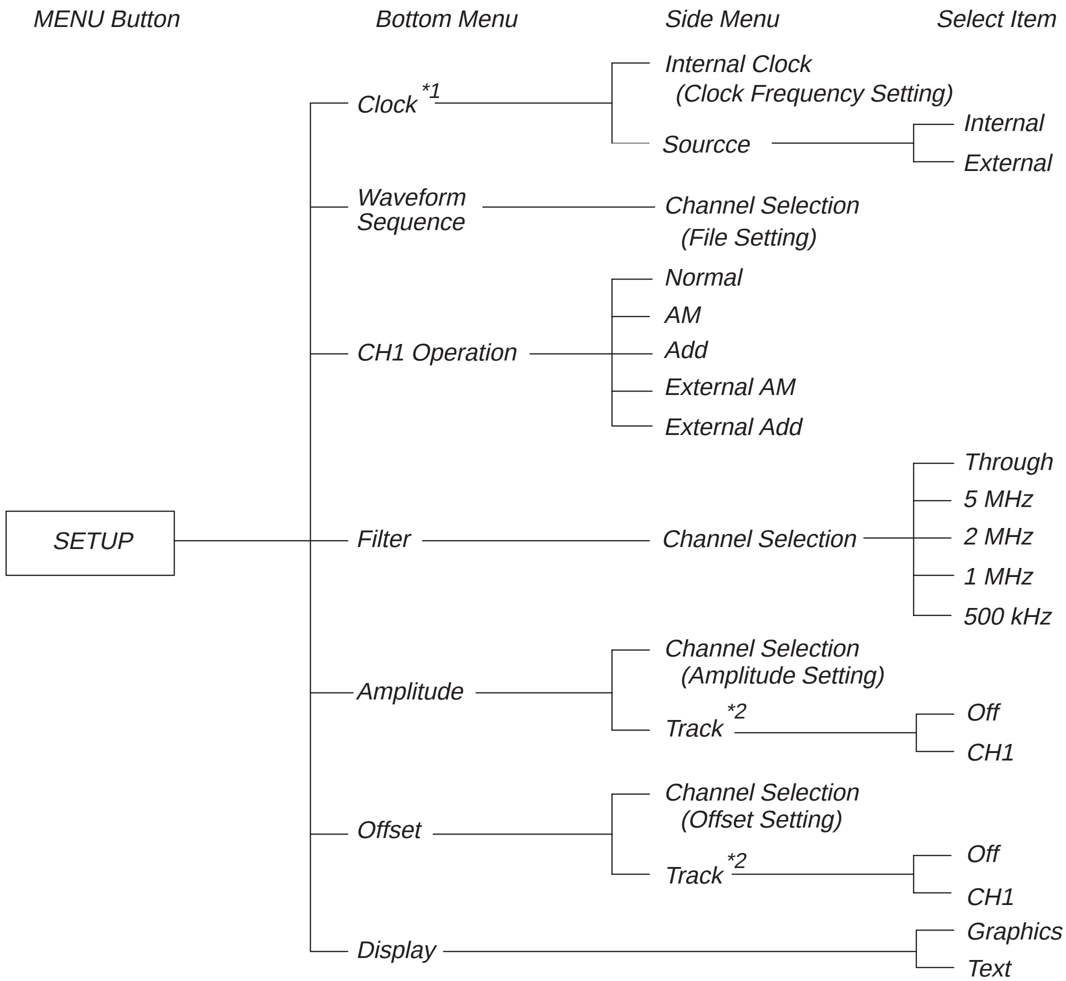


Figure 4B-1: SETUP Menu Structure

*1 For the **Clock** menu configuration on instruments with Option 05, see ”Setting the Clock Sweep.”

*2 Displayed when a channel other than CH1 has been selected.

Menu Functions

The following table shows the function of each menu item and the page to refer to for a more detailed explanation.

Table 4B-1: Menu Functions

Menu	Function	Page
Clock	Setting clock source and frequency	4B-9
Waveform Sequence	Selecting a waveform or sequence file	4B-7
CH1 Operation	CH1 waveform operation	4B-11
Filter	Setting tfilter	4B-16
Amplitude	Setting amplitude	4B-17
Offset	Setting offset	4B-17
Display	Selecting the display format for the SETUP menu	4B-5
Clock (Option 05)	Setting clock sweep	4B-19

SETUP Menu Display

Figure 4B-2 shows the graphic mode for **SETUP** menu display. A description for each callout follows.

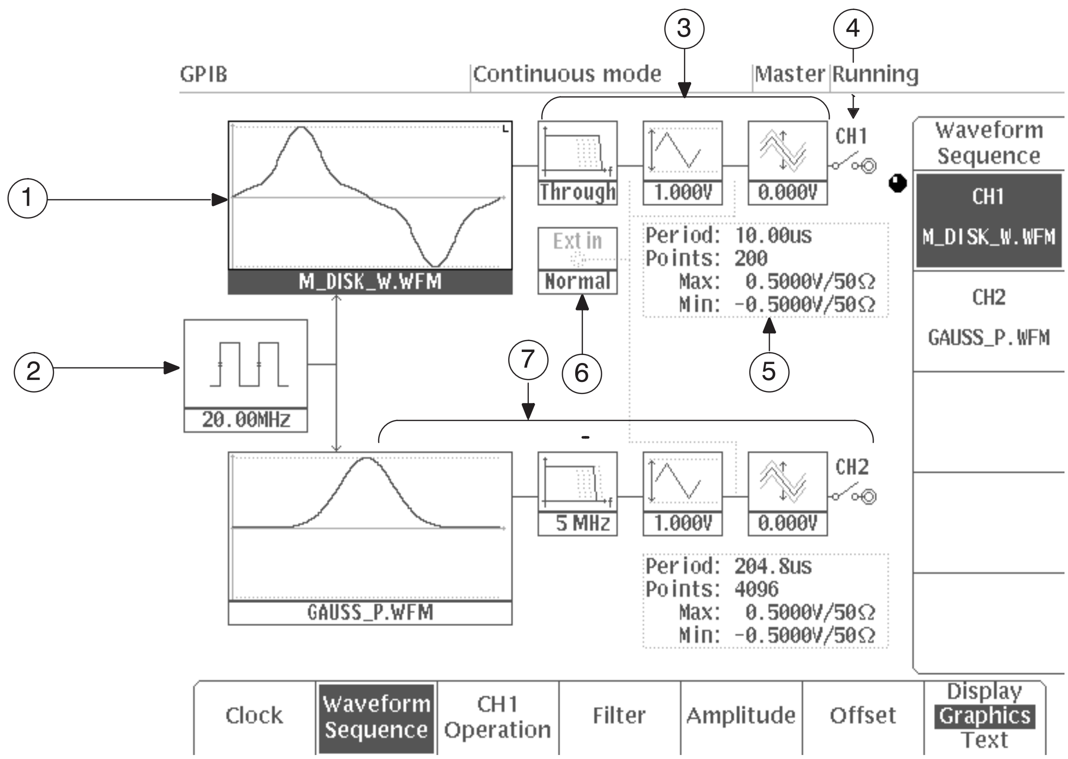


Figure 4B-2: SETUP Menu (Graphic Mode)

(1) Display Area for CH1 Waveform/Sequence Waveform

Shows the waveform or sequence file waveform indicated in the CH1 file input column. If the file is locked, an **L** is shown in the upper right-hand corner of this area.

(2) Clock Setting

Shows the clock source and the frequency for the internal clock. The clock settings are the same for all channels.

(3) CH1 Output Parameter Settings

Shows the filter applied to output, the amplitude of the output waveform and the offset setting. All of these values can be set independently for each channel.

(4) Channel Output On/Off

Shows whether channel output is on or off. To turn channel output on or off, use the channel On/Off button on the front panel.

(5) Output Parameter Status

The output status of the waveform or sequence waveform is shown as follows:

Period: Period
Points: Number of data points
Max: Upper voltage for full scale vertical axis when terminated with 50 Ω
Min: Lower voltage for full scale vertical axis when terminated with 50 Ω

The period is the number of data points in the waveform or sequence, multiplied by the clock frequency.

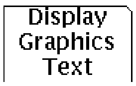
(6) CH1 Operation Setting

Shows the operation setting for the CH1 waveform.

(7) CH2 Output Parameters

Shows the CH2 output parameters (see CH1 output parameter display in (3) above).

Selecting the Display Format for the SETUP Menu



The **SETUP** menu can be displayed in either text or graphic form.

Graphics — This is the mode normally used. This format displays the output parameters connected in the form of a circuit. Selected parameters are indicated by a inverted display around them; these values may be changed. See Figure 4B-2.

Text — This mode shows the output parameters in text form for each channel. It is convenient for printing a hard copy of the settings. See Figure 4B-3.

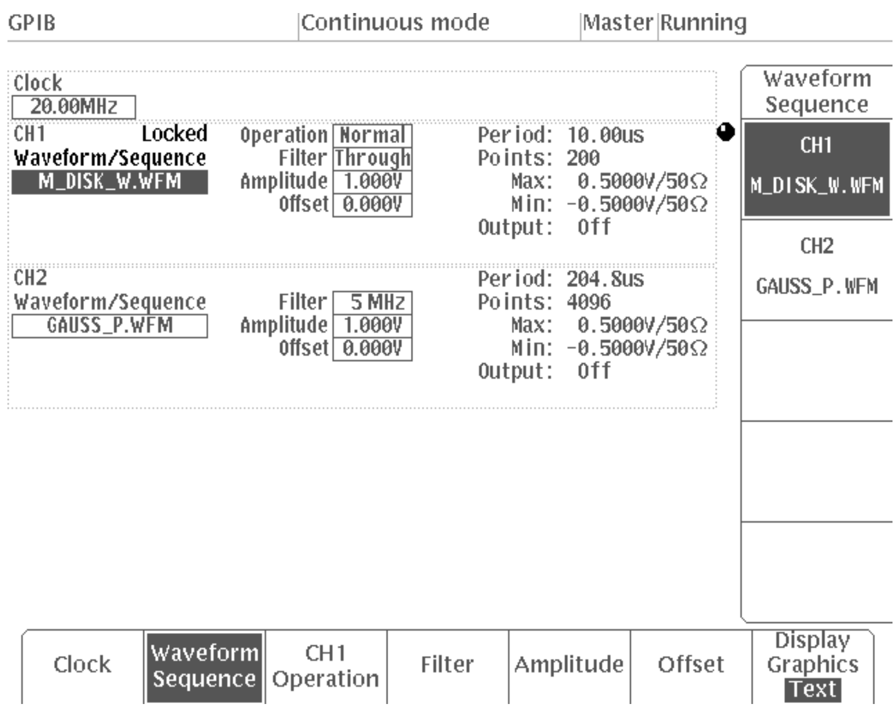


Figure 4B-3: SETUP Menu (Text Mode)

Selecting Output Parameter Fields

There are three ways to select a parameter to set.

(1) Press the bottom button for the item to be set. Then select the channel in the side menu and select the field to be set.

(2) Press the bottom button for the item to be set. Then press the bottom button again; each time the button is pressed, the CURSOR will move to a different channel. When you reach the desired setting field, set the appropriate value.

(3) Press the **CURSOR** key on the front panel and select the field. When the **CURSOR** key is pressed again, the cursor moves to the next setting field for that channel.

Numeric Input

Use the numeric keys or the general purpose knob to input a numeric into the **Clock**, **Amplitude**, and **Offset** item fields.

Procedure

- [ ] **Step 1:** Press the bottom button for the item to be set.
- [ ] **Step 2:** Use the numeric keys or general purpose knob to input the number for the parameter.

  When using the numeric keys, press the front panel **ENTER** key, **VALUE** key, or the appropriate unit key to enter the number. When this is done, the value will be confirmed and will appear in the icon on the screen.

  Each time the general purpose knob is turned, the numeric value is entered. The value in the icon will change accordingly.

Selecting a Waveform or Sequence File

Waveform Sequence

The first step in setting the waveform output parameters is to select the waveform or sequence file.

Each waveform or sequence file has output parameter settings attached to it. When a file is selected, the output parameters are also automatically changed to the settings for that file. A waveform or sequence file that has just been created with the editor has the default output parameters set in it.

Clock	**10.00 MHz** (can also be set using the editor)
Operation	**NORMAL**
Filter	**Through**
Amplitude	**1 V**
Offset	**0 V**

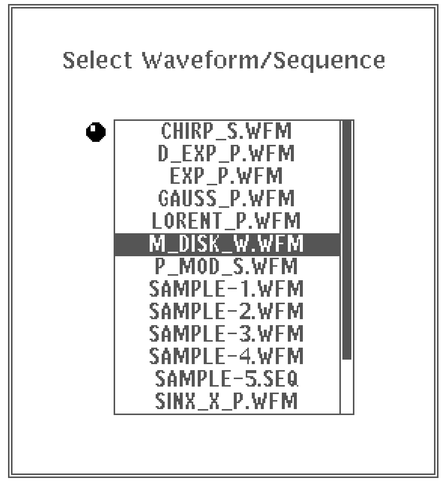
Procedure

To select a waveform or sequence file:

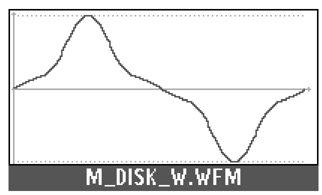
☐ **Step 1:** Select **Waveform Sequence** from the bottom menu. The waveform display area will be highlighted on the screen.

☐ **Step 2:** Select the channel for setting in the side menu.

☐ **Step 3:** Turn the general purpose knob to open the file list. Use the general purpose knob to select the desired waveform or sequence file from the list.



☐ **Step 4:** After the file has been selected, select **O.K.** in the sub-menu. The selected file will be confirmed and the waveform and file name will appear in the icon, as shown in the figure below.



When the file is confirmed, the output parameters for that file will be set automatically.

When a sequence waveform is output, the output parameters for that sequence file are used.

NOTE

When a sequence file is selected, if the waveform or sequence file making up the sequence is not in internal memory, the waveform display area is blank and the output switch is off. In this case, you must load the waveform or sequence file making up the sequence into internal memory.

Setting Clock Source and Frequency

The **Clock** item is used to set the clock source and the clock frequency. The clock source can be set to either internal or external. If the clock source is set to **External**, there is no need to set the frequency.

The clock period is the time between the data points for the waveform created. Therefore, the product of that clock period and the number of waveform points is the period for that waveform or sequence waveform. For example, suppose the clock frequency is 1 MHz (for a period of 1 μsec). If the waveform has 100 points, the period for the entire waveform is 100 μsec.

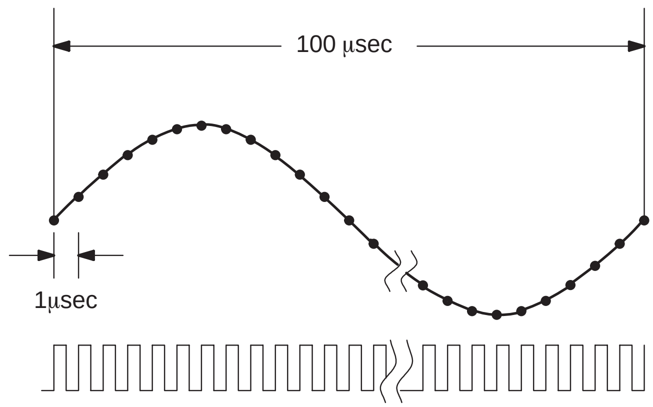


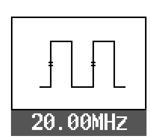
Figure 4B-4: Clock and Waveform Points

Procedure

To set **Clock**, perform these steps:

To set the Source to Internal and then set the clock frequency:

- [ ] **Step 1:** Select **Clock** from the bottom menu.
- [ ] **Step 2:** Press the **Source** button in the side menu and set it to **Internal**. The clock icon shown below will be displayed on the screen.



The clock frequency setting will be applied to all channels. However, the setting will only be saved in the CH1 file.

NOTE

*When **Configure** in the **MODE** menu is set to **Slave**, the clock source will be set to **External** and it will be impossible to set the internal clock without changing the **Configure** setting to **Master**.*

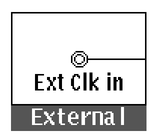
☐ **Step 3:** Use the numeric keys or general purpose knob to set the internal clock frequency with the **Internal Clock** item.

The clock frequency can be set in four digits between 10.00 MHz and 20.00 MHz.

When the CH1 waveform has been changed with the **Waveform Sequence** item, the clock frequency will be replaced with the one set for the new CH1 waveform or sequence file.

To set the Source to External:

☐ **Step 4:** Press the **Source** button in the side menu and select **External**. The clock icon shown below will be displayed on the screen.



The clock for each channel is controlled by the external clock input from the **CLOCK IN** connector on the rear panel.

CH1 Waveform Operations

CH1 Operation

This command is used to operate (a) the CH1 waveform and the waveform from CH2, or (b) the CH1 waveform and a waveform input from an external source, and then to output the result from the CH1 output connector. Two types of operation – addition (**Add**) or multiplication (**AM**) – can be performed for the CH1 waveform and CH2 waveform or external signal.

Procedure

To set the desired operation process for the CH1 waveform:

☐ **Step 1:** Select **CH1 Operation** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Select the desired process from the side menu. The following choices are available:

- **Normal**
- **AM**
- **Add**
- **External AM**
- **External Add**

The following is a more detailed description of each process:

- **Normal** — Waveforms are output separately from each channel.
- **AM** — CH1 output is the CH1 waveform with the amplitude modulated (multiplied) by the waveform output from CH2. See Figure 4B-5.

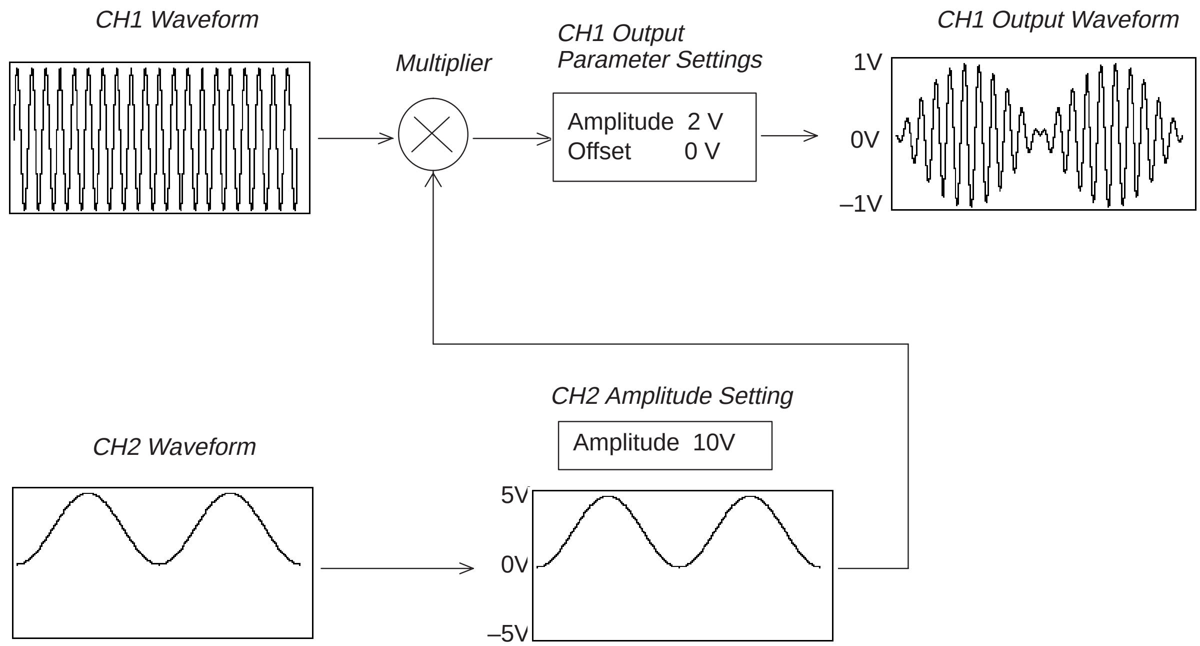


Figure 4B-5: Multiplying CH1 Waveform by CH2 Waveform

A CH2 signal of 5 V (full scale) gives 100% modulation. When the CH2 signal is minus, the CH1 signal is inverted.

NOTE

When multiplication results in an output that exceeds 10 Vp-p, the signal may be distorted.

- **Add** — The CH1 waveform is added to the waveform output from CH2. See Figure 4B-6.

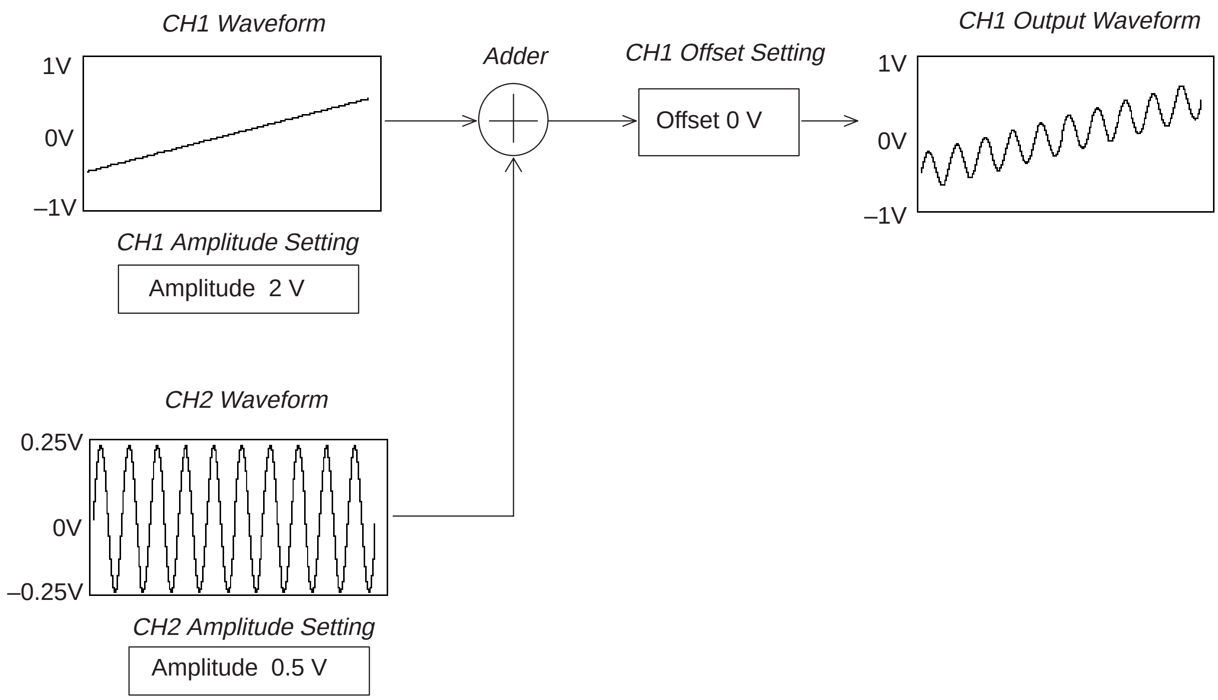


Figure 4B-6: Adding CH1 Waveform and CH2 Waveform

NOTE

When addition results in an output that exceeds 10 Vp-p, the signal may be distorted.

- **External AM** — The CH1 waveform output is amplitude modulated by the external signal input from the rear panel **CH1 AM IN** connector. See Figure 4B-7.

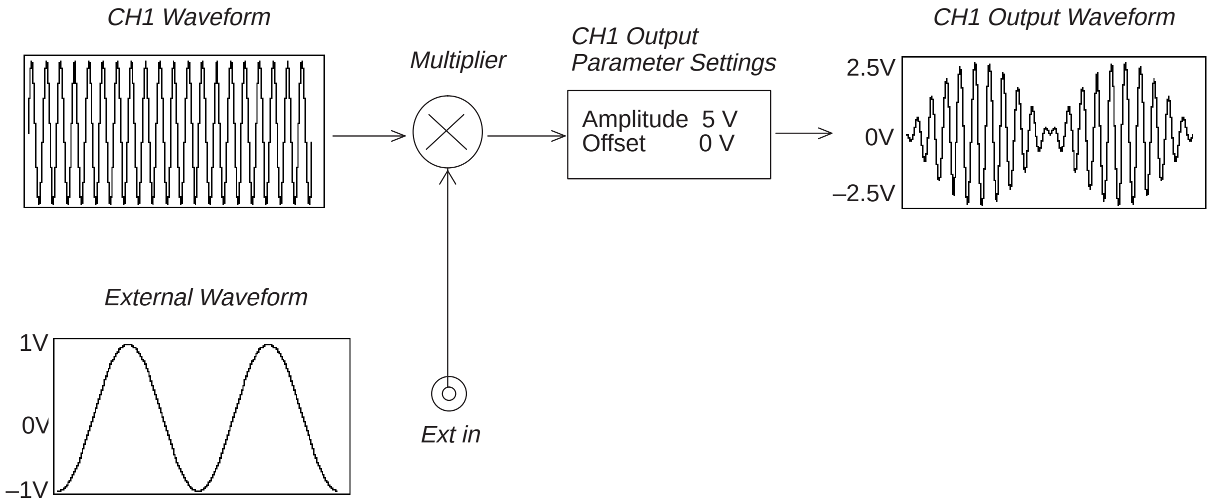


Figure 4B-7: Multiplying CH1 Waveform by an External Waveform

Table 4B-2 shows the amplitudes for the output signals relative to the external modulation signals.

Table 4B-2: Output Signal Amplitude Relative to External Modulation Signal

External Modulation Signal	Output Signal
0V	50% of set value
1V	100% of set value
–1V	0%

100% amplitude modulation is possible with ±1 V input.

NOTE

When the external modulation signal is overmodulated 1 V or more, the output will exceed 10 Vp-p and the signal may be distorted.

THe maximum signal that can be input to the **CH1 AM** IN connector is ±5 V: the input impedance is 10 kΩ.

- **External Add** — The CH1 waveform output is what the CH1 signal is added to the external signal input from the rear panel **CH1 ADD IN** connector. See Figure 4B-8.

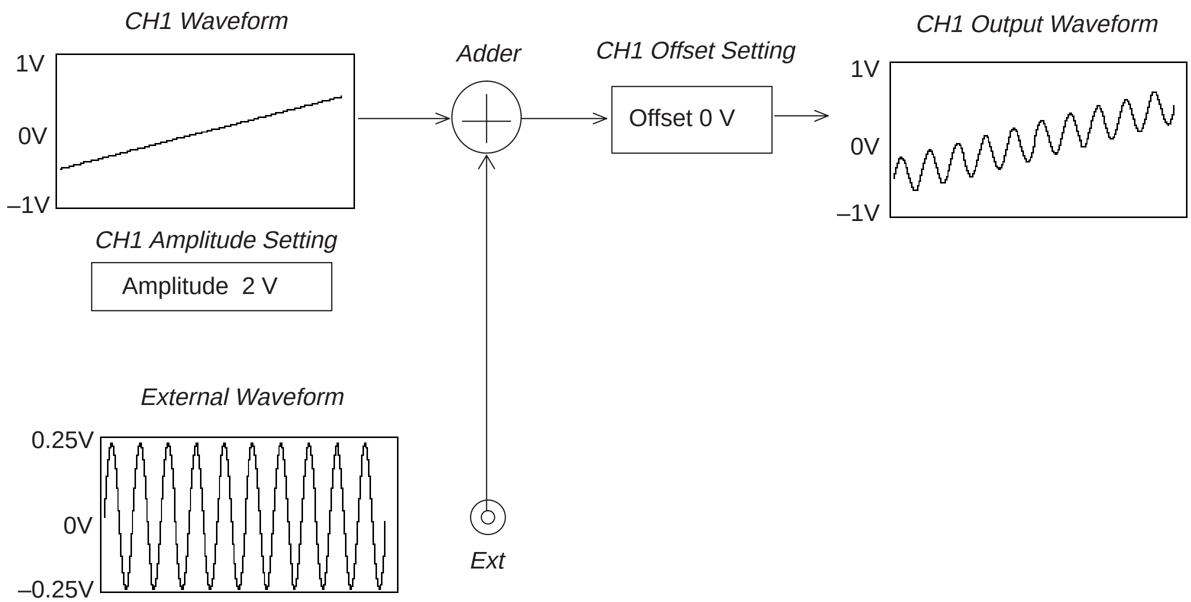


Figure 4B-8: Adding CH1 Waveform and External Waveform

NOTE

When addition results in an output that exceeds 10 Vp-p, the signal may be distorted.

The maximum signal that can be input to the **CH1 ADD IN** connector is ±5 V; the input impedance is 50 Ω.

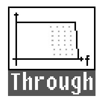
Setting Filter

The filters selections are: **5**, **2**, **1 MHz**, **500 kHz** and **Through** (no filter).

Procedure

To set **Filter**, perform these steps:

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Filter** from the bottom menu. The filter icon will be highlighted on the screen.



☐ **Step 2:** Select the channel from the side menu.

☐ **Step 3:** Turn the general purpose knob to select the desired filter.

Setting Amplitude and Offset

Use **Amplitude** and **Offset** to set the output amplitude and offset for the vertical axis 12-bit full scale voltage. These values are terminated with 50Ω.

Figure 4B-9 shows the display when the amplitude is set to 5 V and the offset is set to 1 V.

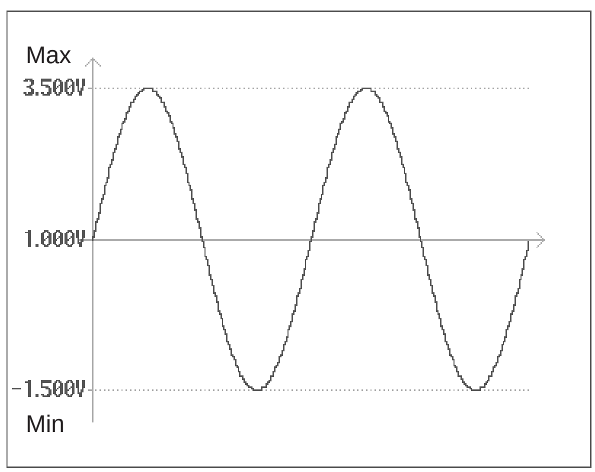


Figure 4B-9: Amplitude and Offset Setting

Setting the amplitude and offset determines **Max** and **Min** values shown to the left of the waveform. In the example shown in Figure 4B-9, the **Max** and **Min** values are as follows:

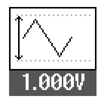
Max : 3.5000V/50Ω
Min : −1.5000V/50Ω

Setting Amplitude

Amplitude

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Amplitude** from the bottom menu. The amplitude icon will be highlighted on the screen.



☐ **Step 2:** Select the channel from the side menu.

☐ **Step 3:** Use the numeric keys or the general purpose knob to set the amplitude. The output amplitude can be set to any value between 0.05 V and 10 V in minimum increments of 1 mV.

NOTE

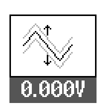
The amplitude set gives the top and bottom voltage values for the waveform editor full-scale, not the peak-to-peak value of the wave-form.

Setting Offset

Offset

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Offset** from the bottom menu. The offset icon will be highlighted on the screen.



☐ **Step 2:** Select the channel from the side menu.

☐ **Step 3:** Use the numeric keys or the general purpose knob to set the desired offset. The offset may be set to any value between −5 V and +5 V in minimum increments of 5 mV.

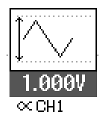
Linking the CH1 Waveform and Amplitude or Offset

It is possible to link the amplitude and offset of CH1 with the corresponding values for CH2 (and CH3 and Ch4 when Option 02 is installed). When such linkages are set, changes to CH1 values will also be applied to the other channel(s).

Procedure

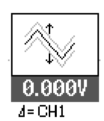
Use the following procedure to link CH2 amplitude to CH1 amplitude. In such cases, CH1 and CH2 have their own files one for each.

- [ ] **Step 1:** Select **Amplitude** from the bottom menu.
- [ ] **Step 2:** Select **CH2** from the side menu.
- [ ] **Step 3:** Press the **Track** key in the side menu and select **CH1**. The linkage setting will appear below the CH2 amplitude icon.



- [ ] **Step 4:** Select **CH1** from the side menu.
- [ ] **Step 5:** Turn the general purpose knob to change the CH1 amplitude. Check to make sure that the CH2 amplitude has changed accordingly.

The same procedure can be used to link the offset values for other channels to the CH1 waveform. In such cases, the linkage setting will be displayed below the CH2 offset icon.



Setting Clock Sweep (Option 05)

On instruments with Option 05 installed, you can set the clock sweep to linear, log or an arbitrary clock sweep created with the clock sweep editor. The clock resolution is 7-digit. Figure 4B-10 shows **Clock** in the **SETUP** menu with **Sweep** (in the side menu) set to **On**.

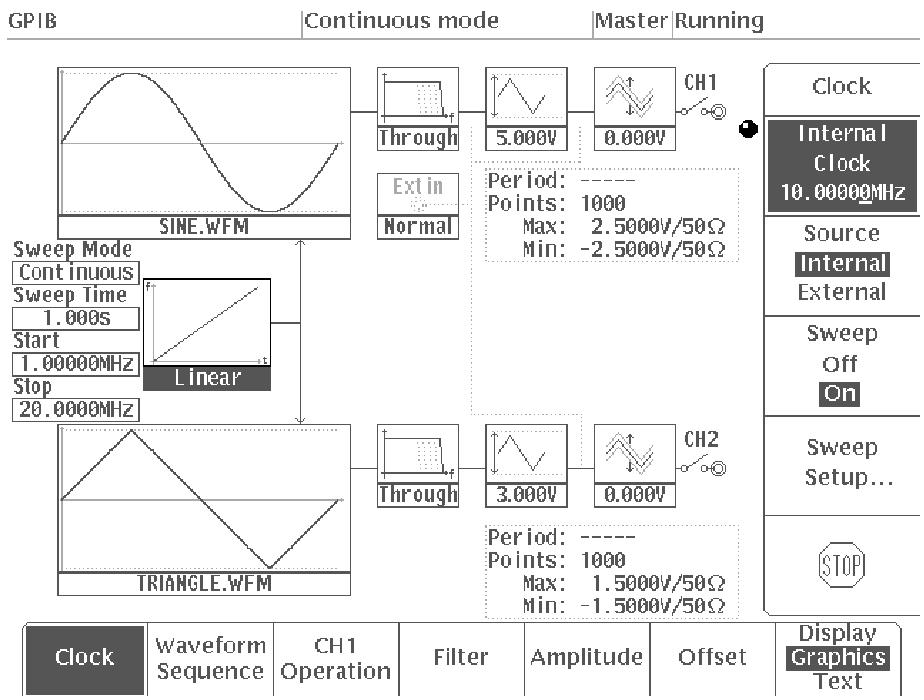


Figure 4B-10: Clock Menu Item with Sweep Set to On

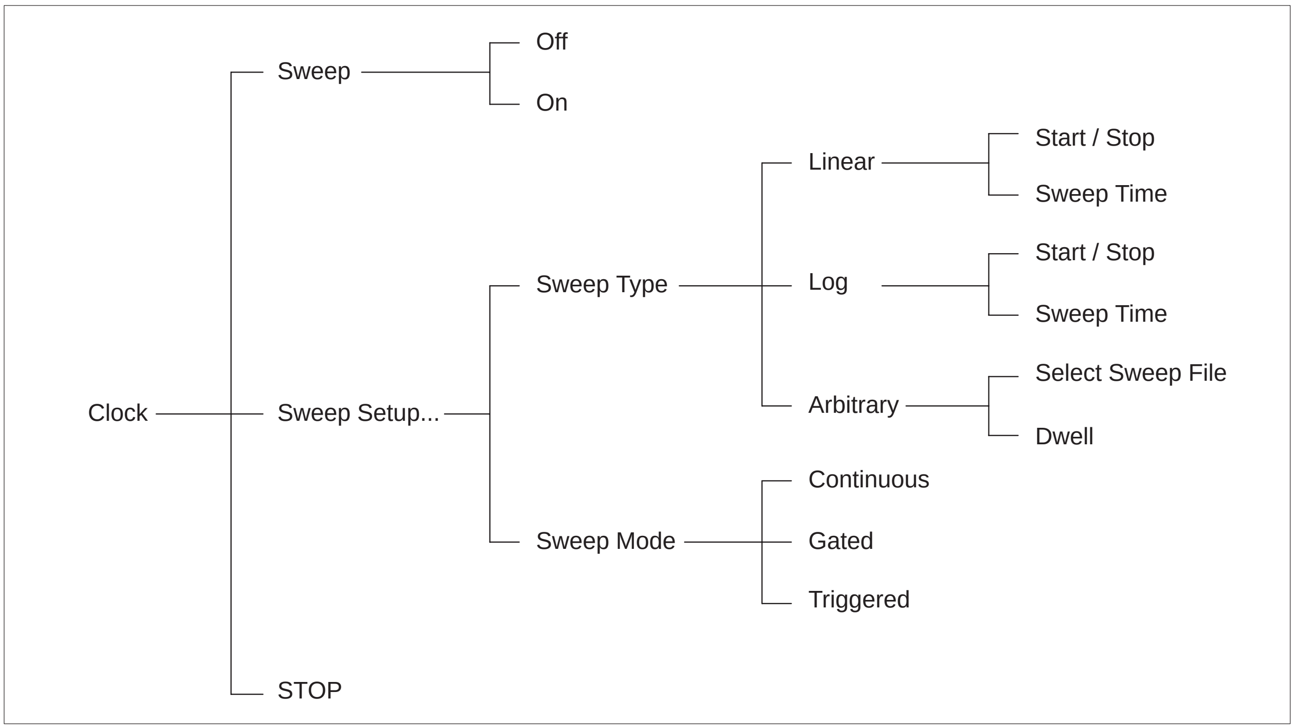
The clock sweep uses the instrument's built-in clock oscillator. Consequently, to set **Sweep** to **On**, **Configure** in the **MODE** menu must be set to **Master** and **Clock Source** in the **SETUP** menu must be set to **Internal**. **Sweep** cannot be set to **On** when the operating mode in the **MODE** menu is set to **Autostep**.

When **Sweep** is changed from **Off** to **On**, the operating mode will change to **Cont** no matter which mode has been set in the **MODE** menu (with the exception of **Autostep**). An error will result if, prior to setting **Sweep** to **On**, **Clock Source** in the **SETUP** menu is set to **External** or **Configure** in the **MODE** menu is set to **Slave**.

Sweep will change from **On** to **Off** in the following situations:

- If **Configure** in the **MODE** menu is changed from **Master** to **Slave**
- If **Clock Source** in the **SETUP** menu is changed from **Internal** to **External**
- If the operating mode in the **MODE** menu is changed from **Cont** to a mode other than **Cont**

The following diagram shows the configuration of the **Clock** menu when Option 05 is installed:



Setting the Sweep Type

Sweep Setup...

From the side menu displayed in Figure 4B-10, select **Sweep Setup...** The menu shown in Figure 4B-11 will appear.

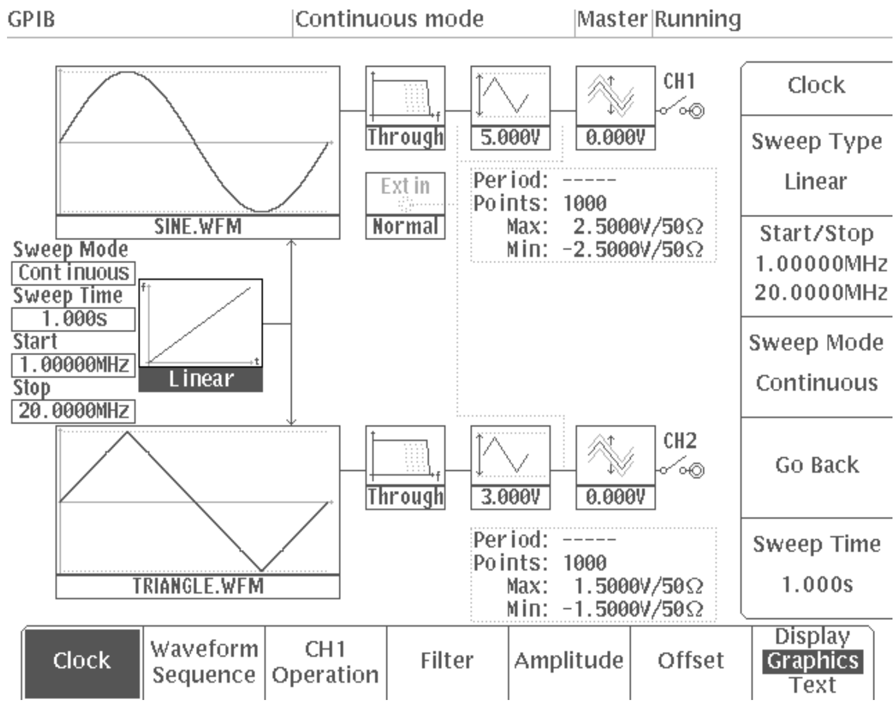


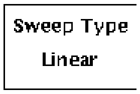
Figure 4B-11: Menu Displayed When Sweep Setup... is Selected

Sweep Type

With **Sweep Type**, you can select three types of sweep waveform:

- **Linear** — Used to set a clock sweep in which the frequency changes linearly
- **Log** — Used to set a clock sweep in which the frequency changes logarithmically
- **Arbitrary** — Used to set a file created with the clock sweep editor. For further information on the clock sweep editor, see Section 4A.

Setting the Sweep Type to Linear or Log



When the clock sweep is set to **Linear** or **Log**, the sweep start and stop frequencies and the sweep time can be set. The actual clock sweep waveform frequency will change in steps. Figure 4B-12 shows a **Linear** clock sweep waveform. The vertical axis indicates the frequency and the horizontal axis indicates time.

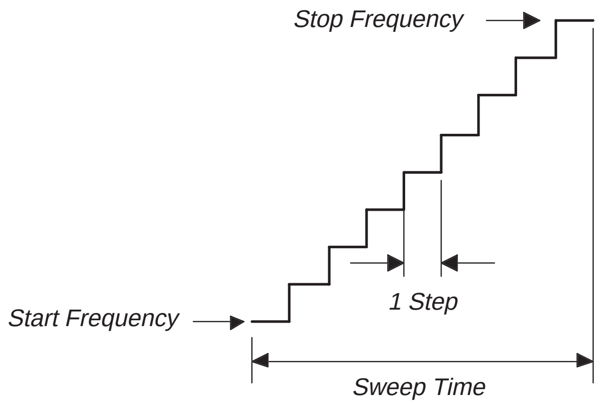


Figure 4B-12: Linear Clock Sweep Waveform

With a **Linear** or **Log** clock sweep, the number of steps is fixed at 1000. The sweep time refers to the time required for a single period from the start of the sweep until the end of the sweep.

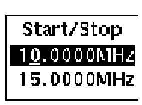
Procedure

Use the following procedure to set the clock sweep to **Linear**. The same procedure is used to set the clock sweep to **Log**.

First, select the sweep type:

☐ **Step 1:** Press **Sweep Type** in the sub-menu and select **Linear**.

Next select the start and stop frequencies for the **Linear** clock sweep. You can set these values anywhere between 0.03 Hz and 20 MHz.

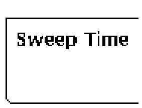


☐ **Step 2:** Press **Start**/**Stop** in the sub-menu and select the start frequency (displayed on the upper side).

☐ **Step 3:** Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, set the start frequency.

☐ **Step 4:** Using the same procedure, set the stop frequency.

Next set the sweep time. This value (**Sweep Time**) can be set to any value between 1 ms and 65.535 s.



☐ **Step 5:** Select **Sweep Time** from the sub-menu.

☐ **Step 6:** Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, set the value for sweep time.

Even if the sweep type is changed from **Linear** to **Log**, the values that have been set for start/stop frequency (**Start**/**Stop**) and sweep time (**Sweep Time**) will not change.

Figure 4B-13 shows an example of the screen for linear and log clock sweep when the start and stop frequencies have been set to 10MHz and 15MHz, respectively, and the sweep time has been set to 5s.

Linear Clock Sweep *Log Clock Sweep*

Figure 4B-13: Sample Linear and Log Clock Sweep Settings

Setting Sweep Type to Arbitrary

Sweep Type
Arbitrary

When the clock sweep is set to **Arbitrary**, a file created with the clock sweep editor can be set. Such files are created by grouping frequency data and hold bits. The file also includes a value for dwell time; this value can be changed in the **SETUP** menu. Changes to this value are automatically written to the clock sweep file.

Figure 4B-14 shows an arbitrary clock sweep waveform. The vertical axis indicates the frequency and the horizontal axis indicates time.

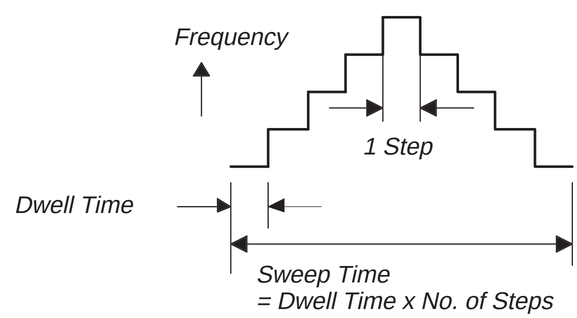


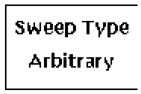
Figure 4B-14: Arbitrary Clock Sweep Waveform

The number of steps for an arbitrary clock sweep waveform is set with the editor to a value between 1 and 8192.

Procedure

Use the following procedure to set the arbitrary clock sweep.

First, select the sweep type:



☐ **Step 1:** Press **Sweep Type** in the sub-menu and select **Arbitrary**.

Next, select the arbitrary clock sweep file.

☐ **Step 2:** Choose **Select Sweep File** from the sub-menu. A list of files created with the clock sweep editor will appear.

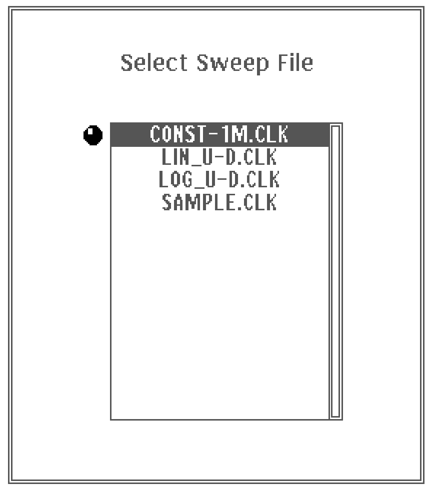
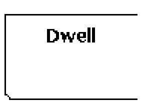


Figure 4B-15: Clock Sweep File List

☐ **Step 3:** Using the general purpose knob, select the file.

Next set the dwell time (**Dwell**). The dwell time specifies how long a single frequency is output. This value can be set to any value between 1 μs and 65.535 ms.



☐ **Step 4:** Select **Dwell** from the sub-menu.

☐ **Step 5:** Using the numeric keys or the general purpose knob, set the value for dwell time.

Figure 4B-16 shows an example of the screen when the dwell time for an arbitrary clock sweep has been set to 1 ms.

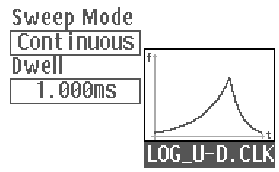


Figure 4B-16: Sample Arbitrary Clock Sweep Setting

Setting the Sweep Mode

Sweep Mode

When **Sweep** is set to **On**, the mode will change to **Cont** no matter which operating mode has been set in the **MODE** menu (with the exception of **Autostep**). **Sweep** cannot be set to **On** when the mode is set to **Autostep**.

The trigger and gate signals used in sweep mode are the same as those used in the **MODE** menu. The external trigger and gate signals are input from the **TRIGGER INPUT** connector on the front panel. The internal trigger and gate signals are generated by pressing the **MANUAL** button on the front panel.

Any one of the following sweep modes can be selected with **Sweep Mode** in the sub-menu. Use the general purpose knob or press the **Sweep Mode** button to select the desired mode.

Sweep Mode
Continuous

Continuous

In this mode, the sweep is output continuously. When the end of the sweep data is reached, the sweep repeats from the beginning.

Sweep Mode
Gated

Gated

In this mode, the sweep progresses as long as the gate signal is valid. When the gate signal becomes invalid, the frequency at the point the signal became invalid is maintained. Only when the mode has been changed from another mode to this mode or when **STOP** has been selected to return to the beginning of the sweep is the instrument placed in standby status with waveform output stopped. When the end of the sweep data is reached, the sweep repeats from the beginning.

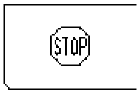
Sweep Mode
Triggered

Triggered

In this mode, the sweep progresses until the step at which the hold bit has been set, at which point the sweep is interrupted. During the interruption, the oscillation frequency is maintained at the level for the step immediately preceding the hold bit. The sweep is resumed when a trigger signal is received. When **Sweep Type** is set to **Linear** or **Log**, the hold bit is set to the first step. When **Sweep Type** is set to **Arbitrary**, the hold bit can be set to an arbitrary step with the clock sweep editor.

When the sweep mode is set to **Gated** or **Triggered**, the polarity and level of the external trigger (gate) signal can be set in the **MODE** menu. See ”Setting Trigger Parameters for an External Trigger” in Section 4C ”MODE Menu.”

Stopping the Sweep



When the sweep mode is set to **Gated** or **Triggered**, selecting **STOP** in the side menu under **Clock** while the clock sweep is in progress will cause the sweep to stop and return to the beginning.

MODE Menu

General Description

Press the **MODE** button in the **MENU** column to display the **MODE** menu. The **MODE** menu is used to set the operating mode of the waveform output with the conditions set in the **SETUP** menu.

This menu enables you to perform the following functions:

- Setting waveform or sequence waveform output trigger mode
- Waveform Advance and Autostep functions that display the waveform sequence with the trigger
- Specifying whether the AWG2005 will be used as the master or slave instrument (when several AWG2005 instruments are connected in parallel)

The trigger or gate signal can be generated with external signals from the **TRIGGER INPUT** connector or by pressing the front panel **MANUAL** button.

When this instrument receives the trigger or gate signal, the ”**Waiting for Trigger**” display in the status area of the CRT display changes to ”**Running**” and the waveform or sequence is output. When output stops, the status area display returns to the original ”**Waiting for Trigger**”.

The screen displays a contents list for each channel. This list shows the waveform/sequence file selected with the **SETUP** menu and the contents of the file. The display is almost the same for all operating modes.

MODE Menu Structure

Figure 4C-1 shows the configuration of the **MODE** menu.

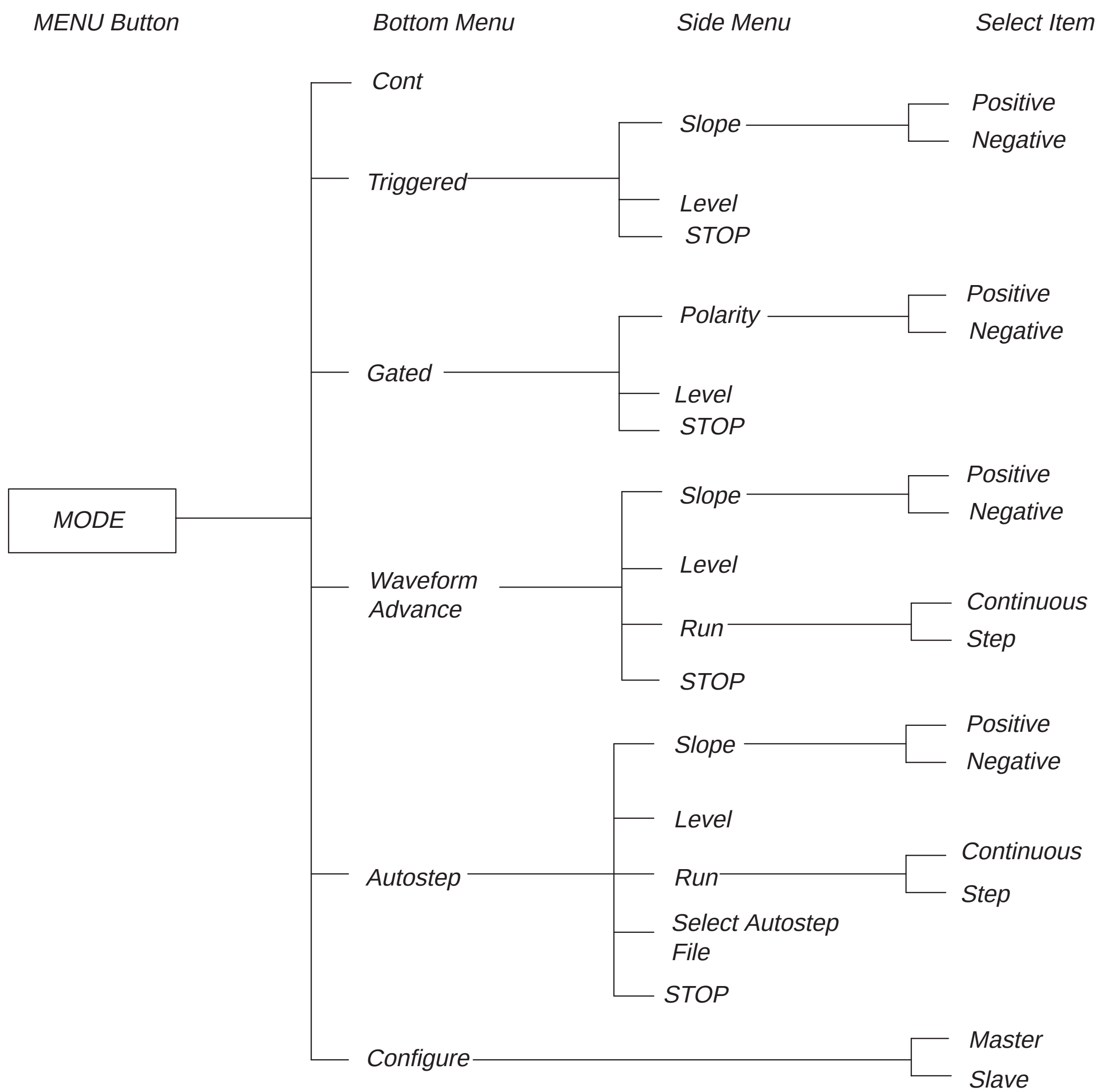


Figure 4C-1: MODE Menu Structure

Menu Functions

The following table describes the function of each of the menu items and gives the number of the page on which you can find a more detailed explanation of that item.

Table 4C-1: Menu Functions

Menu	Function	Page
Cont	Setting the operating mode	4C-6
Triggered		4C-6
Gated		4C-7
Waveform Advance		4C-8
Autostep		4C-10
Slope	Setting trigger parameters for an external trigger (gate)	4C-13
Polarity		4C-13
Level		4C-13
Run	Waveform output conditions	4C-8, 4C-10
Select Autostep File	Selecting autostep files	4C-12
STOP	Stopping waveform output	4C-5
Configure	Designating the system as master or slave	4C-14

MODE Menu Display

Figure 4C-2 shows the general display for the **MODE** menu.

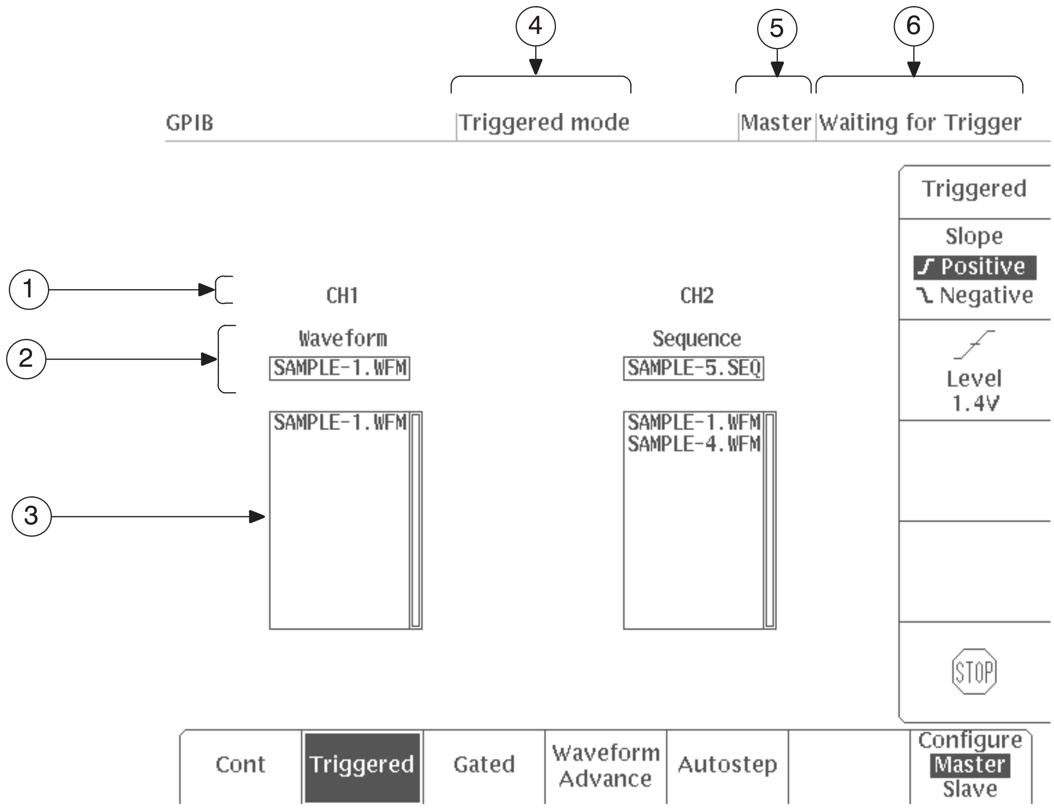


Figure 4C-2: MODE Menu CRT Display

(1) Channel Display

Shows the channel for the waveform/sequence file names and lists.

(2) Waveform/Sequence

The name of the waveform or sequence file being output is shown for each channel. This waveform or sequence file is selected with the **SETUP** menu **Waveform Sequence** item. For Autostep mode, the name of the waveform or sequence file for the current output step of the steps programmed with the autostep editor is shown for each channel.

(3) List

The contents of the waveform or sequence files described in (2), above, are displayed for each channel. In **Waveform Advance** mode, the name of the file being output is displayed in the list inverted.

(4) Operating Mode Status

The operating mode set with the **MODE** menu is displayed.

There are five operating modes: **Cont**, **Triggered**, **Gated**, **Waveform Advance** and **Autostep**.

(5) System Status

When several AWG2005 instruments are connected in parallel, each one must be designated as either a master or slave instrument. The designation (**Master** or **Slave**) is shown in this area.

(6) Trigger Status

One of the following three trigger statuses is displayed in this column.

Stopped

Displayed when no waveform or sequence file has been defined with the **SETUP** menu.

Waiting for Trigger

Displayed when the waveform or sequence file has been defined with the **SETUP** menu and the system is waiting for the trigger or gate signal.

Running

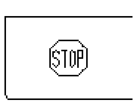
Displayed when the trigger or gate signal is generated and the waveform is output.

Setting the Operating Mode

Select the operating (output) mode – either: **Cont**, **Triggered**, **Gated** trigger mode, **Waveform Advance** mode, or **Autostep** mode – by pressing the corresponding button in the bottom menu.

NOTE

*The operating mode set with the **MODE** menu has no effect on operating mode for function waveform generation (**FG**) mode.*



In the operating mode excluding **Cont**, if the side menu **STOP** item is selected during waveform output, the output is stopped and the system returns to the start of the waveform or sequence.

The following pages provide descriptions of each operating mode.

Cont Mode

As soon as **Cont** mode is selected, continuous output of the specified waveform or sequence waveform begins. No side menu is displayed while **Cont** is selected.

Triggered Mode

In **Triggered** mode, the specified waveform or sequence waveform is output once for each trigger received. The trigger signal depends on the trigger source. It can be generated from the external trigger signal applied to the **TRIGGER INPUT** connector or by pressing the front panel **MANUAL** button. During waveform output, if the **MANUAL** button is pressed or another external trigger signal is generated, such a trigger has no effect.

When **Triggered** is selected, the following items will be displayed in the side menu:

- Slope
- Level
- STOP

The **Slope** and **Level** items are used to set the trigger conditions for the external trigger signal.

Figure 4C-3 shows the output waveform for an external trigger signal.

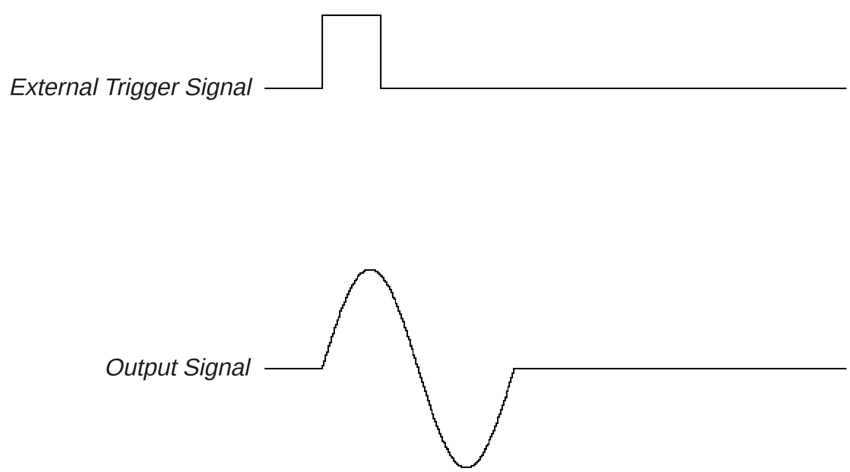


Figure 4C-3: Output Waveform for External Trigger Signal in Triggered Mode

Gated Mode

Gated

Use **Gated** mode to control waveform or sequence output with a gate signal.The gate signal depends on the gate source. It can be generated from the external gate signal applied to the **TRIGGER INPUT** connector or while the front panel **MANUAL** button is pressed.

While the front panel **MANUAL** button is pressed, the specified waveform or sequence is output. When you let the **MANUAL** button go, the waveform output stops. When you press the **MANUAL** button again, the waveform or sequence output resumes from the level where it left off. While you are pressing the **MANUAL** button, if you press any other button, the instrument goes into the mode for the **MANUAL** button not being pressed.

The specified waveform or sequence waveform is output while a valid external gate signal is being received through the **TRIGGER INPUT** connector. After output stops, at the next external gate signal, the waveform or sequence resumes from the waveform level where it left off.

When **Gated** is selected, the following items will be displayed in the side menu:

- Polarity
- Level
- STOP

The **Polarity** and **Level** items are used to set the gate conditions for the external gate signal.

Figure 4C-4 shows the output waveform for an external gate signal.

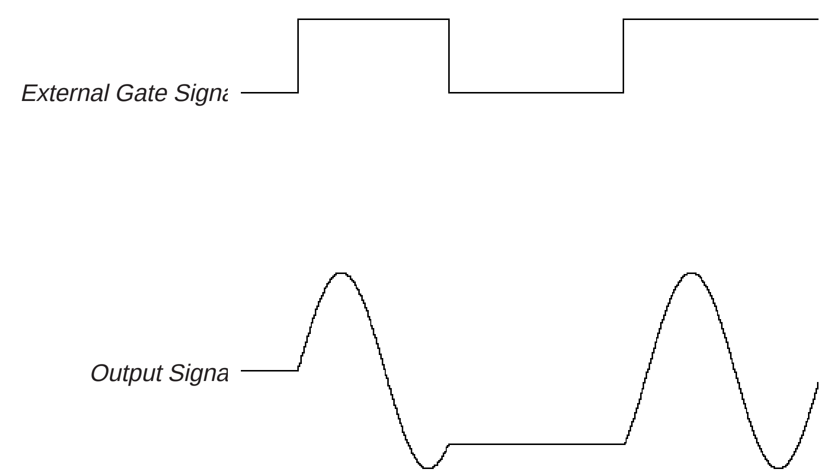


Figure 4C-4: Output Waveform for External Gate Signal in Gated Mode

Waveform Advance Mode

Waveform
Advance

When a sequence file has been designated in the **SETUP** menu, **Waveform Advance** mode is used to advance a waveform in sequence each time a trigger is received.

NOTE

*Waveforms are output in line with the output parameters designated in the **SETUP** menu for that sequence file.*

When this instrument goes into **Waveform Advance** mode, it waits for a trigger to be generated. This trigger can be generated from the external trigger signal applied to the **TRIGGER INPUT** connector or by pressing the front panel **MANUAL** button.

When **Waveform Advance** is selected, the following items will be displayed in the side menu:

- Slope
- Level
- Run
- STOP

The **Slope** and **Level** items are used to set the trigger conditions for the external trigger signal.

Waveform Output Conditions

Run
Continuous
Step

The **Run** item in the side menu is used to set the output conditions for the waveform. When you press the **Run** button, you can select either **Continuous** or **Step**.

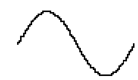
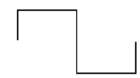
Continuous — In this mode, the first waveform is output over and over again for each channel when a trigger signal is received. When the next trigger signal is received, output of the first waveform stops after the end point of that waveform and then the second waveform is output in the same manner. The next waveform is not started at the moment a trigger is received, but rather at the completion of the previous waveform.

In this way, waveforms are output for each channel one by one in sequence each time a trigger signal is received. When a trigger signal is received while output of the last waveform is in progress, the output stops at the end point of that waveform and then the process begins again from output of the first waveform. Each channel operates independently according to the number of waveform points.

Step — In this mode, the first waveform is output on each channel when a trigger signal is received, but only for the number of times set with **Repeat** in the sequence editor. The next waveform is output when the next trigger signal is received. Other operations are the same as **Continuous** output.

Figure 4C-5 shows a waveform output in response to an external trigger signal for both **Run** settings (**Continuous** and **Step**).

Sequence File

File Name	No. of repetitions	Output Conditions	Waveform
WAVE–1.WFM	2	Amplitude 2 V Offset 0 V	
WAVE–2.WFM	2		

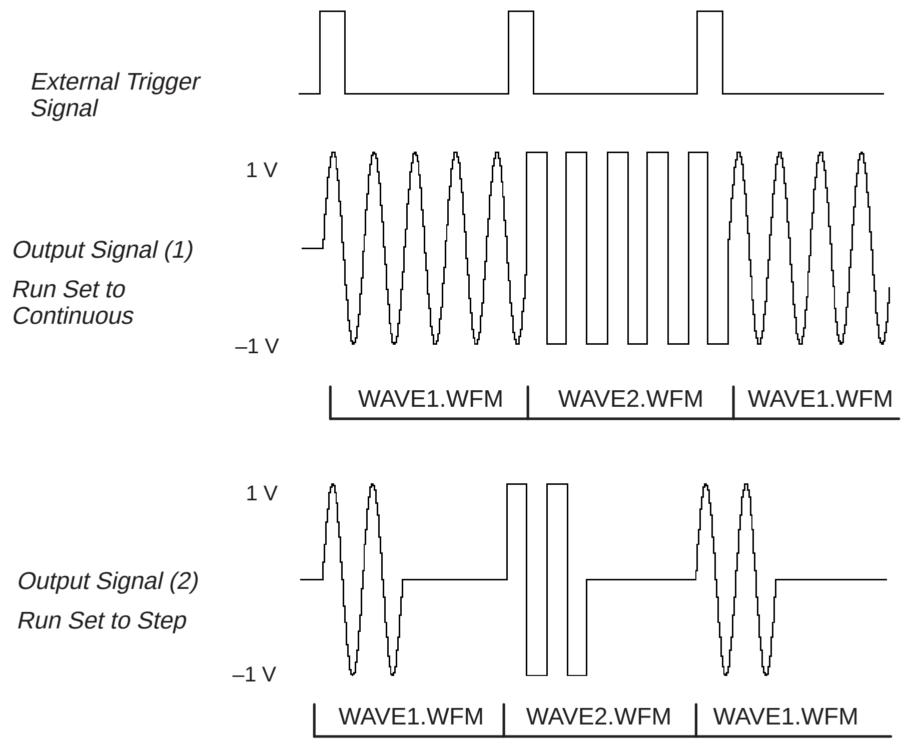


Figure 4C-5: Waveform Output in Response to External Trigger Signal (when Run is set to Continuous and Step)

Autostep Mode

Autostep

Use **Autostep** mode to start an Autostep file created with the **EDIT** menu Autostep editor. An Autostep file stores a program that specifies a waveform or sequence file (including output parameters) for each channel for each step.

Autostep mode resembles **Waveform Advance** mode, in which, each time a trigger is received, the display advances one waveform. However, in this mode the output parameters for each waveform change as well. The operating mode for each step can be set with the waveform output conditions to either **Continuous** or **Step**, as in the case of **Waveform Advance** mode. Just as in other operating modes, the **Autostep** mode trigger signal can be generated from the external trigger signal or by pressing the front panel **MANUAL** button.

NOTE

*During **Autostep** mode, changes to the output parameters with the **SETUP** menu have no effect whatever.*

When **Autostep** is selected, the following items will be displayed in the side menu:

- Slop
- Level
- Run
- Select Autostep File
- STOP

The **Slope** and **Level** items are used to set the trigger conditions for the external trigger signal. During waveform output, if **STOP** is selected from the side menu, the waveform output is stopped immediately and the system returns to the start of the **Step:1** waveform or sequence.

Waveform Output Conditions

Run
Continuous
Step

The **Run** item in the side menu is used to set the output conditions for the waveform. When you press the **Run** button, you can select either **Continuous** or **Step**.

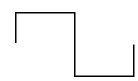
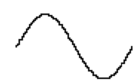
Continuous — In this mode, the programmed **Step:1** waveform is output over and over again when a trigger signal is received. When the next trigger signal is received, output of the **Step:1** waveform stops after the end point of that waveform and then the **Step:2** waveform is output in the same manner. The waveform is started at the moment a trigger is received.

In this way, the current waveforms advance for each channel one by one in sequence each time a trigger signal is received. When a trigger signal is received while output of the last waveform in the step is in progress, the output stops at the end point of that waveform and then the process begins again from output of the **Step:1** waveform. Each channel operates independently according to the number of waveform points.

Step — When a trigger signal is received, the **Step:1** waveform for each channel is output once; when the next trigger signal is received, the **Step:2** waveform is output (once). When the next trigger signal is received while waveform output is in progress, output stops after the end point of that waveform and then the waveform for the next step is output.

Figure 4C-6 shows a waveform output in response to an external trigger signal for both **Run** settings (**Continuous** and **Step**).

Autostep File

Step	File Name	Output Conditions	Waveform
Step:1	WAVE−1.WFM	Amplitude 2 V Offset 0 V	
Step:2	WAVE−2.WFM	Amplitude 3 V Offset 0 V	
Step:3	WAVE−1.WFM	Amplitude 4 V Offset 0 V	

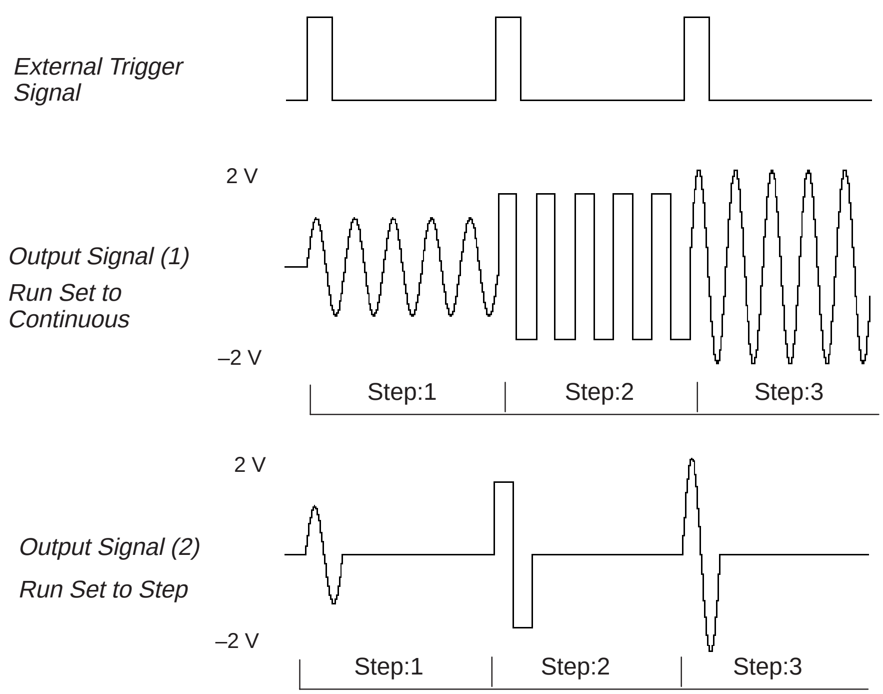


Figure 4C-6: Waveform Output in Response to External Trigger Signal (when Run is set to Continuous and Step)

Starting an Autostep Program

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Autostep** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Choose **Select Autostep File** from the side menu. When this item is selected, the list of autostep files created with the autostep editor is displayed. See Figure 4C-7.

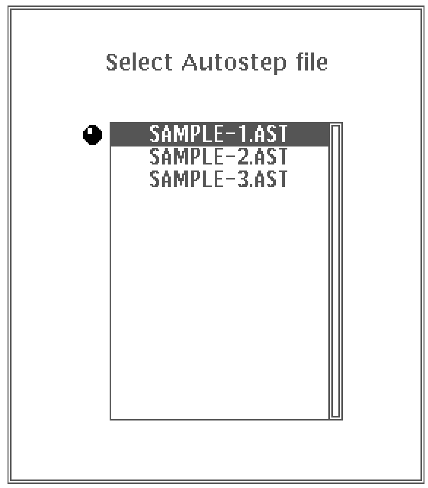


Figure 4C-7: Autostep File List

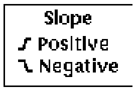
☐ **Step 3:** Use the general purpose knob to select the file to start from the displayed list of autostep files.

☐ **Step 4:** After selecting the file, to enter the selection, select **O.K.** from the sub-menu. To cancel the file selection, select **Cancel** from the sub-menu. When you select **O.K.**, the autostep program starts.

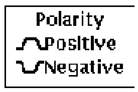
Setting Trigger Parameters for an External Trigger (Gate)

The external trigger (gate) signal is input from the **TRIGGER INPUT** connector on the front panel. The input impedance is 10 kΩ and the maximum input voltage is ±10 V.

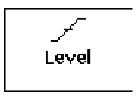
Use the **Slope** or **Polarity**, and **Level** items in the side menu of the **MODE** menu to set trigger (gate) parameters for an external trigger (gate) signal.



Slope — This item sets the slope for the external trigger signal. Press the **Slope** button in the side menu and select either **Positive** or **Negative**. When **Positive** is selected, the output is triggered at the rising edge of the external trigger signal; when **Negative** is selected, the output is triggered at the falling edge of the external trigger signal.



Polarity (Gated mode) — This item sets the polarity for the gate that outputs the waveform or sequence with an external gate signal. Press the **Polarity** button in the side menu and select either **Positive** or **Negative**. When **Positive** is selected, the waveform or sequence is output while the level of the gate signal is higher than the gate level set with the side menu **Level** item. When **Negative** is selected, the waveform or sequence is output while the level of the gate signal is lower than the set gate level.



Level — This item sets the trigger (gate) level for an external trigger (gate) signal. Press the **Level** button in the side menu, then set the level with the numeric keys or the general purpose knob. The trigger (gate) level can be set in the range −5.0 V to 5.0 V in steps of 0.1 V.

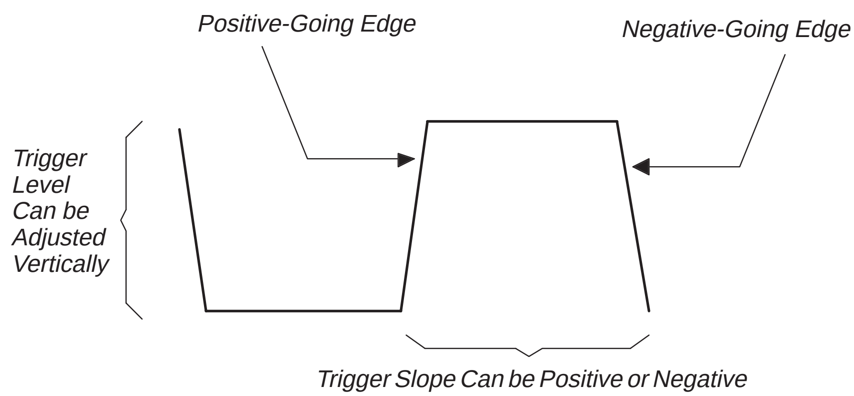


Figure 4C-8: Slope and Level Controls

Designating the System as Master or Slave

Configure
Master
Slave

Use this item to control input and output of the control and clock signals. This setting is needed when several AWG2005 instruments are connected in parallel. When AWG2005 instruments are connected in parallel, loop-through connection should be used, as shown in Figure 4C-9. The end termination for loop-through connection should be 50 Ω.

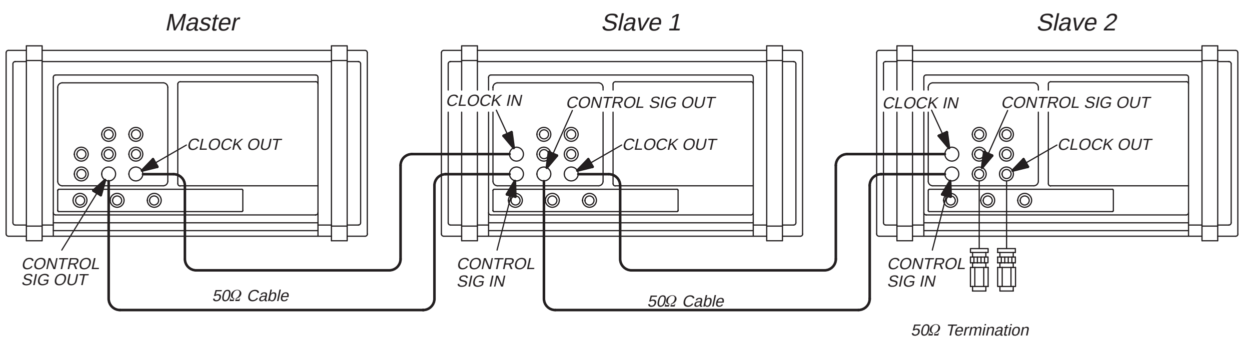


Figure 4C-9: AWG2005 Parallel Operation

NOTE

During parallel operation, the waveforms that are output should have the same point size. The waveform will not be output as desired if the point sizes are different.

When you press **Configure** in the bottom menu, you can select either **Master** or **Slave**.

Master — The instrument sends control and clock signals to slave AWG2005 instruments connected to it in parallel. Control signals and clock signals are output from the **CONTROL SIG OUT** and **CLOCK OUT** connectors, respectively, on the rear panel. The **Master** setting is also used when the AWG2005 instrument is to be used independently.

Slave — The instrument receives control and clock signals from the master AWG2005 instrument connected to it in parallel. No control signals or clock signals are output from the **CONTROL SIG OUT** and **CLOCK OUT** connectors on the rear panel. By selecting **Slave**, the clock source setting in the **SETUP** menu is automatically set to external clock.

LOAD/SAVE Menu

General Description

Press the **LOAD/SAVE** button in the **MENU** column to display the **LOAD** or **SAVE** menu. Press the **Load** or **Save** button in the bottom menu to display the desired menu.

Use the **LOAD** menu to load files into internal (random access) memory from the instrument's internal non-volatile RAM memory (**NVRam**), from a floppy disk (**Disk**), or from another instrument through the **GPIB** interface.

NOTE

In this section, the internal non-volatile memory and the floppy disks are referred to as mass memory.

The **SAVE** menu provides the opposite function, the ability to save files from internal memory of the instrument to mass memory.

NOTES

*When a sequence file is loaded or saved with the **LOAD/SAVE** menu, the waveforms and sequence files used in that sequence file are also loaded or saved.*

Memory Capacity

When you exit from the **EDIT** menu, the files you created with the editors are saved into the AWG2005 internal memory (RAM). Up to 400 files (depending on size) can be saved in the internal memory.

NOTE

The data in this instrument's internal memory is lost when the power is switched off. Therefore, you must save any necessary data to mass memory.

Like internal memory, the AWG2005 internal non-volatile memory (NVRam) can hold up to 400 files. The NVRam has 512 Kbytes, almost all of which is used for saving files. The contents of this memory are retained even when the power is switched off.

The capacity of a floppy disk depends on its format. Disks can use directory hierarchies and files can be stored in each of the directories. The extension for a directory is .DIR. For further information on creating directories, see the explanation in "Using the Disk Menu" in Section 4E, "**UTILITY** Menu."

Figure 4D-1 shows the relationship between loading and saving and the different types of memory.

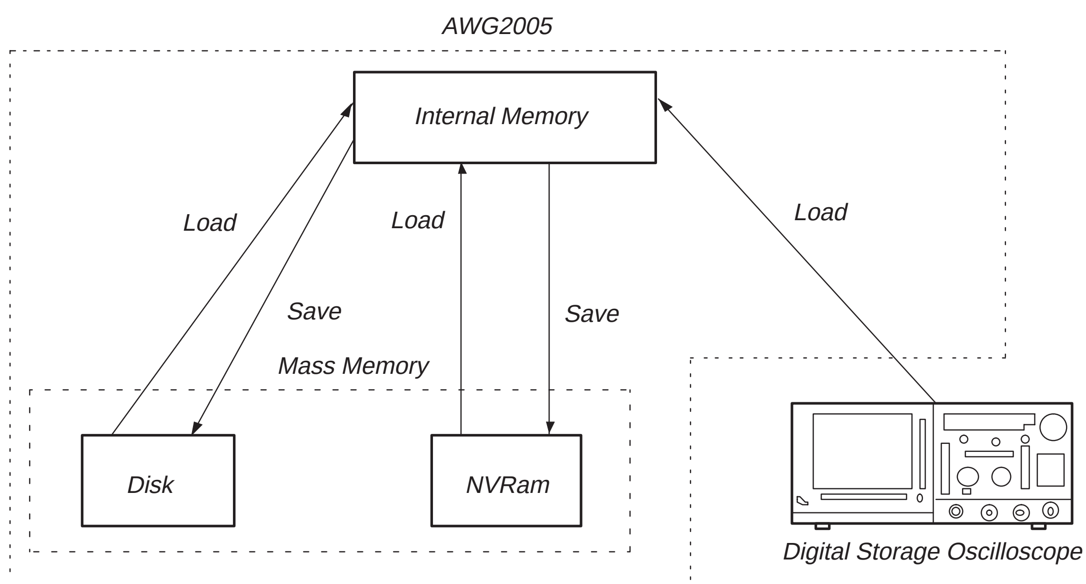


Figure 4D-1: Relationship Between Memory and Execution of Load/Save

LOAD/SAVE Menu Structure

Figure 4D-2 shows the configuration of the **LOAD/SAVE** menu.

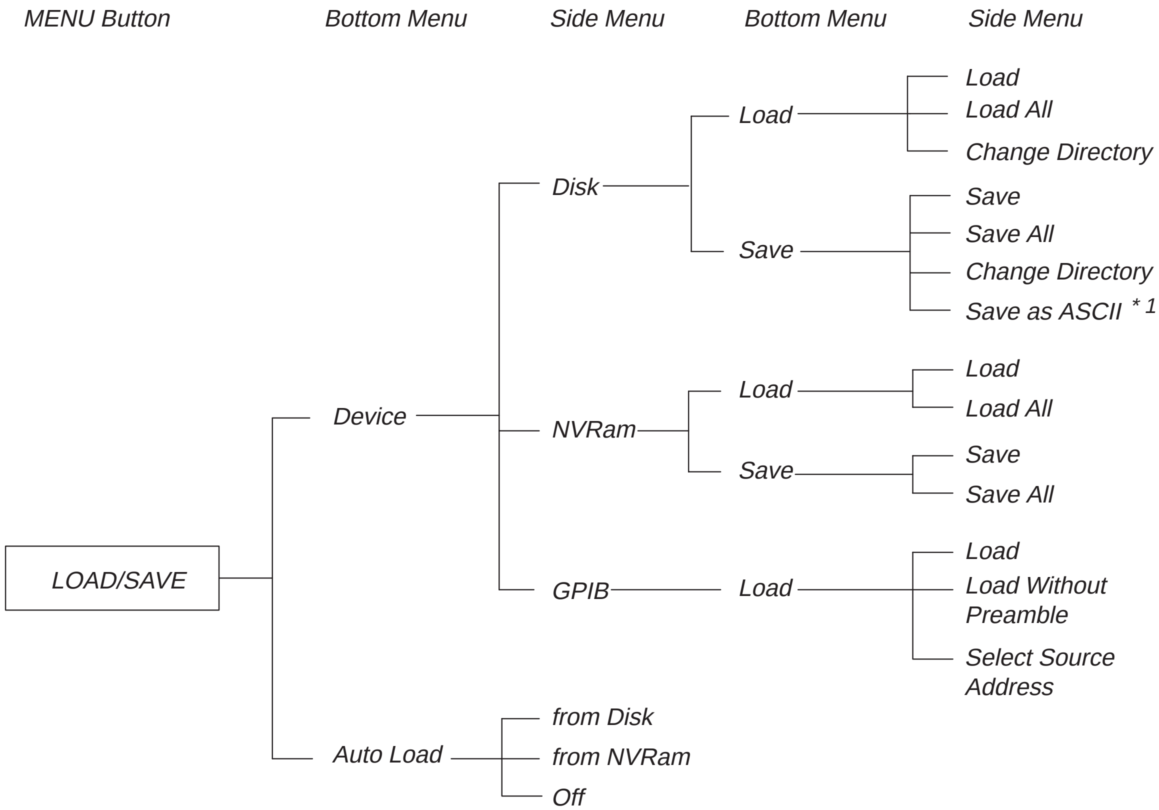


Figure 4D-2: LOAD/SAVE Menu Structure

*1 This item is displayed when an equation file (**.EQU**) has been selected in the list of files contained in the instrument's internal memory.

Menu Functions

The following table describes the function of each of the menu items and gives the number of the page on which you can find a more detailed explanation of that item.

Table 4D-1: Menu Functions

Menu	Function	Page
Device	Selecting the device	4D-6
Load	Loading files from mass memory into internal memory	4D-8
Save	Saving files form internal memory to mass memory	4D-10
GPIB	Transferring waveform data directly	4D-12
Auto Load	Auto loading	4D-15

LOAD Menu Display

Figure 4D-3 shows the general display for the **LOAD** menu. A description for each callout follows.

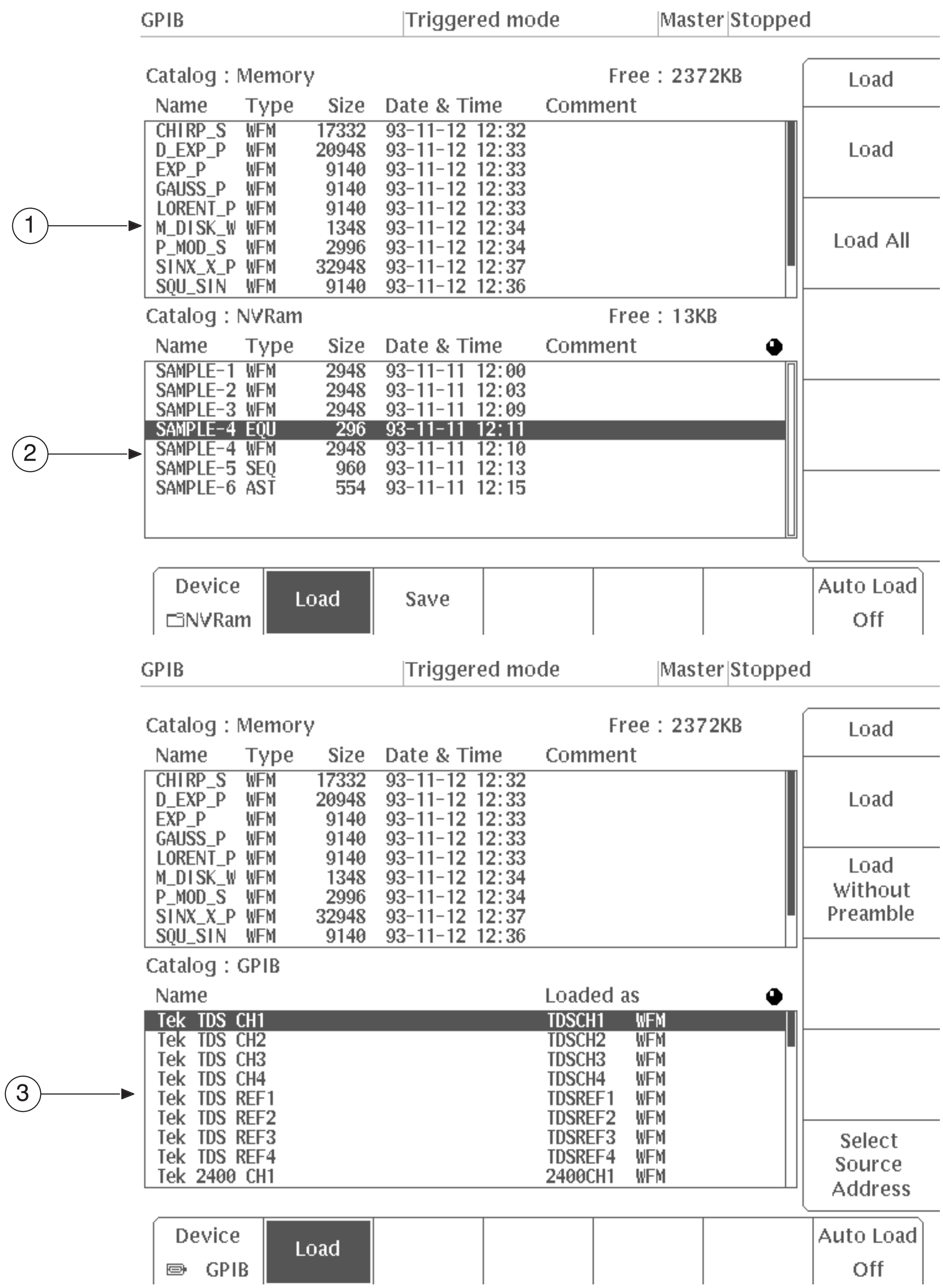


Figure 4D-3: LOAD Menu CRT Screen Display

(1) Internal memory file list

This is a list of the files currently loaded into internal memory. The list shows the file names, the file types, file sizes (in bytes), the date and time the file was created, and a comment. The space remaining in internal memory, into which files can be loaded, is displayed in the upper right-hand corner of the list.

For the **LOAD** menu, when a file is loaded into internal memory from mass memory or from another instrument through the GPIB interface, that file is added to this list.

For the **SAVE** menu, you can select files to save from this list to mass memory.

(2) Mass memory file list

This list is displayed when mass memory has been selected for **Device**. It contains all files that have been saved to mass memory. The file data is the same as in (1), above.

For the **LOAD** menu, you can select files to load from this list to the AWG2005 internal memory.

For the **SAVE** menu, when a file is saved from internal memory of the instrument to mass memory, the saved file is added to this list.

(3) GPIB file list

This list is displayed when **GPIB** has been selected for **Device**. It shows all other instruments connected to this instrument through the GPIB interface. Waveform data can be sent to the internal memory of this instrument from the instruments shown in this list. When waveform files are loaded in this manner, a name appears in the ”**Loaded as**” column.

Selecting the Device

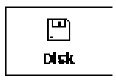
Use **Device** to select the source from which files are loaded into the AWG2005 internal memory and the destination to which files are saved from internal memory. You may select **Disk**, **NVRam** or **GPIB**.

Procedure

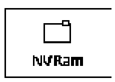
☐ **Step 1:** Select **Device** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Disk**, **NVRam** or **GPIB** from the side menu.

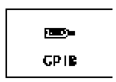
The following items are listed in the side menu:



Disk — A floppy disk. Files are saved to or loaded from a floppy disk inserted into the floppy disk drive on the right side of the instrument.



NVRam — The instrument's internal non-volatile RAM.



GPIB — The GPIB interface. Used to transfer waveform data directly from another instrument to this instrument through a GPIB cable.

To transfer waveform data through the **GPIB** interface, the remote port must be set to **GPIB** and the GPIB operating mode must be set to **Waveform Transfer**. If this is not done, the following message will appear when you select the **GPIB** item:

> The GPIB configuration is not ”Waveform Transfer”
> and the Remote Port is not ”GPIB”.
>
> Are you sure of changing the parameters
> to match the transfer operation ?

Selecting **O.K.** in the sub-menu at this point will cause these items to be set to the above items automatically.

Table 4D-2 shows a list of instruments for which direct transfer of waveform data to this instrument is supported.

Table 4D-2: Supported Instruments

Manufacturer	Model
Tektronix	TDS Series Digital Storage Oscilloscope TDS300 Series, TDS400 Series, TDS500 [A] Series, TDS600 [A] Series
	2400 Series Digital Storage Oscilloscope 2430 [A], 2432, 2440
	2200 Series Digital Storage Oscilloscope 2212, 2221A, 2224, 2232
	11K Series Digital Storage Oscilloscope 11201 [A], 11401, 11402 [A], 11403 [A]
	DSA Series Digitizing Analyzer DSA601 [A], DSA602 [A]
	RTD720 Waveform Digitizer
	9500 Series First Data Cache 9503, 9504 (Use together with RTD710 [A])
Sony Tektronix	RTD710 Series Waveform Digitizer RTD710[A]
	AWG2000 Series Arbitrary Waveform Generator AWG2005, AWG2020, AWG2040
	AFG2020 Function Waveform Generator
Hewlett Packard	54600 Series Digital Storage Oscilloscope HP54501A, HP54502A, HP54503A, HP54504A, HP54510A
	54500 Series Digital Storage Oscilloscope HP54600A, HP54601A, HP54602A
LeCroy	94x0 Series Digital Storage Oscilloscope 9410, 9414, 9420, 9424, 9430, 9450
Yokogawa Electric	DL1000 Series Digital Storage Oscilloscope DL1100, DL1200 [E]

Loading Files from Mass Memory into Internal Memory

Load

If **Disk** or **NVRam** has been selected for **Device**, the **LOAD** menu appears when the **Load** item in the bottom menu is selected. See Figure 4D-4. The internal memory file list is displayed on the upper screen and the list of files saved onto mass memory is displayed on the lower screen.

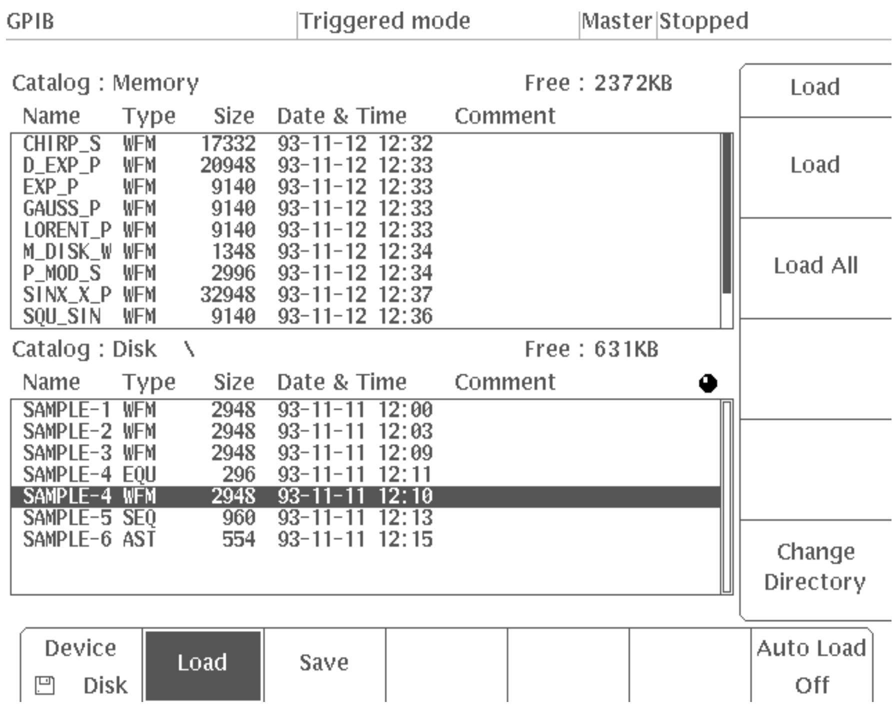


Figure 4D-4: LOAD Menu

Procedure

To load files into internal memory from mass memory, perform these steps:

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Device** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Disk** or **NVRam** from the side menu.

When the **Device** is **Disk**, the **Change Directory** item is displayed on the side menu. When this item is selected, the current directory can be changed. This item is the same as the **Change Directory** item on the **UTILITY** menu. See the explanation in "Using the Disk Menu" in Section 4E, "**UTILITY** Menu."

There is no directory hierarchy for the **NVRam**.

☐ **Step 3:** Select **Load** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 4:** Use the general purpose knob to select files to load into internal memory from the mass memory file list.

☐ **Step 5:** Select **Load** from the side menu. The selected file is loaded into internal memory.

When **Load All** is selected from the side menu, all the files in the specified mass memory (for a disk, the current directory) are loaded into internal memory.

NOTE

*When **Load** or **Load All** is executed, if there is already a file in internal memory with the same name as a file to be loaded, the system displays a message asking you whether or not to overwrite the file now in internal memory with the one being loaded. Answer **O.K.** or **Cancel**.*

Saving Files from Internal Memory to Mass Memory

Save

If **Disk** or **NVram** has been selected for **Device**, the **SAVE** menu appears when the **Save** item is selected from the bottom menu. See Figure 4D-5. The same as for the **LOAD** menu, the internal memory file list is displayed on the upper screen. From this list, you select the file to be saved to mass memory.

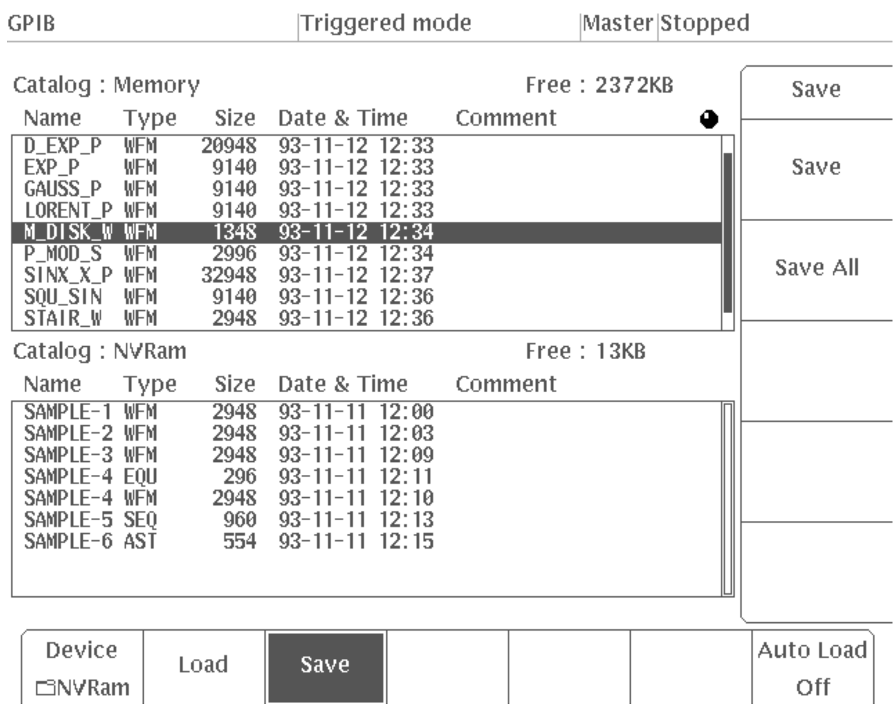


Figure 4D-5: SAVE Menu

Procedure

To save files into mass memory from internal memory, perform these steps:

- [ ] **Step 1:** Select **Device** from the bottom menu.
- [ ] **Step 2:** Select **Disk** or **NVRam** from the side menu.

  The same as for the **LOAD** menu, when the **Device** is **Disk**, **Change Directory** is displayed on the side menu and the current directory can be changed.

- [ ] **Step 3:** Select **Save** from the bottom menu.
- [ ] **Step 4:** Use the general purpose knob to select the file to be saved to mass memory from the internal memory file list.

☐ **Step 5:** Select **Save** from the side menu. The selected file is saved to the specified mass memory (for a disk, the current directory).

When **Save All** is selected from the side menu, all the files in the internal memory are saved to the specified mass memory.

NOTE

*When **Save** or **Save All** is executed, if there is already a file in the mass memory with the same name as a file to be saved, the system asks you if you want to replace the file now in mass memory with the one to be saved. Answer either **O.K.** or **Cancel**.*

Saving Data in Text Format

Save
as ASCII

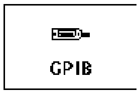
The **Save as ASCII** item appears in the side menu when an equation file (**.EQU**) has been selected from the list of files in internal memory and **Disk** has been selected for **Device**. Use this item to save the (binary format) data in the equation file in MS-DOS text format. Files saved in this manner are denoted by the extension **.EQA** after the file name. See page 4D-16 for further information on **.EQA** files.

The following items are written to the data of files saved in text format:

File Data	Description
# COMMENT: <comment>	The comment written to the selected equation file (**.EQU**), if any
# WAVEFORM POINTS = <point count>	The setting for number of waveform points (**Waveform Points**)
Calculation formula	

When comments and waveform point sizes are written to **.EQA** files as noted above, these are reflected in the equation files (**.EQU**) created when the **.EQA** files are loaded to this instrument.

Transferring Waveform Data Directly



When **GPIB** has been selected for **Device**, waveform data can be transferred directly to this instrument from supported digital storage oscilloscopes, etc. through the GPIB interface. See Table 4D-2 for a list of supported instruments.

Loading Waveform Data

To load a waveform file directly to this instrument from one of the instruments for which direct transfer of waveform data is supported:

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Using a GPIB cable, connect this instrument to the instrument from which waveform data is to be transferred, as shown in Figure 4D-6.

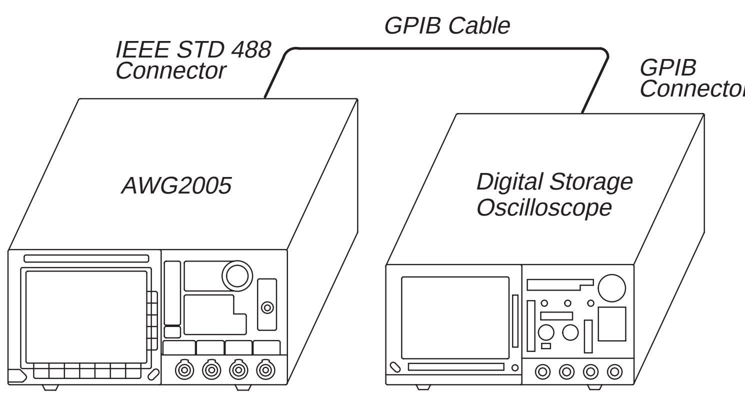


Figure 4D-6: Connecting Instruments

☐ **Step 2:** Create the waveform to be transferred on the other (source) instrument.

☐ **Step 3:** Select **Device** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 4:** Select **GPIB** from the side menu.

A message will be displayed when **Remote Port** [**UTILITY** (**MENU**) →**Misc** (bottom menu) → **Config...** (side menu) → **Remote Port** (submenu)] is set to **RS232C** or when **GPIB** is set to anything other than **Waveform Transfer**. Pressing **O.K.** in response to this message will cause these settings to be automatically changed to **GPIB** and **Waveform Transfer**, respectively, and the instrument will be ready for direct waveform transfer through the **GPIB** interface.

☐ **Step 5:** Select **Load** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 6:** Using the general purpose knob, select the channel and the name of the instrument from which the data will be loaded from the ”**Name**” column in the **GPIB Source** list at the bottom of the screen. When waveform data is loaded into the internal memory of the AWG2005, a waveform file will be created with the name shown in the ”**Loaded as**” column. Figure 4D-7 shows the GPIB Source list.

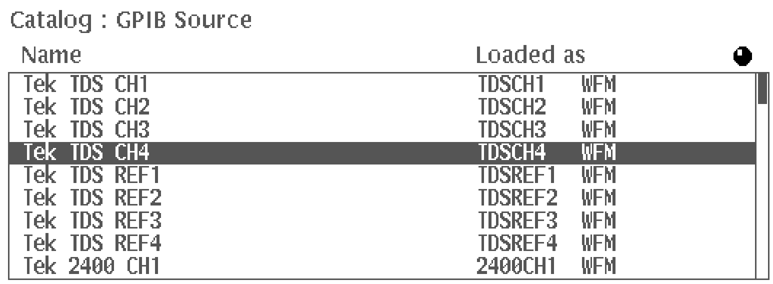


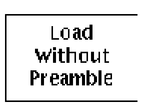
Figure 4D-7: GPIB Source List

☐ **Step 7:** Choose **Select Source Address** from the side menu and, using the general purpose knob, select the GPIB address for the instrument from which data is to be loaded.

☐ **Step 8:** Select **Load** from the side menu.

Data transfer will begin and the transferred file will be added to the list of files stored in internal memory at the top of the screen, under the name shown in the ”**Loaded as**” column.

Data transfers can include not only waveform data but output settings such as clock frequency and amplitude as well. When the clock frequency and amplitude exceed the allowable setting range in the **SETUP** menu, these values will be replaced with the nearest allowable value (in other words, the maximum or minimum value).



When **Load Without Preamble** from the side menu is selected, waveform data is loaded by itself, i.e. without output settings. In such cases, the output parameters are set to their default values.

Selecting Instruments Made by Other Manufacturers

The following procedure is used to select digital storage oscilloscopes made by other manufacturers. The procedure up to Step 5 is the same as that for ”Loading waveform data”, above.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Using the general purpose knob, select **Others...** from the **GPIB Source** list.

☐ **Step 2:** Press the **Load** button in the side menu. A list of models will appear.

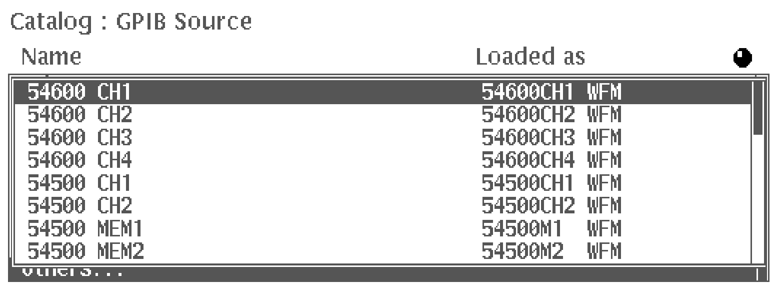


Figure 4D-8: List of Supported Models Made by Other Manufacturers

NOTE

Contact a Tektronix sales office in the event that waveform transfer is not possible from an instrument made by another manufacturer, due to an upgrade or other change.

☐ **Step 3:** Using the general purpose knob, select the instrument in the list from which data will be loaded.

☐ **Step 4:** Choose **Select Source Address** from the side menu and then use the general purpose knob to select the GPIB address for the instrument from which files will be loaded.

☐ **Step 5:** Select **Load** from the side menu. Data transfer will be performed and the waveform file will be added to the list of files stored in internal memory at the top of the screen, under the name shown in the ”**Loaded as**” column.

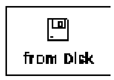
Auto Loading

Use the side menu of the **Auto Load** to automatically load files from the mass memory into the internal memory when the instrument is switched on.

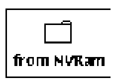
Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Auto Load** from the bottom menu.

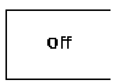
☐ **Step 2:** Select an item from the side menu. Here are explanations of these items.



From Disk — When this instrument is switched on, files are loaded automatically from the floppy disk to the internal memory of the instrument . In this case, all the files in the **AWG2005** directory are loaded. If there is no **AWG2005** directory, no auto load is carried out. This directory can be created with Disk on the **UTILITY** menu. For details, see the explanation in "Using the Disk Menu" in Section 4E "**UTILITY** Menu."



From NVRam — When this instrument is switched on, all the files in the non-volatile memory are loaded automatically into the internal memory.



Off — Switches off auto loading.

When **from Disk** or **from NVRam** is selected from the side menu, advance the procedure below.

☐ **Step 3:** Switch the AWG2005 power off, then on again. Double check that files are automatically loaded from mass memory to internal memory in the way you selected from the side menu.

Supported Floppy Disk Files

Table 4D-3 shows a list of file name extensions denoting the type of disk files that can be loaded to the internal memory of the AWG2005.

Table 4D-3: Supported Floppy Disk Files

<table>
<tr><th>Extension</th><th>Description</th><th>Result of Load Operation</th></tr>
<tr><td>.ISF</td><td>Waveform data files saved in ISF format (Instrument Specific Format) using the waveform save function in the S34TDS1 Data Manager software</td><td rowspan="4">.ISF, .WVN, .WFB and .WFM files are automatically converted into .WFM files in the AWG2005 instrument's internal format and then stored in internal memory. When this is done, except for the .WFM file, the name of the file is retained as is, with only the extension changed to .WFM. In the .WFM file, file name and extension are as it is.</td></tr>
<tr><td>.WVN</td><td>Waveform data files saved using the waveform save function in the S37UT01 Utility software.</td></tr>
<tr><td>.WFB</td><td>Waveform data files saved in binary format on a DSA600A series instrument</td></tr>
<tr><td>.WFM</td><td>Waveform data files created in a TDS series instrument</td></tr>
<tr><td>.EQA</td><td>Equation files in MS-DOS text format created in a PC editor, etc.</td><td>.EQA files are automatically converted into .EQU files in the AWG2005 instrument's internal format and then stored in internal memory. When this is done, the name of the file is retained as is, with only the extension changed to .EQU. When the following items are written to the .EQA file, these items are reflected in the .EQU file.
COMMENT: <comment>
WAVEFORM POINTS = <point count></td></tr>
</table>

All of these files are displayed in the Catalog menu screens for **Disk** in the **UTILITY** menu and **Device Disk** in the **LOAD/SAVE** menu, the same as files with other extensions. The extension for each file is shown in the **Type** column.

NOTE

*As with other files on the instrument, the **Rename**, **Delete**, **Delete All**, **Lock** and other operations can be performed for these files, and they are also subject to the **Load All** and **Auto Load** operations in the **LOAD** menu.*

If unexpected file formats or file contents are encountered when loading **.ISF**, **.WVN**, **.WFB**, **.WFM** or **.EQA** files, an error usually results and "**Invalid file format**" or a similar message is displayed.

UTILITY Menu

General Description

Press the **MENU** column **UTILITY** button to display the **UTILITY** menu. The bottom menu contains the **Disk**, **NVRam**, **GPIB**, **RS232C**, **Date Time**, **Misc**, and **Diag/Cal** items. Use these items to do the following:

- **Disk**

  Floppy disk format

  Operating files saved onto disks

  Disk directory creation and current directory change

- **NVRam**

  Operating files saved onto internal non-volatile memory (NVRam)

- **GPIB**

  Setting GPIB Configuration. See Programmer manual for details.

- **RS232C**

  Setting RS-232-C parameters. See Programmer manual for details.

- **Date Time**

  Setting the Date and Time

- **Misc**

  Setting the Display Brightness

  Setting the Order of Files

  Date/Time Display

  Factory Setting

  Deleting Data From Memory

  Remote Port Settings

  Settings for Hard Copy Output

  System and GPIB/RS-232-C Status

  I/O Event Reporting. See Programmer manual for details.

- **Diag/Cal**

  Diagnostics and Calibration

UTILITY Menu Structure

Figure 4E-1 shows the configuration of the **UTILITY** menu.

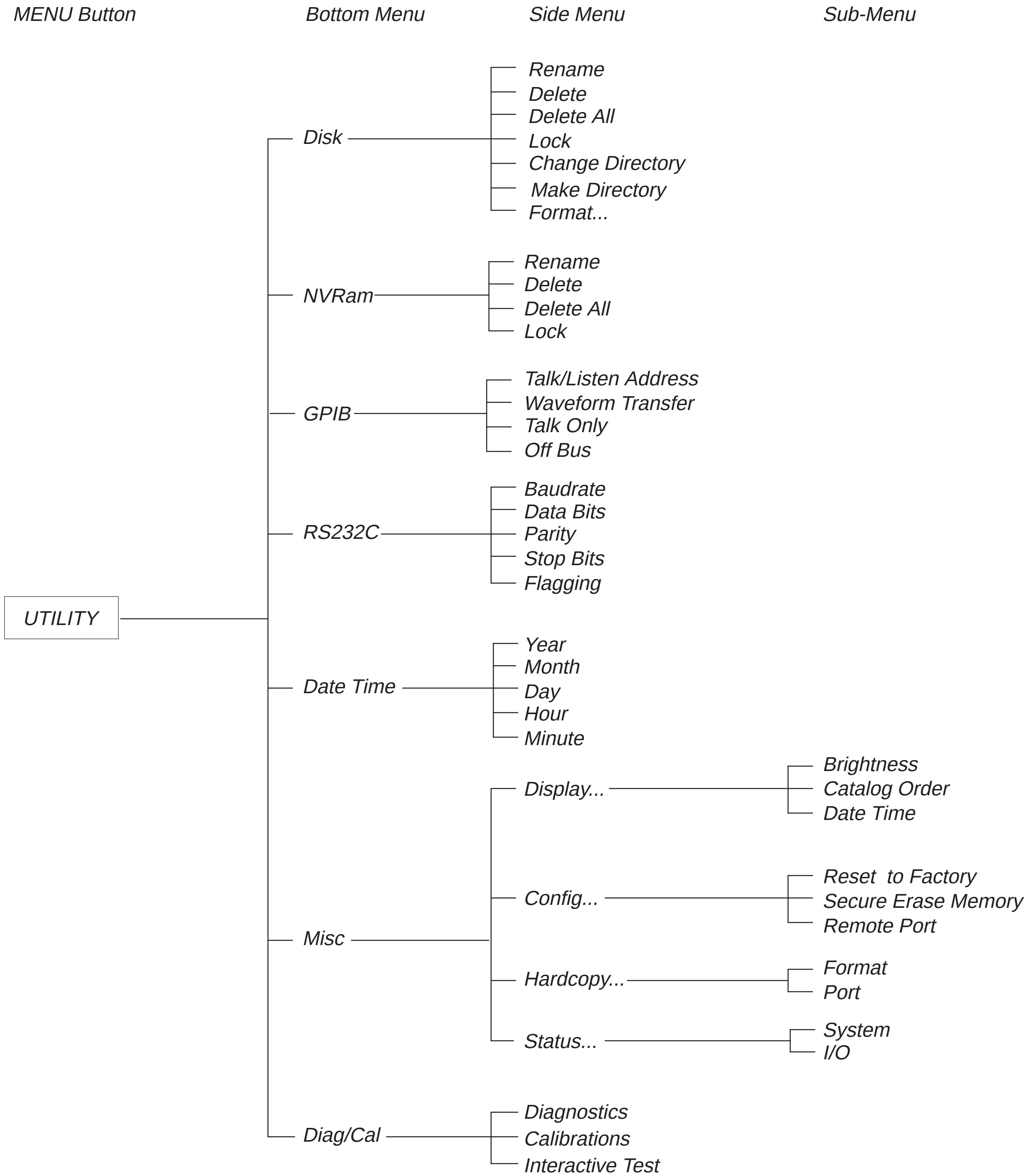


Figure 4E-1: UTILITY Menu Structure

Menu Functions

The following table describes the function of each of the menu items and gives the number of the page on which you can find a more detailed explanation of that item.

Table 4E-1: Menu Functions

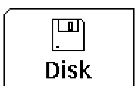
Menu	Function	Page
Disk	Using the disk menu	4E-4
Rename	Renaming a file	4A-7, 4E-12
Delete	Deleting a file	4A-9, 4E-12
Delete All	Deleting all files	4A-9, 4E-12
Lock	Locking and unlocking a file	4A-10, 4E-12
Change Directory	Changing directories	4E-8
Make Directory	Creating directories	4E-8
Format...	Floppy disk format	4E-4
NVRam	Internal non-volatile memory	4E-13
GPIB	GPIB	4E-14
Talk/Listen Address Waveform Transfer Talk Only Off Bus	Setting the GPIB configuration	4E-15
RS232C	RS-232-C	4E-15
Baudrate	Setting the baud rate	4E-17
Data Bits	Setting the number of data bits	
Parity	Setting the parity	
Stop Bits	Setting the number of stop bits	
Fiagging	Setting flags	
Date Time	Setting the date and time	4E-18
Misc	Other settings and displays	4E-19
Display...	Setting the display	4E-19
Brightness	Setting the display brightness	4E-20
Catalog Order	Setting the order of files	4E-21
Date Time	Date/Time display	4E-24
Config...	Configuration	4E-24
Reset to Factory	Factory settings	4E-24
Secure Erase Memory	Deleting data from memory	4E-25
Remote Port	Remote port settings	4E-26
Hardcopy...	Settings for hard copy output	4E-26
Format	Selecting the format	4E-26
Port	Selecting the port	4E-27
Status...	Status display	4E-29
System	System and GPIB/RS-232-C status	4E-29
I/O	I/O event reporting	4E-30

Menu	Function	Page
Diag/Cal	Diagnostics and calibrations	4E-31
Diagnostics	Diagnostics	4E-31
Calibrations	Calibrations	4E-32
Interactive Test	Pattern display (For instrument adjustment)	4E-33

Disk and Nonvolatile Memory

Save the files this instrument creates onto internal non-volatile memory and/or 3.5-inch floppy disks.

Using the Disk Menu



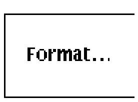
This item can format disks, make directories on disks, change the current directory, edit files saved to disk, etc.

Insert the 3.5-inch floppy disk into this instrument's floppy disk drive, then select **Disk** from the bottom menu. The files saved in the root directory and AWG2005 directory are read out and displayed on the CRT screen. When **Disk** is selected in the bottom menu, the following items will appear in the side menu:

- Rename
- Delete
- Delete All
- Lock
- Change Directory
- Make Directory
- Format...

The side menu is made up of 2 pages. Select **More** to display the second page of the side menu.

Floppy Disk Format



This instrument can format 2DD (double density) and 2HD (high density) disks in three different MS-DOS formats: IBM-PC format, NEC PC9800 series format, and Toshiba J3100 series format. Formatted disks are automatically labeled ”**AWG2005**”.

New floppy disks must be formatted before they can be used. Figure 4E-2 shows the sub-menu displayed after formatting the disk.

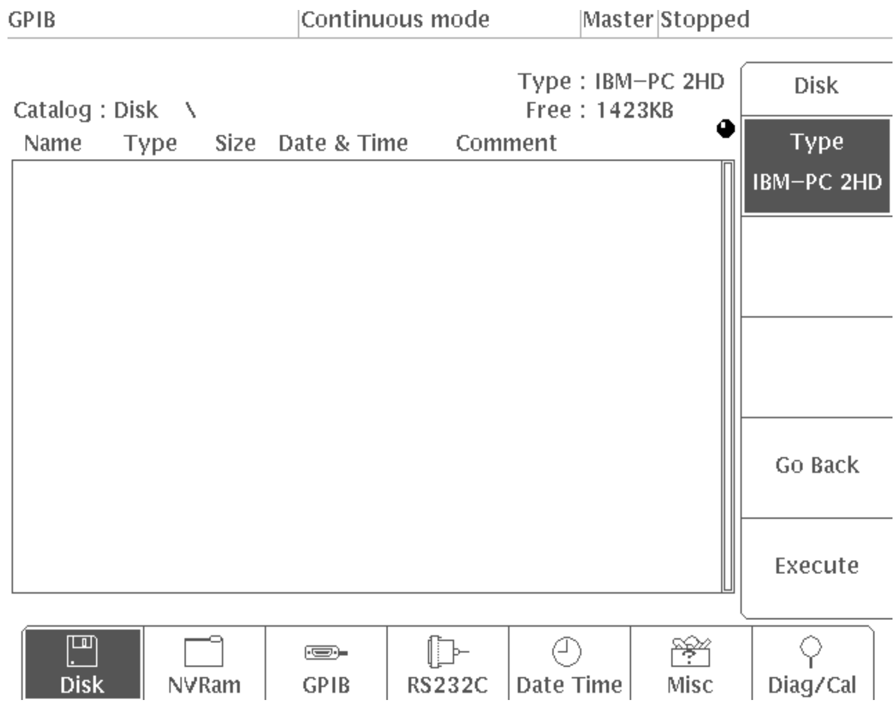


Figure 4E-2: Format... Sub-Menu Display

Formatting disks

To format floppy disks, perform these steps:

- [ ] **Step 1:** Select **Disk** from the bottom menu.
- [ ] **Step 2:** Insert the 3.5-inch floppy disk to be formatted into the disk drive on the right side panel of this instrument.

CAUTION

Formatting a disk destroys any data on that disk! Before formatting a disk, make sure it contains no data you might ever need.

- [ ] **Step 3:** Select **Format...** from the second page of the side menu (**More 2 of 2**).

☐ **Step 4:** The currently selected format will appear in the **Type** item in the sub-menu. Select the correct format with the general purpose knob. The following formats can be selected for **Type**:

- IBM-PC 2HD
- PC9800 2HD
- J3100 2HD
- IBM-PC 2DD
- PC9800 2DD

When floppy disks written by this instrument are used in a personal computer, select the correct format type as indicated by Table 4E-2.

Table 4E-2: MS-DOS Formats for 3.5-inch Disks

Format Type	IBM-PC	PC9800	J3100
1.44 Mbytes/18 sectors (2HD)	1	3	2
1.2 Mbytes/8 sectors (2HD)	3	1	2
1.2 Mbytes/15 sectors (2HD)	3	2	1
720 Kbytes/9 sectors (2DD)	1	2	1
640 Kbytes/8 sectors (2 DD)	2	1	2

1: Format normally used on personal computer (format selected with AWG2005).
2 :Not regular format, but can be read and written.
3: Can not be read or written.

NOTE

The IBM-PC and J3100 2DD formats are the same. Thus, use the ***IBM-PC 2DD*** *format for J3100 2DD disks.*

☐ **Step 5:** After selecting the format, select **Execute** from the sub-menu. This starts the disk formatting. During formatting, a message to that effect, ”**Formatting disk...**” is displayed on the screen.

NOTE

A disk with its write prevent tab in the write-protected position cannot be formatted. Slide the tab to the write-enable position, then try again. See the discussion below of write prevention.

When formatting is complete, the message on the screen will disappear and an empty file list will appear with the format type and available disk space shown in the upper right-hand corner.

☐ **Step 6:** Select **Go Back** from the sub-menu. The system returns from the **Format...** current sub-menu to the previous side menu.

☐ **Step 7:** Pressing the eject button on the right side of the disk drive ejects the floppy disk.

Handling Floppy Disks

3.5” floppy disks are easy to store and use. However, to prevent them from being damaged and to ensure the integrity of the data stored on them, you should be careful of the following:

- Do not place disks near a strong magnetic field or near a ferromagnetic substance that may cause them to be magnetized, as this will corrupt the data stored on the disk and result in errors.
- Do not expose disks to direct sunlight or high temperatures for long periods of time. Also, avoid storing them in places subject to extreme cold or high humidity. When bringing disks into a room from outside, do not use them immediately; let them become acclimated to the environment before use.
- Do not touch the recording medium on the surface of the disk. Fingerprints on the surface of the disk may cause the heads to skip, resulting in errors.
- When storing disks for long periods of time, be sure to place them in their protective cases.
- Be sure to place labels in the proper location on the disks.
- Do not press the eject button on the disk drive to eject the floppy disk while the indicator light is lit. This may cause the data stored on the disk to become corrupted, resulting in errors.

Protecting Disks From Accidental Erasure

There is a write protect tab on the underside of the floppy disk. To lock the disk, press this tab down toward the edge of the disk to expose the little hole underneath, as shown in Figure 4E-3. Locking the disk will prevent it from being written to or erased. To unlock the disk and enable it to be written to or erased, move the tab back toward the center of the disk so it covers the hole.

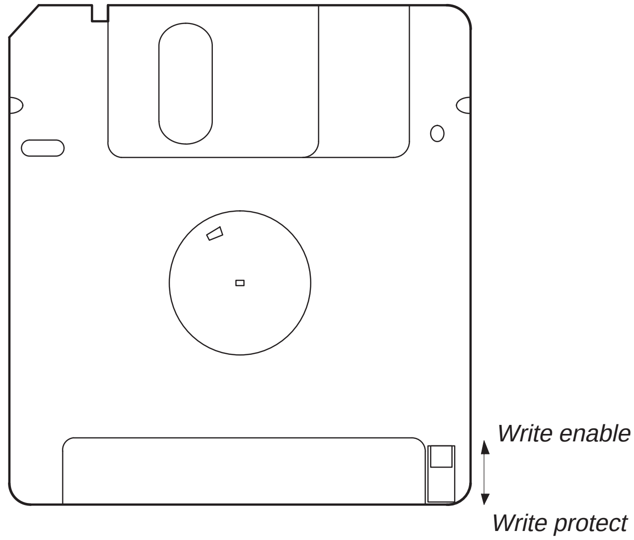


Figure 4E-3: Write Protect Tab on a Floppy Disk

Creating and Changing Directories

When there are many files, it becomes difficult to manage them. Placing all files of the same type into separate directories makes it easier to manage the files.

In addition to files, directories can also contain sub-directories. With directories, hierarchical structures can be constructed with successive directories. Directories are distinguished by their names. The original directory that contains all the files and directories is called the root directory and the directories within it are called sub-directories.

This instrument can make directories to manage files the same as with MS-DOS. Directories are created with the **Make Directory** side menu item. The suffix ”**.DIR**” is attached to created directories.

To operate on a certain file within a given sub-directory, it is necessary to move to that sub-directory. Thus, use the **Change Directory** side menu item to move to the desired sub-directory. The next directory is now the object of any future operations and is called the current directory. The **LOAD**/**SAVE** menu can be used to change directories too.

The setting of the **LOAD**/**SAVE** menu **Auto Load** item determines the current directory at power on. When the **Auto Load** item is set to **Disk**, the current directory is selected automatically the named **AWG2005** sub-directory. (In this case, this **AWG2005** sub-directory must exist.) If **Auto Load** is **Off**, the current directory is the root directory.

NOTE

A file hierarchy with multiple layers can be created on the disk, using up to 54 characters, including the \ character. The shorter the directory name is, the deeper the levels that you can create. When the directory display becomes too large for the display area window, the initial section is omitted.

Example: Creating a Directory

For example, to create a sub-directory called **AWG2005**, such as root directory: AWG2005 (DIR) – perform the following steps.

Root directory —— AWG2005 (DIR)

If the named **AWG2005** sub-directory has been created ahead of time, when its power is switched on, the files under the **AWG2005** directory are automatically loaded into internal memory by the **LOAD**/**SAVE** menu **Auto Load** setting.

The following procedure assumes that the current directory is the root directory. If the current directory is not the root directory, use **Change Directory** to change the current directory to the root directory. (See the Step 5 and the following steps.)

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Disk** from the bottom menu.

A list of the files and directories in the root directory of the inserted floppy disk is displayed on the screen. See Figure 4E-4. **Catalog:Disk ** on the CRT screen shows that the current directory is the root directory.

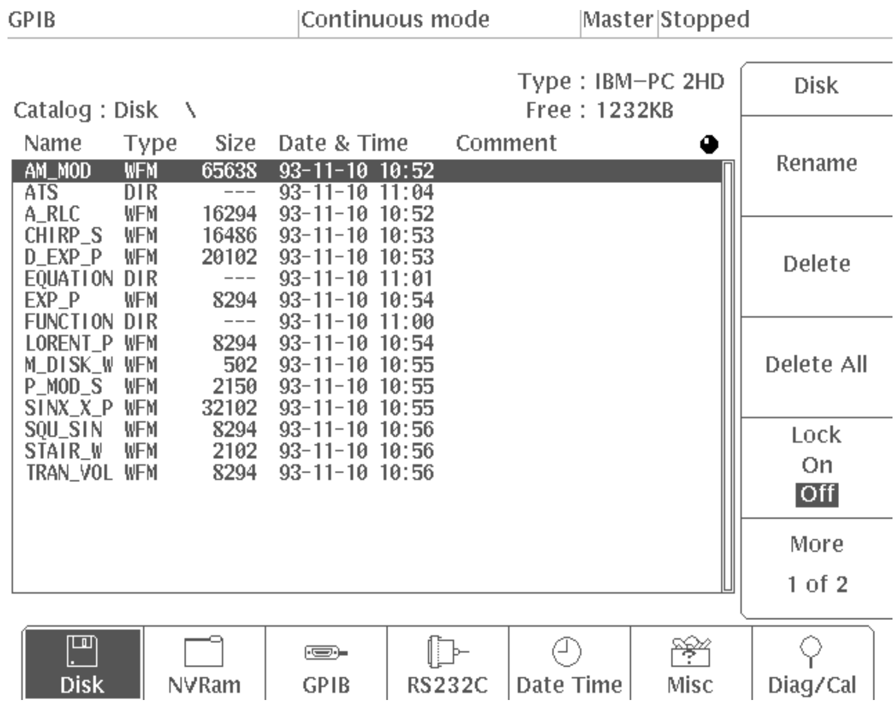


Figure 4E-4: File and Directory Display in the Root Directory

☐ **Step 2:** Select **More 1 of 2**, then **Make Directory** from the side menu. The menu for naming the directory is displayed.

☐ **Step 3:** Use the general purpose knob to input a directory name of **AWG2005**. See Figure 4E-5. The method for inputting the directory name is the same as the method for inputting a file name in the waveform editor. See "Naming a File" in the discussion of the waveform editor.

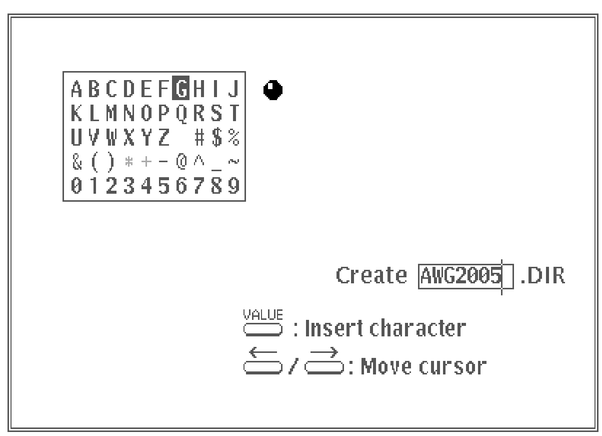


Figure 4E-5: Directory Name Input

☐ **Step 4:** After you have input the directory name, select **O.K.** from the sub-menu. The **AWG2005** directory is created in the floppy disk.

Example: Changing a Directory

☐ **Step 5:** Select **Change Directory** from the side menu.

☐ **Step 6:** Use the general purpose knob to select the **AWG2005** sub-directory you just created from the directory list. See Figure 4E-6.

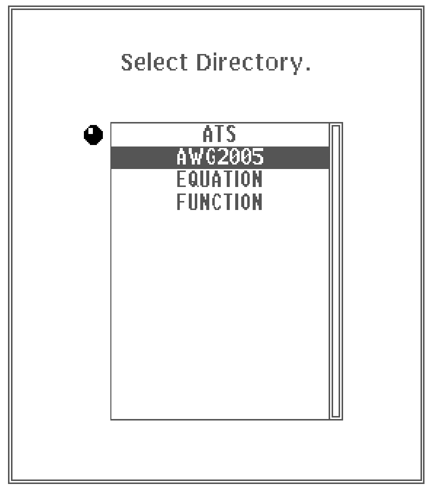


Figure 4E-6: Directory Displayed When Change Directory is Selected

☐ **Step 7:** Select **O.K.** from the sub-menu. The current directory changes to the **AWG2005** directory you just made and the directory display becomes **Catalog:Disk\AWG2005**. At this time, the **AWG2005** directory is empty. See Figure 4E-7.

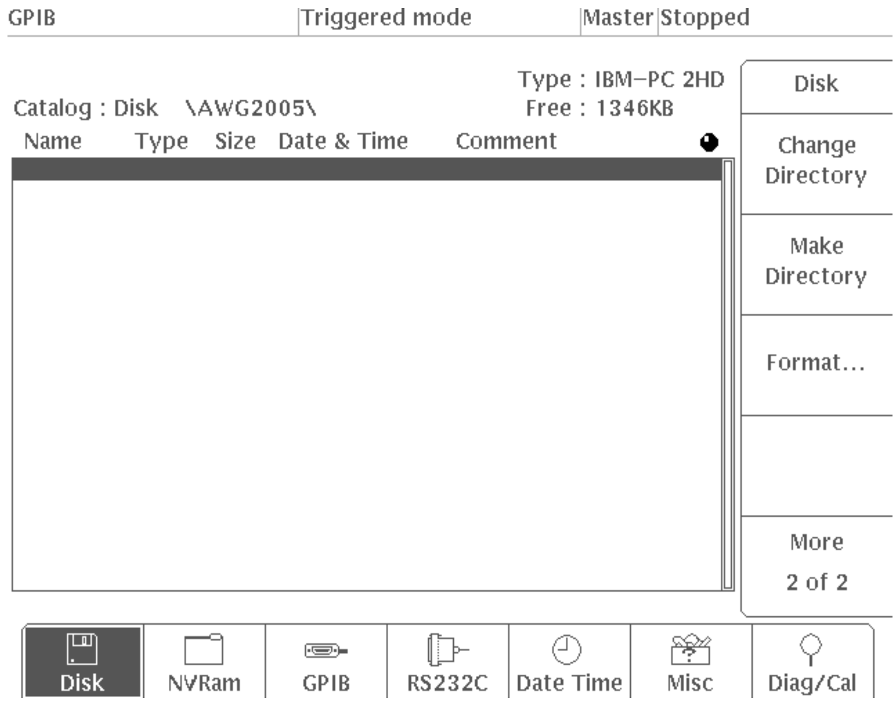


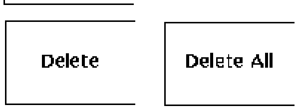
Figure 4E-7: File List for a Newly Created Directory

This completes the move of the current directory to the **AWG2005** sub-directory. Files and new directories can be created in this directory. Next, here is how to return the current directory to the root directory.

☐ **Step 8:** Again, select **Change Directory** from the side menu. Only ”**..**” is displayed in the directory list. Select **O.K.** from the sub-menu.

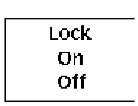
Selecting ”**..**” from the directory list moves the current directory to the directory one above. In this case, that is the root directory, so the system is back where it started.

Operating Files Saved to Disk



The side menu has **Rename**, **Delete**, and **Delete All** for file operating. These items are the same as those in the **EDIT** menu. See Page 4A-7 to 4A-9. These functions can rename and delete files. Directories can also be deleted by selecting the **Delete** item. However, this is only possible when there are no files and directories at levels below the directory to be deleted.

Locking and Unlocking a File



This item locks a file. When a file is locked, the file can neither be changed nor erased. This item locks and unlocks a file the same as the **Lock** item in the **EDIT** menu. See Page 4A-10.

Internal Non-volatile Memory

Files saved to the internal non-volatile memory can be operated with this bottom menu. When **NVRam** is selected from the bottom menu, the **Rename**, **Delete**, **Delete All**, and **Lock** side menu items are displayed. These functions can rename, delete, and lock files. These items are the same as those in the **EDIT** menu. See Page 4A-7 to 4A-10.

Figure 4E-8 shows the menu displayed when **NVRam** is selected from the bottom menu.

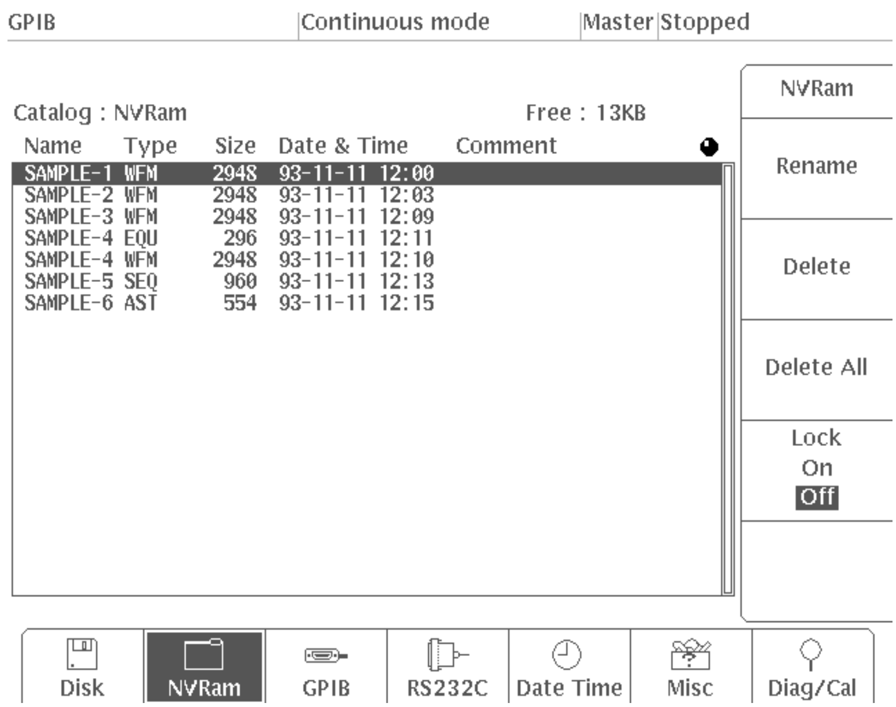


Figure 4E-8: Menu Displayed When NVRam is Selected

Remote Interface

This instrument's rear panel has two remote control interface ports: **IEEE STD 488 (GPIB)** and **RS-232-C**. (Note: There is no RS-232-C port when Option 04 has been installed.) A computer can be used to control the instrument remotely through these interfaces.

The port is selected using the Remote Port item [**UTILITY** menu → **Misc** (bottom menu) → **Config...** (side menu) → **Remote Port**].

GPIB

These are simple descriptions of the GPIB connection and GPIB configuration setting. For further details, see the Programmer Manual.

GPIB Connection

The cable from the GPIB controller (computer) is connected to the **IEEE STD 488** connector on this instrument's rear panel.

Setting GPIB Configuration

Devices on the GPIB bus must be configured compatibly in order to communicate.

Select **GPIB** from the bottom menu to set the GPIB configuration. See Figure 4E-9. Use the side menu items to set the GPIB configuration and the address of this instrument.

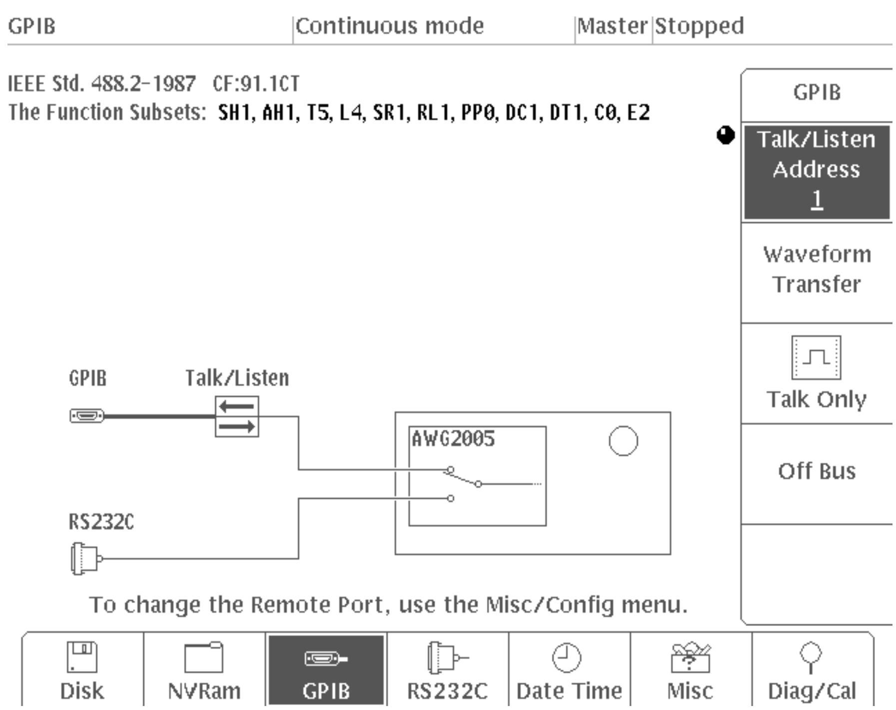
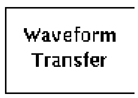


Figure 4E-9: Menu Displayed When GPIB is Selected

This instrument can be set to one of four operating modes: talk/listen, waveform transfer, talk only, or off-bus. However, you should be aware that talk only and waveform transfer modes are not compliant with IEEE 488.2-1987.

Talk/Listen

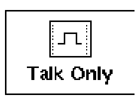
Select talk/listen mode to communicate with the controller via the GPIB. When the **Talk/Listen Address** item is selected, the operating mode for this instrument and other devices is set to talk/listen or the general purpose knob and the numeric keys set the GPIB address for this instrument. The GPIB address setting range is **0**–**30**. Other devices on the bus cannot use the address number allocated to this instrument.



Waveform Transfer

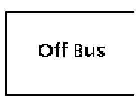
Select **Waveform Transfer** mode to download waveform data. In this mode, waveform data does not go through the controller; it is downloaded directly to the internal memory of the instrument from a digital storage oscilloscope or other instrument. See Table 4D-2 in Section 4D LOAD/SAVE menu for a list of supported instruments.

Actual waveform transfer is performed using the **LOAD**/**SAVE** menu. See Page 4D-12.



Talk Only

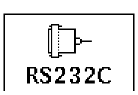
Select **Talk Only** to output a hard copy of the waveform data. When the Port setting is **GPIB** [**UTILITY** menu → **Misc** (bottom menu) → **Hardcopy...** (side menu) → **Port** (sub-menu)], pressing the **HARDCOPY** button on the front panel causes a hard copy of the waveform to be output.



Off Bus

Select **Off Bus** to disconnect the AWG2005 from the GPIB bus.

RS-232-C



Use the RS-232-C interface on the rear panel to allow remote control by a host computer. These are simple descriptions of the RS-232-C connection and RS-232-C parameter setting. For further details, see the AWG2000 series Programmer Manual.

RS-232-C Connection

To select the RS-232-C port, select **RS232C** for **Remote Port** [**UTILITY** menu → **Misc** (bottom menu) → **Config...** (side menu) → **Remote Port** (sub-menu)].

A cable is connected between the computer and this instrument's RS-232-C connector. This instrument must be configured as the data communications equipment (DCE) and the host computer must be configured as the data terminal equipment (DTE).

Setting the RS-232-C Parameters

The RS-232-C parameters for both devices must match to allow communication between this instrument and the host computer.

Before communicating with the connected computer, the RS-232-C parameters are set with the menu in Figure 4E-10. Press the side button for the desired parameter and set it with the general purpose knob.

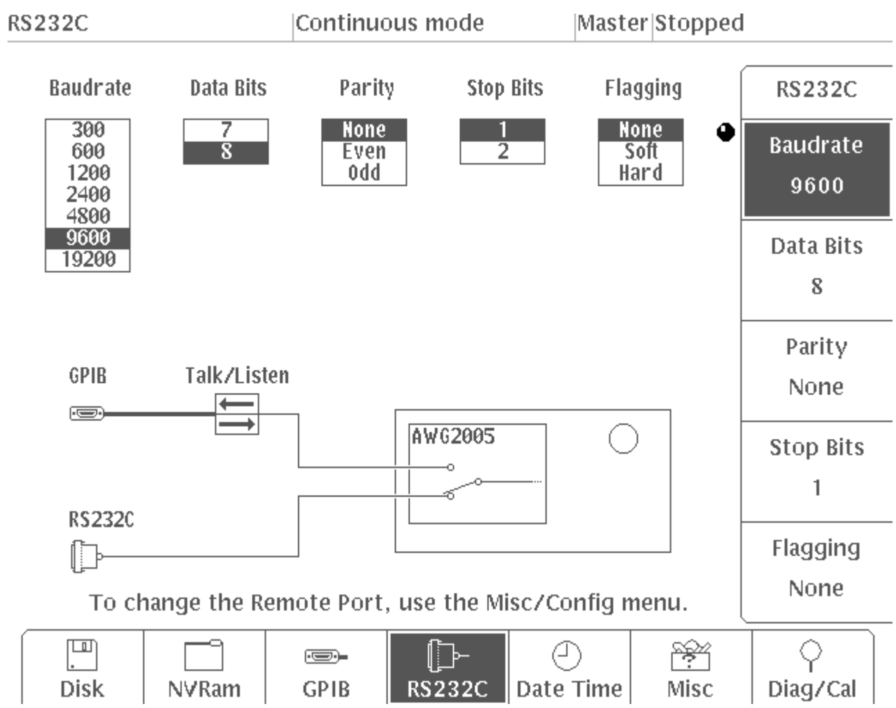


Figure 4E-10: Menu Displayed When RS232C is Selected

Baudrate

Baudrate — This item sets the transmission rate. The transmission rate of **300**, **600**, **1200**, **2400**, **4800**, **9600**, and **19200** can be selected with the general purpose knob. Set this parameter to the same value as set on the computer.

Parity

Parity — This item sets the error detection method. The general purpose knob is used to select parity of **None**, **Odd**, or **Even**. Set this parameter to match the connected computer's parity.

Data Bits

Data Bits — This item selects **7** or **8** data bits. Set this parameter to match the connected computer's data bits.

Stop Bits

Stop Bits — This item selects **1** or 2 stop bits. Set this parameter to match the connected computer's stop bits.

Flagging

Flagging — This item selects **None**, **Soft**, or **Hard**. This item is used by this instrument or the computer to announce that the input buffer is full. Until the transmission allowed instruction is issued, the other device stops the data transfer.

Date and Time

When **Date Time** is selected from the bottom menu, a clock will appear on the screen, allowing you to set the date and time. The side menu will display items for **Year**, **Month**, **Day**, **Hour** and **Minute**. Pressing one of these items in the side menu will make it possible to set that clock parameter using the general purpose knob.

The set date and time are recorded as the time stamp when a file is created. Figure 4E-11 shows the menu displayed when **Date Time** is selected.

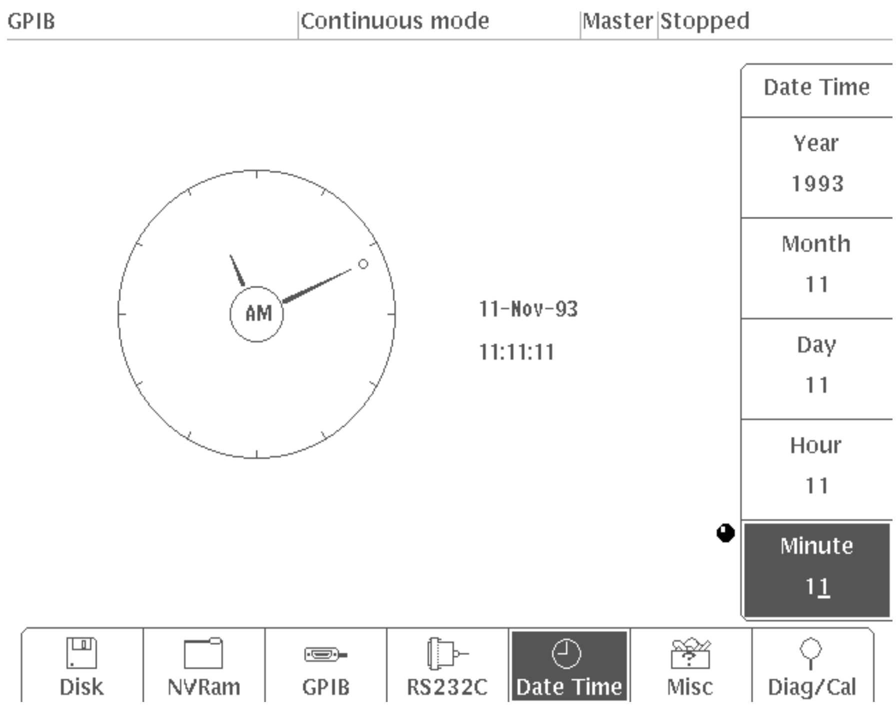


Figure 4E-11: Menu Displayed When Date Time is Selected

Setting the Date and Time

Procedure

- ☐ **Step 1:** Select **Date Time** from the bottom menu.
- ☐ **Step 2:** Select **Year** from the side menu. Use the general purpose knob or the numeric keys to set the year.
- ☐ **Step 3:** In the same way, select the **Month**, **Day**, and **Hour** and set the month, day, and hour.

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Minute** from the side menu. Each time the minute is set with the general purpose knob, the second is reset to 00. When the time is set, the minute is set at the same time the second is reset to 0. (The second is also reset to 00 when the hour is set with **Hour**.)

The date and time can be permanently displayed on the screen if desired. See "Date/Time Display" on page 4E-24.

Other Settings and Displays

Use the **Misc** item to set or display the following:

- Display...

Brightness	Setting the Display Brightness
Catalog Order	Setting the Order of Files
Date Time	Date/Time Display

- Config...

Reset to Factory	Factory Settings
Secure Erase Memory	Deleting Data From Memory
Remote Port	Remote Port Settings

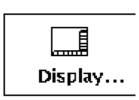
- Hardcopy...

Format	Selecting the Hard Copy Output Format
Port	Selecting the Hard Copy Output Port

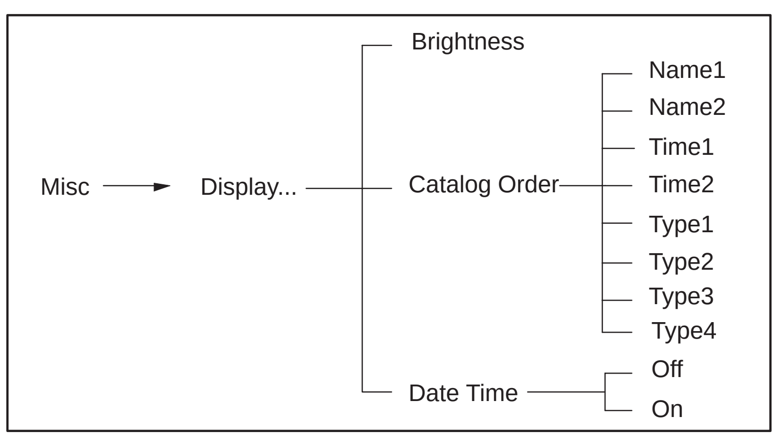
- Status...

System	System and GPIB/RS-232-C Status
I/O	I/O Event Reporting

Setting the Display



The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the **Display...** item.



In this section, we will discuss the **Brightness**, **Catalog Order** and **Date Time** items in the sub-menu.

Setting the Display Brightness

The AWG2005 screen has three levels of brightness. These levels are set with the **Brightness** item.

Procedure

To set the screen brightness:

- ☐ **Step 1:** Select **Misc** from the bottom menu.
- ☐ **Step 2:** Select **Display...** from the side menu.
- ☐ **Step 3:** Select **Brightness** from the sub-menu.
- ☐ **Step 4:** Use the numeric keys or general purpose knob to input the appropriate display brightness. The display brightness can be adjusted in steps of 1% in the range 0–100%. The default display brightness is 70%.

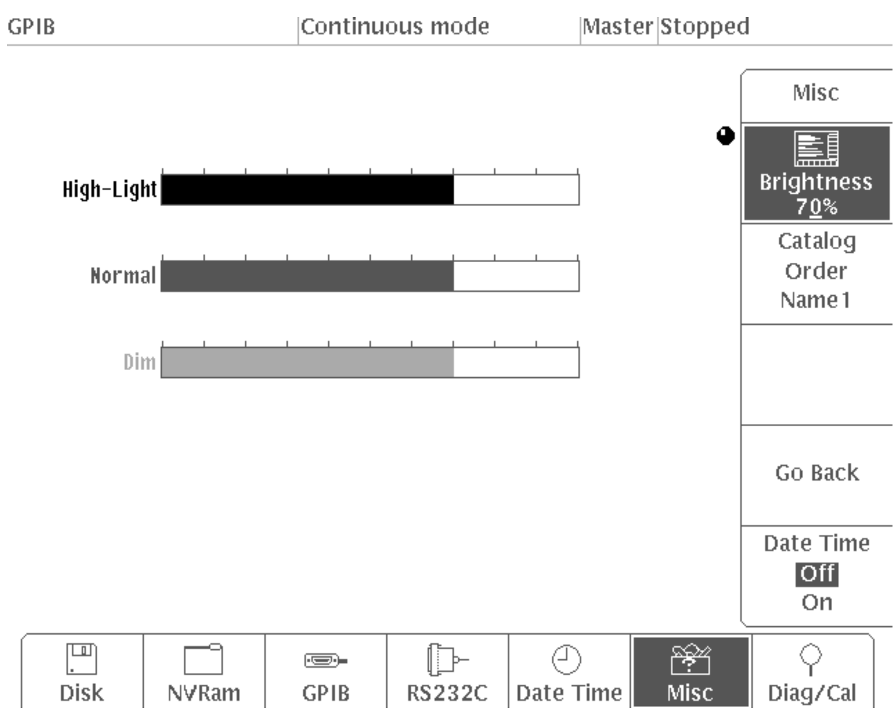
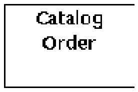


Figure 4E-12: Setting the Display Brightness

Setting the Order of Files



Use this item to set the order in which files are displayed in the catalog. You can display files sorted by file name, date and time or file type (extension). Figure 4E-13 shows the screen when **Catalog Order** has been chosen from the sub-menu.

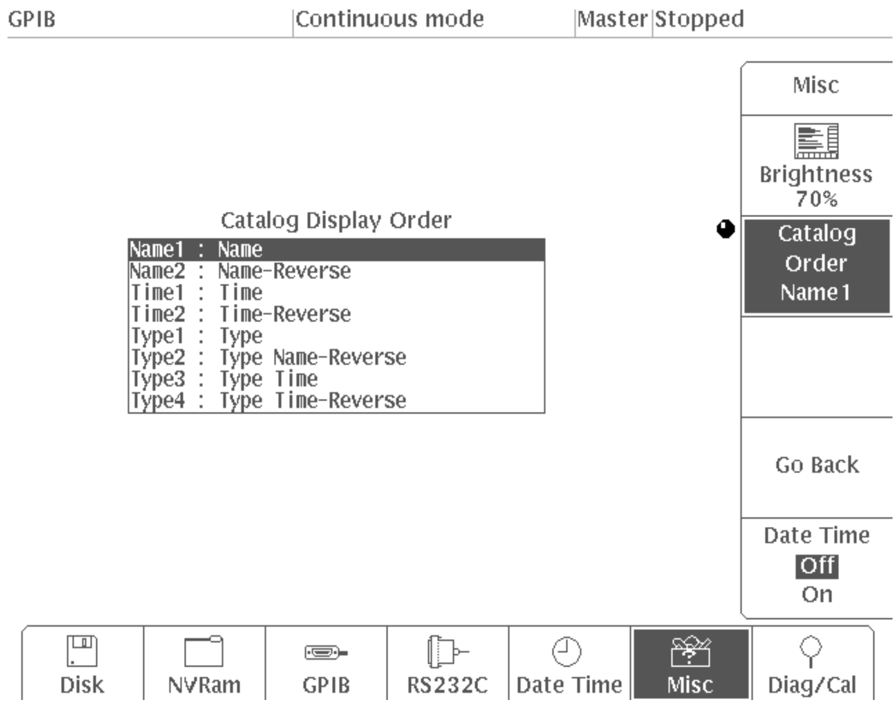
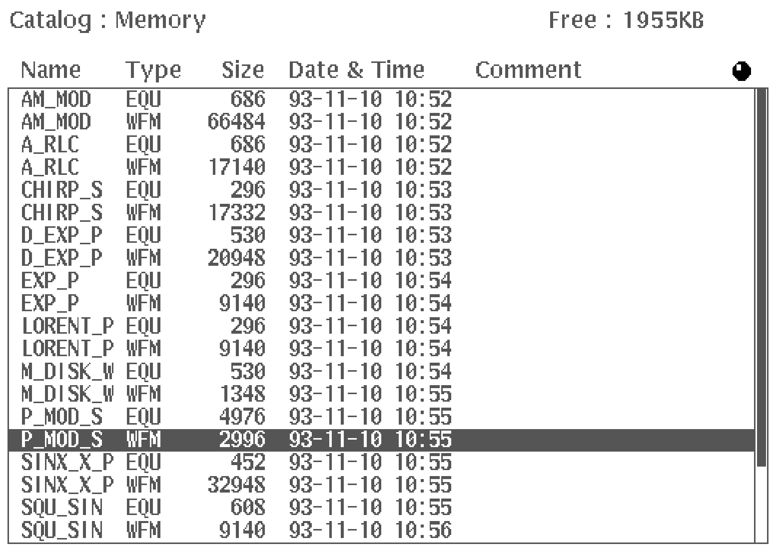


Figure 4E-13: Menu Displayed when Catalog Order is Selected

The files in the catalog are displayed in the initial **EDIT** menu, **LOAD**/**SAVE** and **UTILITY** menus. Changing the file order in a catalog will change the order in all menus. Figure 4E-14 shows the list of files as shown in the initial **EDIT** menu.



Catalog : Memory   Free : 1955KB

Name	Type	Size	Date & Time	Comment
AM_MOD	EQU	686	93-11-10 10:52	
AM_MOD	WFM	66484	93-11-10 10:52	
A_RLC	EQU	686	93-11-10 10:52	
A_RLC	WFM	17140	93-11-10 10:52	
CHIRP_S	EQU	296	93-11-10 10:53	
CHIRP_S	WFM	17332	93-11-10 10:53	
D_EXP_P	EQU	530	93-11-10 10:53	
D_EXP_P	WFM	20948	93-11-10 10:53	
EXP_P	EQU	296	93-11-10 10:54	
EXP_P	WFM	9140	93-11-10 10:54	
LORENT_P	EQU	296	93-11-10 10:54	
LORENT_P	WFM	9140	93-11-10 10:54	
M_DISK_W	EQU	530	93-11-10 10:54	
M_DISK_W	WFM	1348	93-11-10 10:55	
P_MOD_S	EQU	4976	93-11-10 10:55	
P_MOD_S	WFM	2996	93-11-10 10:55	
SINX_X_P	EQU	452	93-11-10 10:55	
SINX_X_P	WFM	32948	93-11-10 10:55	
SQU_SIN	EQU	608	93-11-10 10:55	
SQU_SIN	WFM	9140	93-11-10 10:56	

Figure 4E-14: Catalog Files

Files in a catalog can be displayed by the following sorting conditions:

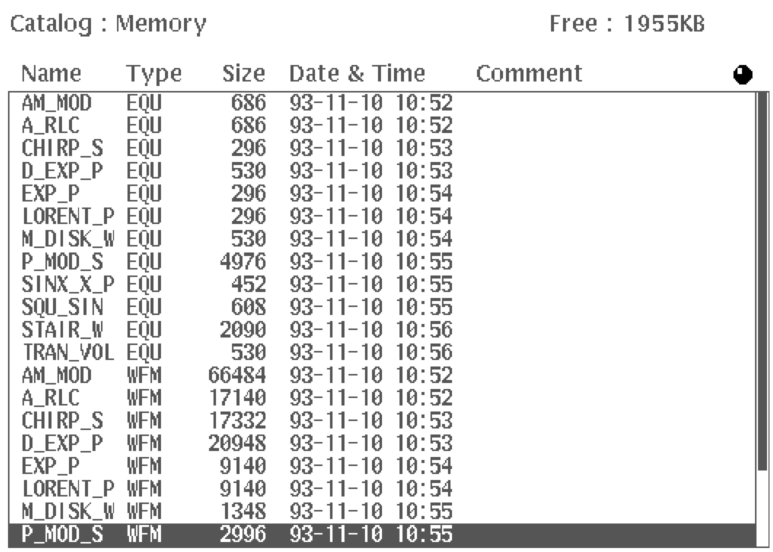
- Name1: Name
  Files are displayed by file name (**Name**) in ASCII code order.
- Name2: Name-Reverse
  Files are displayed by file name (**Name**) in reverse ASCII code order.
- Time1: Time
  Files are displayed by creation date (**Date & Time**), from newest to oldest.
- Time2: Time-Reverse
  Files are displayed by creation date (**Date & Time**), from oldest to newest.
- Type1: Type
  Files are displayed by extension (**Type**) in alphabetical order.
- Type2: Type Name-Reverse
  Files are displayed by extension (**Type**) in alphabetical order and, within each file type, by name (**Name**) in reverse ASCII code order.
- Type3: Type Time
  Files are displayed by extension (**Type**) in alphabetical order and, within each file type, by creation date (**Date & Time**) from newest to oldest.
- Type4: Type Time-Reverse
  Files are displayed by extension (**Type**) in alphabetical order and, within each file type, by creation date (**Date & Time**) from oldest to newest.

Procedure

To change the order in which files are displayed to **Type4**:

- ☐ **Step 1:** Select **Misc** from the bottom menu.
- ☐ **Step 2:** Select **Display...** from the side menu.
- ☐ **Step 3:** Select **Catalog Order** from the sub-menu.
- ☐ **Step 4:** Use the general purpose knob to select **Type4**.
- ☐ **Step 5:** Press the **EDIT** button in the **MENU** column. Check to make sure that the files are sorted in the order you have selected.

  Figure 4E-15 shows the files displayed in **Type4** format, with files sorted by extension (**Type**) in alphabetical order and within each file type by creation date (**Date & Time**), from oldest to newest.

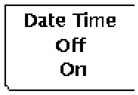


Catalog : Memory   Free : 1955KB

Name	Type	Size	Date & Time	Comment
AM_MOD	EQU	686	93-11-10 10:52	
A_RLC	EQU	686	93-11-10 10:52	
CHIRP_S	EQU	296	93-11-10 10:53	
D_EXP_P	EQU	530	93-11-10 10:53	
EXP_P	EQU	296	93-11-10 10:54	
LORENT_P	EQU	296	93-11-10 10:54	
M_DISK_W	EQU	530	93-11-10 10:54	
P_MOD_S	EQU	4976	93-11-10 10:55	
SINX_X_P	EQU	452	93-11-10 10:55	
SQU_SIN	EQU	608	93-11-10 10:55	
STAIR_W	EQU	2090	93-11-10 10:56	
TRAN_VOL	EQU	530	93-11-10 10:56	
AM_MOD	WFM	66484	93-11-10 10:52	
A_RLC	WFM	17140	93-11-10 10:52	
CHIRP_S	WFM	17332	93-11-10 10:53	
D_EXP_P	WFM	20948	93-11-10 10:53	
EXP_P	WFM	9140	93-11-10 10:54	
LORENT_P	WFM	9140	93-11-10 10:54	
M_DISK_W	WFM	1348	93-11-10 10:55	
P_MOD_S	WFM	2996	93-11-10 10:55	

Figure 4E-15: Catalog With Files Displayed in Type4 Format

Date/Time Display



Use this item to display the date and time.

- ☐ **Step 1:** Select **Misc** from the bottom menu.
- ☐ **Step 2:** Select **Display...** from the side menu.
- ☐ **Step 3:** Press **Date Time** in the sub-menu and select **On**. The current date and time will be displayed in the upper right-hand corner of the screen, as shown in Figure 4E-16.

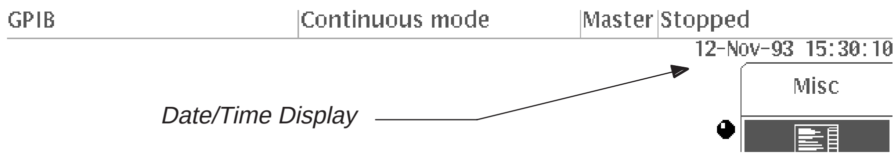
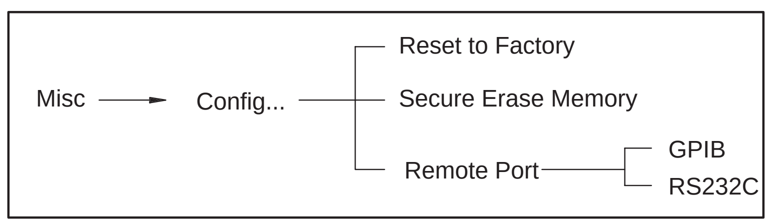


Figure 4E-16: Date/Time Display

Configuration

The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the **Config...** item.



In this section, we will discuss the **Reset to Factory**, **Secure Erase Memory**, and **Remote Port** items in the sub-menu.

Factory Settings

Select **Reset to Factory** to reset this instrument's settings to their factory values.

Procedure

- ☐ **Step 1:** Select **Misc** from the bottom menu.
- ☐ **Step 2:** Select **Config...** from the side menu.
- ☐ **Step 3:** Select **Reset to Factory** from the sub-menu.
- ☐ **Step 4:** The next message is displayed asking if it is OK to reset this instrument.

Reset to factory default.

Answer **Cancel** or **O.K.** When you select **O.K.**, this instrument is reset to its factory settings and the **SETUP** menu is displayed. Resetting the instrument to factory default settings will not affect the data stored in the internal memory and the non-volatile RAM (**NVRam**). The factory settings are listed in Appendix D.

Deleting Data From Memory

Secure Erase Memory

Use this item to delete the data stored in the internal memory and the non-volatile RAM (**NVRam**). This will also cause all values with the exception of **Date Time** (date and time) to be restored to their default settings. Default settings consist of the factory settings and the following items:

Remote Port	GPIB
GPIB Operating Mode	Talk/Listen
GPIB Address	1
RS-232-C Parameters	
Baudrate	9600
Data Bits	8
Parity	None
Stop Bits	1
Flagging	None

CAUTION

Once deleted, data cannot be restored.

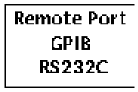
Procedure

- [ ] **Step 1:** Select **Misc** from the bottom menu.
- [ ] **Step 2:** Select **Config...** from the side menu.
- [ ] **Step 3:** Select **Secure Erase Memory** from the sub-menu.
- [ ] **Step 4:** The following message will appear, asking you to confirm that you really want to delete the data from memory:

Initializes both catalog memory and NVRam
then puts all setups in the factory defaults.

Answer **Cancel** or **O.K.** If you select **O.K.**, all data will be deleted from memory and settings will be restored to factory defaults, and then the **SET-UP** menu will appear.

Remote Port Settings

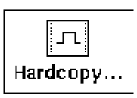


This instrument's rear panel has two remote control interface ports: **IEEE STD 488** (GPIB) and **RS-232-C**. (Note: There is no **RS-232-C** port when Option 04 has been installed.) Select the desired port, depending on which interface you will be using.

Procedure

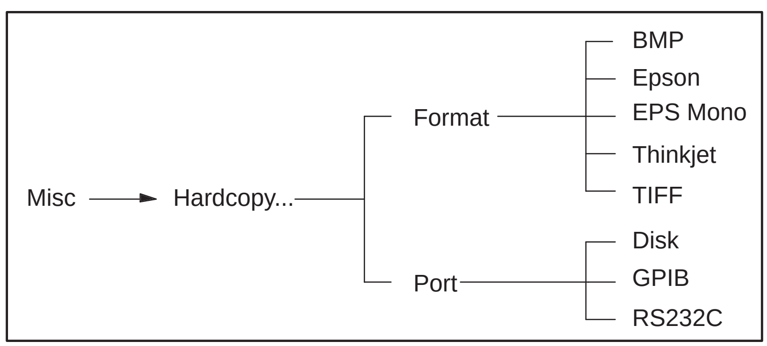
- ☐ **Step 1:** Select **Misc** from the bottom menu.
- ☐ **Step 2:** Select **Config...** from the side menu.
- ☐ **Step 3:** Press the **Remote Port** button in the sub-menu and select either **GPIB** or **RS232C**. The remote interface port that you have selected will be displayed on the left side of the status line at the top of the screen.

Settings for Hard Copy Output

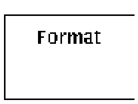


When you output a hard copy, you can choose to either save the data displayed on the screen on a floppy disk as a file, or output the data through the **IEEE STD 488** (GPIB) or **RS-232-C** interface.

When you select **Hardcopy...** from the side menu, you can select the format for the hard copy and the output port. The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the **Hardcopy...** item.



Selecting the Format



Use this item to select the output format for the hard copy. You may select any one of five formats: **BMP**, **Epson**, **EPS Mono**, **Thinkjet** or **TIFF**.

Figure 4E-17: Format Selection Menu

Table 4E-3 shows the extension for each format and gives a brief description of that format.

Table 4E-3: Format Extensions

Format	Extension	Explanation
BMP	BPM	A format for a Windows black & white image file
Epson	ESC	A format for output to a 9-pin or 24-pin dot matrix printer in ESC/P graphic mode.
EPS Mono	EPS	Encapsulated Postscript format for black & white image files.
Thinkjet	TJ	A format used for output to HP (Hewlett Packard) inkjet printers.
TIFF	TIF	TIFF format

Selecting the Port

Use this item to select the port from which the hard copy will be output. Three choices are available: **Disk**, **GPIB** and **RS232C**.

Figure 4E-18: Port Selection Menu

Procedure

In this example, you will print a hard copy of the **SETUP** menu in **TIFF** format from the **Disk** port.

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Misc** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Hardcopy...** from the side menu.

☐ **Step 3:** Select **Format** from the sub-menu.

☐ **Step 4:** Use the general purpose knob to select **TIFF** format.

- ☐ **Step 5:** Select **Port** from the sub-menu.
- ☐ **Step 6:** Use the general purpose knob to select **Disc**.
- ☐ **Step 7:** Select **Go Back** from the sub-menu.
- ☐ **Step 8:** Insert a formatted disk into the disk drive of the instrument.
- ☐ **Step 9:** Display the **SETUP** menu on the screen.
- ☐ **Step 10:** Press the **HARDCOPY** button on the front panel. A hard copy of the screen will be printed. The following message will appear in the message area:

    Hardcopy in progress.

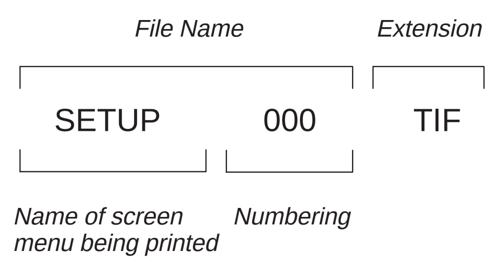
    If you want to stop printing the hard copy in mid-process, press the **HARDCOPY** button again.

    When the hard copy has been printed, the following message will appear:

    Saved in SETUP000.TIF.

    This means that the hard copy has been saved to the floppy disk in TIFF format under the file name **SETUP000**.

File names and extensions will be assigned automatically based on the menu and the format of the hard copy.

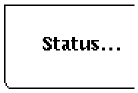


The file name is given the name of the screen menu being printed, as shown below.

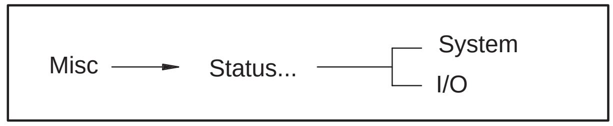
Menu	File Name
SETUP	SETUP
MODE	MODE_
EDIT	EDIT_
LOAD/SAVE	LOAD_
UTILITY	UTIL_
F.G	FG___

Numbers will range from 0 to 999 for each menu.

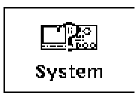
Status Display



The following diagram shows the menu configuration for the **Status...** item.



System and GPIB/RS-232-C Status



Select **System** to display system and GPIB/RS-232-C status window. The system status comprises the instrument name, firmware version number, and installation data for each board.

The GPIB status is the address, and configuration. Status items other than the address and configuration are set by the remote controller.

The GPIB/RS-232-C status display consists of the following items: **PSC**, **Header**, **Verbose**, **Data** and **Debug**.

In addition, the cumulative power-on time (**Up Time**) is displayed.

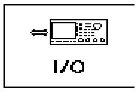
Procedure

- [ ] **Step 1:** Select **Misc** from the bottom menu.
- [ ] **Step 2:** Select **Status...** from the side menu.
- [ ] **Step 3:** Select **System** from the sub-menu. System and GPIB/RS-232-C status data will be displayed, as shown in Figure 4E-19.

Model	AWG2005	
Version	FV:1.00	
CPU Board	SRAM 512K Bytes, DRAM 4M Bytes	
FPP Board	Not installed	
Clock Board	Installed [Synthesizer]	
CH1	Installed [Analog Output]	
CH2	Installed [Analog Output]	
CH3	Not installed	
CH4	Not installed	
GPIB/RS232C		
Address	1	
Configuration	Talk/Listen	
PSC	1	
Header	1	
Verbose	1	
Data	Source	"CH1"
	Destination	"GPIB.WFM"
	Encdg	Rpbinary
	Width	2
Debug	Snoop	0, Delay 0.2 s
Up Time	0.075 hours	

Figure 4E-19: Menu Displayed When System is Selected

I/O Event Reporting



Use this item to display event reporting for the GPIB or RS-232-C interface. See the programmer manual for more information on event reporting.

Procedure

- [ ] **Step 1:** Select **Misc** from the bottom menu.
- [ ] **Step 2:** Select **Status...** from the side menu.
- [ ] **Step 3:** Select **I/O** from the sub-menu. Event reporting will be displayed, as shown in Figure 4E-20.

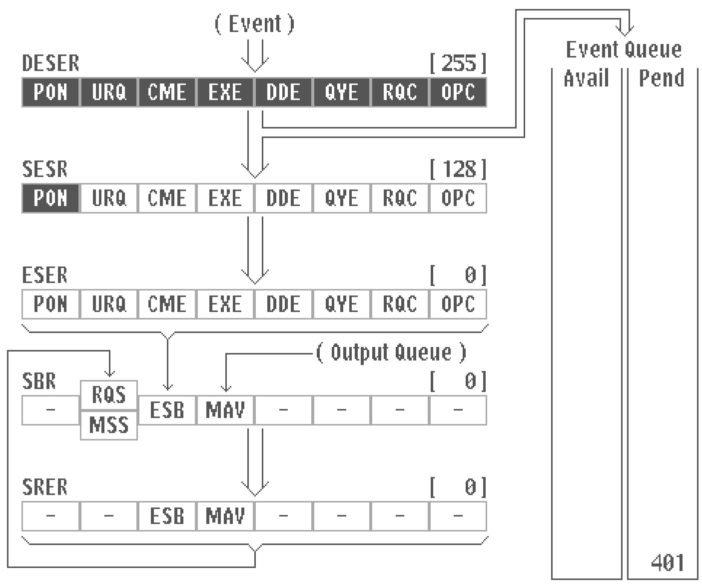
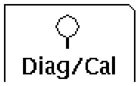


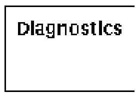
Figure 4E-20: I/O Event Reporting

Diagnostics and Calibrations



Use this item to run the diagnostics function or to calibrate the instrument.

Diagnostics



This instrument is equipped with diagnostics functions to comprehensively test itself. This makes it possible to check whether the instrument is operating correctly. A series of tests are automatically carried out when this instrument is started. These same diagnostics tests can also be initiated by selecting the **Diagnostics** item. These diagnostics are helpful when repairing this instrument. When the **Diagnostics** item is selected, the list of diagnostics items shown in Figure 4E-21 will appear.

	Diagnostics	Result	Code
*	Cpu	Pass	
*	Clock	Pass	
*	Display	Pass	
	FPP	– – –	
*	FrontPanel	Pass	
*	Trigger	Pass	
*	Setup CH1	Pass	
*	Setup CH2	Pass	
	Setup CH3	– – –	
	Setup CH4	– – –	
*	Waveform Memory CH1	Pass	
*	Waveform Memory CH2	Pass	
	Waveform Memory CH3	– – –	
	Waveform Memory CH4	– – –	

Figure 4E-21: Diagnostics List

At the top of the diagnostics menu are three columns giving the status of the diagnostic tests. The meaning of these three columns is as follows.

- **Diagnostics** — This column gives the name of the diagnostic test item. The diagnostics items are executed individually or all together.

  FPP is valid if Option 09 is installed. **Setup CH3**, **Setup CH4**, **Waveform Memory CH3** and **Waveform Memory CH4** are valid if Option 02 is installed.

- **Result** — This column gives the results of each test item. If no error is found in a test item, **Pass** is displayed. If an error is found, **Fail** is displayed. If Option 02 or Option 09 is not installed, the corresponding diagnostic items are not displayed and only ”– – –” is displayed in their place.

NOTE

The waveform outputs obtained with an instrument that has not passed all its tests are not reliable.

- **Code** — This column indicates an error code for the item where the error was detected.

NOTE

If an error occurs, contact our representative closest to you.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Diag**/**Cal** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Diagnostics** from the side menu.

☐ **Step 3:** Turn the general purpose knob to select the desired diagnostic item. To execute all the tests one after another, select **All**.

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Execute** from the side menu. The selected diagnostics items are executed.

If the test finishes without a problem, **Pass** is displayed on the **Result** column. If an error occurs, **Fail** is displayed. If the instrument fails a test, an error code is displayed in the **Code** column.

Calibrations

Calibrations

This instrument is equipped with the system to calibrate itself. This enables the AWG2005 to operate with greater precision. A series of calibrations is carried out by selecting the **Calibrations** item.

NOTE

The AWG2005 must complete its warm up (about 20 minutes) and stabilize before calibration.When the instrument is powered off while the calibrations is executed, the calibration data in the memory may be loss.

When the **Calibrations** item is selected, the list of calibration items shown in Figure 4E-22 will appear.

	Calibrations	Result	Code
*	Trigger	Pass	
*	Setup CH1	Pass	
*	Setup CH2	Pass	
	Setup CH3	---	
	Setup CH4	---	

Figure 4E-22: Calibration List

The calibration menu is divided into three columns: **Calibrations**, **Result**, and **Code**.

The calibration items are executed individually or all together.

Setup CH3 and **Setup CH4** are valid when Option 02 is installed. The **Result** and **Code** columns are the same as for the diagnostics menu.

Procedure

☐ **Step 1:** Select **Diag/Cal** from the bottom menu.

☐ **Step 2:** Select **Calibrations** from the side menu.

☐ **Step 3:** Turn the general purpose knob to select the desired calibration. To execute all the calibrations one after another, select **All**.

☐ **Step 4:** Select **Execute** from the side menu. The selected calibration item is carried out.

If the calibration finishes without a problem, **Pass** is displayed on the **Result** column. If an error occurs, **Fail** is displayed. If the instrument fails a calibration, an error code is displayed in the **Code** column.

NOTE

If an error occurs, contact our representative closest to you.

Pattern Display (For Instrument Adjustment)

Interactive Test

This item is used when adjusting the instrument. As it is not used for operation, a description is omitted here.

Function Waveform Generator Mode

General Description

Press the front panel **F.G** button to switch this instrument from arbitrary waveform generation mode into function waveform generation (**FG**) mode. Select the desired waveform with the bottom button. Then set the output parameters with the side button. Hereafter, function waveform generator mode will be referred to as **FG** mode.

NOTE

__FG__ mode is an independent of the __MENU__ column arbitrary waveform generation mode menus. Therefore, the output parameters set with the __SETUP__ menu and the operation mode set with the __MODE__ menu have no effect in __FG__ mode.

The following waveforms may be selected from the bottom menu:

Sine wave
Triangle wave
Square wave
Ramp wave
Pulse wave

The following output parameters for these waveforms may be set from the side menu:

Frequency
Amplitude
Offset
Polarity
Duty (pulse wave only)

When a sine wave is selected, a 1 MHz cut-off filter is inserted. Table 4F-1 shows the relationship between the frequency, the data point count, and the marker signal width.

Table 4F-1: Number of Data Points for Frequencies and Marker Signal Width

Frequency	Data Points	Marker Signal Width
10.00Hz～2.000kHz	10000	200(points)
2.001kHz～20.00kHz	1000	20
20.01kHz～200.0kHz	100	2

Function Generator Menu Structure

Figure 4F-1 shows the configuration of the menus in **FG** mode:

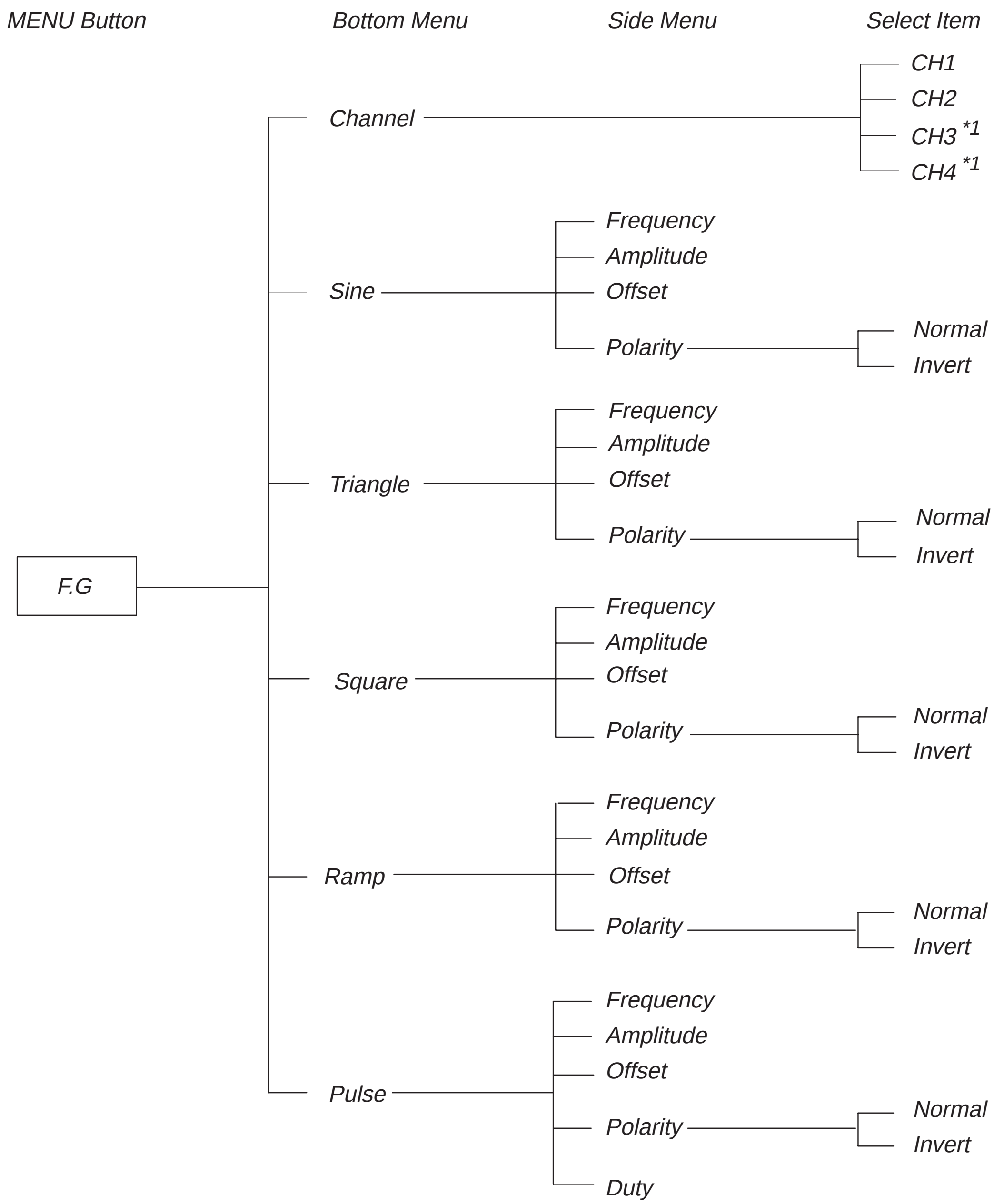


Figure 4F-1: FG Mode Menu Structure

*1 Available when Option 02 has been installed.

Function Generator Menu Display

Figure 4F-2 shows the general display for the **FG** mode menu. A description for each callout follows.

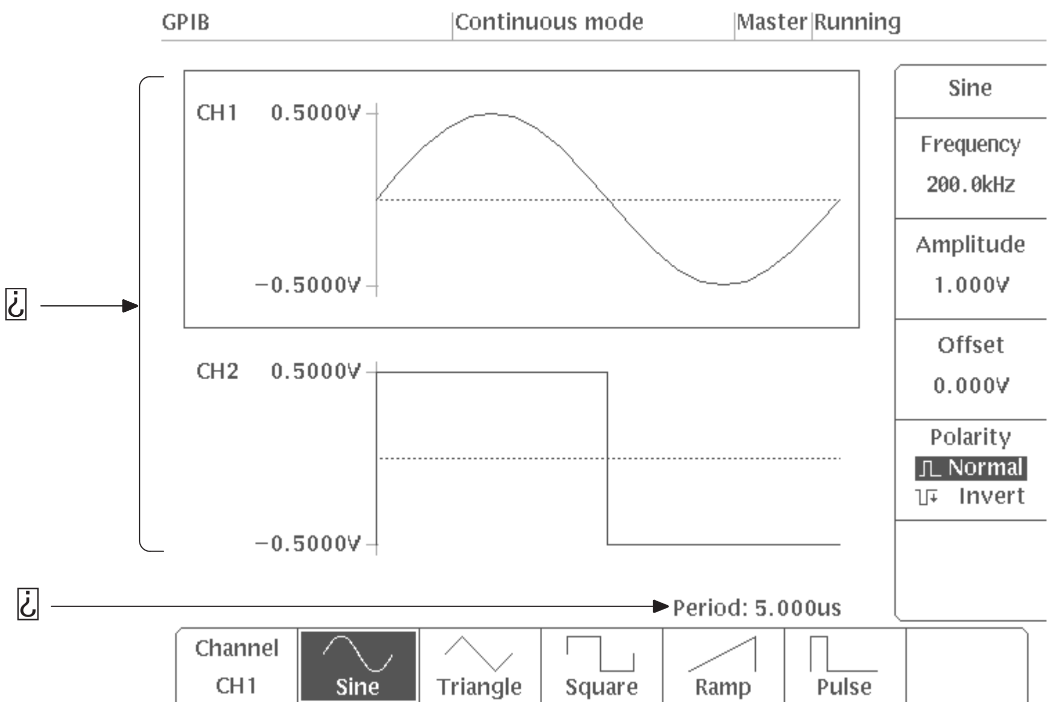


Figure 4F-2: FG Mode Menu Display

(1) Channel waveform display area

Displays the waveform set for that channel. When the channel is enclosed by a box, it is possible to change the output parameters for that waveform. The peak voltage for the waveform is shown on the vertical axis to the left of the waveform; this value is determined by the amplitude or the offset setting. The horizontal axis (the dotted line in the center of the waveform) indicates the zero line; changing the offset will cause the zero line to move up or down.

(2) Waveform period

Shows the period for the waveforms. This value is applied to all waveforms.

Setting the Output Waveform

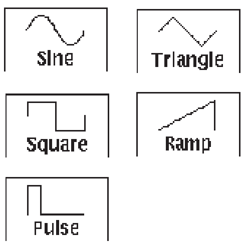
The following procedure is used to set the output waveform for a channel.

Selecting the Channel

☐ **Step 1:** Press the "**Channel**" button in the bottom menu and select the channel.

The "**Channel**" item is used to select the channel for which the waveform and its output parameters will be set. The waveform for the selected channel is displayed enclosed in a frame.

Selecting the Waveform



☐ **Step 2:** Press the bottom button corresponding to the desired type of waveform (**Sine**, **Triangle**, **Square**, **Ramp** or **Pulse**).

Setting the Output Parameters

☐ **Step 3:** Select the output parameter item from the side menu and enter a value. For details, see "Setting the Output Parameters for the Waveform" on the next page.

Waveform Output

☐ **Step 4:** Press the On/Off button for the channel to which the waveform is to be output. The selected waveform will be continuously output to that channel.

NOTE

*In **FG** mode, the operation mode is always **Cont**, meaning that waveforms are output continuously.*

Setting the Output Parameters for the Waveform

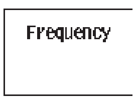
The output parameter items are the same for each waveform. However, **Pulse** has one extra side menu item, **Duty**.

NOTE

Frequency *item is common for all channels.* ***Amplitude****,* ***Offset*** *and* ***Polarity*** *items are set separately for each channel.*

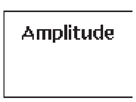
The following sections will focus on each of the items in the side menu for each waveform type.

Setting the Frequency



This item sets the frequency. The frequency is set with a 4-digit number from 1.000 Hz to 200.0 kHz. The frequency is set with the numeric keys or the general purpose knob. Waveform periods(**Period**) are displayed at the bottom of the screen.

Setting the Amplitude



This item sets the waveform amplitude. The amplitude can be set in steps of 1 mV within the range 0.050 V – 10.000 V (P-P value). The amplitude is set with the numeric keys or the general purpose knob. Figure 4F-3 shows a sine waveform whose amplitude has been set to 5V.

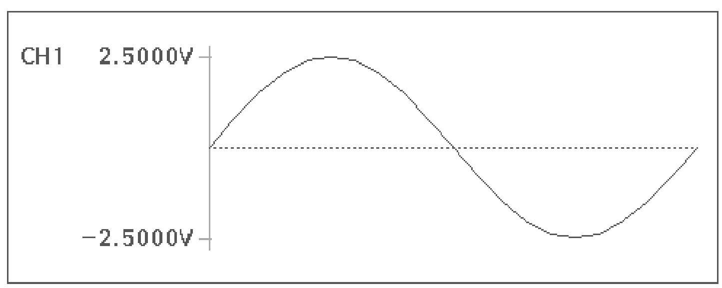


Figure 4F-3: Setting the Amplitude

Setting the Offset

This item sets the waveform offset. The offset for each waveform can be set in steps of 5 mV within the range ±5 V. The offset is set with the numeric keys or the general purpose knob. Figure 4F-4 shows the waveform used in Figure 4F-3 after an offset of 1V has been applied. The dotted line in the figure indicates the zero line.

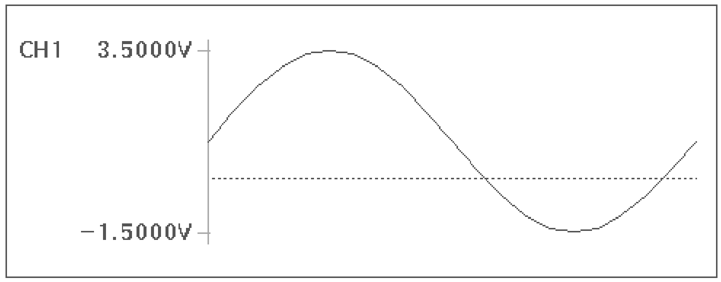
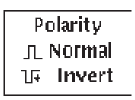


Figure 4F-4: Setting the Offset

Setting the Polarity



This item sets the output waveform polarity. Each time the **Polarity** button in the side menu is pressed, the polarity toggles between **Normal** and **Invert** and the polarity of the displayed waveform is reversed. See Figure 4F-5. The figure below at left shows a sine wave whose polarity has been set to ”**Normal,**” the figure on the right shows a sine wave whose polarity has been set to ”**Invert.**”

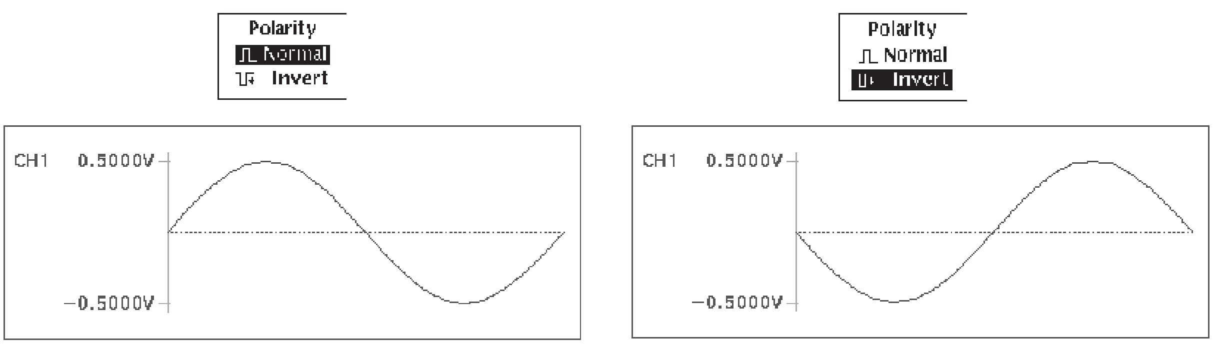
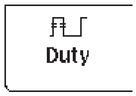


Figure 4F-5: Waveform Polarity

Setting the Duty



The **Duty** item is added for the **Pulse** side menu. This item allows you to set the duty cycle for pulse waveforms. The duty is set to 0–100% in steps of 1%. The **Duty** item is set with the numeric keys or the general purpose knob. When the duty is set to 0% or 100%, the wave will be DC. Figure 4F-6 shows a pulse waveform whose duty value has been set to 30%.

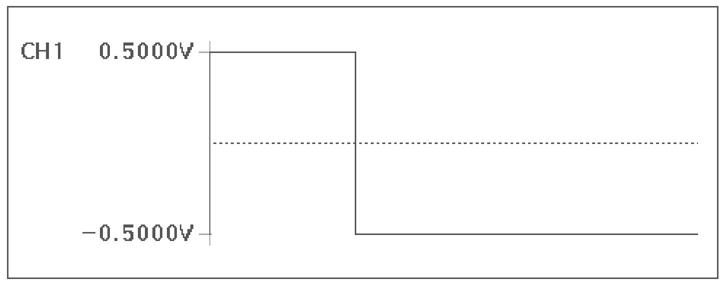


Figure 4F-6: Setting the Duty Value for a Pulse Wave

Marker Output

The marker signal is generated at the starting point for the waveform data and is at the TTL level with an output impedance of 50 Ω with no termination. The pulse width will differ depending on the frequency of the signal being output. See Table 4F-1. Marker signals are output from the **CH1 MARKER OUT** and **CH2 MARKER OUT** connectors on the rear panel.

Appendices

Appendix A: Options and Accessories

This chapter will describe the options and accessories (both standard and optional) available for the AWG2005.

Options

The following options are available with this instrument.

- Option 02 (4–Channel Output)
- Option 04 (Digital Data Output)
- Option 05 (Clock Sweep)
- Option 09 (FPP Board + FFT Editor/Convolution)
- Option 1R (Rack Mount)
- Option 1S (With WaveWriter S3FT400)

Each of these options will be discussed in detail in the following pages.

Option 02 (4-Channel Output)

This option provides two additional channels (channel 3 and channel 4). This results in 4-channel display for **SETUP**, **MODE**, **FG** menu and the **EDIT Autostep** editor (see Figures A-1 – A-4). Also, two additional connectors are added on the rear panel (**CH3 MARKER OUT** and **CH4 MARKER OUT**). See ”Rear Panel” in Section 2 ”Overview.”

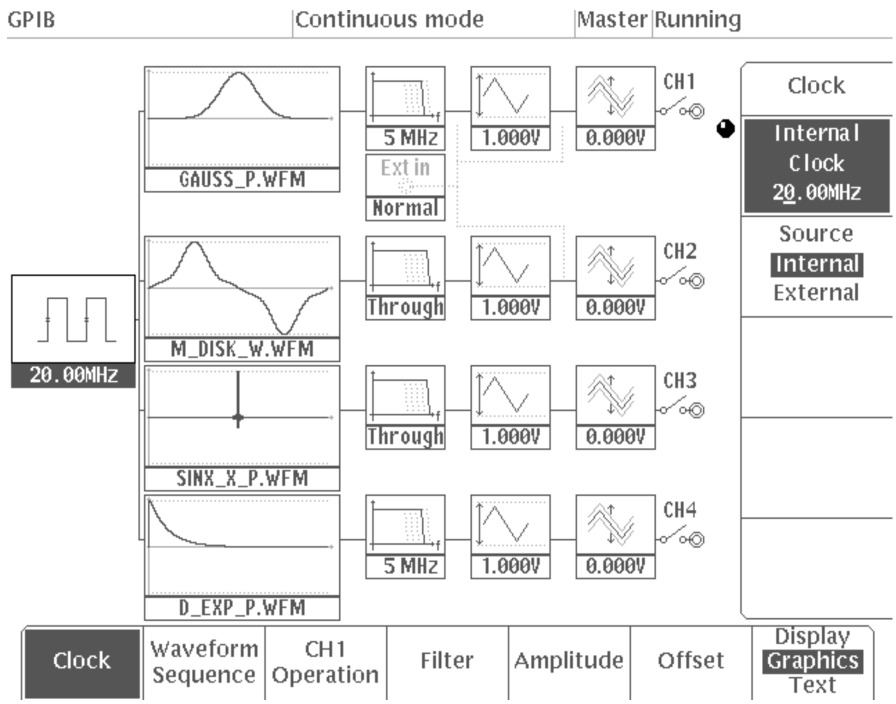


Figure A-1: SETUP Menu for 4-Channel Display

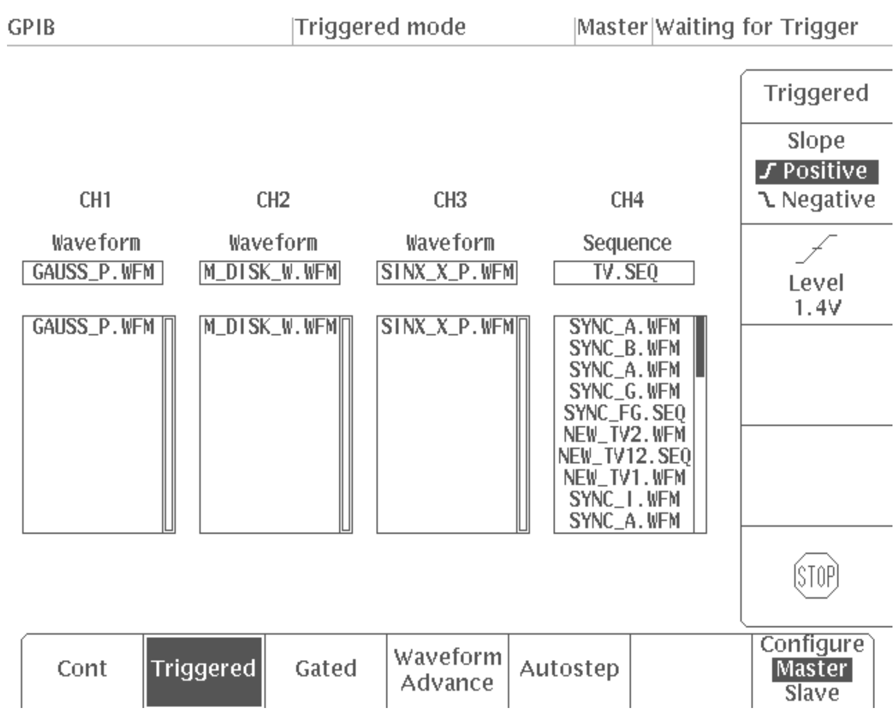


Figure A-2: MODE Menu for 4-Channel Display

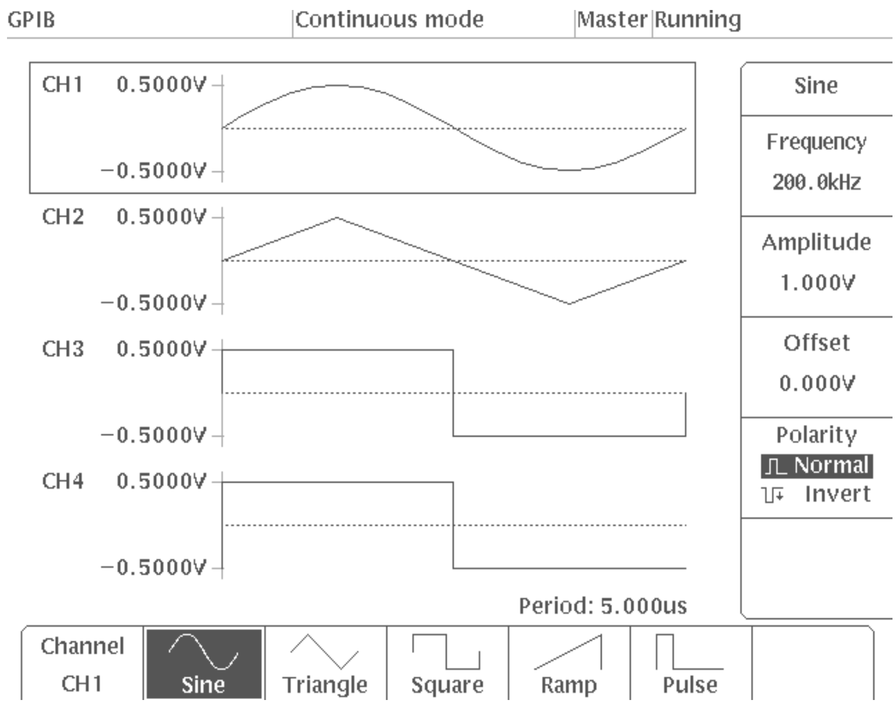


Figure A-3: FG Menu for 4-Channel Display

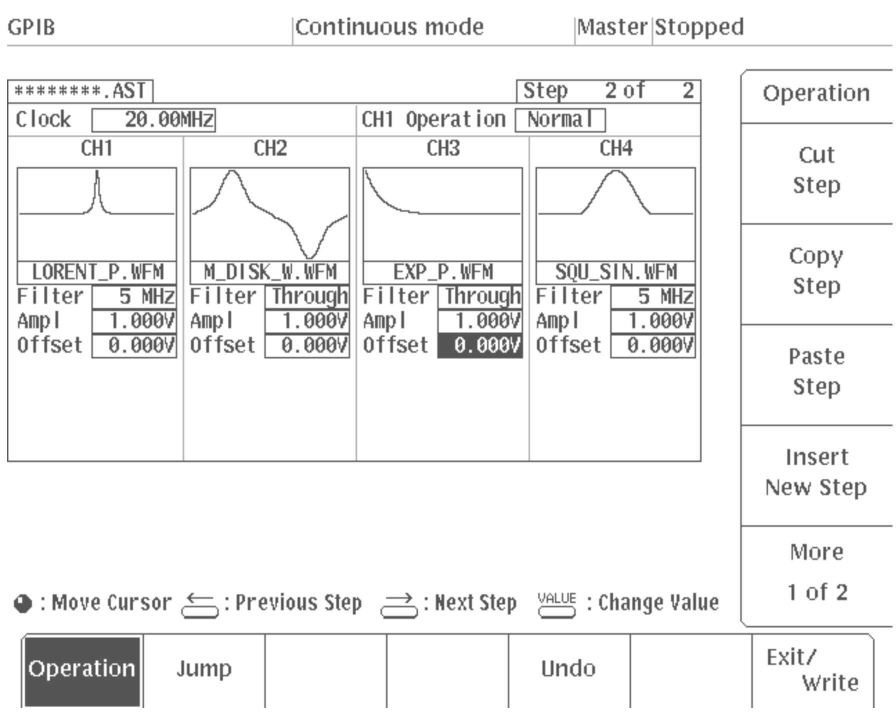


Figure A-4: Autostep Editor for 4-Channel Display

Option 04 (Digital Data Output)

The AWG2005 arbitrary waveform generator with Option 04 installed can provide the following signals at the rear panel output connector. For the layout of **DIGITAL DATA OUT** connectors on the rear panel, see ”Rear Panel” in Section 2 ”Overview.”

NOTE

An AWG2005 cannot be equipped with Option 04 and Option 09.

Data Output

The data (D0–D11) fed to this instrument's internal D/A converter is buffered and connected to the output connector. At the same time that the analog waveform is output, the digital output can be obtained. Output will be at the TTL level.

Clock Output

The same clock that is fed to this instrument's internal D/A converter is buffered in the same way as the data and connected to the connector. As in the case of data output, clock output will be at the TTL level.

Figure A-5 is a block diagram of the digital data output Option 04.

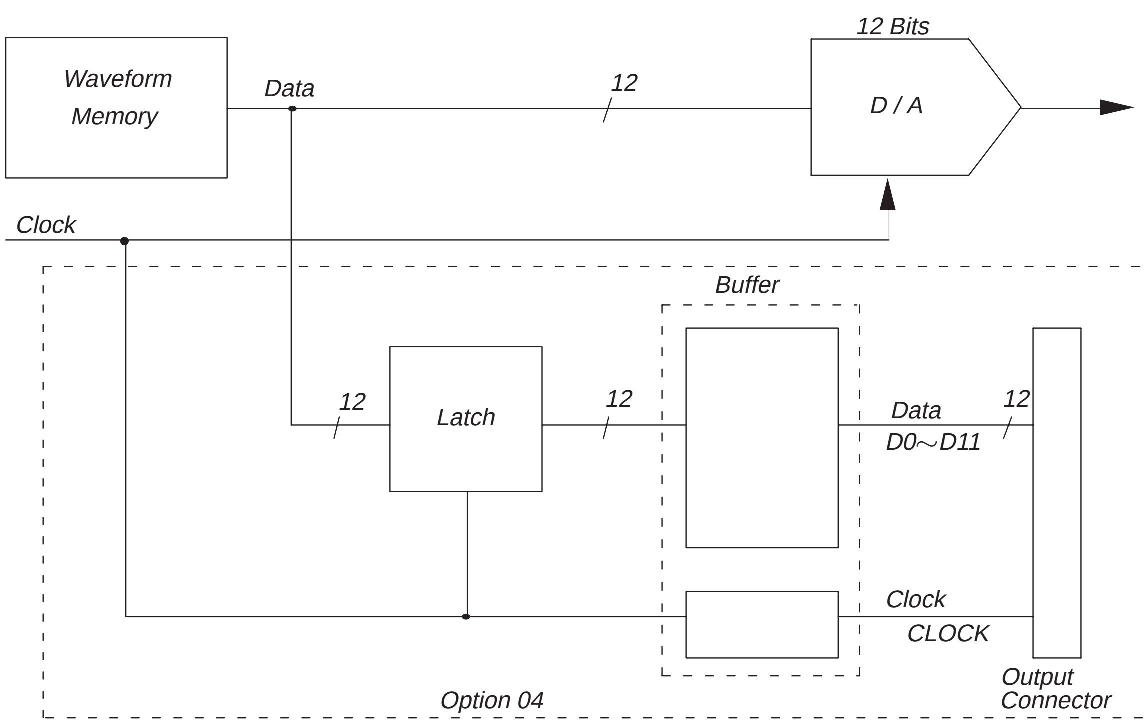


Figure A-5: Block Diagram

Output Connector Configuration

Figure A-6 is the shape and pin number location of the output connector, and Table A-1 is the output signal for each pin.

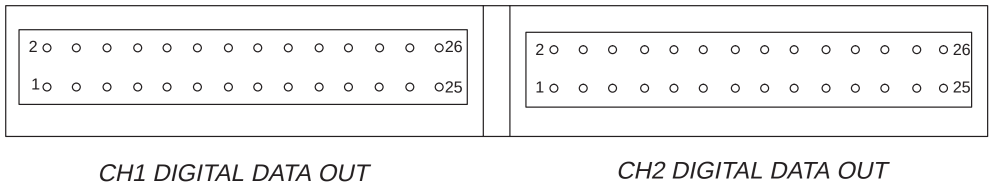


Figure A-6: The Shape of the Output Connector

Table A-1: Connector Pin Assignments

Pin Number	Signal	Pin Number	Signal
1	D0(LSB)	15	D7
3	D1	17	D8
5	D2	19	D9
7	D3	21	D10
9	D4	23	D11(MSB)
11	D5	25	Clock
13	D6		

Pins other than above are connected to ground. The pin assignments are identical for both CH1 and CH2.

Operation

Basically, operations are in correspondence with analog output for the AWG2005 arbitrary waveform generator. When a waveform is not being output, the waveform's initial data may be output to the connector. At this time, the clock is not generated.

When starting the waveform output, the clock is generated and the data is updated.

NOTE

When loading a new waveform into waveform memory, resetting the waveform memory, or during the hold off, excess output can be generated in the data clock (see Figure A-7).

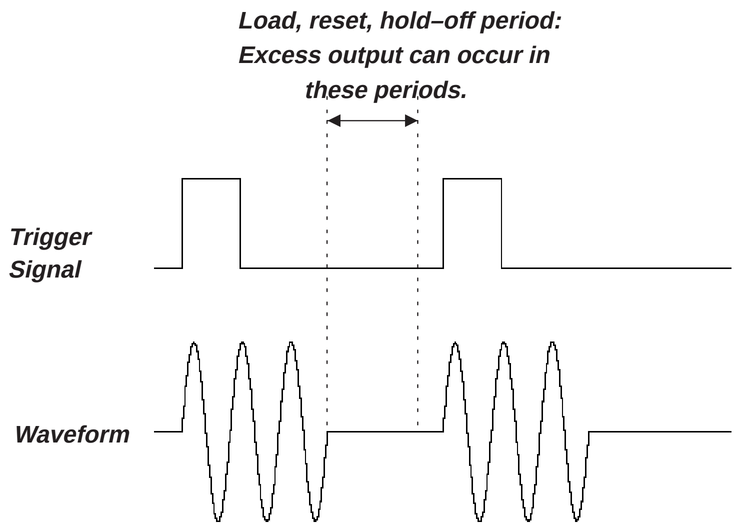


Figure A-7: Generation of Excess Output

Output Circuit and Output Waveform

Figure A-8 shows a diagram of the output circuit. After first passing through an output resistance of 50 Ω, the buffer output proceeds to the output connectors. The AWG2005 can be used without terminating the receiving (user) side with a resistance of 50 Ω, but when waveform distortion is great the 50 Ω termination is required.

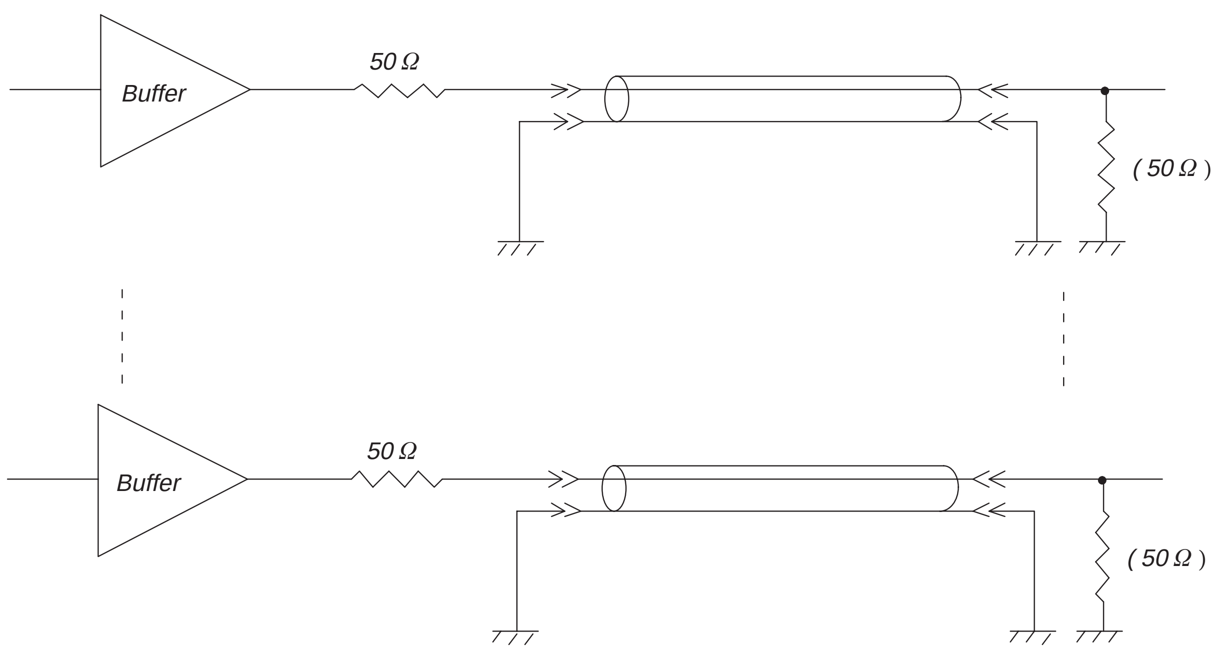


Figure A-8: Output Circuit

The skew of the data output is held to ±15ns. The rising and falling times will depend on the buffer ICs, but neither is greater than 4ns. See Figure A-9. This figure shows the specifications for the waveform at the output connector when a cable is not being used.

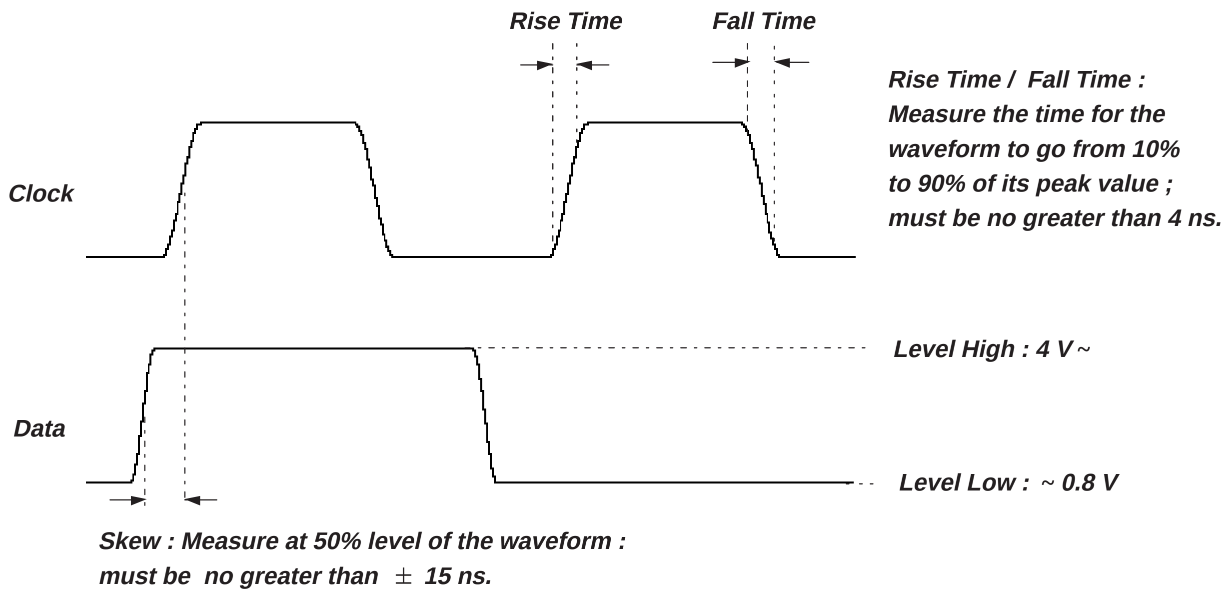


Figure A-9: Output Waveform

If a cable is used, these waveforms have transmission distortion. It is necessary to latch the data with a clock before using the waveform in actual circuits at the cable receiving side (user side) and to reproduce the waveform. Delay the clock with the delay line in order to reproduce the data reliably (see Figure A-10).

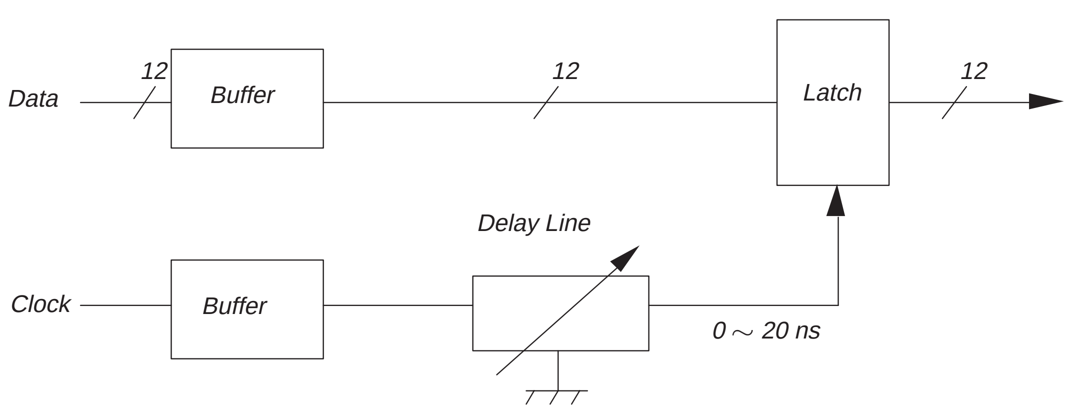


Figure A-10: Data Latching

Application Example

Cable

The cable connecting the AWG2005 and the user circuit is extremely critical for reliable operation at the maximum clock frequency.

NOTE

1. *Use a coaxial cable with a characteristic impedance of 50 Ω for all DATA and CLOCK lines.*

2. *Keep cables as short as possible. It depends on the characteristic of the coaxial cable used, but lengths under 1 meter are desirable.*

Cable

The AWG2005 for Option 04 comes with a digital data out cable as a standard accessory. The cable is 1-meter long and is illustrated in Figure A-11. The part number for the cable is 174-3192-00.

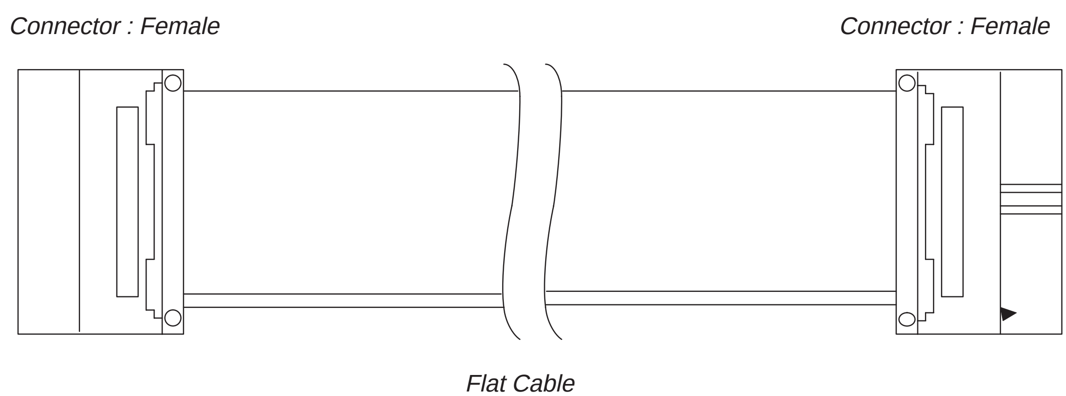


Figure A-11: Digital Data Out Cable

Waveform Regeneration

In some cases, even a cable that has been carefully made will create transmission distortion. Figure A-12 shows a concrete example of a circuit used to regenerate the waveform.

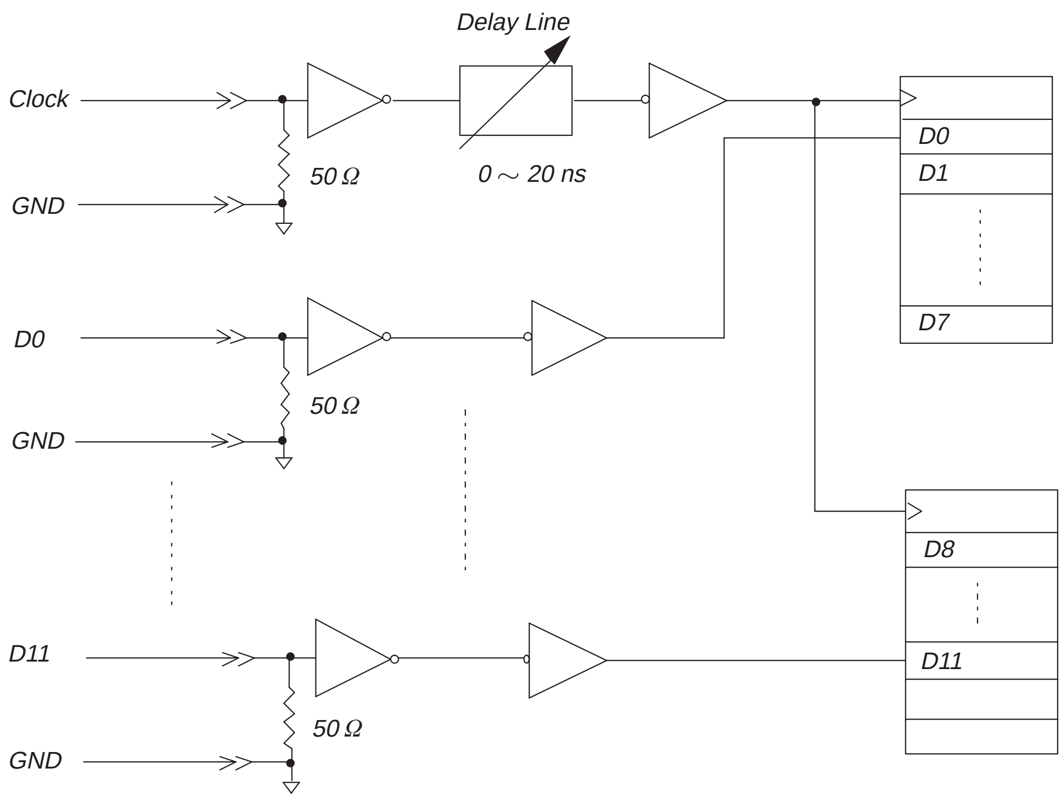


Figure A-12: Waveform Reproduction Circuit Example

NOTE

Tektronix cannot be responsible for the infringement of any third-party industrial proprietary rights, copyrights, or other rights arising from the use of these circuits.

NOTE

The ECB is a multi-layer board. One layer is used as ground and the other as the power supply. The data lines are wired to the same length so that their delay times will be the same.

Option 05 (Clock Sweep)

This option provides an additional function: the clock sweep editor. In addition to performing linear sweep and log sweep for the clock frequency, the clock sweep editor enables you to easily create arbitrary sweep. See Section 4A for more information on the clock sweep editor.

Option 09 (FFT Editor and Convolution Process)

This option provides increased internal calculation speed and two additional editors: an FFT editor and a convolution editor. See Section 4A for more information on the FFT and convolution waveform editors.

Option 1R (Rack Mount)

The AWG2005 is shipped mounted in a 19-inch wide rack. In this configuration, the floppy disk drive is accessed from the front panel. To change an AWG2005 into a rackmounted version, contact Tektronix for information.

For further information regarding the rack mount adaptor, see the instruction sheet that comes with the rack mount kit.

Option 1S (WaveWriter S3FT400)

WaveWriter is an application program used to create waveforms for advanced signal generating and processing instruments. Many Tektronix instruments, such as arbitrary waveform generators and oscilloscopes with the “save-on-delta” feature, are enhanced by this program. WaveWriter helps users configure waveforms with a minimum of effort.

With the WaveWriter package, you can create new waveforms or edit waveforms acquired from various instrument sources. WaveWriter gives you interactive control of the waveform generating process.WaveWriter operates within the Microsoft Windows™ environment.

Power Cord Options

The following power cords are available with this instrument.

Table A-2: Power Cord Options

Option	Description	Part Number
A1	Europe, 220V/6A	161-0104-06
A2	United Kingdom, 240V/6A	161-0104-07
A3	Australia, 240V/6A	161-0104-05
A4	North America, 240V/6A	161-0104-08
A5	Switzerland, 220V/6A	161-0167-00

Accessories

Standard Accessories

The AWG2005 includes the following standard accessories:

	Part Number
■ Manual	
User Manual	070-8958-50
Programmer Manual	070-8657-50
■ Floppy disk	
Sample Waveform Library Disk, 3.5-inch	063-1704-XX
Performance Check Disk	063-1706-XX
Sample program	063-1708-XX
■ Power cord 125V/6A	161-0230-01
■ Certificate of Calibration	

Optional Accessories

The following optional accessories are recommended for use with the instrument.

	Part Number
■ Service Manual	070-8962-50
■ Performance Check Disk	063-1706-XX
■ Front Cover	200-3232-XX
■ Accessory Pouch	016-1159-XX
■ GPIB Cable	012-0991-00
■ 50 Ω BNC Cable	012-1342-XX
■ 50 Ω BNC Terminator	011-0049-XX
■ Fuse 6A Fast (UL198G/3AG)	159-0239-XX
■ Fuse cap	200-2264-XX
■ Fuse 5A (T) (IEC127)	159-0210-XX
■ Fuse cap	200-2265-XX
■ Cable Digital Out	174-3192-XX

Appendix B: Performance Characteristics

Introduction

The performance characteristics on the AWG2005 can be divided into three categories:

- Nominal Traits

  General characteristics are described not by equipment performance and limits but by such things as memory capacity.

- Warranted Characteristics

  Warranted characteristics are described in terms of quantifiable performance limits which are guaranteed.

- Typical Characteristics

  Typical characteristics are described in terms of typical or average performance for the AWG2005. The characteristics described herein are not absolutely guaranteed.

Nominal Traits

This section will describe general characteristics of the AWG2005. These can be divided into two main categories: electrical characteristics and mechanical characteristics.

Electrical Characteristics

Characteristics	Description
Arbitrary Waveforms	
Memory	
Waveform	64K x 12 bits The Waveform can position 256 data point boundary in the waveform memory. The maximum waveforms in the waveform memory is 256.
Marker	64 K x 1 bit
Minimum Data Length	16 points for the Waveform and the Marker.
Sequence	32 K x 16 bits A Sequence requires minimum 7 words.
Scan Counter	
Waveform	1 to 64 K (16 bits)
Sequence	1 to 64 K (16 bits)
Catalog Memory	4 M bytes
Clock Generator	
Frequency Range	0.01 Hz to 20 MHz
Resolution	4 digits (The maximum Resolution 0.01% is obtained at the value ”9999”.)
Reference Oscillator	
Nominal Frequency	12.8 MHz

Electrical Characteristics

Characteristics	Description
Clock Generator (Option 05)	
Frequency Range	0.01 Hz to 20 MHz
Resolution	Up to 7 digits
Sweep	
Type	Linear,Log,Arbitrary
Mode	Continuous,Triggered,Gated
Update Rate	1 μs to 65.535 ms
Points per sweep	8 Kwords
Frequency Resolution	0.0298 Hz
Reference Oscillator	
Nominal Frequency	12.8 MHz
Main Output	
DA Converter	
Resolution	12 bits
Amplitude	
Range	0.05 to 10 Vp-p into 50 Ω The amplitude range expands about 2 times (20 Vp-p) into open circuit. It's actual value is two times the displayed value. The absolute peak Amplitude plus the Offset is limited to +10 V or −10V.
Resolution	1 mV
Offset	
Range	−5.0 to 5.0 V into 50 Ω The offset range expands about 2 times (−10 V to 10V) into open circuit. It's actual value is two times the displayed value. The absolute peak Amplitude plus the Offset is limited to +10 V or −10V. −200 mA to 200 mA (Current source output)
Resolution	5 mV
Impedance	50 Ω

Electrical Characteristics

Characteristics	Description
Operating Modes	
Continuous	Generates the waveform or sequence continuously.
Triggered	Output quiescent until triggered by an GPIB, external, or manual trigger; then generates a waveform or sequence only one time.
Gated	Same as **Continuous** mode, except waveforms or sequences are output for the duration of the gated signal.
Waveform Advance	
Continuous	Continuously generates the waveform or sequence in the Sequence file; the next trigger advances to the next waveform/sequence.
Step	Output quiescent until triggered by an GPIB, external, or manual trigger; then generates the waveform/sequence in the Sequence file. When the scan count reaches its value, then stops output and waits next trigger.
Autostep	
Continuous	Similar operation to the **Waveform Advance** : **Continuous**. But the Autostep file is used instead of the Sequence file and the output parameters (Amplitude, Offset, etc.) are changed.
Step	Similar operation to the **Waveform Advance** : **Step**. But the Autostep file is used instead of the Sequence file and the output parameters (Amplitude, Offset, etc.) are changed.
Master	Provide the Clock and the Trigger to the **Slave** AWG2005 for the parallel operation.
Slave	Receive the Clock and the Trigger from the **Master** AWG2005 for the parallel operation.
Filters	
Type	Low Pass (−24 dB/Oct) 5MHz 2MHz 1MHz 500kHz

Electrical Characteristics

Characteristics	Description
Auxiliary Output	
MARKER	
Amplitude	>2V into 50 Ω
Impedance	50 Ω
Period Jitter	Refer to Table B-1 (Measured by TDS694C–1MHD with TDSJIT1)
Cycle to Cycle Jitter	Refer to Table B-2 (Measured by TDS694C–1MHD with TDSJIT1)
CLOCK	
Amplitude	>2V into 50 Ω
Impedance	50 Ω
Period Jitter	Refer to Table B-3 (Measured by TDS694C–1MHD with TDSJIT1)
Cycle to Cycle Jitter	Refer to Table B-4 (Measured by TDS694C–1MHD with TDSJIT1)
CONTROL SIG	
Amplitude	>2V into 50 Ω
Impedance	50 Ω
SWEEP (Option 05)	
Amplitude	0 V to 5 V (Same waveform as selected sweep. Amplitude is dependent on start and stop frequencies and a 5 V limit.)
Impedance	600 Ω
Digital Data Out (option 04)	
Output Signals	
CH1	Data (D0 to D11), Clock
CH2	Data (D0 to D11), Clock
Amplitude	>2 V into 50 Ω
Impedance	50 Ω
Connector	28 pin Header

Table B-1: Period Jitter (CH1 Marker Out)

Clock=20MS/s		Clock=10MS/s	
StdDev	Pk–Pk	StdDev	Pk–Pk
24.0 ps	140.0 ps	24.0 ps	120.0 ps

Table B-2: Cycle to Cycle Jitter (CH1 Marker Out)

Clock=20MS/s		Clock=10MS/s	
StdDev	Pk–Pk	StdDev	Pk–Pk
40.0 ps	220.0 ps	40.0 ps	200.0 ps

Table B-3: Period Jitter (Clock Out)

Clock=20MS/s		Clock=10MS/s	
StdDev	Pk–Pk	StdDev	Pk–Pk
24.0 ps	140.0 ps	24.0 ps	120.0 ps

Table B-4: Cycle to Cycle Jitter (Clock Out)

Clock=20MS/s		Clock=10MS/s	
StdDev	Pk–Pk	StdDev	Pk–Pk
40.0 ps	220.0 ps	40.0 ps	200.0 ps

Electrical Characteristics

Characteristics	Description
Auxiliary Input	
TRIGGER	
Threshold Level	−5 V to 5V
Resolution	0.1V
Impedance	10 kΩ
AM	
Range	2 Vp-p (−1V to 1V) for 100% modulation
Impedance	10 kΩ
Add	
Range	10 Vp-p (−5 V to 5V)
Impedance	50 Ω
CONTROL SIG	
Threshold Level	0.8 V to 2.0 V
Impedance	10 kΩ
CLOCK	
Threshold Level	0.8 V to 2.0 V
Impedance	330 Ω(Master mode), 10 kΩ (Slave mode)

Function Generator

Waveform Shape	Sine, Triangle, Square, Ramp, Pulse (1 MHz filter is inserted when Sine is selected.)
Output Parameter	All of these values with the exception of frequency can be set independently for each channel. Frequency settings apply to all channels.
Frequency	1.000 Hz to 200 kHz
Amplitude	Can be set between 50 mV and 10 V in 1 mV increments
Offset	Can be set between ±5 V in 5 mV increments
Polarity	Normal, Invert
Duty	0% to 100% Pulse only. Can be set in 1% increments
Operating Mode	Continuous mode
Auxiliary Output	
Marker	2V into 50 Ω, generated at the starting point of the waveform. The pulse width will vary depending on the frequency.

Electrical Characteristics

Characteristics	Description
Display	
CRT	
Display Area	13.2cm (5.2 inches) horizontally by 9.91cm (3.9 inches) vertically
Resolution	640 (H) x 480 (V) pixels
AC Power Source	
AC Line Power	
Fuse Rating	6A first blow, 250 V, UL198G(3AG) or 5 A (T), 250 V, IEC127
Battery	
Type	Li3 V, 650 mAH

Mechanical Characteristics

Characteristics	Description
Net Weight	
Standard	10.7 kg
Size	
Height	16.3cm (6.4 inches) with feet
Width	36.3cm (14.3 inches) with handle
Length	48.9cm (19.25 inches) with front cover 56.4cm (22.2 inches) with handle extended

Warranted Characteristics

This section will describe the warranted characteristics of the AWG2005. These can be divided into two main categories: electrical characteristics and environmental characteristics.

Performance Conditions

The electrical characteristics are valid under the following conditions:

1) The instrument must have been calibrated at an ambient temperature between +20˚C to +30˚C.
2) The instrument must be in an environment whose limits are described in Environmental Characteristics.
3) All tolerance limits apply after a 20 minute warm up and an execution of the self calibration.
4) The instrument is operating at an ambient temperature between +10˚C to +40˚C, unless otherwise noted.

Electrical Characteristics

Characteristics	Description
Clock Generator	
Accuracy	
+15˚C to +30˚C	0.005%
+10 ˚C to +40 ˚C	0.01%
Reference Oscillator	
Accuracy	±1ppm
Stability	±1 ppm/year (20˚C to 30˚C)
Clock Generator (Option 05)	
Accuracy	
+15˚C to +30˚C	0.0005%
+10˚C to +40˚C	0.001%
Reference Oscillator	
Accuracy	±1ppm
Stability	±1 ppm/year (20˚C to 30˚C)

Electrical Characteristics

Characteristics	Description
Main Output	
Amplitude	Except multiply(**AM**) and add(**Add**) operation Clock 1 MHz, Waveform data; 000 and FFF, Norm, No Filter, No Offset
DC Accuracy	
0.050 V to 0.999 V	±(0.5% of amplitude + 5 mV)
1.000 V to 10.000 V	±(1% of amplitude + 50 mV)
Offset	Clock 1 MHz, Waveform data;FFF, Norm, No Filter, Amplitude 0.05V.
Accuracy	± (1% of Offset + 10 mV)
Pulse Response	Clock 20 MHz, Waveform Data; 000 (16 points) and FFF (16 points), Norm, No Filter, Amplitude 5 V, No Offset.
Rise/Fall Time	<35 ns
Flatness	within <3% (After 150 ns from rise/fall edges)
Aberration	within <7%
Cross talk between Channels	Sine (512 points), 20 MHz Clock, Norm, No Filter, Amplitude 5 V, No Offset <−70 dBc
Noise Floor	Clock 20 MHz, Waveform Data; 7FF, Norm, No Filter, No Offset.
0.5V	<−110 dBm/Hz (at 1 MHz)
5.0V	<−95 dBm/Hz (at 1 MHz)
Sine Wave Characteristics	F.G mode, 100 Hz to 200 kHz, No Offset
Flatness	within ± 4% Amplitude 1 V, 1 kHz reference
T.H.D	Including up to 4th Harmonics
5.0V	<−55 dBc

Electrical Characteristics

Characteristics	Description
AM and Add	
AM	CH1 : Sine (512 points), Clock 20 MHz, **AM**, No Filter, Amplitude 5 V, No Offset CH2 : Waveform Data; FFF, No Filter, Amplitude 10 V
Internal	
Amplitude Accuracy	Add 5% to the Amplitude Specification *CH1 Out = CH1 x CH2,
Frequency Response	DC to 10 MHz (−3 dB)
External	
Sensitivity	2 Vp-p (± 5%) signal causes 100% modulation. *CH1 Out = CH1 x Ext Signal Ext Signal 1V, 100% modulation 0V, 50% modulation −1V, 0% modulation
Frequency Response	DC to 10 MHz (−3 dB)
Add	CH1 : sine (512 points), Clock 20 MHz, **Add**, No Filter, Amplitude 5 V, No Offset CH2 : Waveform Data; FFF, No Filter, Amplitude 2 V
Internal	
Amplitude Accuracy	Add 5% to the Amplitude Specification *CH1 Out = CH1 + CH2
Frequency Response	DC to 10 MHz (−3 dB)
External	
Amplitude Accuracy	Add 5% to the Amplitude Specification *CH1 Out = CH1 + Ext Signal
Frequency Response	DC to 10 MHz (−3 dB)

*Note: Output Amplitude can't exceed 10 Vp-p (into 50 Ω)

Electrical Characteristics

Characteristics	Description
Filter	
Aberration	within ± 7%
Rise Time	
5MHz	70 ns ± 20%
2MHz	175 ns ±20%
1MHz	350 ns ± 20%
500kHz	700 ns ± 20%
Auxiliary Output	
MARKER	
Amplitude	>2 V into 50 Ω
CLOCK	
Amplitude	>2 V into 50 Ω
CONTROL SIG	
Amplitude	>2 V into 50 Ω
Digital Data Out (Option 04)	
Amplitude	>2 V into 50 Ω
Skew Between Data	within 15 ns
Clock to Data Delay	Within 15 ns

Electrical Characteristics

Characteristics	Description
Auxiliary Input	
TRIGGER	
Accuracy	± (5% of Level + 0.1 V)
Pulse Width	150 ns minimum
Input Swing	0.2 Vp-p minimum
Maximum Input Volts	±10 V (DC + peak AC)
Trigger Hold Off	2 μs + 1 Clock (Excluding **Autostep** mode)
AM	Sine (512 points), Clock 20 MHz, **AM**, No Filter, Amplitude 5 V, No Offset
Amplitude Accuracy	within 5% (1.9 Vp-p to 2.1 Vp-p for 100% modulation)
Maximum Input Volts	±5 V (DC + peak AC)
Add	Sine (512 points), Clock 20 MHz, **Add**, No filter, Amplitude 5 V, No Offset
Amplitude Accuracy	Add 5% to the Amplitude Specification
Maximum Input Volts	±5 V (DC + peak AC)
CONTROL SIG	
Threshold Level	TTL Level (0.8 V to 2.0 V)
Pulse Width	40 ns minimum
Input Volts	0 V to 5 V
CLOCK	
Threshold Level	TTL Level (0.8V to 2.0 V)
Rise/Fall Time	within 1 μs
Pulse Width	20 ns minimum
Input Volts	0 V to 5 V
Frequency Range	1 Hz to 20 MHz

Electrical Characteristics

Characteristics	Description
Voltage	
AC Power Source	
Rating Voltage	100 VAC to 240 VAC Continuous range, CAT II
Range	
90 VAC to 250 VAC	48 Hz to 63 Hz
90 VAC to 127 VAC	48 Hz to 440 Hz
Maximum Power Consumption	300W
Maximum Current	4A
Grounding Impedance	The impedance for the chassis ground and power plug ground pins is 0.1 Ω at 30A.
Primary Circuit Dielectric Voltage withstand Test	1500 V rms, 50 Hz for 15 seconds, without breakdown.

Environmental Characteristics

Characteristics	Description
Temperature	
Operating	+10 °C to + 40 °C
Non operating	−20 °C to + 60 °C
Relative Humidity	
Operating	20% to 80% (No condensation) Maximum wet-bulb temperature 29.4 °C
Non operating	5% to 90% (No condensation) Maximum wet-bulb temperature 40.0 °C
Altitude	
Operating	To 4.5 km (15000 ft). Maximum operating temperature decreases 1°C each 300 m above 1.5 km.
Non operating	To 15 km (50000 ft).

Environmental Characteristics

Characteristics	Description
Dynamics	
Vibration	
Operating	0.33 mmp-p, 10 to 55 Hz, 15 minutes
Shock	
Non operating	294 m/s^2 (30 G), half-sine, 11 ms duration.
Installation Requirements	
Power Consumption (Fully Loaded)	300 watts max. Maximum line current is 4 A rms at 50 Hz, 90 V line.
Surge Current	30 A peak for < 5 line cycles, after product has been off for at least 30 s.
Cooling Clearance	
Top Clearance	7.6cm (3 inches)
Side Clearance	15cm (6 inches)
Rear Clearance	7.6cm (3 inches)

Typical Characteristics

This section will describe the typical characteristics for the AWG2005. These values represent typical or average performance and are not absolutely guaranteed.

Electrical Characteristics

Characteristics	Description
Main Output	
DA Converter	
Integral Non Linearity	1LSB
Differential Non Linearity	1LSB
Skew between channels	5 ns
Delay Master to Slave	5 ns
Filters	
Delay	
5MHz	80 ns
2MHz	190 ns
1MHz	400 ns
500kHz	800 ns
Auxiliary Output	
MARKER	
Marker to Signal Delay	35 ns
Auxiliary Input	
TRIGGER	
Trigger to Signal delay	
Internal Clock	400 ns (Excluding Clock Sweep mode)
External Clock	400 ns + 2 Clock
Power Supply	
Battery	
Back Up Time	4 years

Certifications and compliances

Category	Standards or description
EC Declaration of Conformity – EMC	Meets intent of Directive 89/336/EEC for Electromagnetic Compatibility. Compliance was demonstrated to the following specifications as listed in the Official Journal of the European Communities: EMC Directive 89/336/EEC: EN 55022 — Class B Radiated and Conducted Emissions EN 50081-1 Emissions: EN60555-2 — AC Power Line Harmonic Emissions EN 50082-1 Immunity: IEC801-2 — Electrostatic Discharge Immunity IEC801-3 — RF Electromagnetic Field Immunity IEC801-4 — Electrical Fast Transient/Burst Immunity
Australian/New Zealand declaration of Conformity - EMC	Complies with EMC provision of Radio–communications Act per the following standard: AS/NZS 2064.1/2 — Industrial, Scientific, and Medical Equipment: 1992
EC Declaration of Conformity – Low Voltage	Compliance was demonstrated to the following specification as listed in the Official Journal of the European Communities: Low Voltage Directive 73/23/EEC, amended by 93/68/EEC EN 61010-1/A1:1992 — Safety requirements for electrical equipment for measurement, control and laboratory use.
Approvals	Complies with the following safety standards: UL3111–1, First Edition — Standard for electrical measuring and test equipment. CAN/CSA C22.2 No.1010.1-92 — Safety requirements for electrical equipment for measurement, control and laboratory use.
Installation Category Description	Terminals on this product may have different installation (over–voltage) category designations. The installation categories are: Category — Examples of products in this category CAT III — Distribution-level mains (usually permanently connected). Equipment at this level is typically in a fixed industrial location. CAT II — Local-level mains (wall sockets). Equipment at this level includes appliances, portable tools, and similar products. Equipment is usually cord-connected. CAT I — Secondary (signal level) or battery operated circuits of electronic equipment.
Pollution Degree	A measure of the contaminates that could occur in the environment around and within a product. Typically the internal environment inside a product is considered to be the same as the external. Products should be used only in the environment for which they are rated. Pollution Degree 2 — Normally only dry, nonconductive pollution occurs. Occasionally a temporary conductivity that is caused by condensation must be expected. This location is a typical office/home environment. Temporary condensation occurs only when the product is out of service.

Certifications and compliances (cont.)

Category	Standards or description
Conditions of Approval	Safety Certifications/Compliances are made for the following conditions: Altitude (maximum operation): 2000 meters
IEC Characteristics	Equipment type: Test and Measuring Installation Category II (as defined in IEC 61010–1, Annex J) Pollution Degree 2 (as defined in IEC 61010–1) Safety Class I (as defined in IEC 61010–1, Annex H)

Appendix C: Sample Waveform Library

Introduction

The files and directories listed below are included in the route directory of the Sample Waveform Library Disk that comes with the instrument. All files are locked; this is indicated by an asterisk (*) before the file name.

- **Representative Waveform Files**

  There are 16 of these waveform files. If a waveform file (with the extender **.WFM**) has the same name as an equation file (with the extender **.EQU**), the waveform file was derived by compiling that equation file.

	Waveform Name	File Name	Page
1	Gaussian Pulse	GAUSS_P.EQU GAUSS_P.WFM	C-3
2	Lorentz Pulse	LORENTZ.EQU LORENTZ.WFM	C-4
3	Sampling Function SIN(X)/X Pulse	SINC.EQU SINC.WFM	C-5
4	Squared Sine Pulse	SQU_SIN.EQU SQU_SIN.WFM	C-6
5	Double Exponential Pulse	D_EXP.EQU D_EXP.WFM	C-7
6	Nyquist Pulse	NYQUIST.EQU NYQUIST.WFM	C-8
7	Linear Frequency Sweep	LIN_SWP.EQU LIN_SWP.WFM	C-9
8	Log Frequency Sweep	LOG_SWP.EQU LOG_SWP.WFM	C-10
9	Amplitude Modulation	AM.EQU AM.WFM	C-11
10	Frequency Modulation	FM.EQU FM.WFM	C-12
11	Damped Sine Wave	DMP_SIN.EQU DMP_SIN.WFM	C-13
12	Transient Voltage Test Signal	TRN_VOL.EQU TRN_VOL.WFM	C-14
13	Pulse Width Modulation	PWM.WFM	C-15
14	Pseudo-Random Pulse	PRBS_15.WFM	C-16

	Waveform Name	File Name	Page
15	π/4 DQPSK I Axis Signal	DQPSKI.WFM	C-17
16	π/4 DQPSK Q Axis Signal	DQPSKQ.WFM	C-17

- **NTSC Directory**

  Contains video signals.

	Waveform Name	File Name
1	Composite video signal	NTSC–M.SEQ
2	Luminance signal	NTSC–Y.SEQ
3	Chroma signal	NTSC–C.SEQ

- **MISC Directory**

  Contains the waveforms used to simulate the power source waveform. It is used to set a waveform in the **SETUP** menu consisting of a noise waveform added to the basic sine wave, or to set a continuously changing sine wave in the **MODE** menu.

	Waveform Name	File Name
1	Basic sine wave	P_SINE.WFM
2	Impulse noise waveform	P_NOISE.WFM
3	Random noise waveform	P_RND.WFM
4	Imperfect sine wave	P_SCR.WFM

Description of Representative Waveform Files

Here we will describe the 16 representative waveform files. Some of the waveform files were obtained by creating an equation file in the equation editor and then compiling it to form a waveform file. Others were created in the waveform editor. To output a waveform file, select the file in the **SETUP** menu.

Gaussian Pulse (GAUSS_P.WFM)

Made with the equation editor.

```
# gaussian pulse

range(0,50us)
k0=5e-6            # pulse width
k1=25e-6           # peak location

exp(-ln(2)*((2*(t-k1)/k0)^2))
```

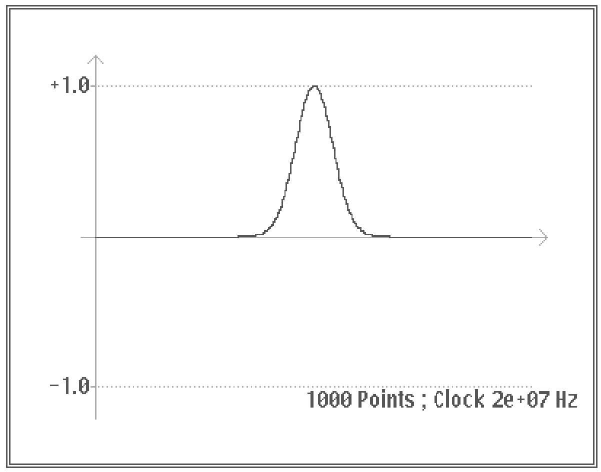


Figure C-1: Gaussian Pulse Formula and Waveform

Constants

k0 indicates the half width (W_{50}) for the pulse; k1 indicates the peak location of the pulse.

Description

The waveform generated when the pulse width is taken to be t_{W50} and the peak location is taken to be 0 can be expressed as

$V(t) = exp\left\{-ln(2) \cdot \left(\frac{2t}{t_{w50}}\right)^2\right\}$. Substituting $\sigma = \frac{t_{w50}}{2\sqrt{2\ ln(2)}}$ gives

$f(t) = exp\left(-\frac{t^2}{2\sigma^2}\right)$, and taking the Fourier transform gives

$F(j\omega) = \sqrt{2\pi}\,\sigma \cdot exp\left(-\frac{\omega^2\sigma^2}{2}\right)$. This shows that this signal has a Gaussian form in the frequency domain as well.

<Example> When t_{W50} is 1 μs, the bandwidth will be 31.2 kHz.

Settings

Waveform points: 1000
Clock frequency: 20 MHz
Output time: 50 μs

Lorentz Pulse (LORENTZ.WFM)

Made with the equation editor.

```
# lorentz pulse

range(0,50us)
k0=5e-6          # pulse width
k1=25e-6         # peak location

1/(1+(2*(t-k1)/k0)^2)
```

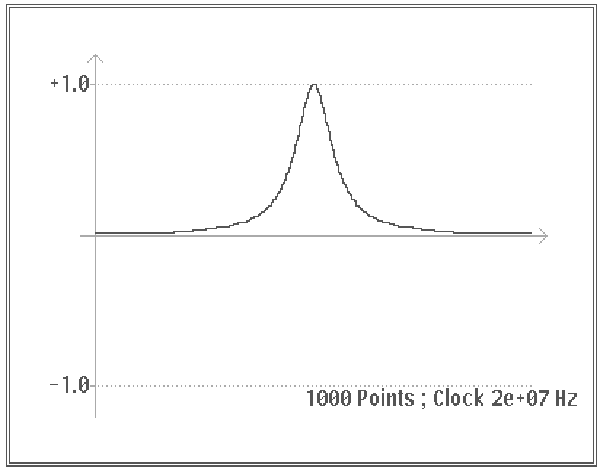


Figure C-2: Lorentz Pulse Formula and Waveform

Constants

k0 indicates the half width (W_{50}) for the pulse; k1 indicates the peak location of the pulse.

Description

When the pulse width is taken to be t_{w50}, the waveform can be expressed by the following formula:

$$V(t) = \frac{1}{1 + \left(2\frac{t}{t_{w50}}\right)^2}$$

Settings

Waveform points: 1000
Clock frequency: 20 MHz
Output time: 50 μs

Sampling Function SIN(X)/X Pulse (SINC.WFM)

Made with the equation editor.

```
# sinc pulse

range(0,200us)
k0=500e3          # sine frequency
k1=100.1e-6       # peak location

sin(2*pi*k0*(t-k1))/(2*pi*k0*(t-k1))
```

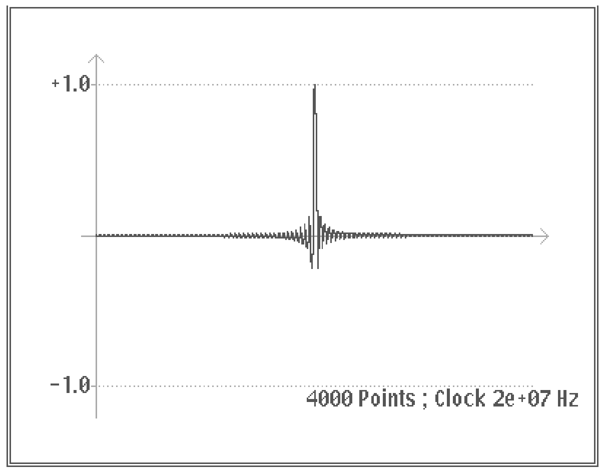


Figure C-3: Sampling Function SIN(X)/X Pulse Formula and Waveform

Constants

k0 indicates the frequency of the sine wave; k1 indicates the peak location of the pulse.

Description

In general, this waveform is expressed by the following formula:

$$V(t) = \frac{sin(2\pi ft)}{2\pi ft}$$

This is the impulse response for the ideal low pass filter for the frequency bandwidth f. At least 326 periods are required in order to use a vertical resolution of 12 bits.

Settings

Waveform points: 4000
Clock frequency: 20 MHz
Output time: 200 μs

Squared Sine Pulse (SQU_SIN.WFM)

Made with the equation editor.

```
# squared sine pulse

range(0,15us)
0

range(15us,35us)
(cos(2*pi*(x-0.5))+1)/2

range(35us,50us)
0
```

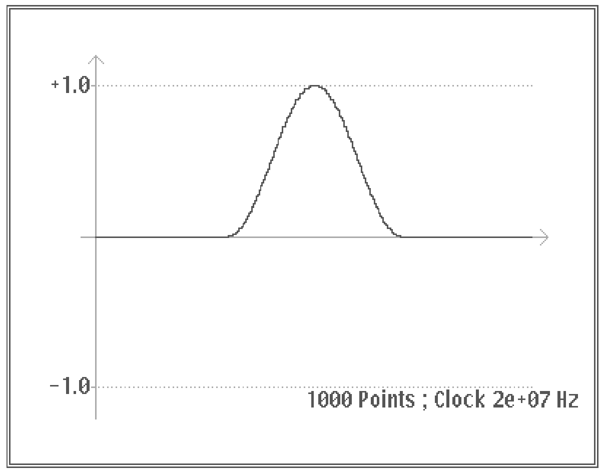


Figure C-4: Squared Sine Pulse Formula and Waveform

Description

The pulse width and peak location are set with **range ()**. The value for x is a value between 0 and 1 for **range (a,b)**.

Settings

Waveform points: 1000
Clock frequency: 20 MHz
Output time: 50 µs

Double Exponential Pulse (D_EXP.WFM)

This is the rising and falling exponential function pulse. Made with the equation editor.

```
# double exponential pulse

range(0,500us)
k1=5e-6          # rise time constant
k2=50e-6         # fall time constant

exp(-t/k2)-exp(-t/k1)
norm()
```

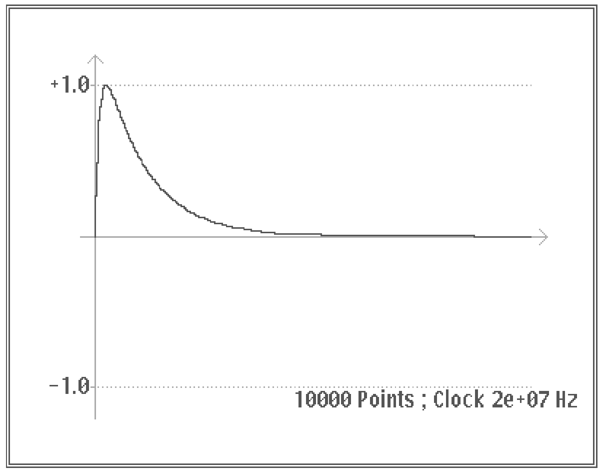


Figure C-5: Double Exponential Pulse Formula and Waveform

Constants

k1 and k2 are the rising and falling time constants, respectively. The peak location for the pulse is derived using the following formula:

$$\frac{k1 \cdot k2}{k2 - k1} \cdot ln\frac{k2}{k1}$$

Description

This is the waveform when a charged capacitor is discharged to the RC circuit. When the time constants for charging and discharging are taken to be τ_1 and τ_2, respectively, the waveform can be expressed by the following formula:

$$V(t) = exp\left(-\frac{t}{\tau_2}\right) - exp\left(-\frac{t}{\tau_1}\right)$$

Settings

Waveform points: 10000
Clock frequency: 20 MHz
Output time: 500 µs

Nyquist Pulse (NYQUIST.WFM)

Made with the equation editor.

```
# nyquist pulse

range(0,50us)
k0=1e-6           # data period
k1=25.001e-6      # peak location
k2=0.5            # excess bandwidth factor 0 to 1

cos(pi*k2*(t-k1)/k0)/(1-(2*k2*(t-k1)/k0)^2)
v*sin(pi*(t-k1)/k0)/(pi*(t-k1)/k0)
```

Figure C-6: Nyquist Pulse Formula and Waveform

Constants

k0 is the period of the digital data used in communication or recording. k1 is the pulse peak location. k2 is the excess bandwidth factor, and is a value between 0 to 1.

Description

This is the impulse response of a wave shaping Nyquist filter. The shoulder characteristics of this filter are referred to as ”cosine roll-off” characteristics, and the bandwidth used can be varied. This waveform can be expressed by the following formula.

$$V(t) = \frac{\cos\left(\frac{\pi\alpha t}{T}\right)}{1-\left(\frac{2\alpha t}{T}\right)^2} \cdot \frac{\sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{T}\right)}{\frac{\pi t}{T}}$$

Here T is the data period and α is a value between 0 and 1. A wider band is required for values closer to 1, where ripple is reduced and implementation is easier.

Settings

Waveform points: 1000
Clock frequency: 20 MHz
Output time: 50 μs

Linear Frequency Sweep (LIN_SWP.WFM)

Made with the equation editor.

```
# frequency sweep sine (linear)

range(0,8ms)
k0=8e-3          # sweep period
k1=1e3           # starting frequency
k2=10e3          # ending frequency

sin(2*pi*k1*t+2*pi*(k2-k1)*(t^2)/2/k0)
```

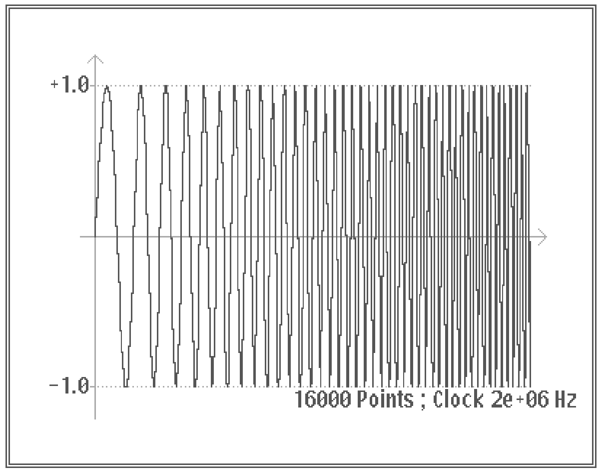


Figure C-7: Linear Frequency Sweep Formula and Waveform

Constants

k0 is the sweep period and k1 and k2 are the starting and ending frequencies.

Description

This waveform can be expressed generally by the following formula.

$$V(t) = sin\left[2\pi f_1 t + 2\pi f_2 \int_0^t \frac{t}{T} dt + \phi_0\right]$$

Here f_1 is the starting frequency, f_2 is the ending frequency, $ø_0$ is the initial phase, and T is the sweep period.

To assure that the phases match when this waveform is iterated, the sweep period is set to be close to an integer multiple of the reciprocal of the average frequency $\frac{f_1 + f_2}{2}$.

Settings

Waveform points: 16000
Clock frequency: 2 MHz
Output time: 8 ms

Log Frequency Sweep (LOG_SWP.WFM)

Made with the equation editor.

```
# frequency sweep sine (log)

range(0,11ms)
k0=11e-3          # sweep period
k1=1e3            # starting frequency
k2=10e3           # ending frequency
k3=ln(k2/k1)

sin(2*pi*k1*k0/k3*(exp(k3*x)-1))
```

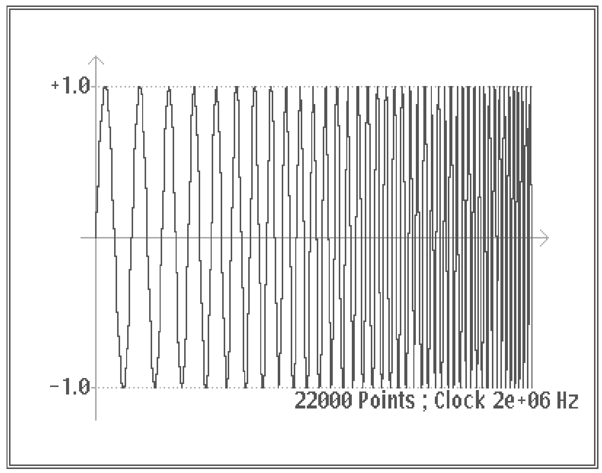


Figure C-8: Log Frequency Sweep Formula and Waveform

Constants

k0 is the sweep period and k1 and k2 are the starting and ending frequencies.

Description

This waveform can be expressed generally by the following formula.

$$V(t) = sin\left[2\pi f_1 \int_0^t exp\left(\frac{t}{T} \cdot ln\frac{f_2}{f_1}\right)dt + \phi_0\right]$$

Here f_1 is the starting frequency, f_2 is the ending frequency, ϕ_0 is the initial phase, and T is the sweep period.

To assure that the phases match when this waveform is iterated, the sweep period is set to be close to an integer multiple of the reciprocal of the average frequency. $\left(\frac{f_2-f_1}{f}\right)/\left(ln\frac{f_2}{f_1}\right)$

Settings

Waveform points: 22000
Clock frequency: 2 MHz
Output time: 11 ms

Amplitude Modulation (AM.WFM)

Made with the equation editor.

```
# amplitude modulation

range(0,1ms)
k0=1e3          # modulation frequency
k1=1e6          # carrier frequency
k2=0.5          # modulation degree

(1+k2*cos(2*pi*k0*t))*cos(2*pi*k1*t)
norm()
```

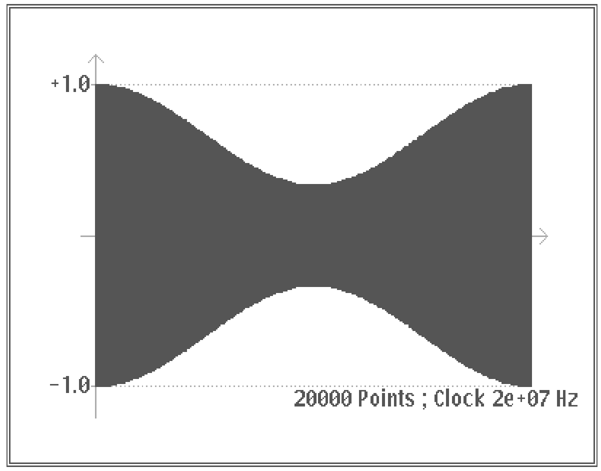


Figure C-9: Amplitude Modulation Formula and Waveform

Constants

k0 is the frequency of the modulating signal, k1 is the carrier frequency, and k2 is the modulation degree.

Description

This example shows a double sideband (DSB) amplitude modulated waveform with a modulation degree of 0.5. The modulating signal is a cosine wave.

Settings

Waveform points: 20000
Clock frequency: 20 MHz
Output time: 1 ms

Frequency Modulation (FM.WFM)

Made with the equation editor.

```
# frequency modulation

range(0,100us)
k0=10e3          # modulation frequency
k1=500e3         # carrier frequency
k2=400e3         # frequency deviation

sin(2*pi*k1*t+k2/k0*sin(2*pi*k0*t))
```

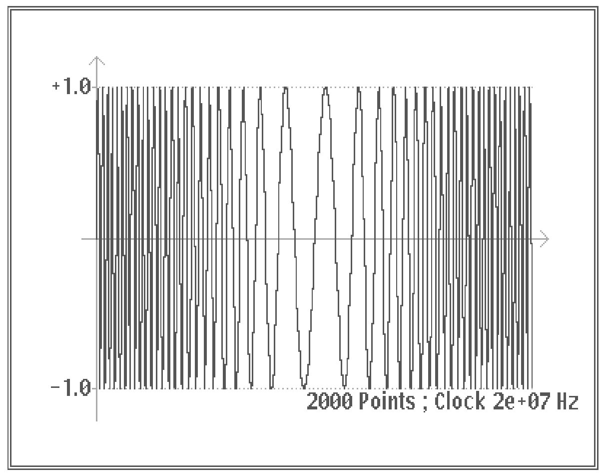


Figure C-10: Frequency Modulation Formula and Waveform

Constants

k0 is the modulation signal frequency, k1 is the carrier frequency, and k2 is the frequency deviation.

Description

k0 is the frequency of the cosine wave that is used to modulate a sine wave of frequency k1. To assure that the phases match when this waveform is iterated, the carrier frequency times the modulating signal period is set to be an integer. The modulation index is given by k2/k0.

Settings

Waveform points: 2000
Clock frequency: 20 MHz
Output time: 100 µs

Damped Sine Wave (DMP_SIN.WFM)

Made with the equation editor.

```
# damped sine wave

range(0,200us)
k0=10e-3
k1=63.3e-12
k2=k0*k1
k3=30e-6          # exponential damping factor

exp(-t/k3)*sin(1/sqrt(k2)*t)
```

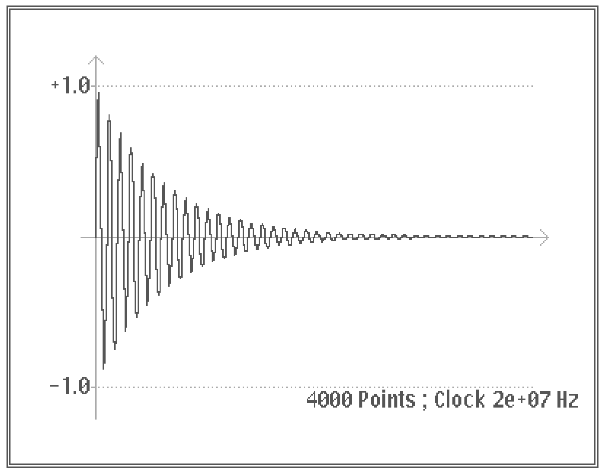


Figure C-11: Damped Sine Wave Formula and Waveform

Constants

k0 indicates the inductance (L), k1 indicates the capacitance (C), and k3 indicates the damping time constant.

Description

This is an attenuated amplitude waveform with a resonance frequency of 200 kHz (L=10 mH, C=63.3pF) and a damping time constant of 30 μs.

Settings

Waveform points: 4000
Clock frequency: 20 MHz
Output time: 200 μs

Transient Voltage Test Signal (TRN_VOL.WFM)

Made with the equation editor.

```
# transient hv signal

range(0,33.333ms)
k1=2e-3          # time constant
-exp(-t/k1)

range(33.333ms,66.666ms)
0.1
```

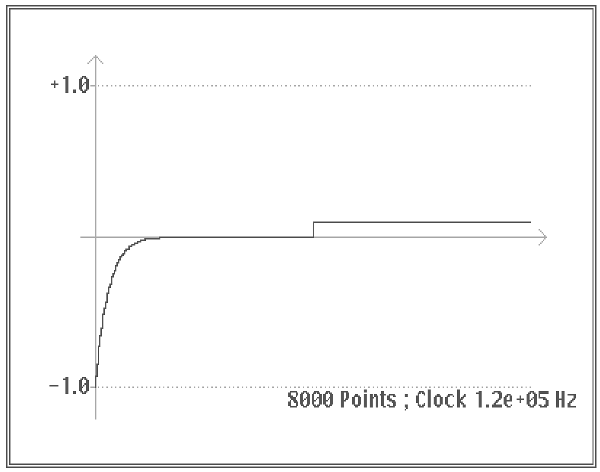


Figure C-12: Transient Voltage Test Signal Formula and Waveform

Description

This is the JASO (Japan Automotive Engineering Society) transient voltage test signal.

For actual testing, the signal is passed through a power amp.

Settings

Waveform points: 8000
Clock frequency: 120 kHz
Output time: 66.666 ms

Pulse Width Modulation (PWM.WFM)

Made with the waveform editor.

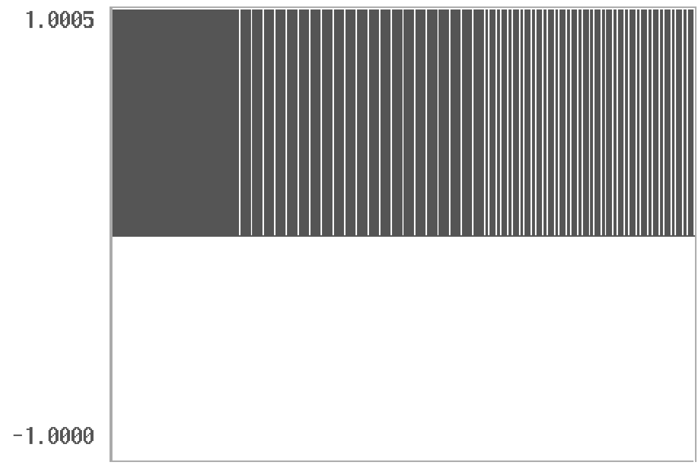


Figure C-13: Pulse Width Modulation Waveform

Description

The waveform editor is used to create a ramp wave of 2000 periods and a sine wave of 1 period, and these two waveforms are compared to create the PWM.WFM waveform.

Settings

Waveform points: 16000
Clock frequency: 20 MHz
Output time: 800 μs

Pseudo-Random Pulse (PRBS_15.WFM)

Made with the waveform editor.

Figure C-14: Pseudo-Random Pulse Waveform

Description

An M-series pseudo-random signal is created using the waveform editor's timing display shift register generator function.

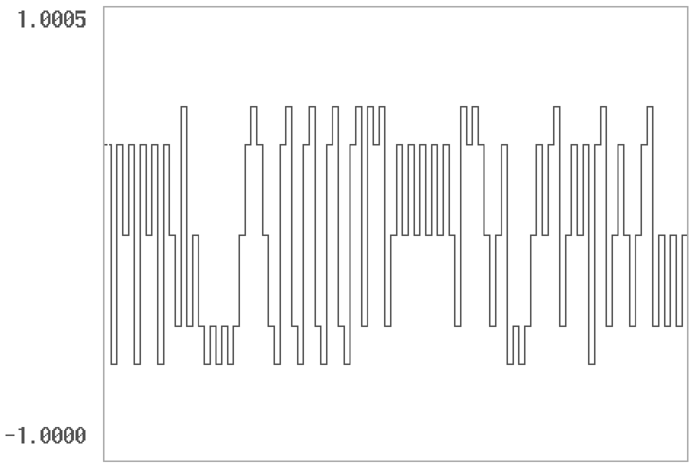
Register length = 15
Points/step = 2
The encoding is NRZ.

Settings

Waveform points: 65534 $(2^{15}-1) \times 2$
Clock frequency: 10 MHz
Output time: 6553.4 μs

π/4 DQPSK I Axis Signal (DQPSKI.WFM)

The base band I-axis output for a digital cellular car telephone system is created on the Tektronix digital signal processing work system (DSPW).

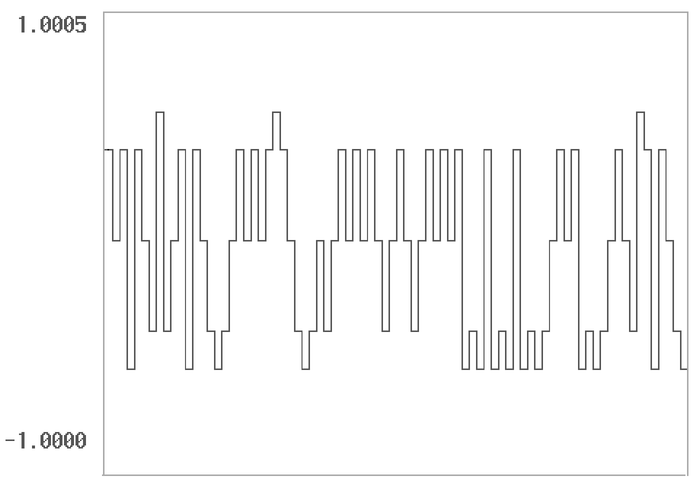


Bit rate	*42 Kbps*
Point number	*32 Kwords*
Clock frequency	*21 kHz*

Figure C-15: π/4 DQPSK I Axis Signal

π/4 DQPSK Q Axis Signal (DQPSKQ.WFM)

The base band Q-axis output for a digital cellular car telephone system is created on the Tektronix digital signal processing work system (DSPW).



Bit rate	*42 Kbps*
Point number	*32 Kwords*
Clock frequency	*21 kHz*

Figure C-16: π/4 DQPSK Q Axis Signal

Video Signals in the NTSC Directory

NTSC composite video signals and NTSC Y−C separate signals are stored in the NTSC directory. These are NTSC video signals made up of 1 − 4 color fields and 1050 lines (525 x 2). The clock frequency is four times the subcarrier frequency; a waveform is created on each line and the compiled waveforms are assembled using the sequence editor.

The settings for the signals are described below.

Settings
Waveform points: 1H=910
Clock frequency: 14.31818 MHz (3.579545 MHz x 4)
Output time: 33.37 ms

Video signals are output by changing the directory to **NTSC.DIR** and then selecting the following sequence files in the **SETUP** menu:

(1) Composite video signal	NTSC−M.SEQ
(2) Luminance signal	NTSC−Y.SEQ
(3) Chroma signal	NTSC−C.SEQ

Figure C-17 shows the **NTSC** composite video signal.

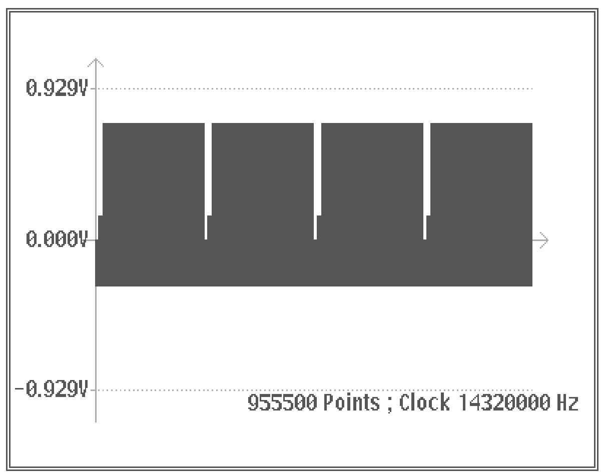
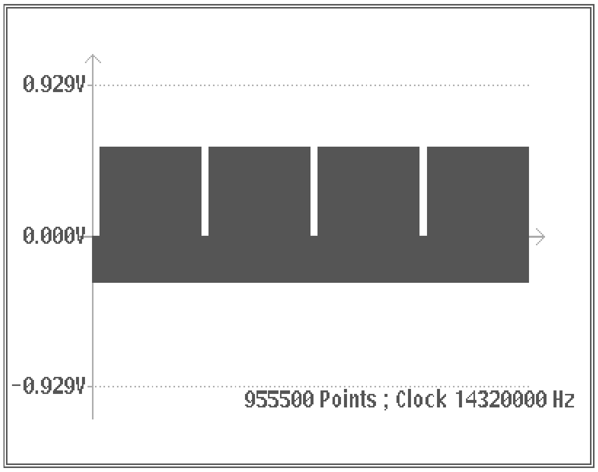
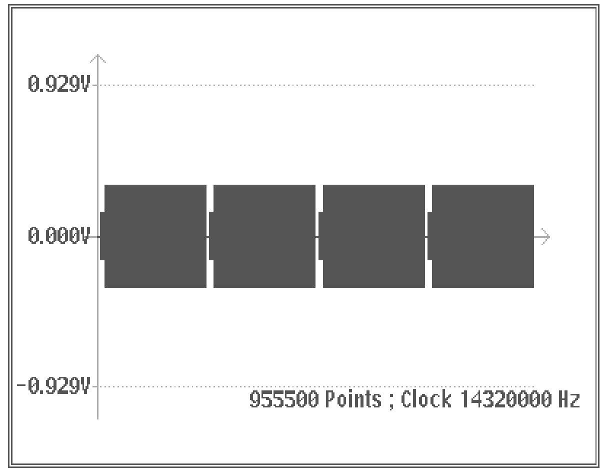


Figure C-17: NTSC composite video signal (NTSC−M.SEQ)

Figure C-18 shows the NTSC Y–C separate signal.



Luminance Signal



Chroma Signal

Figure C-18: NTSC Y–C separate signals

Y (luminance signal) and C (chroma signal) have been created separately, so if these are output separately to channel 1 and channel 2 they will become Y–C separate signals; when these are combined and output, they become a composite signal. A 50 Ω/75 Ω conversion adaptor is required for 75 Ω output.

Power Source Waveform Using a File in the MISC Directory

The MISC directory contains files used to simulate power source waveforms. Use the **SETUP** and **MODE** menu to create the following waveforms:

(1) Waveform showing impulse noise mixed in with power source
(2) Waveform with random noise mixed in with power source
(3) Sine wave with 0° – 90° continuously cut

When creating these waveforms, load all files from the **MISC** directory into the internal memory of the AWG2005. Also connect an oscilloscope to the AWG2005 and use it to check the output waveforms.

Creating a Waveform With Impulse Noise Mixed In with Power Source

Use the following procedure:

☐ **Step 1:** Using the **Waveform**/**Sequence** item in the **SETUP** menu, load the **P_SINE.WFM** file to CH1. The **CH1 Operation** mode will be set to **Add**.

☐ **Step 2:** In the same manner, load the **P_NOISE.WFM** file to CH2. The **SETUP** menu will be like the one shown in Figure C-19.

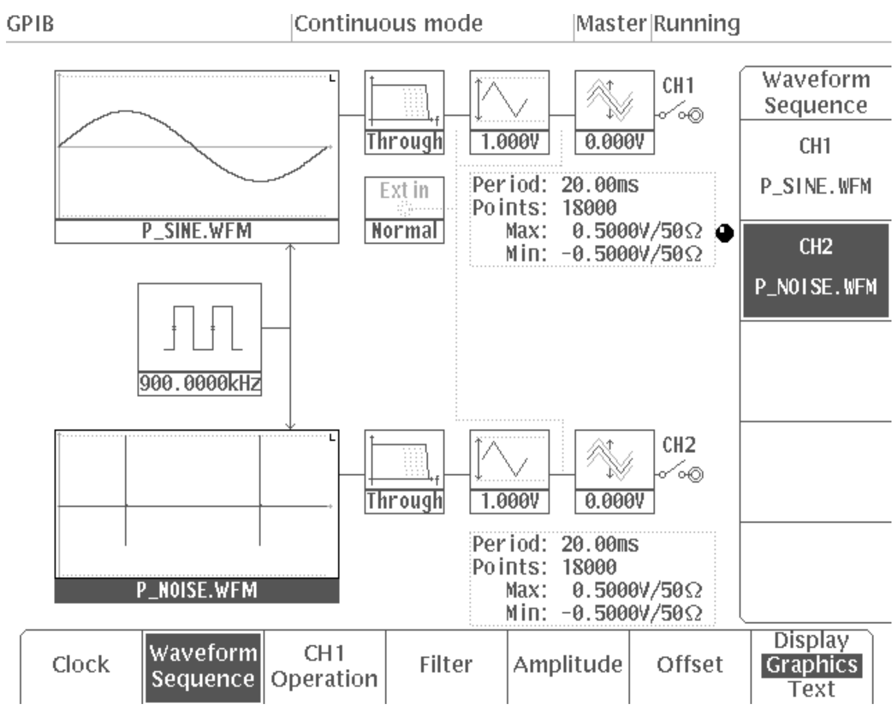


Figure C-19: SETUP Menu with Files Loaded

The **P_NOISE** waveform is a sine wave with 100 kHz resonance that is attenuated at 60μs. See Figure C-20.

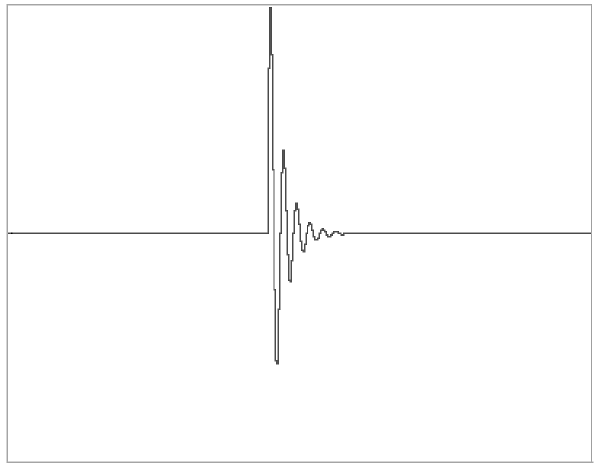


Figure C-20: P_NOISE Waveform

☐ **Step 3:** Change the **Amplitude** for CH2 and set the noise level to a suitable value. Check on the oscilloscope to make sure a waveform like the one shown in Figure C-21 is being output.

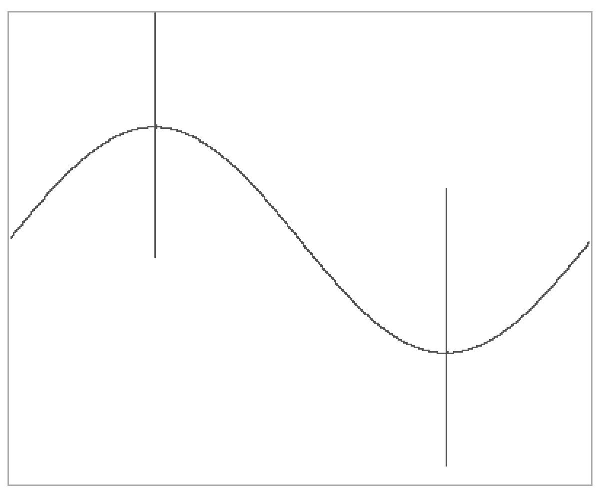


Figure C-21: Output Waveform

Waveform With Random Noise Mixed In with Power Source

Use the following procedure:

- [ ] **Step 1:** Using the **Waveform**/**Sequence** item in the **SETUP** menu, load the **P_SINE.WFM** file to CH1. The **CH1 Operation** mode will be set to **Add**.

- [ ] **Step 2:** In the same manner, load the **P_RND.WFM** file to CH2. The **SETUP** menu will be like the one shown in Figure C-22.

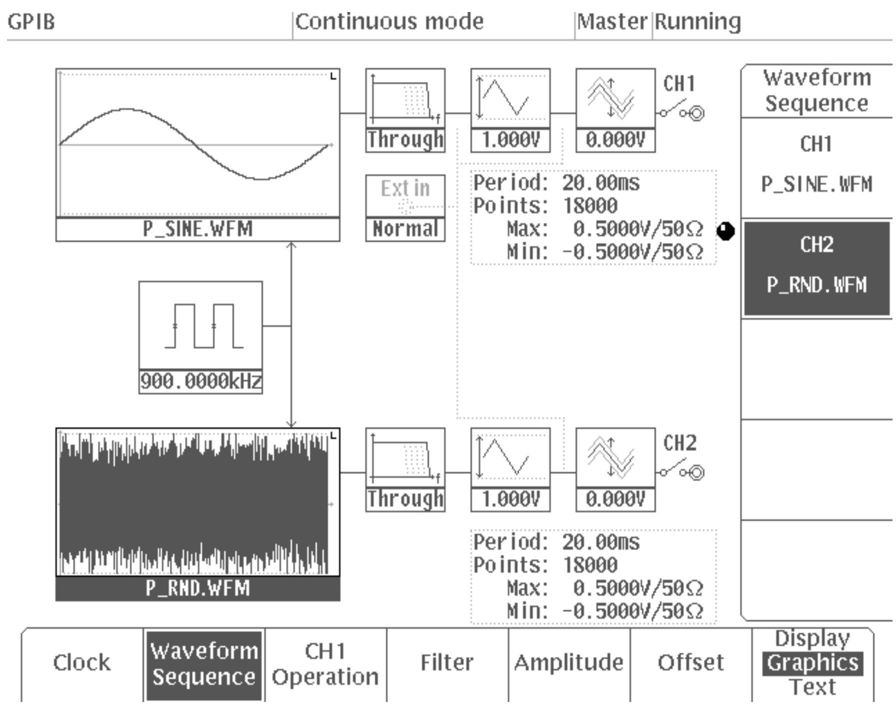


Figure C-22: SETUP Menu with Files Loaded

- [ ] **Step 3:** Change the **Amplitude** for CH2 to the desired S/N. Check on the oscilloscope to make sure a waveform like the one shown in Figure C-23 is being output.

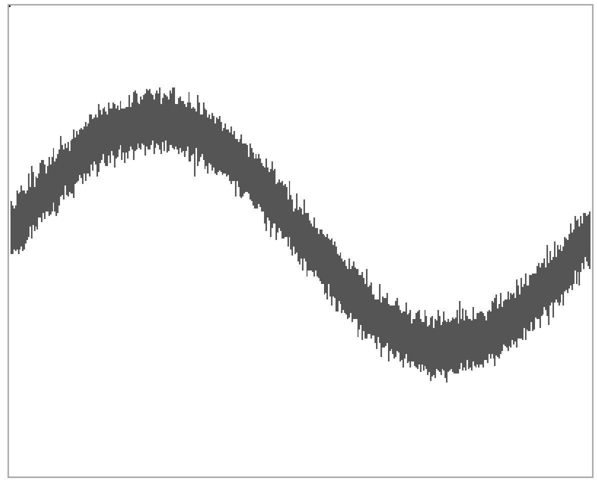


Figure C-23: Output Waveform

Sine Wave With 0 ° – 90° Continuously Cut

Use the following procedure:

☐ **Step 1:** Using the **Waveform**/**Sequence** item in the **SETUP** menu, load the **P_SCR.SEQ** file to CH1. The **SETUP** menu will be like the one shown in Figure C-24.

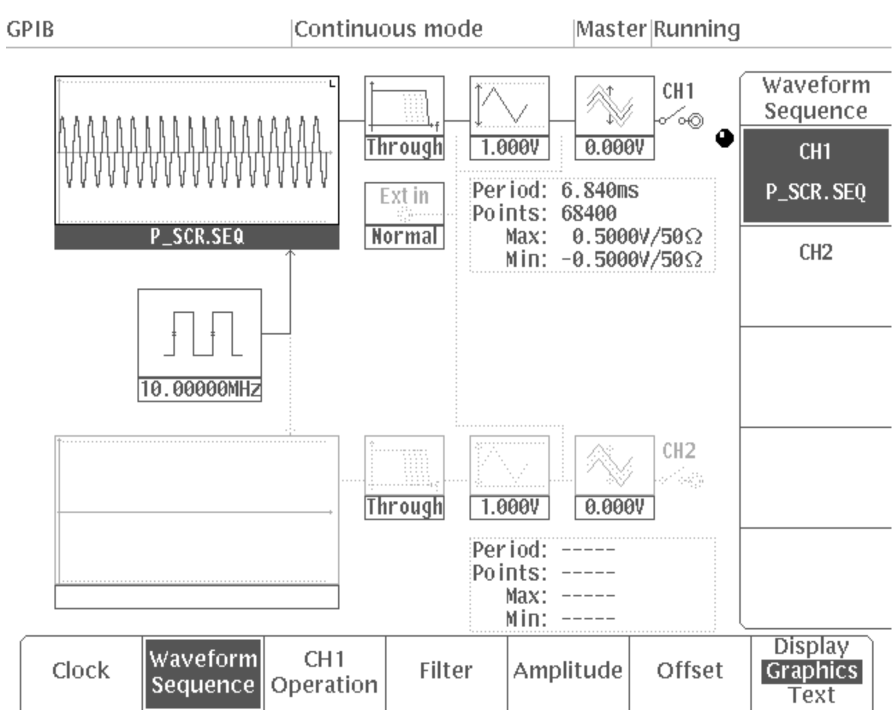


Figure C-24: SETUP Menu with Files Loaded

The **P_SCR.SEQ** sequence file is made up of 10 different waveform files (**P_SCR0.WFM** – **P_SCR9.WFM**). In this waveform, the sine wave is continuously cut between 0° and 90°. See Figure C-25.

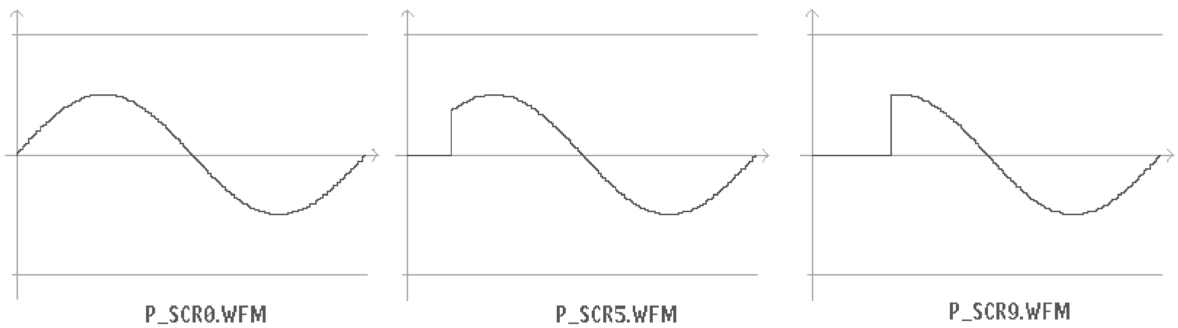


Figure C-25: Waveform Files in the P_SCR.SEQ Sequence File

☐ **Step 2:** In the **MODE** menu, set the operating mode to **Waveform Advance**.

☐ **Step 3:** Press the **MANUAL** button on the front panel. Check on the oscilloscope to make sure that the portion of the sine wave being cut becomes larger each time a trigger signal is received.

Appendix D: Miscellaneous

General Description

This appendix covers the following items.

- Horizontal axis scaling
- Sampling theorem
- Differentiation
- Integration
- Random (rnd) function
- Pattern code
- Logical operation
- Fast Fourier Transforms (FFT)
- Repackaging for shipment
- Factory settings

Horizontal Axis Scaling

The horizontal axis scaling uses linear interpolation.

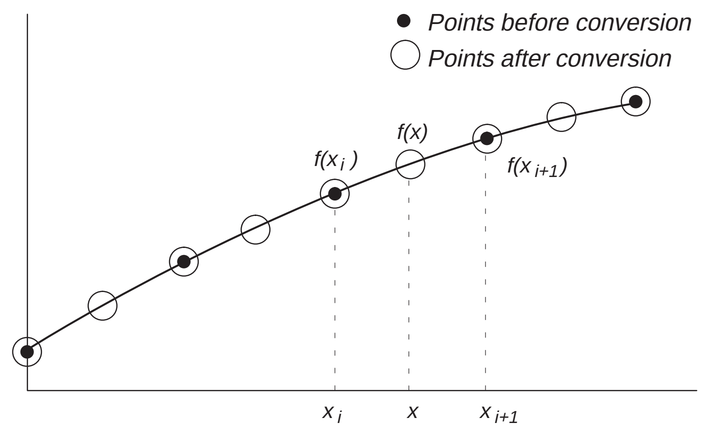


Figure D-1: Linear Interpolation

Here is the equation for linear interpolation.

$$f(x) = \frac{x - x_i}{x_{i+1} - x_i}\{f(x_{i+1}) - f(x_i)\} + f(x_i)$$

Here, i is the waveform point number; i takes integer values i = 1, 2, ..., n.

NOTE

The number of points can be increased or decreased, but the waveform may lose its characteristics when the number of points are decreased.

Example 1: 5 points padded to 9 points.

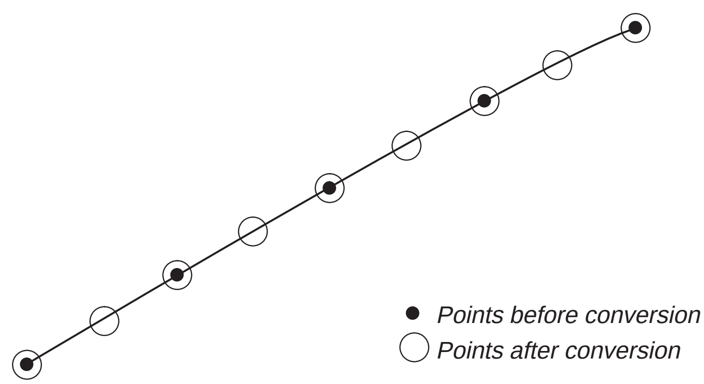


Figure D-2: Point Padding

Example 2: Reducing from 9 points to 6

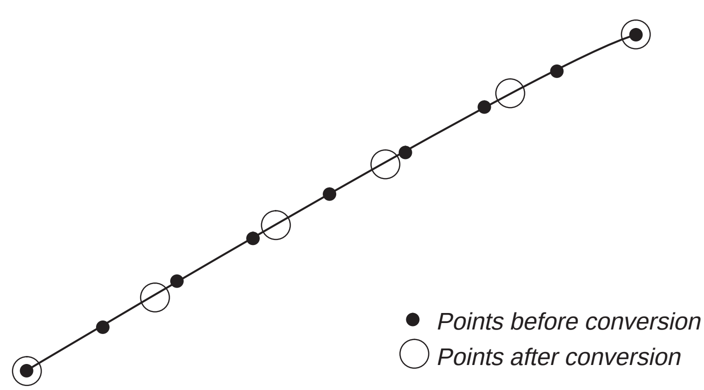


Figure D-3: Point Compression

Sampling Theorem

When the signal is continuous and the highest frequency component of the signal is f_0, sampling with Te1/2f_0 loses none of the data contained in the signal. T is the sampling interval. This theorem is well known as the sampling theorem. If data is created to meet this theorem, the necessary signal can be obtained.

$$X(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} X(nt) \frac{\sin\{(2\pi/T)(t-nT/2)\}}{(2\pi/T)(t-nT/2)}$$

A continuous analog signal x(t) can be reproduced from the digital data with the above equation.

Differentiation

The diff() function calculates the central deviation as the differential value. The equation below expresses the central deviation when the function f(x) is given at even intervals of Δx.

$$f'(x) \equiv \frac{f(x + \Delta x) - f(x - \Delta x)}{(2\ \Delta x)}$$

In actual practice, when function f(x)is expressed by n values, the differential value $f'(x_i)$ at point x_i is given by the following equation.

$$f'(x_i) \equiv n \frac{\{f(x_{i+1}) - f(x_{i-1})\}}{2}$$

Here, n is the number of waveform points and i is an integer in the range, i = 1, 2, ..., n.

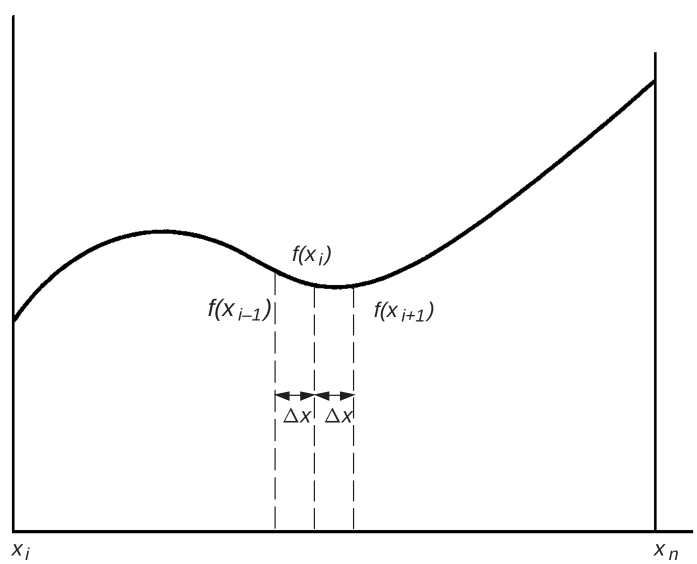


Figure D-4: Equation Differentiation

The values at the first and last points are obtained not from the center deviation, but from the following equations:

First point

$$f'(x_1) \equiv \frac{n\{-3f(x_1) + 4f(x_2) - f(x_3)\}}{2}$$

Last point

$$f'(x_n) \equiv \frac{n\{f(x_{n-2}) - 4f(x_{n-1}) + 3f(x_n)\}}{2}$$

Integration

The integ() function integrates numerically based on a trapezoidal formula. The trapezoidal formula is expressed with the following equation.

$$\int f(x)dx \equiv \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{f(x_{i-1}) + f(x_i)}{2} \cdot \Delta x$$

$$= \Delta \frac{x}{2}\{f(x_1) + 2f(x_2) + 2f(x_3) + \dots + 2f(x_{n-1}) + f(x_n)\}$$

Here, n is the number of waveform points and i is an integer in the range, i = 1, 2, ..., n.

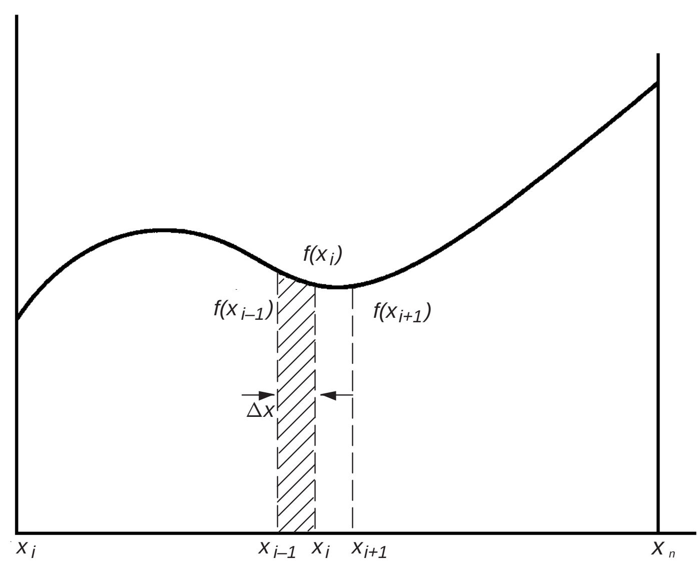


Figure D-5: Equation Integration

The integration is actually calculated with the following formula.

$$\int f(x)dx \equiv 1/2\{f(x_1) + 2f(x_2) + 2f(x_3) + \ldots + 2f(x_{n-1}) + f(x_n)\}$$

However, the imaginary initial value $f(x_0)$ always takes a value of 0.

Random (rnd) Function

A random number generation algorithm uses an uniform distribution random generation routine and the central-limit theorem to derive Gaussian distribution random numbers.

Central-limit theorem: when the independent random variables X_1, X_2..., and X_n conform to an identical random distribution, the mean and variance of $x = (X_1 + X_2 + \ldots + X_n)/n$ are given as follows:

$$E(n) = \mu \qquad V(n) = \sigma^2/n$$

Even if the initial random distribution is not normal, if a reasonably large value for n is used, the arithmetical mean x of a considerably large number of variables will be close to the normal distribution.

In actuality, 12 is used for n, uniform random numbers are accumulated n times and their arithmetical mean is derived as the ultimate Gaussian distribution random number.

The following algorithm is used to generate uniform distribution random numbers:

$$seed\ [n] = (253.0 \times seed\ [n-1] + 1.0)\ mod\ 16777216$$

$$ran = seed\ [n]\ /16777216$$

Pattern Codes

On the AWG2005, it is possible to select the coding system used when pattern strings are output. If the code will be affected by the immediately preceding data, the data item just before the first item of data will be calculated as 0. The following tables show the coding systems.

- **NRZ**: Normal data format

Pattern	Output Data
0	0
1	1

Example

Input	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	1
Output	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	1

- **NRZI**: The data changes when a 1 is received.

  Each pattern is made up of 2 data items.

Example

Input	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	1
Output	00	01	11	11	10	01	11	11	11	10	01	10

- **RZ**: The data always returns to 0.

  Each pattern is made up of 2 data items.

Pattern	Output Data
0	00
1	10

Example

Input	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	1
Output	00	10	00	00	10	10	00	00	00	10	10	10

- **MFM (Modified FM)**: Each pattern is made up of 2 data items. In the table below, data in parentheses () indicates the immediately preceding data of the data for which coding is being attempted. Here the output data is inverted every time when 1 appears in the codes.

Pattern	Code Conversion
1	01
(0)0	10
(1)0	00

Example

Input	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	1
Code Conversion	10	01	00	10	01	01	00	10	10	01	01	01
Output	11	10	00	11	10	01	11	00	11	10	01	10

- **BI-PHASE**: Each pattern is made up of 2 data items.

Pattern	Output Data
0	01
1	10

Example

Input	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	1
Output	01	10	01	01	10	10	01	01	01	10	10	10

- **f/2f**: Each pattern is made up of 2 data items. In the table below, data in parentheses () indicates the immediately preceding data of the data for which coding is being attempted.

Pattern	Output Data
(0) 0	11
(1) 0	00
(0) 1	10
(1) 1	01

Example

Input	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	1
Output	11	01	00	11	01	01	00	11	00	10	10	10

- **1-7 RLL (Run-length Limited Codes)**: 2-item patterns are made up of 3 data items, and 4-item patterns are made up of 6 data items. In the table below, x indicates that this value will become 1 when the preceding bit is 0, and 0 when the preceding bit is 1. Here the output data is inverted every time when 1 appears in the codes.

Pattern	Code Conversion
01	010
10	x00
11	x01
0001	x00000
0010	x00001
0011	010001
0000	010000

Example

Input	01	10	11	0010	10	0011	11	0001	0011	10	0000
Code Conversion	010	100	101	000001	000	010001	001	000000	010001	000	010000
Output	011	000	110	000001	111	100001	110	000000	011110	000	011111

- **2-7 RLL**: 2-item patterns are made up of 4 data items, 3-items pattern are made up of 6 data items and 4-item patterns are made up of 8 data items. Here the output data is inverted every time when 1 appears in the codes.

Pattern	Code Conversion
11	1000
10	0100
011	001000
010	100100
000	000100
0011	00001000
0010	00100100

Example

Input	11	10	010	000	0010	011	0011	10	0010
Code Conversion	1000	0100	100100	000100	00100100	001000	00001000	0100	00100100
Output	1111	1000	111000	000111	11000111	110000	00001111	1000	00111000

- **user defined:** When user defined has been selected as the code for pattern setting from the **Code** selection menu, the following pattern systems can be created by setting the values for **Source Data Pattern**, **Converted Code**, **Initial Src**, **Initial Code** and **Out[1/0]**.

NRZ

Intial Sr **0**
Initial Code **0**
Out[1/0] **High/Low**

Source Data Pattern	Converted Code
0	0
1	1

NRZ1

Intial Sr 0
Initial Code 0
Out[1/0] **Invert/Keep**

Source Data Pattern	Converted Code
0	00
1	01

RZ

Intial Sr **0**
Initial Code **0**
Out[1/0] **High/Low**

Source Data Pattern	Converted Code
0	00
1	10

BIPHASE

Intial Sr **0**
Initial Code **0**
Out[1/0] **High/Low**

Source Data Pattern	Converted Code
0	01
1	10

f/2f

Intial Sr	**0**
Initial Code	**0**
Out[1/0]	**Invert/Keep**

Source Data Pattern	Converted Code
0	10
1	11

MFM

Intial Sr	**0**
Initial Code	**0**
Out[1/0]	**Invert/Keep**

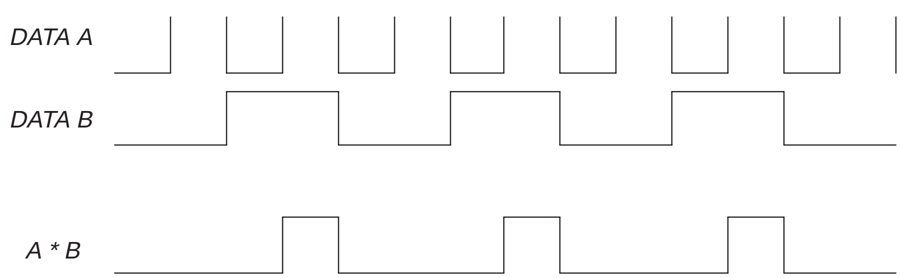
Source Data Pattern	Converted Code
0	30
1	01

Logical Operation

In the waveform editor timing display, it is possible to perform logical operations for data on different data lines. The following logical tables and timing charts show examples of each type of operations.

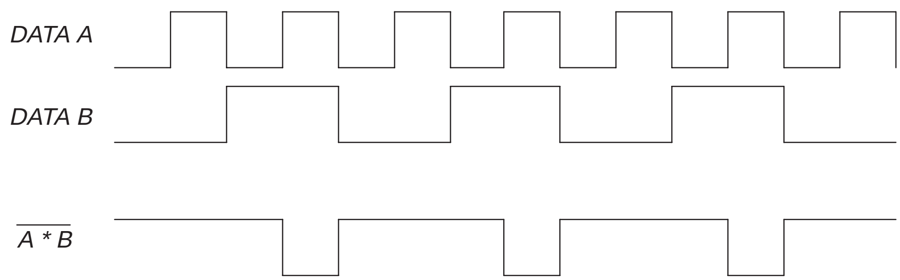
- **AND**

A	B	A*B
0	0	0
0	1	0
1	0	0
1	1	1



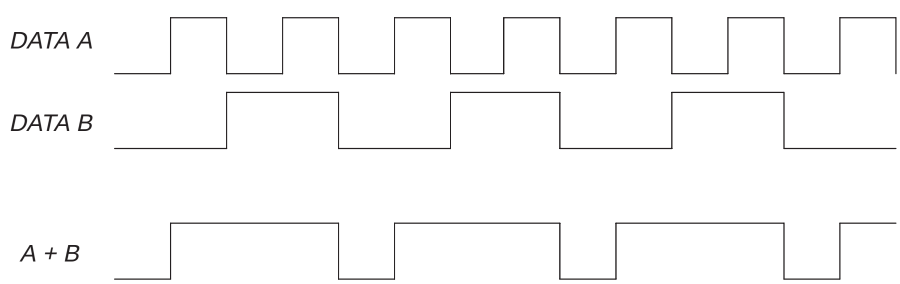
- **NAND**

A	B	$\overline{A*B}$
0	0	1
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	0



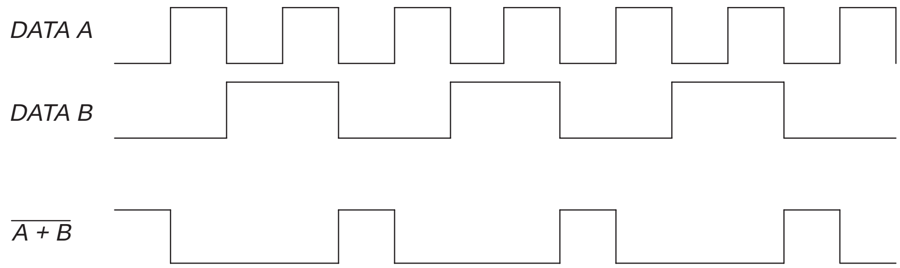
- **OR**

A	B	A+B
0	0	0
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	1



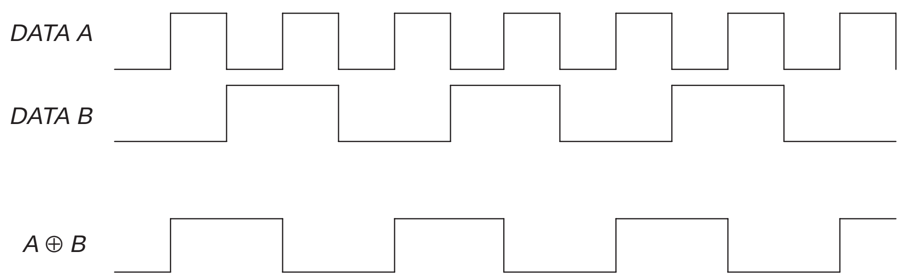
- **NOR**

A	B	$\overline{A+B}$
0	0	1
0	1	0
1	0	0
1	1	0



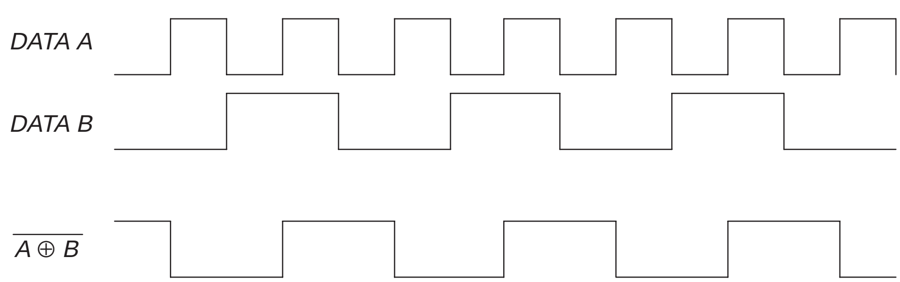
EX−OR

A	B	A⊕B
0	0	0
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	0



EX−NOR

A	B	$\overline{A \oplus B}$
0	0	1
0	1	0
1	0	0
1	1	1



FFT (Fast Fourier Transforms)

FFT is an algorithm for fast calculation of discrete Fourier transform. FFT transforms the time axis signal onto the frequency axis. FFT can also provide the frequency component magnitudes and phases. With the FFT editor, you can use inverse FFT (IFFT) to generate the real time data from the frequency component magnitudes and phases.

Basic FFT Rules

FFT discrete Fourier transforms any number of sample points, but certain rules must be followed.

1) The Record Length must be a Power of 2.

   The FFT calculations can only be used when the record length is an power of 2 (2, 4, 8, ...2^n). The minimum record length for the this instrument is 512 points, and the maximum record length is 16384 points.

   If the record length is not a power of 2, the waveform is edited expanded to a power of 2. Then when the editing is complete and the waveform is saved, the waveform is reduced to its original record length by interpolating the data. Therefore, it is recommended to use the record length of a power of 2 when accurate data is needed.

2) Nyquist Frequency and Aliasing

   FFT transforms the sampled data on the time axis into data on the discrete frequency axis from 0 Hz to the maximum permitted frequency. The maximum permitted frequency is called the Nyquist frequency and is 1/2 the sampling rate.

   If the signal has frequency components above the Nyquist frequency, they appear on this limited discrete frequency axis too. They appear as no different than noise aliased from the Nyquist frequency. For example, if there is a signal 5 MHz above the Nyquist frequency, it appears as if it is 5 MHz below the Nyquist frequency. On the other hand, in the D/A conversion, a frequency component is output aliased above the Nyquist frequency.

   To deal with aliasing, first it is necessary to sample with a clock greater than double the highest frequency component in the signal. Second, a low-pass filter is required to block any signal above the Nyquist frequency.

Record Length and Frequency Resolution

The frequency spectrum frequency range and resolution depend on the time axis sampling rate and the record length (N).

For the given data length on the time axis, FFT has frequency components from $-N/2$ to $N/2-1$. However, when the real number data on the time axis is transformed, FFT gives results symmetrical about 0 Hz (DC). Because of this symmetry, all the necessary frequency data is contained between 0 and $N/2 - 1$. Thus, with FFT if values are given from zero to the positive N/2 point, this is enough. Since the non-DC components have energy dispersed on both the positive and negative sides, the DC component is 2x the other components. Since the DC component is scaled by 1/2 with the FFT editor, DC and the other components can be handled equally.

Since FFT has N/2 sampling points on the discrete frequency axis between DC and the Nyquist frequency (F_N), the frequency resolution is $F_N/(N/2)$. Since the Nyquist frequency is one half the sampling rate (f_s), the frequency resolution can also be expressed as f_s/N.

Therefore, if the sampling rate is fixed, when the record length is increased, the frequency resolution rises. On the other hand, if the record length is fixed, raising the sampling rate raises the Nyquist frequency and lowers the frequency resolution.

Relationship Between Phase and Delay

The phase is the quantitative displacement from the standard time. The cos(2 π ft) has a 0 phase, but sin(2 π ft) has a 90 degree delay. The standard time is the sampling start time.

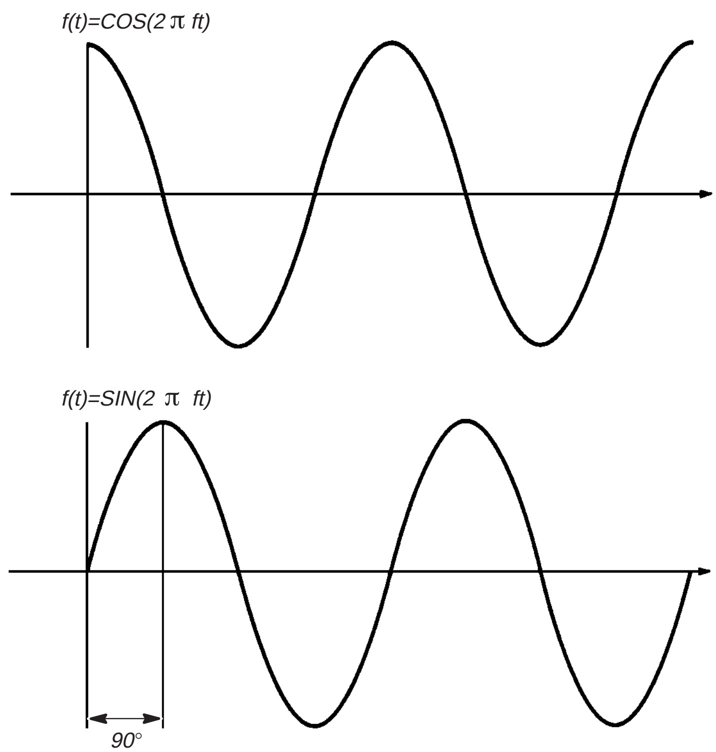


Figure D-6: Phase and Delay

FFT Window Functions

FFT calculates with limited data blocks. Also, since FFT calculations assume that the sampled data blocks are repeated infinitely, frequency error arises from non-continuities generated at the edges of data blocks. This frequency error is called leakage error.

The leakage error depends on the FFT window function selected. The processing to bring the window function at both ends towards 0 in order to give the FFT continuity is called taper processing. This instrument has the square wave window, which does not apply taper processing to the time region data, and five FFT window functions that do carry out taper processing.

The FFT window functions in the time region correspond to filters in the frequency region. This is convolution and it is well known that it has a characteristic of sin(x)/x for square window. These filters have a high lobe at the center, in other words a transmitting bandwidth. This lobe determines how great the neighboring frequency components can be separated.

The transmission amount for the side lobes neighboring this center lobe determines the amount of leakage. Leakage is the spread of energy from a certain frequency component for the displayed frequency spectrum. Frequency components with small magnitudes are covered overall by leakage.

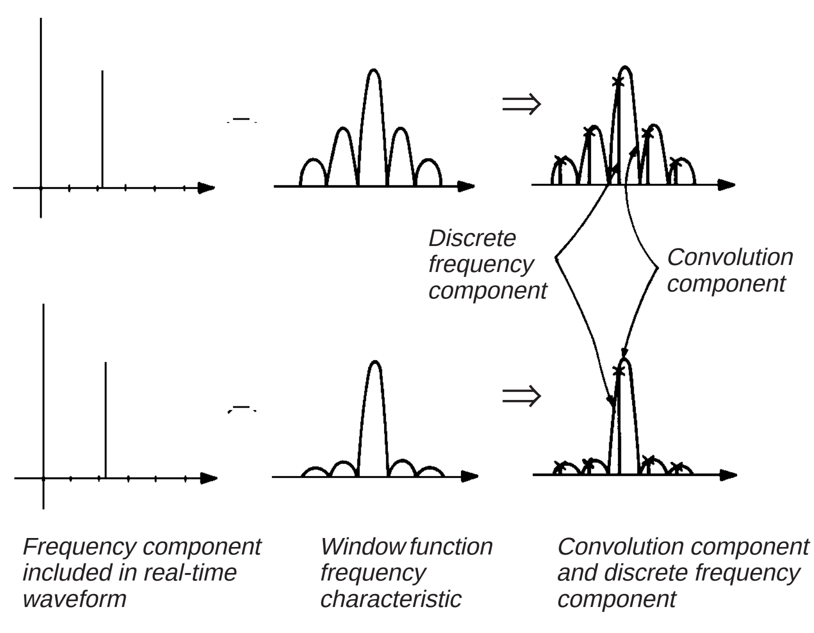


Figure D-7: Concept of Convolution

Figures D-8 through D-13 show the FFT window functions prepared for this instrument and their characteristics. Also, note that if you use a window function with taper processing, then carry out inverse Fourier transformation to make real-time data, that real-time data is tapered.

The window functions are effective for investigating the frequency components of the acquired waveform, but the waveform after the window function is applied differs from the original waveform.

Square Wave Window — The square wave window does not taper the time region data. The filter shape in the frequency region is sin(x)/x. The square wave window is appropriate for observing the frequency spectrum of non-repetitive signals. The square wave window is also used for observing frequency components near DC.

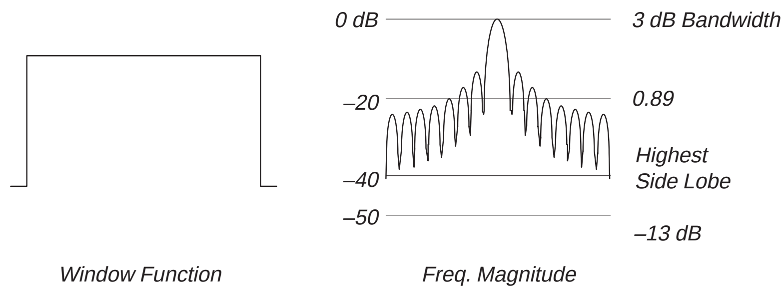


Figure D-8: Square Window and Frequency Characteristic

Hanning Window — The Hanning window is a function derived from the cos function. This window function has superior magnitude precision and leakage elimination characteristics.

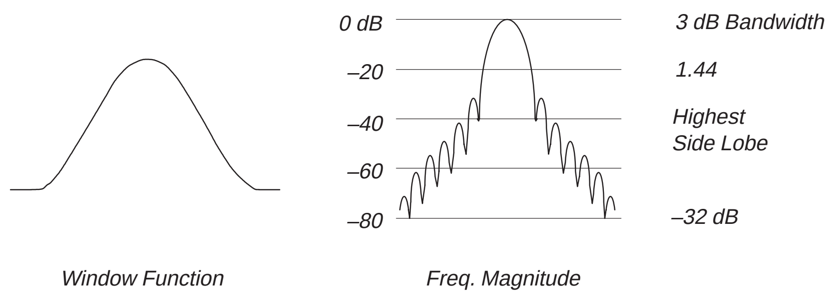


Figure D-9: Hanning Window and Frequency Characteristic

Hamming Window — The hamming window is similar to a hanning window, but it suppresses more the transmissivity for the side lobes next to the transmitting bandwidth. Compared to FFT processing using a hanning window, the degree of separation between two frequencies is greater, as can be seen in Figure D-10. This window is particularly effective for separating close frequencies.

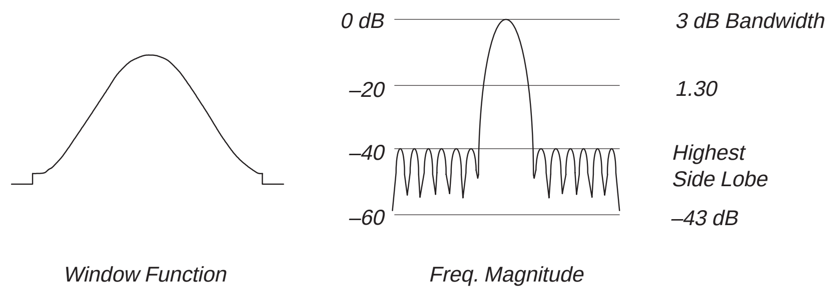


Figure D-10: Hamming Window and Frequency Characteristic

Blackman-Harris Window — Of the six window functions in this instrument, the Blackman-Harris window has the broadest transmission bandwidth (and therefore, lowest frequency resolution) and the lowest side lobe transmission (and therefore, lowest leakage). This window is particularly suited for observing wide range frequency spectra.

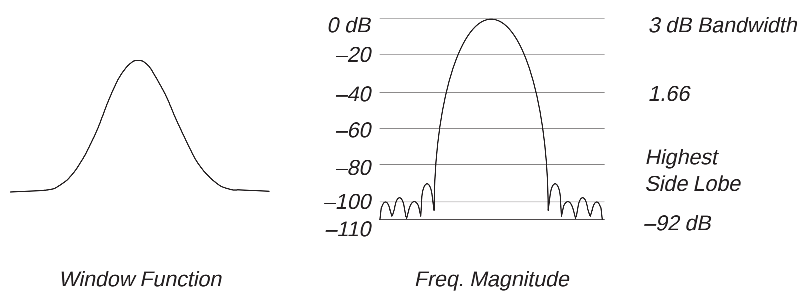


Figure D-11: Blackman-Harris Window and Frequency Characteristic

Blackman Window — The Blackman window suppresses the side lobe magnitudes in the frequency region lower than the hamming window does and suppresses leakage even farther. However, it has inferior frequency resolution.

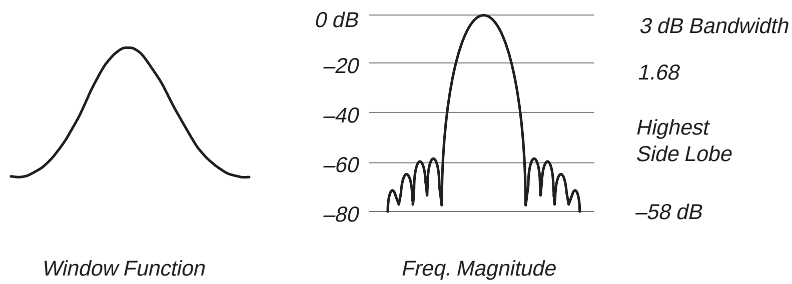


Figure D-12: Blackman Window and Frequency Characteristic

Triangle Wave Window — The triangle wave window is a convolution of two square windows half the width of the window. Therefore, the triangle wave window frequency spectrum is the product of the square wave windows.

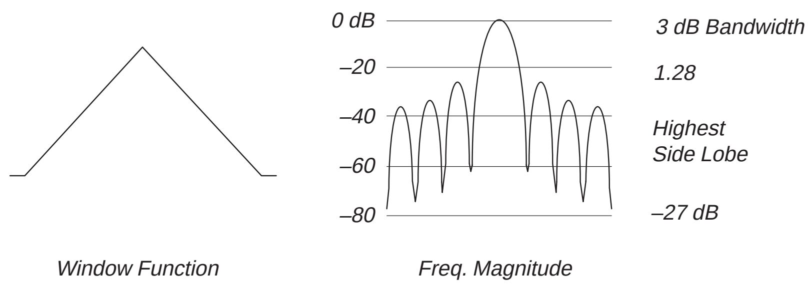


Figure D-13: Triangle Window and Frequency Characteristic

Repackaging for Shipment

If this instrument is shipped by commercial transportation, use the original packaging material. Unpack the instrument carefully from the shipping container to save the carton and packaging material for this purpose.

If the original packaging is unfit for use or is not available, repackage the instrument as follows:

- [ ] **Step 1:** Obtain a corrugated cardboard shipping carton having inside dimensions at least six inches greater than the instrument dimensions and having a carton test strength of at least 275 pounds.
- [ ] **Step 2:** If the instrument is being shipped to a Tektronix Service Center for repair or calibration, attach a tag to the instrument showing the following: owner of the instrument (with address), the name of a person at your firm who may be contacted if additional information is needed, complete instrument type and serial number, and a description of the service required.
- [ ] **Step 3:** Wrap the instrument with polyethylene sheeting or equivalent to protect the outside finish and prevent entry of packing materials into the instrument.
- [ ] **Step 4:** Cushion the instrument on all sides by tightly packing dunnage or urethane foam between the carton and the instrument, allowing for three inches of padding on each side (including top and bottom).
- [ ] **Step 5:** Seal the carton with shipping tape or with an industrial stapler.
- [ ] **Step 6:** Mark the address of the Tektronix Service Center and your return address on the carton in one or more prominent locations.

Factory Settings

When **Reset to Factory** is selected from the **UTILITY Misc** menu, this instrument's parameters are reset to the values they had at the factory. Table D-5 lists these factory settings.

Table D-5: Factory Settings

Setup Menu	
Clock Frequency	10.00MHz
Clock Source	Internal
CH1 Operation	Normal
Filter	Through
Amplitude	1.000V
Offset	0.000V
Display	Graphics
MODE Menu	
Operating mode	Cont
Triggered Slope	Positive
Gated Polarity	Positive
Level	1.4V
Waveform Advance Run	Continuous
Autostep Run	Step
Configure	Master
LOAD/SAVE Menu	
Device	Disk
Auto Load	Off
UTILITY Menu	
Misc Display... Brightness	70%
Misc Display... Catalog Order	Name1
Misc Display... Data Time	Off
Misc Hardcopy... Format	BMP
Misc Hardcopy... Port	Disk
Diag/Cal Diagnostics	All
Diag/Cal Calibrations	All

Table D-5: Factory Settings (Cont)

FG Menu	
Function waveform Selection	Sine
Frequency	200.0kHz
Amplitude	1.000V
Offset	0.000V
Polarity	Normal
Pulse Duty	50%

The following **UTILITY** menu settings are not affected by **Reset to Factory**.

Remote Port
GPIB Address
GPIB operating mode
Setting the RS-232C parameters
Date/Time

Table D-6 lists the factory settings for the **SETUP** menu with Option 05 installed. The menus other than the **SETUP** menu are same as a standard instrument.

Table D-6: Option 05 Factory Settings

Clock Frequency	10.00000 MHz
Clock Source	Internal
Sweep	Off
Sweep Setup...	
Sweep Type	Linear
Start/Stop	1.00000 MHz/20.0000 MHz
Sweep Mode	Continuous
Sweep Time	1.000 s

Appendix E: Performance Verification Procedure

This subsection describes the kind of verification procedures that can be followed, it indicates when to use the procedures, and gives conventions used in their structure. The procedures in this section are:

- Self Tests
- Performance Tests

Preparation

These procedures verify the AWG2005 Arbitrary Waveform Generator functionality. Which procedure to follow depends on your goal:

- To quickly confirm that the AWG2005 functions correctly and was adjusted properly, do the procedures under *Self Tests*, which begin on page E-3.

  Advantages: These procedures are short, require no external equipment, and perform extensive functional and accuracy testing. Use them to quickly determine if the AWG2005 is suitable for putting into service, such as when it is first received.

- For a more extensive confirmation of performance, do the *Performance Tests*, beginning on page E-7 after doing the *Self Tests*.

  Advantages: These procedures involve direct checking of warranted specifications. They require more time and suitable test equipment. (See *Equipment Required* on page E-8.

Before starting any of these procedures, read *Overview* and *Basic Menu Operation* in section 2 of this manual. These instructions describe the AWG2005 front-panel controls and menu system.

Conventions

Throughout the procedures in this section the following conventions apply:

- Each test procedure uses the following general format:
  - Title of Test
  - Equipment Required
  - Prerequisites
  - Procedure

- Each procedure consists of as many steps, substeps, and subparts as required to do the test. Steps, substeps, and subparts are sequenced as follows:

  1. First Step

     a. First Substep

        - First Subpart
        - Second Subpart

     b. Second Substep

  2. Second Step

- Instructions for menu selection follow this format: **FRONT PANEL BUTTON→Main Menu Button→Side Menu Button**. For example, "Press **UTILITY→Misc→Config...→Reset to Factory→O.K**."
- Where instructed to use a front-panel button, key, or knob, or select from the MENU column, or from a bottom or side menu, the name of the item appears in boldface type: "push **MODE**, " or "select **Triggered** in the bottom menu."

Self Tests

This subsection describes how to use AWG2005 internal self-test routines. No equipment is required to do these procedures. The self tests include these internal routines:

- Diagnostics

  This self-test procedure uses internal routines to verify that the AWG2005 functions, and passes the internal circuit tests.

- Calibration

  The second procedure checks the AWG2005 internal calibration constants and changes them if needed.

Diagnostics

The internal diagnostic routines check AWG2005 characteristics such as amplitude, offset, trigger level, clock, filters and attenuation.

The AWG2005 automatically performs the internal diagnostics at power-on; you can also run the internal diagnostics using the menu selections described in this procedure. The difference between these two methods of initiating the diagnostics is that the menu method does more detailed memory checking than the power-on method.

Equipment Required: None.

Prerequisites: Power on the AWG2005 and allow a twenty-minute warmup period before doing this procedure.

Procedure:

1. *Verify that internal diagnostics pass:* Do the following substeps to verify passing internal diagnostics.

   a. *Display the diagnostics menu and select all tests*: Push **UTILITY→Diag/Cal→Diagnostics xxxx→All**. See the menu in Figure E-1.

      The Diagnostics column on the left shows the tests available for diagnostics. In addition to selecting all of the tests shown for Diagnostics, you can select only the test(s) you want to run using the general purpose knob. In Figure E-1, the symbol to the left of Cpu indicates that test is one of the tests selected.

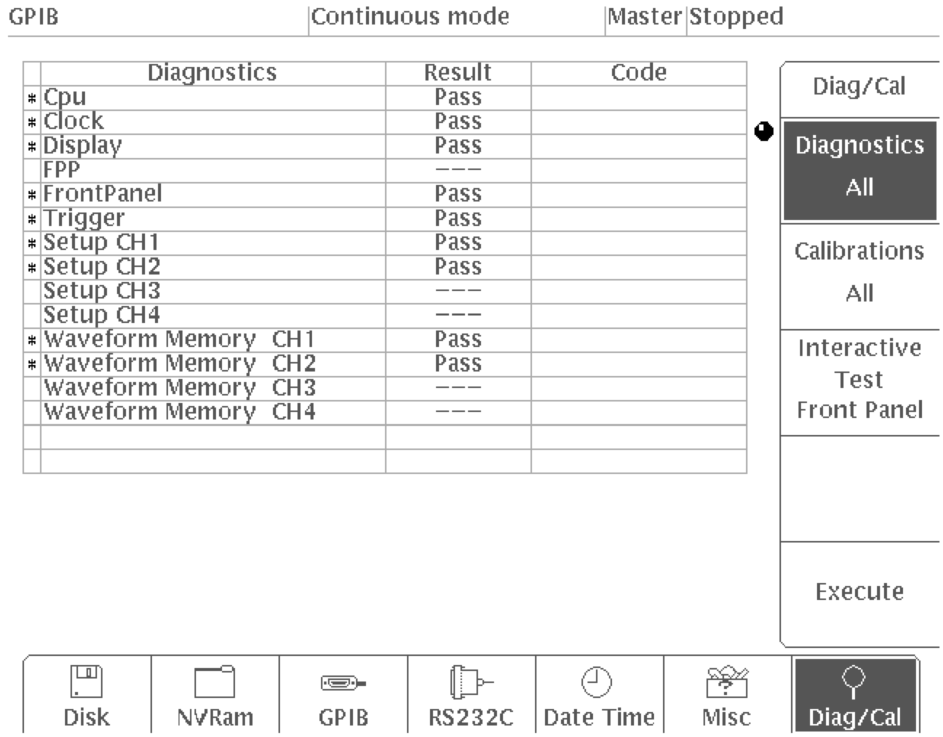


Figure E-1: Diagnostics Menu

b. *Run the diagnostics*: Select **Execute** from the side menu. This executes all the AWG2005 diagnostics automatically.

c. *Wait*: The internal diagnostics do an extensive verification of AWG2005 functions. While this verification progresses, the screen displays the clock icon. When finished, the resulting status appears on the screen.

d. *Confirm that no failures are found*: Verify that no failures are found and reported on-screen. If the diagnostics displays FAIL as the result of any test, consult a qualified service technician for further assistance.

2. *Return to regular service*: Push a button (other than UTILITY) in the MENU column to exit the diagnostic menu.

Calibration

The AWG2005 includes internal calibration routines that check electrical characteristics such as amplitude, offset, trigger level, clock, filters and attenuation and adjust internal calibration constants as necessary. This procedure describes how to do the internal calibration.

Equipment Required: None.

Prerequisites: Power on the AWG2005 and allow a 20 minute warmup period at an ambient temperature between +15°C and +25°C before doing this procedure.

Procedure:

NOTE

If the AWG2005 *is powered off while the calibration is executed the calibration data in the memory may be loss.*

1. *Verify that internal adjustments pass:* Do the following substeps to verify internal adjustments have passed.

   a. *Display the calibrations menu and select all tests*: Push **UTILITY→Diag/Cal→Calibrations xxxx→All**. See the menu in Figure E-2.

      The Calibrations column on the left shows the tests available for calibration. In addition to selecting all of the tests shown, you can select only the test(s) you want to run using the general purpose knob. In Figure E-2, the symbol to the left of Trigger indicates the tests selected.

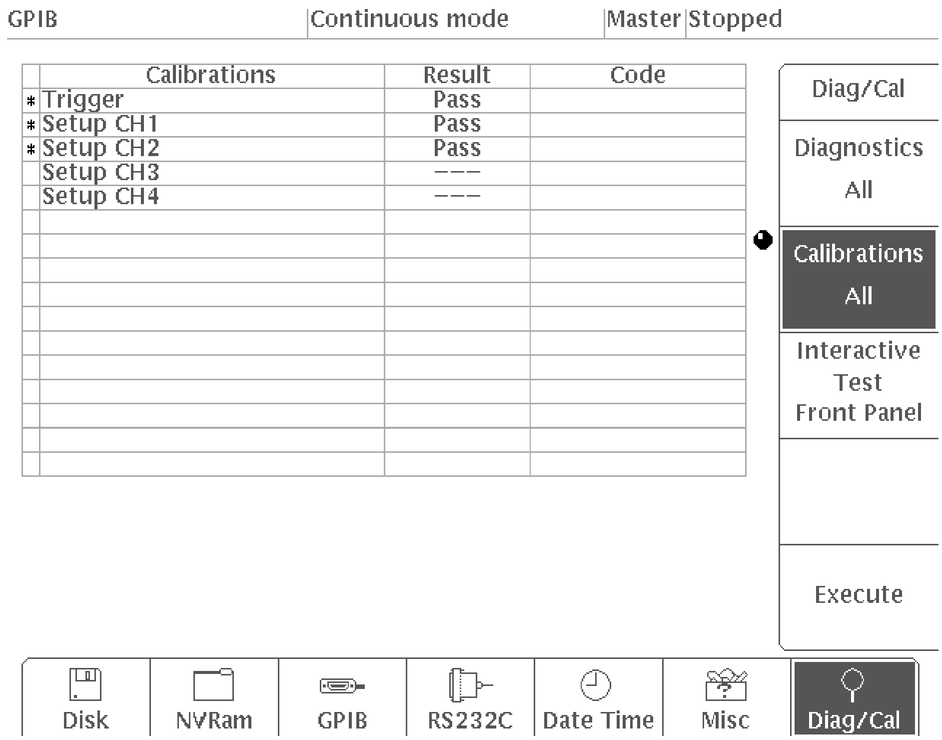


Figure E-2: Calibrations Menu

b. *Run the adjustments routine*: Select **Execute** from the side menu. This executes the AWG2005 calibration routines automatically.

c. *Wait*: The internal calibration does an exhaustive verification of proper AWG2005 function. While this verification progresses, the clock icon appears on screen. When finished, the resulting status will appear on the screen.

d. *Confirm that no failures are found*: Verify that no failures are found and reported on-screen. If the calibration displays FAIL as the result, consult a qualified service technician for further assistance.

2. *Return to regular service*: Push any button (other than UTILITY) in the MENU column to exit the calibration menu.

Performance Tests

This subsection contains a series of procedures for checking that the AWG2005 Arbitrary Waveform Generator performs as warranted.

The procedures are arranged in eleven logical groupings, presented in the following order:

- Operating Mode Checks
- Arithmetic Operation Checks
- Clock Frequency and Amplitude Checks
- Gain Accuracy Check
- Offset Accuracy Check
- Pulse Response Check
- MARKER OUT Amplitude Check
- CONTROL SIG OUT Amplitude Check
- External Trigger Level Accuracy Check
- External CLOCK IN Check
- Master-Slave Operation Check (Optional Check)
- DIGITAL DATA OUT Check

These procedures extend the confidence level provided by the internal diagnostic and calibration routines described on page E-3.

Prerequisites

The tests in this subsection comprise an extensive, valid confirmation of performance and functionality, when the following requirements are met:

- You must have performed and passed the calibration procedure described in *Self Tests*, the previous subsection.

NOTE

For operation to specified accuracy, allow the AWG2005 to warm up at least 20 minutes before doing the performance tests.

- Load all the files from the Performance Check disk (063-1706-XX) that comes with this manual into AWG2005 internal memory. For instructions on loading files, see *Loading Files* on page E-9.

Related Information

Read *Preparation* and *Conventions* on page E-1. Also, if you are not familiar with operating the AWG2005, refer to *Operating Basics* before doing any of these procedures.

Equipment Required

The following equipment is required to check the performance of the AWG2005.

Table E-1: Test Equipment

Item Description	Minimum Requirements	Example	Purpose
Precision termination	Impedance: 50 Ω, 0.1% Connectors: BNC	Tektronix Part 011-0129-00	Signal termination.
Adapter	Connectors: BNC female-to-dual banana	Tektronix Part 103-0090-00	Signal interconnection.
BNC dual input (TEE) adapter	Connectors: BNC	Tektronix Part 103-0030-00	Signal interconnection.
BNC cable (4 required)	Impedance 50 Ω Connectors: BNC Length: 43 inches	Tektronix Part 012-0057-01	Signal interconnection.
Digital Data Out Cable (Option 04)	Must use example equipment	Tektronix Part 174-3192-00	Used to check digital data output.
2 X13 header (Option 04)	Must use example equipment	Tektronix Part 131-3847-00	Used to check digital data output.
Probe, 10X (Option 04)	10X probe	Tektronix Part P6139A	Used to check digital data output.
Test oscilloscope	Bandwidth: >250 MHz	Tektronix TDS500 Series Digitizing Oscilloscope	Checks output signals. Used in many procedures.
Frequency counter	Frequency range: 10 Hz to 250 MHz	Tektronix DC 5010 Programmable Universal Counter/Timer*	Used to check clock frequency.
Digital multimeter	DC volts range: 0.05 V to 10 V Accuracy: ±0.1%	Fluke 8842A	Used throughout the checks to measure voltage.
Function generator	Output voltage: −5 V to 5 V	Tektronix FG 5010 Programmable Function Generator*	Used to input the trigger signal.
Performance Check disk	Must use example listed	Tektronix Part 063-1706-XX	Used throughout the checks to provide waveform files.

*Requires a TM 5000 Series Power Module Mainframe

Table E-2: Test Equipment For Optional Check

Item Description	Minimum Requirements	Example	Purpose
Arbitrary Waveform Generator	Must use example listed	Tektronix AWG2005 Arbitrary Waveform Generator	Used to check master-slave operation.

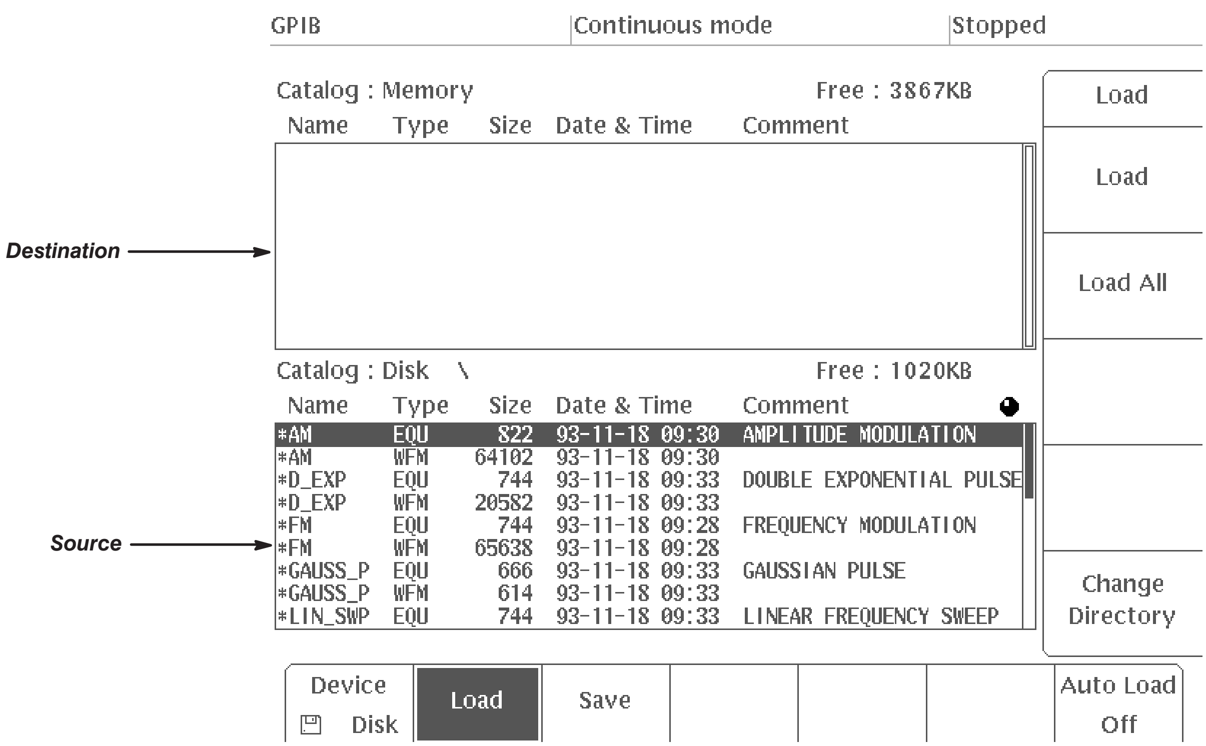


Figure E-3: LOAD Menu

Loading Files

The following steps explain how to load files from the Performance Check/Adjustment disk (063-1706-00) into internal memory.

1. Push the **LOAD**/**SAVE** button in the MENU column.
2. Turn the disk so the side with the arrow is on top; insert the disk into the AWG2005 floppy disk drive.
3. Push the **Device** button along the bottom menu to select **Disk**. The menu in Figure E-3 appears.
4. Select the **Load All** button along the side menu to load all files in the root directory on the disk into the AWG2005 internal (volatile) memory. Or, turn the general-purpose knob to highlight the file you want to load and select **Load**. The display indicates which file it is loading. When loading is complete, the clock icon disappears.
5. Push the floppy drive button and remove the disk from the floppy drive.
6. Push any button in the MENU column (other than LOAD/SAVE) to exit the menu.

Performance Check Files

Table E-3 lists the waveform files on the Performance Check disk (063-1706-XX) that are used in these performance tests, the AWG2005 front-panel settings that each file sets up, and the performance test that uses each file.

NOTE

*The files on the Performance Check disk are locked (the files names are displayed with *), so the data in these files cannot be changed unless the lock is opened. The file data includes not only waveform data, but also output parameters.*

When you select a file with the Waveform Sequence item, the AWG2005 output parameters change to those specified in the file, and the waveform output reflects waveform data in the file. After selecting a file, do not change an output parameter with the SETUP menu unless a procedure instructs you to do so. During the procedures, if you are unsure that the AWG2005 settings still match the file's settings, select the waveform again using the Waveform Sequence item on the SETUP menu.

Table E-3: File List for Performance Check Disk

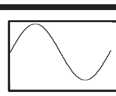
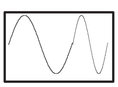
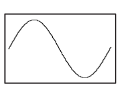
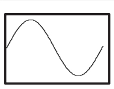
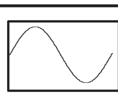
No.	File Name	EDIT Menu		SETUP Menu					Usage
		Wfm Shape	Wfm Point	Clock	Operation	Filter	Ampl	Offset	
1	MODE.WFM		1000	10 MHz	Normal	Through	1 V	0 V	Cont Mode, Triggered Mode, Gated Mode
2	MODE_ADV.SEQ ADV-1.WFM ADV-2.WFM		1200 1000 200	10 MHz	Normal	Through	1 V	0 V	Waveform Advance Mode
3	MODE_AST.AST Step: 1 AST-1.WFM		1000	10 MHz	Normal	Through	3 V	0 V	Autostep Mode
	Step: 2 AST-2.WFM		200	5 MHz	Normal	Through	1.5 V	0 V	
	Step: 3 AST-3.WFM		200	20 MHz	Normal	Through	0.5 V	0 V	

Table E-3: File List for Performance Check Disk (Cont.)

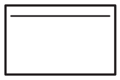
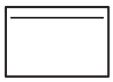
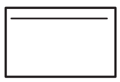
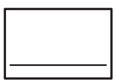
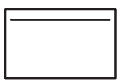
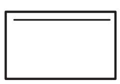
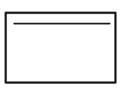
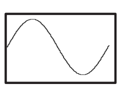
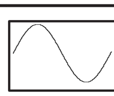
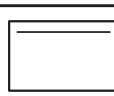
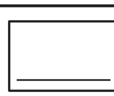
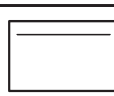
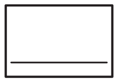
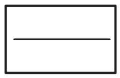
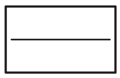
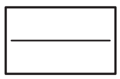
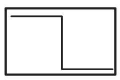
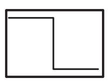
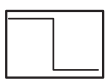
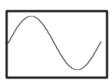
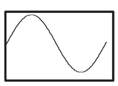
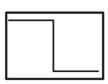
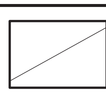
No.	File Name	EDIT Menu		SETUP Menu					Usage
		Wfm Shape	Wfm Point	Clock	Operation	Filter	Ampl	Offset	
4	OPE.AST Step: 1 EXT_AM.WFM (CH1)		1000	1 MHz	Ext AM	Through	5 V	0 V	External AM Operation
	Step: 1 – – – – – – (CH2)								
	Step: 2 AM-1.WFM (CH1)		1000	1 MHz	AM	Through	5 V	0 V	Internal AM Operation
	Step:2 AM-2.WFM (CH2)		1000	1 MHz	– – –	Through	10 V	0 V	
	Step: 3 AM-1.WFM (CH1)		1000	1 MHz	AM	Through	5 V	0 V	
	Step:3 AM-3.WFM (CH2)		1000	1 MHz	– – –	Through	10 V	0 V	
	Step: 4 ADD.WFM (CH1)		1000	1 MHz	Ext ADD	Through	5 V	0 V	External ADD Operation
	Step: 4 – – – – – – – (CH2)								
	Step: 5 ADD.WFM (CH1)		1000	1 MHz	Add	Through	5 V	0 V	Internal Add Operation
	Step:5 ADD.WFM (CH2)		1000	1 MHz	– – –	Through	5 V	0 V	
5	CLK_FREQ.WFM		1000	20 MHz	Normal	Through	1 V	0 V	Clock Frequency Accuracy
6	CLK_AMPL.WFM		1000	1 MHz	Normal	Through	1 V	0 V	Clock Amplitude
7	GAIN.AST (CH1–CH4) Step: 1 GAIN-1.WFM		1000	1 MHz	Normal	Through	0.999 V	0 V	Gain Accuracy
	Step: 2 GAIN-2.WFM		1000	1 MHz	Normal	Through	–0.999 V	0 V	
	Step: 3 GAIN-3.WFM		1000	1 MHz	Normal	Through	10 V	0 V	

Table E-3: File List for Performance Check Disk (Cont.)

No.	File Name	EDIT Menu		SETUP Menu					Usage
		Wfm Shape	Wfm Point	Clock	Operation	Filter	Ampl	Offset	
	Step: 4 GAIN-4.WFM		1000	1 MHz	Normal	Through	−10 V	0 V	
8	OFF.AST (CH1−CH4) Step: 1 OFFSET-1.WFM		1000	1 MHz	Normal	Through	0.05 V	5 V	Offset Accuracy
	Step: 2 OFFSET-2.WFM		1000	1 MHz	Normal	Through	0.05 V	0 V	
	Step: 3 OFFSET-3.WFM		1000	1 MHz	Normal	Through	0.05 V	−5 V	
9	PULSE.WFM		64	20 MHz	Normal	Through	0.5 V	0 V	Pulse Response
10	MKR.WFM		200	1 MHz	Normal	Through	1 V	0 V	MARKER OUT Amplitude
11	CNTRL.WFM		200	1 MHz	Normal	Through	1 V	0 V	CONTROL SIG OUT Amplitude
12	TRG_IN.WFM		1000	20 MHz	Normal	Through	1 V	0 V	External Trigger Level Accuracy
13	EXT_CLK.WFM		1000	External Clock	Normal	Through	1 V	0 V	External CLOCK IN
14	MS_SL.WFM		200	1 MHz	Normal	Through	1 V	0 V	Master-Slave Operation Check (Optional Check)
15	DIGI_OUT.WFM		4096	1 MHz	Normal	Through	1 V	0 V	DIGITAL DATA OUT Check (Option 04)

Operating Mode Checks

These procedures check operation of the Cont, Triggered, Gated, Waveform Advance, and Autostep modes.

Check Cont Mode

Electrical Characteristic Checked: Operating modes, Continuous, on page B-4.

Equipment Required: A 50 Ω coaxial cable and an oscilloscope.

Prerequisites: The AWG2005 must meet the prerequisites listed on page E-7.

Procedure:

1. *Install the test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

   a. *Hook up the oscilloscope:* Connect the AWG2005 CH1 output connector through the coaxial cable to the CH1 vertical input connector on the oscilloscope (see Figure E-4).

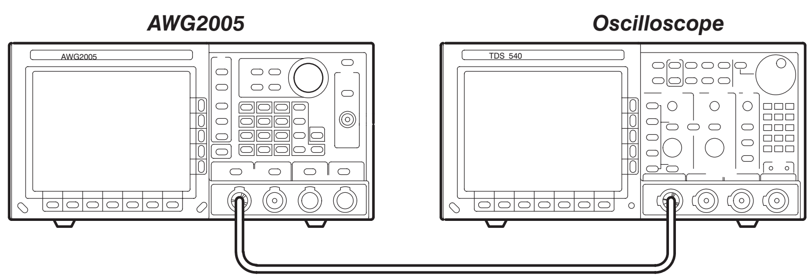


Figure E-4: Cont Mode Initial Test Hookup

   b. *Set the oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical:	CH1
CH1 coupling:	DC
CH1 scale	0.2 V/div.
CH1 input impedance:	50 Ω
Horizontal	
Sweep	50 μs/div.
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	DC
Slope	Positive
Level	−100 mV
Mode	Auto

2. *Set the AWG2005 controls and select the waveform file:*

   a. *Initialize AWG2005 controls:* Push **UTILITY→Misc→Config...→Reset to Factory→O.K.**

   b. *Select the file:*

      - Push **SETUP→Waveform Sequence**, if necessary, to select a waveform file for CH1. Waveform Sequence toggles between the CH1 files (upper list) and the CH2 files (lower list).
      - Turn the general purpose knob to display the list of waveform files and highlight the **MODE.WFM** file.
      - Push **ENTER** to select the file. This button is located to the lower-right of the numeric keypad.
      - Select the **MODE.WFM** file for CH2 same as CH1.

3. *Turn on the AWG2005 CH1 output:* Push the **CH1** button so that the LED above the CH1 output connector is on.
4. *Check against limits*: Check that the amplitude of the sine wave displayed on the oscilloscope is 5 vertical divisions and that 5 cycles of the waveform are displayed.
5. Move the connection for the coaxial cable from the AWG2005 CH1 output to AWG2005 CH2 output connector.
6. *Turn on the AWG2005 CH2 output:* Push the **CH2** button so that the LED above the CH2 output connector is on.
7. Repeat procedure 2.
8. *If Option 02 is installed (adds CH3 and CH4 output channels):* Repeat this procedure for CH3 and CH4 outputs.
9. *End procedure:* Disconnect the oscilloscope.

Check Triggered Mode

Electrical Characteristic Checked: Operating modes, Triggered, on page B-4.

Equipment Required: Two 50 Ω coaxial cables, a function generator, and an oscilloscope.

Prerequisites: The AWG2005 meets the prerequisites listed on page E-7.

Procedure:

1. *Install the test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

   a. *Hook up the oscilloscope:* Connect the AWG2005 CH1 output connector through the coaxial cable to the CH1 vertical input connector on the oscilloscope.

   b. *Hook up the function generator:*

      - Connect the AWG2005 TRIGGER INPUT connector though a coaxial cable to the function generator output connector (see Figure E-5).

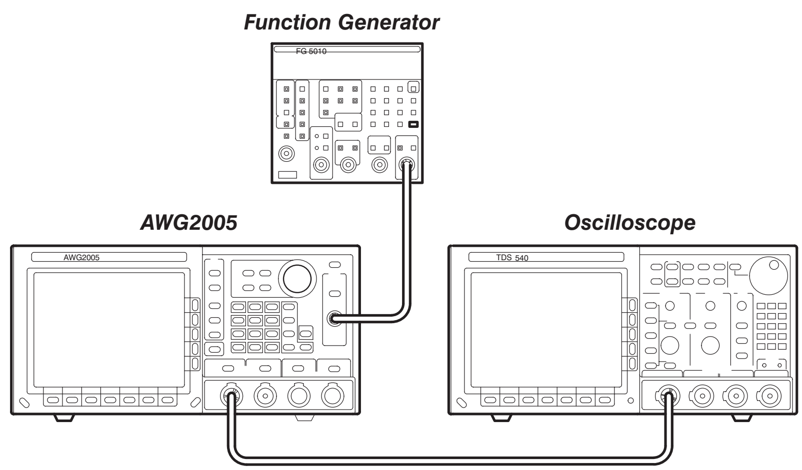


Figure E-5: Triggered Mode Initial Test Hookup

   c. *Set the oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical:	CH1
CH1 coupling:	DC
CH1 scale	0.2 V/div.
CH1 input impedance:	50 Ω
Horizontal	
Sweep	50 μs/div.

Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	DC
Slope	Positive
Level	−100 mV
Mode	Auto

d. *Set the function generator controls:*

Function	Square
Mode	Continuous
Parameter	
Frequency	1 kHz
Amplitude	4 V
Offset	2 V
Output	Off

2. *Set AWG2005 controls and select the waveform file:*

   a. *Initialize AWG2005 controls:* Push **UTILITY→Misc→Config...→Reset to Factory→O.K.**

   b. *Modify the AWG2005 default settings:*

      - Push **MODE→Triggered→Slope** to select **Positive** slope.
      - Select **Level** from the side menu and turn the general purpose knob to select a 1 V trigger level.

   c. *Select the file:*

      - Push **SETUP→Waveform Sequence**, if necessary, to select a waveform file for CH1. Waveform Sequence toggles between the CH1 files (upper list) and the CH2 files (lower list).
      - Highlight the **MODE.WFM** file using the general purpose knob.
      - Push **ENTER** to select the file.

3. *Turn on the AWG2005 CH1 output:* Push the **CH1** button so that the LED above the CH1 output connector is on.

4. *Check triggered mode with manual triggering*: Push the AWG2005 **MANUAL TRIGGER** button and check that when the button is pushed, the oscilloscope displays a one-cycle sine wave.

5. *Check triggered mode with external triggering:*

   a. Change the oscilloscope trigger mode to Normal.

   b. *Enable function generator output:* Turn on the function generator output.

   c. *Check triggering:* Check that for each trigger supplied by the function generator, the oscilloscope displays a one-cycle sine wave.

6. *End procedure:* Turn off the function generator output, and disconnect the function generator and oscilloscope.

Check Gated Mode

Electrical Characteristic Checked: Operating modes, Gated, on page B-4.

Equipment Required: Three 50 Ω coaxial cables, a 50 Ω precision termination, a function generator, and an oscilloscope.

Prerequisites: The AWG2005 meets the prerequisites listed on page E-7.

Procedure:

1. *Install test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

   a. *Hook up the oscilloscope:* Connect the AWG2005 CH1 output connector through the coaxial cable to the CH1 vertical input connector on the oscilloscope.

   b. *Hook up the function generator:* Connect the function generator output to both the AWG2005 TRIGGER INPUT and the oscilloscope CH2 input through a coaxial cable and a dual input coupler (see Figure E-6).

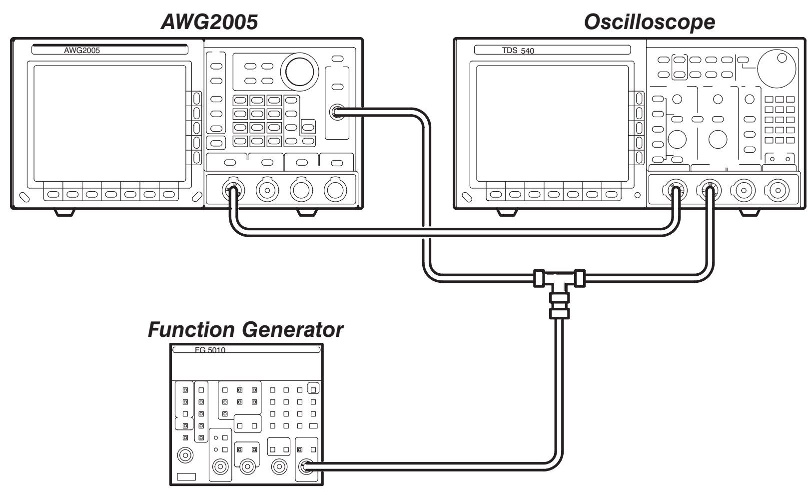


Figure E-6: Gated Mode Initial Test Hookup

   c. *Set oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical	CH1
CH1 coupling	DC
CH1 scale	0.5 V/div.
CH1 input impedance	50 Ω

Horizontal	
Sweep	200 μs/div.
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	DC
Slope	Positive
Level	500 mV
Mode	Auto

d. *Set function generator controls:*

Function	Square
Mode	Continuous
Parameter	
Frequency	1 kHz
Amplitude	4.0 V
Offset	2.0 V
Output	Off

2. *Set the AWG2005 controls and select the waveform file:*

   a. *Initialize AWG2005 controls:* Push **UTILITY→Misc→Config...→Reset to Factory→O.K.**

   b. *Modify the AWG2005 default settings:*

   - Push **MODE→Gated→Polarity** to highlight **Positive**.

   c. *Select the file:*

   - Push **SETUP→Waveform Sequence**, if necessary, to select a waveform file for CH1. Waveform Sequence toggles between the CH1 files (upper list) and the CH2 files (lower list).
   - Highlight the **MODE.WFM** file, using the general purpose knob.
   - Push **ENTER** to select the file.

3. *Turn on the AWG2005 CH1 output:* Push the **CH1** button so that the LED above the CH1 output connector is on.

4. *Check gated mode with manual trigger:* Push and hold the AWG2005 **MANUAL TRIGGER** button, and check that the oscilloscope continuously displays a sine wave while the **MANUAL TRIGGER** button is pushed.

5. *Check gated mode with gate signal:*

   a. *Change the oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical	CH1
CH1 coupling	DC
CH1 scale	0.5 V/div.
CH1 input impedance	50 Ω
Trigger	
Source	CH1

b. *Apply gate signal:* Turn function generator output on.

c. *Check gated mode with positive gate signal:* Check that the oscilloscope displays a sine wave while the function generator gate signal level is in upper portion of the display (see Figure E-7).

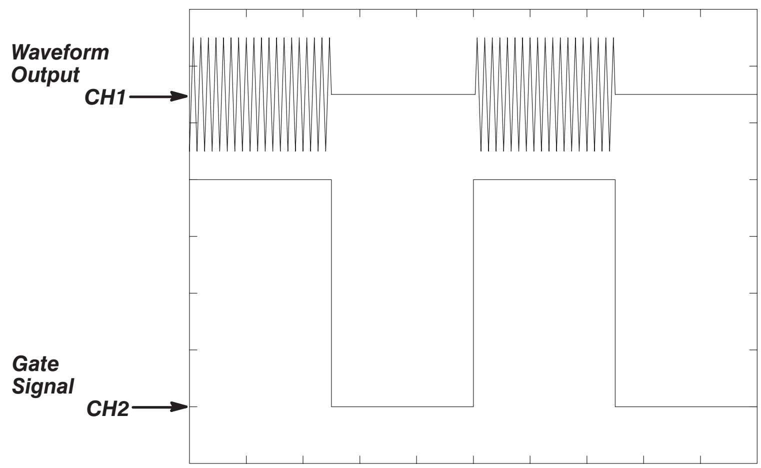


Figure E-7: Relationship between 1 Volt or Greater Gate Signal and Waveform Output Signal

d. *Change the AWG2005 trigger polarity to negative:* Push **MODE→Polarity** to change the polarity to **Negative**.

e. *Check gated mode with a negative gate signal:* Check that the oscilloscope displays a sine wave while the function generator gate signal level is in the lower portion of the display.

6. *End procedure:* Turn the function generator output off and disconnect the function generator.

Check Waveform Advance Mode

Electrical Characteristic Checked: Operating modes, Waveform Advance, on page B-4.

Equipment Required: A 50 Ω coaxial cable and an oscilloscope.

Prerequisites: The AWG2005 meets the prerequisites listed on page E-7.

Procedure:

1. *Install test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

   a. *Hook up the oscilloscope:* Connect the AWG2005 CH1 output connector through the coaxial cable to the CH1 vertical input connector on the oscilloscope (see Figure E-8).

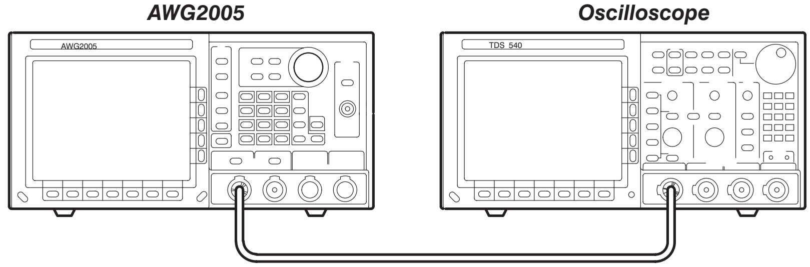


Figure E-8: Waveform Advance Mode Initial Test Hookup

   b. *Set oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical	CH1
CH1 coupling	DC
CH1	0.2 V/div.
CH1 input impedance	50 Ω
Horizontal	
Sweep	50 μs/div.
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	DC
Slope	Positive
Level	0 V
Mode	Auto

2. *Set the AWG2005 controls and select the waveform file:*

   a. *Initialize AWG2005 controls:* Push **UTILITY**→**Misc**→**Config...**→**Reset to Factory**→**O.K.**

   b. *Set AWG2005 controls:*

   - Push **MODE**→**Waveform Advance**→**Slope** to highlight **Positive**.
   - Select **Level** from the side menu, and turn the general purpose knob to select a 1.0 V level.
   - Check that the side menu **Run** highlights **Continuous**. If necessary, push **Run** to select **Continuous**.

c. *Select waveform file:*

- Push **SETUP→Waveform Sequence**, if necessary, to select a waveform file for CH1. Waveform Sequence toggles between the CH1 files (upper list) and the CH2 files (lower list).
- Highlight the **MODE_ADV.SEQ** file using the general purpose knob.
- Push **ENTER** to select the file.

3. *Turn on the AWG2005 CH1 output:* Push the **CH1** button so that the LED above the CH1 output connector is on.
4. *Check waveform advance:* Repeatedly push the AWG2005 **MANUAL TRIGGER** button, and check that the oscilloscope displays a continuous sine wave that switches between two frequencies at each manual trigger.
5. *End procedure:* Disconnect the oscilloscope.

Check Autostep Mode

Electrical Characteristic Checked: Operating mode, Autostep, on page B-4.

Equipment Required: Two 50 Ω coaxial cables and an oscilloscope.

Prerequisites: The AWG2005 meets the prerequisites listed on page E-7.

Procedure:

1. *Install test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

a. *Hook up the oscilloscope:*

- Connect the AWG2005 CH1 output through a coaxial cable to the oscilloscope CH1 vertical input.
- Connect the AWG2005 rear-panel CH1 MARKER OUT output through a coaxial cable to the oscilloscope CH2 vertical input (see Figure E-9). The CH1 MARKER OUT signal will serve as an external trigger signal for the oscilloscope.

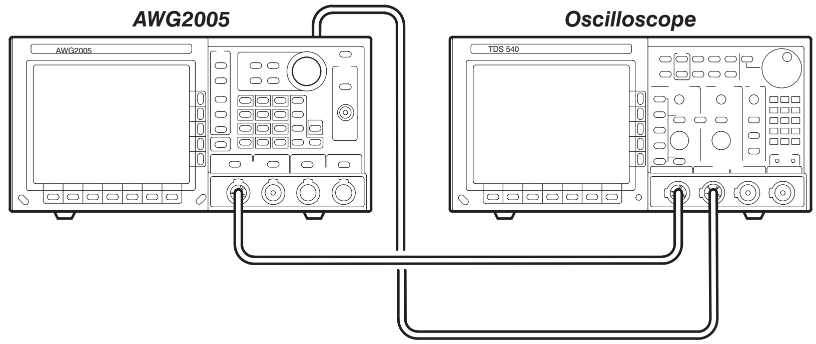


Figure E-9: Autostep Mode Initial Test Hookup

b. *Set the oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical	CH1
CH1 coupling	DC
CH1 scale	0.5 V/div.
CH1 input impedance	50 Ω
Horizontal	
Sweep	50 μs/div.
Trigger	
Source	CH2
Coupling	DC
Slope	Positive
Level	100 mV
Mode	Auto

2. *Set the AWG2005 controls and select the waveform file:*

   a. *Initialize AWG2005 controls:* Push **UTILITY→Misc→Config...→Reset to Factory→O.K.**

   b. *Modify AWG2005 default settings:*

      - Push **MODE→Autostep→Slope** to highlight **Positive**.
      - Push **Run** from the side menu to highlight **Continuous**.
      - Select **Level** from the side menu, and turn the general purpose knob to select 1 V.
      - Select **Select Autostep File** from the side menu.
      - Turn the general purpose knob to highlight the **MODE_AST.AST** file.
      - Push **ENTER** to select the file.

3. *Check autostep mode:* Push the AWG2005 **MANUAL TRIGGER** button and check that the oscilloscope momentarily displays a sine wave with a different frequency and amplitude each time you push the button.

4. *End procedure:* Disconnect the oscilloscope.

Arithmetic Operation Checks

These procedures check operation of external AM, external ADD, internal AM and internal Add arithmetic functions.

NOTE

The arithmetic operation checks are structured as a continuous series of tests. After Check External AM Operation*, each test uses the control settings from the last test and uses the next step in the autostep file.*

Check External AM Operation

Electrical Characteristic Checked: External amplitude modulation, page B-11.

Equipment Required: Two 50 Ω coaxial cables, a 50 Ω terminator, a function generator, and a digital multimeter (DMM).

Prerequisites: The AWG2005 meets the prerequisites listed on page E-7.

Procedure:

1. *Install test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

   a. *Hook up DMM:* Connect the AWG2005 CH1 output through a coaxial cable, the 50 Ω terminator, and BNC-to-dual banana connector to the DMM INPUT connector.

   b. *Hook up function generator:* Connect the AWG2005 rear-panel CH1 AM IN input through a coaxial cable to the function generator output (see Figure E-10).

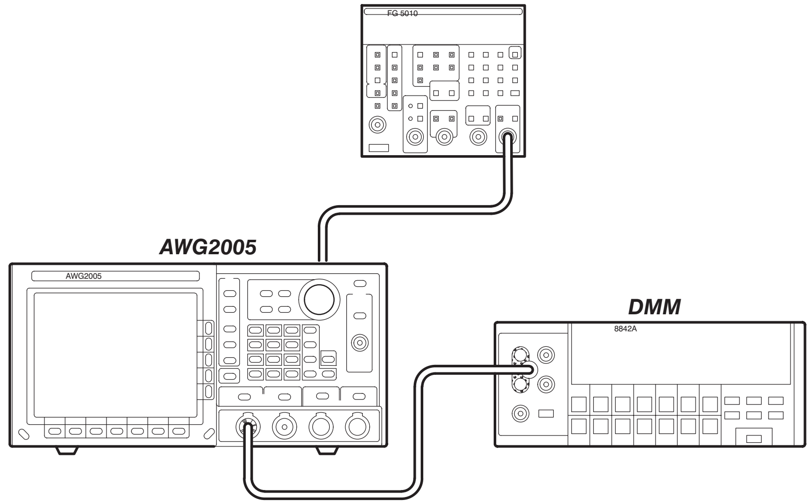


Figure E-10: External AM Operation Initial Test Hookup

c. *Set DMM controls*:

Mode	VDC
Range	20
Inputs	Front

d. *Set function generator controls:*

Function	Square
Mode	Continuous
Parameter	
Frequency	1 kHz
Amplitude	0 V
Offset	1 V
Output	Off

2. *Set the AWG2005 controls and select the waveform file:*

   a. *Initialize AWG2005 controls:* Push **UTILITY→Misc→Config...→Reset to Factory→O.K.**

   b. *Modify AWG2005 default settings:*

   - Push **MODE→Autostep**.

   c. *Select waveform file:*

   - Select **Select Autostep File** from the side menu.
   - Turn the general purpose knob to highlight the **OPE.AST** file.
   - Push **ENTER** to select the file.

3. *Enable the function generator output:* Turn on the function generator output.
4. *Check external AM operation:*
   - Check that the step number displayed on the AWG2005 MODE menu is **Step: 1** (see Figure E-11). If it is not, push **MANUAL TRIGGER** to step though the autostep file steps until Step 1 is displayed.

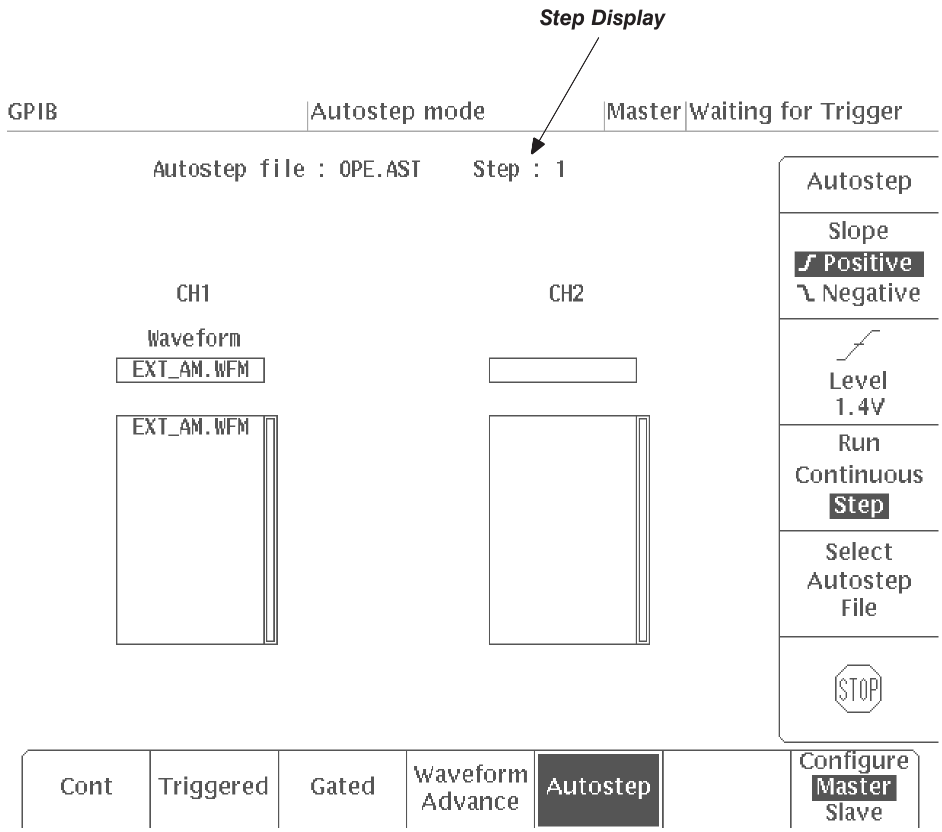


Figure E-11: MODE Menu Autostep Setting

   - Check that the DMM reading is in the range from 2.375 to 2.625 V (100% modulation).
   - Set the function generator offset value to 0 V. Check that the DMM reading is in the range from 1.125 to 1.375 V (50% modulation).
   - Set the function generator offset value to −1 V. Check that the DMM voltage reading is in the range from −0.125 to 0.125 V (0% modulation).
5. *End procedure:* Keep the test connections and instrument settings for the next check.

Check Internal AM Operation

Electrical Characteristic Checked: Arithmetic Operation, Amplitude Modulation, on page B-11.

Equipment Required: Two 50 Ω coaxial cables, a function generator, and a digital multimeter (DMM).

Prerequisites: The AWG2005 meets the prerequisites listed on page E-7.

Procedure:

1. *Use test hookup and control settings from previous check.*
2. *Check internal AM operation:*
   a. *Check Autostep Step 2:*
      - Push the AWG2005 **MANUAL TRIGGER** button, and check that the step changes to Step 2 on the MODE menu.
      - Check that the DMM reading is in the range from 2.375 to 2.625 VDC.

   b. *Check Autostep Step 3:*
      - Push the AWG2005 **MANUAL TRIGGER** button, and check that the Autostep changes to Step 3 on the MODE menu.
      - Check that the DMM reading is in the range from −2.625 to −2.375 V.
3. *End procedure:* Retain the test hookup and settings for the next check.

Check External ADD Operation

Electrical Characteristic Checked: Arithmetic Operation, Ext Add, on page B-11.

Equipment Required: Two 50 Ω coaxial cables, a function generator, and a digital multimeter (DMM).

Prerequisites: The AWG2005 meets the prerequisites listed on page E-7.

Procedure:

1. *Install test hookup and set test equipment controls:*
   a. *Hook up function generator:* Move the connection for the coaxial cable from rear-panel CH1 AM IN to CH1 ADD IN connector. (see Figure E-10).

b. *Set function generator controls:*

Function	Square
Mode	Continuous
Parameter	
Frequency	1 kHz
Amplitude	0 V
Offset	5.0 V
(The actual voltage out is 1/2 of what is displayed.)	
Output	Off

2. *Enable the function generator output:* Turn on the function generator output.
3. *Check external ADD operation:*

   a. *Check Autostep Step 4:*

   - Push the AWG2005 **MANUAL TRIGGER** button, and check that the step changes to Step 4 on the MODE menu.
   - Check that the DMM reading is in the range from 4.750 to 5.250 V.

4. *Disable function generator output:* Turn the function generator output off.
5. *End procedure:* Keep the test connections and instrument settings for the next check.

Check Internal Add Operation

Electrical Characteristic Checked: Arithmetic Operation, Add, on page B-11.

Equipment Required: Two 50 Ω coaxial cables, a function generator, and a digital multimeter (DMM).

Prerequisites: The AWG2005 meets the prerequisites listed on page E-7.

Procedure:

1. *Use test hookup and control settings from previous check.*
2. *Check internal ADD operation:*

   a. *Check Autostep Step 5:*

   - Push the AWG2005 **MANUAL TRIGGER** button, and check that the step changes to Step 5 on the MODE menu.
   - Check that the DMM reading is in the range from 4.750 to 5.250 V.

3. *End procedure: Remove equipment:* Disconnect connections to the test equipment.

Clock Frequency and Amplitude Checks

These procedures check the accuracy of the AWG2005 clock frequency and the waveform output amplitude.

Check Clock Frequency Accuracy

Electrical Characteristic Checked: Clock Generator, Accuracy, on page B-9.

Equipment Required: A 50 Ω coaxial cable and a frequency counter.

Prerequisites: The AWG2005 meets the prerequisites listed on page E-7.

Procedure:

1. *Install test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

   a. *Hook up frequency counter:* Connect the AWG2005 rear panel CLOCK OUT connector to the frequency counter input through a coaxial cable (see Figure E-12).

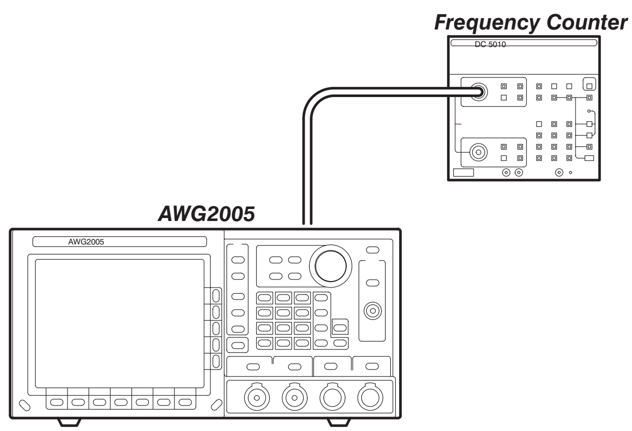


Figure E-12: Clock Frequency Accuracy Initial Test Hookup

b. *Set frequency counter controls:*

CHANNEL A	
Termination	50 Ω
Slope	Negative
Attenuation	X5
Coupling	DC
FREQ A	

2. *Set AWG2005 controls and select the waveform:*

a. *Initialize AWG2005 controls:* Push **UTILITY→Misc→Config...→Reset to Factor→O.K.**

b. *Select the waveform file:*

- Push **SETUP→Waveform Sequence**, if necessary, to select a waveform file for CH1. Waveform Sequence toggles between the CH1 files (upper list) and the CH2 files (lower list).
- Turn the general purpose knob to select the **CLK_FREQ.WFM** file.
- Push **ENTER** to select the file.

3. *Check clock frequency accuracy:*

a. *Check clock frequency accuracy at current clock frequency setting:* Check that the frequency counter reading falls between 19.9999 MHz and 20.001 MHz (between 19.9999 MHz and 20.0001 MHz for the instrument with Option 05).

b. *Check clock frequency accuracy for different clock frequency settings:*

- Select **Clock** from the bottom of the **SETUP** menu.
- Push **Source** from the side menu to highlight **Internal**.
- Select **Internal Clock** from the side menu.
- Turn the general purpose knob (or press the numeric and units keys, and push **ENTER**) to select the first clock frequency listed in Table E-4.
- Check that the frequency counter reading is within the frequency range listed in the table for the clock frequency setting (refer to right column in the table for the instrument with Option 05).
- Repeat this step for each clock frequency and frequency range listed in Table E-4.

Table E-4: Clock Frequency Accuracy

Clock Frequency	Frequency Range	Frequency Range (Option 05)
10 MHz	9.9995 MHz – 10.0005 MHz	9.99995 MHz – 10.00005 MHz
1 MHz	0.99995 MHz – 1.00005 MHz	0.999995 MHz – 1.000005 MHz
1 kHz	0.99995 kHz – 1.00005 kHz	0.999995 kHz – 1.000005 kHz
10 Hz	9.9995 Hz – 10.0005 Hz	9.99995 Hz – 10.00005 Hz

4. *End procedure:* Disconnect the frequency counter.

Check Clock Amplitude

Electrical Characteristic Checked: Auxiliary Outputs, Clock, Amplitude, on page B-12.

Equipment Required: A 50 Ω coaxial cable and an oscilloscope.

Prerequisites: The AWG2005 meets the prerequisites listed on page E-7.

Procedure:

1. *Install test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

   a. *Hook up oscilloscope:* Connect the AWG2005 rear-panel CLOCK OUT connector through a coaxial cable to the oscilloscope CH1 vertical input (see Figure E-13).

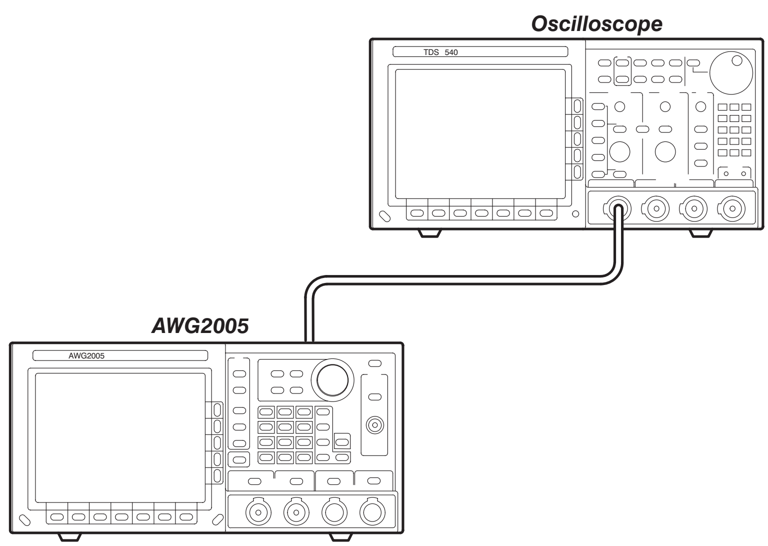


Figure E-13: Clock Amplitude Initial Test Hookup

b. *Set oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical	CH1
Coupling	DC
Scale	500 mV/div.
Input impedance	50 Ω
Horizontal	
Sweep	500 ns/div.
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	DC
Slope	Positive
Level	500 mV
Mode	Auto

2. *Set the AWG2005 controls and select the waveform file:*

   a. *Initialize AWG2005 controls:* Push **UTILITY→Misc→Config...→Reset to Factory→O.K.**

   b. *Select the waveform file:*

   - Push **SETUP→Waveform Sequence**, if necessary, to select a waveform file for CH1. Waveform Sequence toggles between the CH1 files (upper list) and the CH2 files (lower list).
   - Turn the general purpose knob to select the **CLK_AMPL.WFM** file.
   - Push **ENTER** to select the file.

3. *Turn on the AWG2005 CH1 output:* Push the **CH1** button so that the LED above the CH1 output connector is on.

4. *Check clock amplitude accuracy:* Check that the pulse amplitude of the displayed waveform is 2 V_{p-p} or greater.

5. *End procedure:* Disconnect the oscilloscope.

Gain Accuracy Check

This procedure checks the accuracy of the AWG2005 gain.

Electrical Characteristic Checked: Main Output, Amplitude, DC Accuracy, on page B-10.

Equipment Required: A 50 Ω coaxial cable, a 50 Ω termination, a BNC-to-dual banana adapter, and a digital multimeter (DMM).

Prerequisites: The AWG2005 meets the prerequisites listed on page E-7.

Procedure:

1. *Install test hookup and set controls:*

   a. *Hook up DMM:* Connect the AWG2005 CH1 output through a 50 Ω coaxial cable, a 50 Ω termination, and a dual banana connector to the DMM INPUT connector (see Figure E-14).

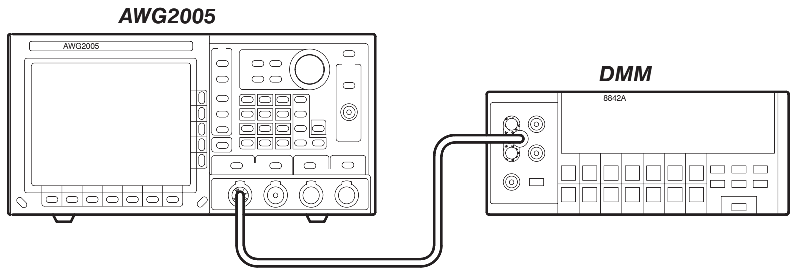


Figure E-14: Gain Accuracy Initial Test Hookup

   b. *Set DMM controls:*

Mode	VDC
Range	20
Input	Front

2. *Set the AWG2005 controls and select the waveform file:*

   a. *Initialize AWG2005 controls:* Push **UTILITY→Misc→Config...→Reset to Factory→O.K.**

   b. *Select the AWG2005 waveform file:*

   - Push **MODE→Autostep→Select Autostep Fil**.
   - Turn the general purpose knob to select the **GAIN.AST** file.
   - Push **ENTER** to select the file.

3. *Check gain accuracy:*

   - Check that the displayed step is Step 1 on the MODE menu. If it is not, select the side menu **STOP** button to return to Step 1.
   - Note the DMM reading as ”A” for this value.
   - Push the AWG2005 **MANUAL TRIGGER** button, and check that the displayed step is Step 2.
   - Note the DMM reading as ”B” for this value.
   - Do the following calculation.

     $A - B$

   - Check that the calculated value is in the range from 0.990 V to 1.010 V.

- Push the AWG2005 **MANUAL TRIGGER** button, and check that the displayed step is Step 3.
- Note the DMM reading as ”C” for this value.
- Push the AWG2005 **MANUAL TRIGGER** button, and check that the displayed step is Step 4.
- Record the DMM reading as ”D” for this value.
- Do the following calculation.

  C – D

- Check that the calculated value is in the range from 9.850 V to 10.15 V.

4. Move the connection for the coaxial cable from the AWG2005 CH1 output to AWG2005 CH2 output connector.
5. Repeat procedure 3.
6. *If Option 02 is installed (adds CH3 and CH4 output channels):* Repeat above procedure for CH3 and CH4 outputs.
7. *End procedure:* Retain the test hookup and control settings.

Offset Accuracy Check

This procedure checks the accuracy of the AWG2005 offset.

Electrical Characteristic Checked: Main Output, Offset, Accuracy, on page B-10.

Equipment Required: A 50 Ω coaxial cable, a 50 Ω termination, BNC-to-dual banana adapter, and a digital multimeter (DMM).

Prerequisites: The AWG2005 meets the prerequisites listed on page E-7.

Procedure:

1. *Install test hookup and set controls:*
   a. *Hook up DMM:* Connect the AWG2005 CH1 output through a 50 Ω coaxial cable, a 50 Ω termination, and a dual banana connector to the DMM INPUT connector (see Figure E-15).

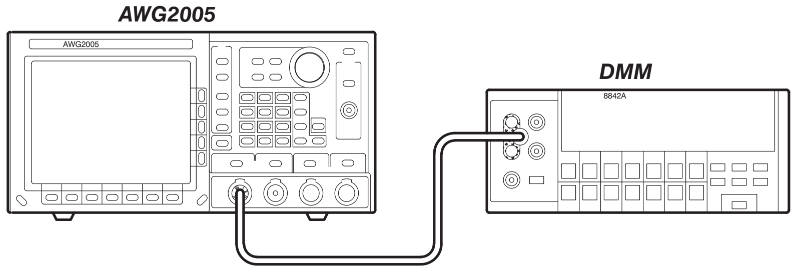


Figure E-15: Offset Accuracy Initial Test Hookup

b. *Set DMM controls:*

Mode	VDC
Range	20
Input	Front

2. *Set the AWG2005 controls and select the waveform file:*

   a. *Initialize AWG2005 controls:* Push **UTILITY→Misc→Config...→Reset to Factory→O.K.**

   b. *Select the AWG2005 waveform file:*

      - Push **MODE→Autostep→Select Autostep File**.
      - Turn the general purpose knob to select the **OFF.AST** file.
      - Push **ENTER** to select the file.

3. *Check offset accuracy:*

   - Check that the displayed step is Step 1 on the MODE menu. If it is not, select the side menu **STOP** button to return to Step 1.
   - Check that the DMM voltage reading is in the range from 4.940 to 5.060 V.
   - Push the AWG2005 **MANUAL TRIGGER** button, and check that the displayed step is Step 2.
   - Check that the DMM voltage reading is in the range from −0.060 to 0.060 V.
   - Push the AWG2005 **MANUAL TRIGGER** button, and check that the displayed step is Step 3.
   - Check that the DMM voltage reading is in the range from −5.060 to −4.940 V.

4. Move the connection for the coaxial cable from the AWG2005 CH1 output to AWG2005 CH2 output connector.

5. Repeat procedure 3.

6. *If Option 02 is installed (adds CH3 and CH4 output channels):* Repeat above procedure for CH3 and CH4 outputs.

7. *End procedure:* Disconnect the DMM.

Pulse Response Check

This procedure checks the pulse response characteristics of the AWG2005 output waveforms at amplitudes of 0.5 and 1 V.

Electrical Characteristic Checked: Main Output, Pulse Response, on page B-10.

Equipment Required: A 50 Ω coaxial cable and an oscilloscope.

Prerequisites: The AWG2005 meets the prerequisites listed on page E-7.

Procedure:

1. *Install test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

   a. *Hook up the oscilloscope:* Connect the AWG2005 CH1 output connector through the coaxial cable to the CH1 vertical input connector on the oscilloscope (see Figure E-16).

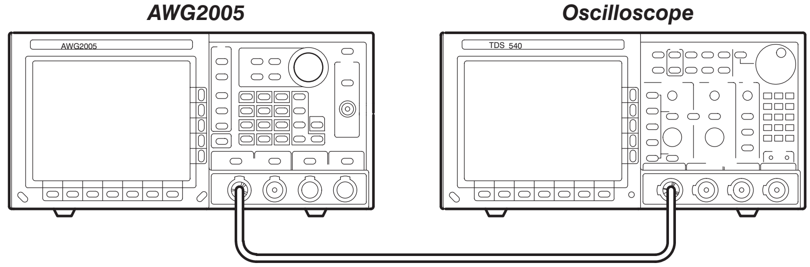


Figure E-16: Pulse Response Initial Test Hookup

   b. *Set oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical	CH1
Coupling	DC
Scale	0.1 V/div.
Input impedance	50 Ω
Horizontal	
Sweep	20 ns/div.
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	DC
Slope	Positive
Level	0 V
Mode	Auto

2. *Set the AWG2005 controls and select the waveform file:*

   a. *Initialize AWG2005 controls:* Push **UTILITY→Misc→Config...→Reset to Factory→O.K.**

b. *Select waveform file:*

- Push **SETUP→Waveform Sequence**, if necessary, to select a waveform file for CH1. Waveform Sequence toggles between the CH1 files (upper list) and the CH2 files (lower list).
- Turn the general purpose knob to select the **PULSE.WFM** file.
- Push **ENTER** to select the file.
- Select the **PULSE.WFM** file for CH2 same as CH1.

3. *Turn on the AWG2005 CH1 output:* Push the **CH1** button so that the LED above the CH1 output connector is on.

4. *Check pulse response at 0.5 V amplitude:*

a. *Check rise time:* Check that the rise time of the waveform displayed on the oscilloscope from the 10% point to the 90% point is 35 ns or less.

b. *Check aberrations:* Check that the aberrations of the displayed waveform is within 0.35 div.

c. *Check flatness:* Check that the flatness of the displayed waveform is within 0.15 div. after 20 ns from the rising edge.

d. *Change the oscilloscope controls:*

Trigger	
Slope	Negative

e. *Check fall time:* Check that the fall time of the displayed waveform from the 10% point to the 90% point is 35 ns or less.

5. *Check pulse response at 10 V amplitude:*

a. *Change the oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical	CH1
CH1 scale	2 V/div.
Trigger	
Slope	Positive

b. *Change the AWG2005 controls:*

- Push **SETUP→Amplitude** to change the amplitude for CH1.
- Press the numeric key **1**, **0** and press the units key **V** to select an amplitude of 10 V.

c. *Repeat substeps 4a through 4e, checking to the follow limits:*

Rise time	35 ns, maximum
Aberrations	0.35 div., maximum
Flatness	0.15 div., maximum
Fall time	35 ns, maximum

6. Move the connection for the coaxial cable from the AWG2005 CH1 output to AWG2005 CH2 output connector.
7. *Turn on the AWG2005 CH2 output:* Push the **CH2** button so that the LED above the CH2 output connector is on.
8. Repeat procedures 4 through 5.
9. *If Option 02 is installed (add CH3 and CH4 output channels:* Repeat above procedure for the AWG2005 CH3 and CH4 output channels.
10. *End procedure:* Remove the connections.

MARKER OUT Amplitude Check

This procedure checks the amplitude of the MARKER OUT signal.

Electrical Characteristic Checked: Auxiliary Output, MARKER, Amplitude, on page B-12.

Equipment Required: A 50 Ω coaxial cable and an oscilloscope.

Prerequisites: The AWG2005 meets the prerequisites listed on page E-7.

Procedure:

1. *Install test hookup and set test equipment controls:*
   a. *Hook up the oscilloscope:* Connect the AWG2005 rear-panel CH1 MARKER OUT connector through the coaxial cable to the CH1 vertical input connector on the oscilloscope (see Figure E-17).

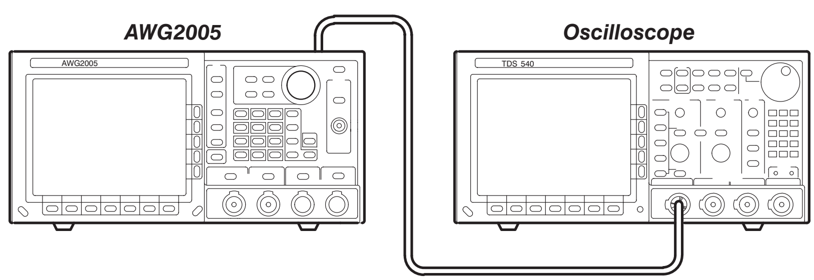


Figure E-17: Initial Test Hookup

   b. *Set oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical	CH1
CH1 Coupling	DC
CH1 Scale	500 mV/div.
CH1 Input Impedance	50 Ω

Horizontal	
Sweep	50 μs/div.
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	DC
Slope	Positive
Level	500 mV
Mode	Auto

2. *Set the AWG2005 controls and select the waveform file:*

   a. *Initialize AWG2005 controls:* Push **UTILITY→Misc→Config...→Reset to Factory→O.K.**

   b. *Select waveform file:*

      - Push **SETUP→Waveform Sequence**, if necessary, to select a waveform file for CH1. Waveform Sequence toggles between the CH1 files (upper list) and the CH2 files (lower list).
      - Turn the general purpose knob to highlight the **MRK.WFM** file.
      - Push **ENTER** to select the file.

3. *Check rear-panel CH1 MARKER OUT amplitude:*

   a. *Check CH1 MARKER OUT pulse amplitude:*

      - Check that the pulse amplitude of the displayed waveform is 2 V_{p-p} or greater.

4. *Check rear-panel CH2 MARKER OUT pulse amplitude:*

   a. *Check CH2 MARKER OUT pulse amplitude:*

      - Move the coaxial cable from the AWG2005 rear-panel CH1 MARKER OUT connector to the rear-panel CH2 MARKER OUT connector.
      - Check that the pulse amplitude of the displayed waveform is 2 V or greater.

5. *Check Option 02:* If the AWG2005 has CH3 and CH4, repeat this entire test, selecting the AWG2005 waveform and setting controls for CH3 and CH4 and checking:

   - Rear-panel CH3 MARKER pulse amplitude
   - Rear-panel CH4 MARKER pulse amplitude

6. *End procedure:* Disconnect the oscilloscope.

CONTROL SIG OUT Amplitude Check

This procedure checks the amplitude of the CONTROL SIG OUT signal.

Electrical Characteristic Checked: Auxiliary Output, CONTROL SIG, Amplitude, on page B-12.

Equipment Required: A 50 Ω coaxial cable and an oscilloscope.

Prerequisites: The AWG2005 meets the prerequisites listed on page E-7.

Procedure:

1. *Install test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

   a. *Hook up the oscilloscope:* Connect the AWG2005 rear-panel CONTROL SIG OUT connector through the coaxial cable to the CH1 vertical input connector on the oscilloscope (see Figure E-18).

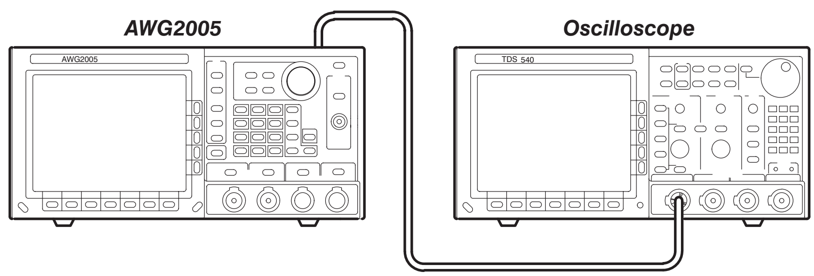


Figure E-18: Initial Test Hookup

   b. *Set oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical	CH1
CH1 Coupling	DC
CH1 Scale	1 V/div.
CH1 Input Impedance	50 Ω
Horizontal	
Sweep	50 ns/div.
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	DC
Slope	Positive
Level	500 mV
Mode	Auto

2. *Set the AWG2005 controls and select the waveform file:*

   a. *Initialize AWG2005 controls:* Push **UTILITY→Misc→Config...→Reset to Factory→O.K.**

b. *Select waveform file:*

- Push **SETUP→Waveform Sequence**, if necessary, to select a waveform file for CH1. Waveform Sequence toggles between the CH1 files (upper list) and the CH2 files (lower list).
- Turn the general purpose knob to highlight the **CNTRL.WFM** file.
- Push **ENTER** to select the file.

3. *Check rear-panel CONTROL SIG OUT pulse amplitude:*

   a. Push **Mode→Gated**.

   b. Push the AWG2005 **MANUAL TRIGGER** button.

   c. Check that the pulse upper level of the displayed waveform is 2 V or greater.

   d. Check that the pulse lower level of the displayed waveform is 0.8 V or less.

4. *End procedure:* Disconnect the oscilloscope.

External Trigger Level Accuracy Check

This procedure checks the external trigger level accuracy of the AWG2005.

Electrical Characteristic Checked: Auxiliary Input, TRIGGER, Accuracy, on page B-13.

Equipment Required: Two 50 Ω coaxial cables, a function generator, and an oscilloscope.

Prerequisites: The AWG2005 meets the prerequisites listed on page E-7.

Procedure:

1. *Install test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

   a. *Hook up oscilloscope:* Connect the AWG2005 CH1 output through a coaxial cable to the oscilloscope CH1 vertical input.

   b. *Hook up function generator:* Connect the AWG2005 TRIGGER INPUT through a coaxial cable to the function generator output (see Figure E-19).

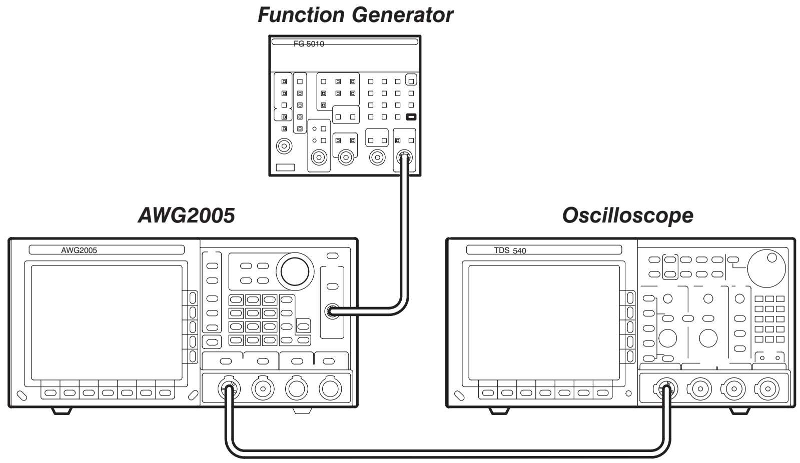


Figure E-19: External Trigger Level Accuracy Initial Test Hookup

c. *Set oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical	CH1
CH1 Coupling	DC
CH1 Scale	0.2 V/div.
CH1 Input Impedance	50 Ω
Horizontal	
Sweep	50 μs/div.
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	DC
Slope	Positive
Level	0 V
Mode	Auto

d. *Set function generator controls:*

Function	Square
Mode	Continuous
Parameter	
Frequency	1 kHz
Amplitude	0 V
Offset	0.6 V
Output	Off

2. *Select the AWG2005 waveform file and set AWG2005 controls:*

a. *Initialize AWG2005 controls:* Push **UTILITY**→**Misc**→**Config...**→**Reset to Factory**→**O.K.**

b. *Modify AWG2005 default settings:*

- Push **MODE**→**Gated**→**Polarity** to highlight **Positive**.
- Select **Level** from the side menu, and turn the general purpose knob to select 1 V. (You can also use the numeric and units keys to select 1 V; then push **ENTER**.)

c. *Select waveform file:*

- Push **SETUP→Waveform Sequence**, if necessary, to select a waveform file for CH1. Waveform Sequence toggles between the CH1 files (upper list) and the CH2 files (lower list).
- Turn the general purpose knob to highlight the **TRG_IN.WFM** file.
- Push **ENTER** to select the file.

3. *Turn on the AWG2005 CH1 output:* Push the **CH1** button so that the LED above the CH1 output connector is on.

4. *Check external trigger high level:*

   a. *Adjust oscilloscope controls:* Press and hold the AWG2005 **MANUAL TRIGGER** button and adjust the oscilloscope vertical and horizontal position to display the waveform from the AWG2005. Release the **MANUAL TRIGGER** button.

   b. *Enable function generator output:* Turn on the function generator output.

   c. *Check external trigger level accuracy:*

   - Gradually increment the function generator offset level until a waveform is displayed on the oscilloscope.
   - Check that that the function generator offset level is from 0.85 to 1.15 V when the waveform is first displayed.

5. *Check external trigger low level.*

   a. *Change the function generator controls:*

Parameter	
Offset	−0.6 V

   b. *Change the AWG2005 controls:*

   - Push **MODE→Polarity** to highlight **Negative**.
   - Select **Level** from the side menu, and turn the general purpose knob to select −1 V. (You can also use the numeric and units keys to select −1 V; then push ENTER.)

   c. *Check external trigger level accuracy:*

   - Gradually decrease the function generator offset level until a waveform is displayed on the oscilloscope.
   - Check that that the function generator offset level is from −1.15 V to −0.85 V when the waveform is first displayed.

6. *End procedure:* Turn off the function generator output and disconnect the function generator.

External CLOCK IN Check

This procedure checks the AWG2005 response to an external CLOCK IN signal.

Electrical Characteristic Checked: Auxiliary Input, CLOCK, Threshold level, on page B-13.

Equipment Required: Two 50 Ω coaxial cables, a function generator, and an oscilloscope.

Prerequisites: The AWG2005 meets the prerequisites listed on page E-7.

Procedure:

1. *Install test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

   a. *Hook up oscilloscope:* Connect the AWG2005 CH1 output through a coaxial cable to the oscilloscope CH1 vertical input.

   b. *Hook up function generator:* Connect the AWG2005 rear-panel **CLOCK IN** through a coaxial cable to the function generator output (see Figure E-20).

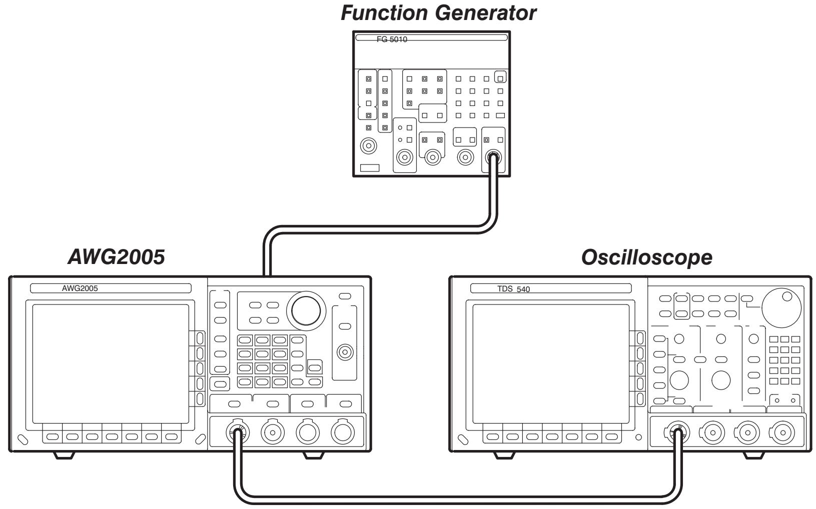


Figure E-20: External CLOCK IN Initial Test Hookup

   c. *Set oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical	CH1
Coupling	DC
Scale	0.2 V/div.
Input Impedance	50 Ω
Horizontal	
Sweep	500 μs/div.

Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	DC
Slope	Positive
Level	0 mV
Mode	Auto

d. *Set function generator controls:*

Function	Square
Mode	Continuous
Parameter	
Frequency	1 MHz
Amplitude	2.0 V
Offset	1.0 V
Output	Off

2. *Select the AWG2005 waveform file and set AWG2005 controls:*

   a. *Initialize AWG2005 controls:* Push **UTILITY→Misc→Config...→Reset to Factory→O.K.**

   b. *Select waveform file:*

      - Push **SETUP→Waveform Sequence**, if necessary, to select a waveform file for CH1. Waveform Sequence toggles between the CH1 files (upper list) and the CH2 files (lower list).
      - Turn the general purpose knob to highlight the **EXT_CLK.WFM** file.
      - Push **ENTER** to select the file.

3. *Turn on the AWG2005 CH1 output:* Push the **CH1** button so that the LED above the CH1 output connector is on.

4. *Check the external CLOCK IN threshold level:*

   a. *Enable function generator output:* Turn on function generator output.

   b. *Check the level:* Check that the waveform displayed on the oscilloscope has an amplitude of 5 divisions and a stable display of 5 cycles.

5. *Turn off equipment output and disconnect test hookup:*

   a. *Disable function generator output:* Turn off function generator output.

   b. *Remove connections:* Disconnect all connections to the AWG2005.

Optional Check – Master-Slave Operation Check

This procedure checks operation of the AWG2005 slave mode.

NOTE

This Slave Operation check has been factory verified. The check is performed only as necessary or only after a failure.

Electrical Characteristic Checked: Auxiliary Input, CONTROL SIG IN, Threshold level, Pulse Width, Input Volts, on page B-13.

Equipment Required: Two 50 Ω coaxial cables, a function generator, and an oscilloscope.

Prerequisites: The AWG2005 meets the prerequisites listed on page E-7.

Procedure:

1. *Install test hookup and set test equipment controls:*

   a. *Hook up master AWG2005:* Connect the slave AWG2005 (device under test) rear-panel **CONTROL SIG IN** and **CLOCK IN** connectors to the master AWG2005 **CONTROL SIG OUT** and **CLOCK OUT** connectors using the two coaxial cables.

   b. *Hook up oscilloscope:* Connect the master AWG2005 CH1 output and slave AWG2005 CH1 output to the oscilloscope CH1 and CH2 vertical inputs using the two coaxial cables (see Figure E-21).

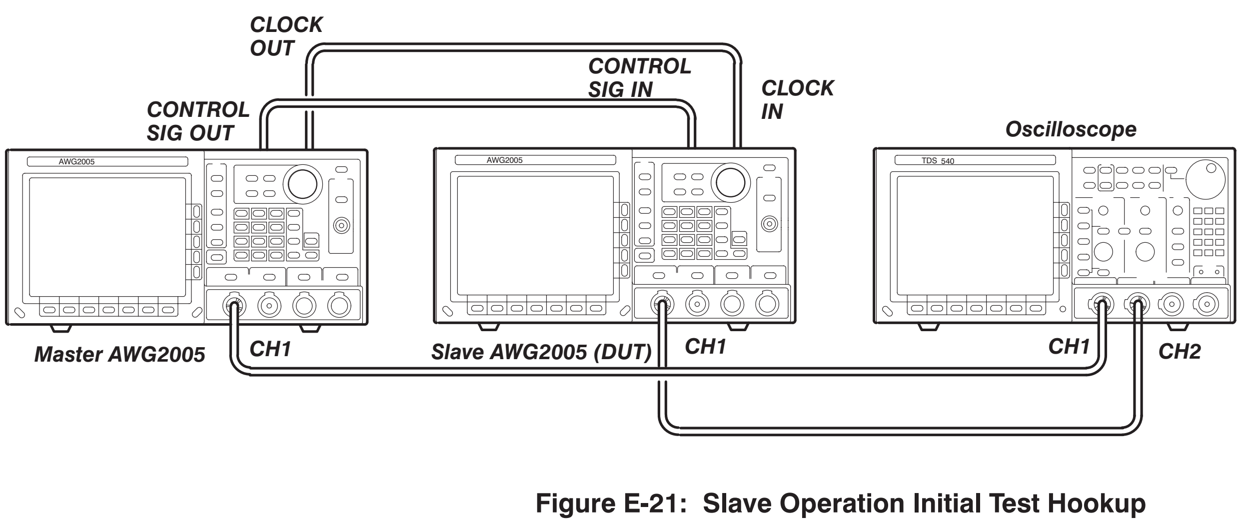


Figure E-21: Slave Operation Initial Test Hookup

c. *Set oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical	CH1 and CH2
Coupling	DC
Scale	0.2 V/div.
Input Impedance	50 Ω
Horizontal	
Sweep	500 μs/div.
Trigger	
Source	CH1
Coupling	DC
Slope	Positive
Level	0 mV
Mode	Auto
Output	Off

2. *Select the master AWG2005 waveform file and set master AWG2005 controls:*

   a. *Initialize master AWG2005 controls:* Push **UTILITY→Misc→Config...→Reset to Factory→O.K.**

   b. *Load waveform file:* Load the **CNTRL_IN.WFM** file only to the master AWG2005 using the performance check disk. For details on how to load a file, see the Instruction for Operation in the section 2.

   c. *Set waveform file:*

      - Push **SETUP→Waveform Sequence**, if necessary, to select a waveform file for CH1. Waveform Sequence toggles between the CH1 files (upper list) and the CH2 files (lower list).
      - Turn the general purpose knob to display the list of waveform files and highlight the **SLAVE.WFM** file.
      - Push **ENTER** to select the file.
      - Push **MODE→Triggered.**
      - Press the bottom **Configure** button to select **Master**.

3. *Select the slave AWG2005 waveform file and set slave AWG2005 controls:*

   a. *Initialize slave AWG2005 controls:* Push **UTILITY→Misc→Config...→Reset to Factory→O.K.**

   b. *Select waveform file:*

      - Push **SETUP→Waveform Sequence**, if necessary, to select a waveform file for CH1. Waveform Sequence toggles between the CH1 files (upper list) and the CH2 files (lower list).
      - Turn the general purpose knob to highlight the **SLAVE.WFM** file.
      - Push **ENTER** to select the file.
      - Push **MODE→Cont**.
      - Press the bottom **Configure** button to select **Slave**.

4. *Turn on CH1 output on both AWG2005 instruments :* Push the **CH1** button so that the LED above the CH1 output connector is on.
5. *Check the slave operation:*
   a. Change the master AWG2005 operation mode from **Triggered** to **Cont**.
   b. *Check the operation:* Check that the two waveforms displayed on the oscilloscope have a same timing relation and a stable display.
6. *Disconnect test hookup:*
   a. *Remove connections:* Disconnect all connections to the both AWG2005 instruments and oscilloscope.

DIGITAL DATA OUT Check (Option 04)

This procedure checks the AWG2005 DIGITAL DATA OUT at the rear panel.

NOTE

This check requires that the AWG2005 has Option 04 installed.

Electrical Characteristic Checked: Auxiliary Output, DIGITAL DATA OUT, Amplitude, on page B-12.

Equipment Required: Digital data out cable, 2 X13 header, probe and oscilloscope.

Prerequisites: The AWG2005 meets the prerequisites listed on page E-7.

Procedure:

1. *Install test hookup and set test equipment controls:*
   a. *Hook up termination board:* Connect a digital data output cable to the AWG2005 rear-panel **CH1 DIGITAL DATA OUT** output (see Figure E-22).
   b. *Hook up oscilloscope:*
      - Connect the oscilloscope probe to the CH1 vertical input.
      - Connect the probe ground-clip to the GND pin of 2 X13 header.

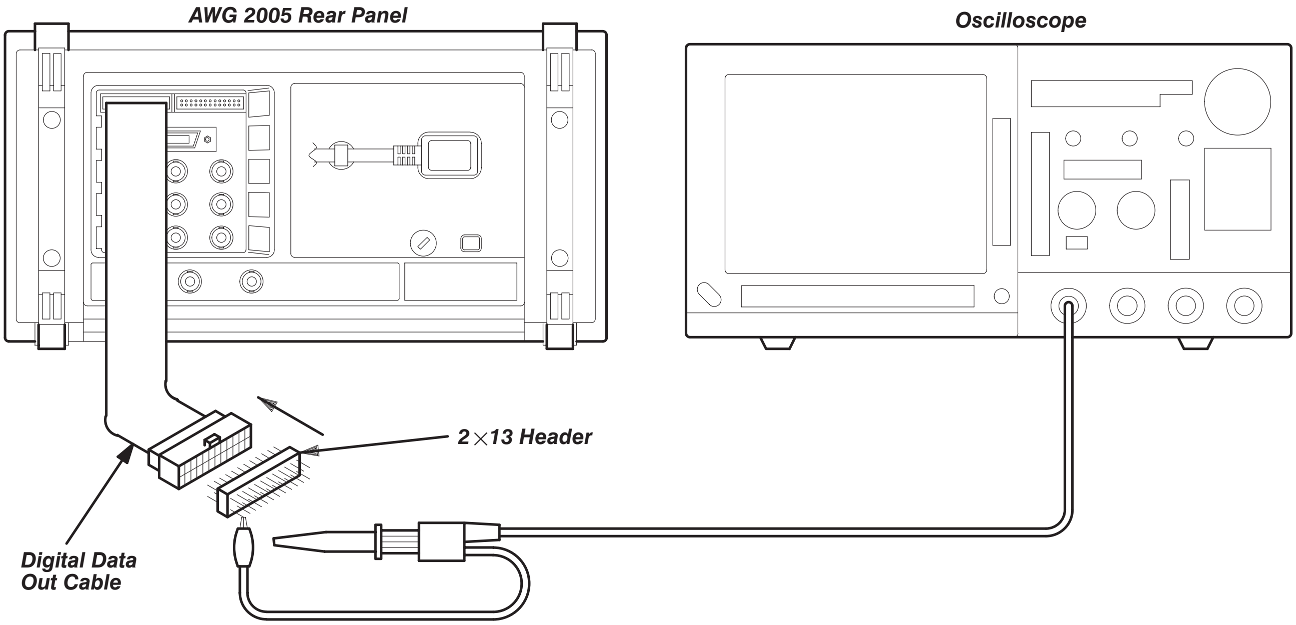


Figure E-22: Digital Data Out Initial Test Hookup

c. *Set oscilloscope controls:*

Vertical	CH1
Scale	1 V/div.
Input Impedance	1 MΩ
Horizontal	
Sweep	Adjust as needed
Trigger	
Mode	Auto

2. *Create the AWG2005 waveform file, select waveform file, and set AWG2005 controls:*

   a. *Initialize AWG2005 controls:* Push **UTILITY→Misc→Config...→Reset to Factory→O.K.**

   b. *Select waveform file:*

   - Push **SETUP→Waveform Sequence**, if necessary, to select a waveform file for CH1. Waveform Sequence toggles between the CH1 files (upper list) and the CH2 files (lower list).
   - Turn the general purpose knob to highlight the **DIGI_OUT.WFM** file.
   - Push **ENTER** to select the file.

   c. Set AWG2005 controls:

   - Push **MODE→Cont**

3. *Check the CH1 digital data output signals:*

a. *Check the signal levels:*

- Contact the oscilloscope probe to the pins on 2 X13 header (see Figure E-23). Check that the oscilloscope display shows these signals:
  - Data signals D0-D11 and CLK (Clock) are TTL level output.
  - All other pins are ground.

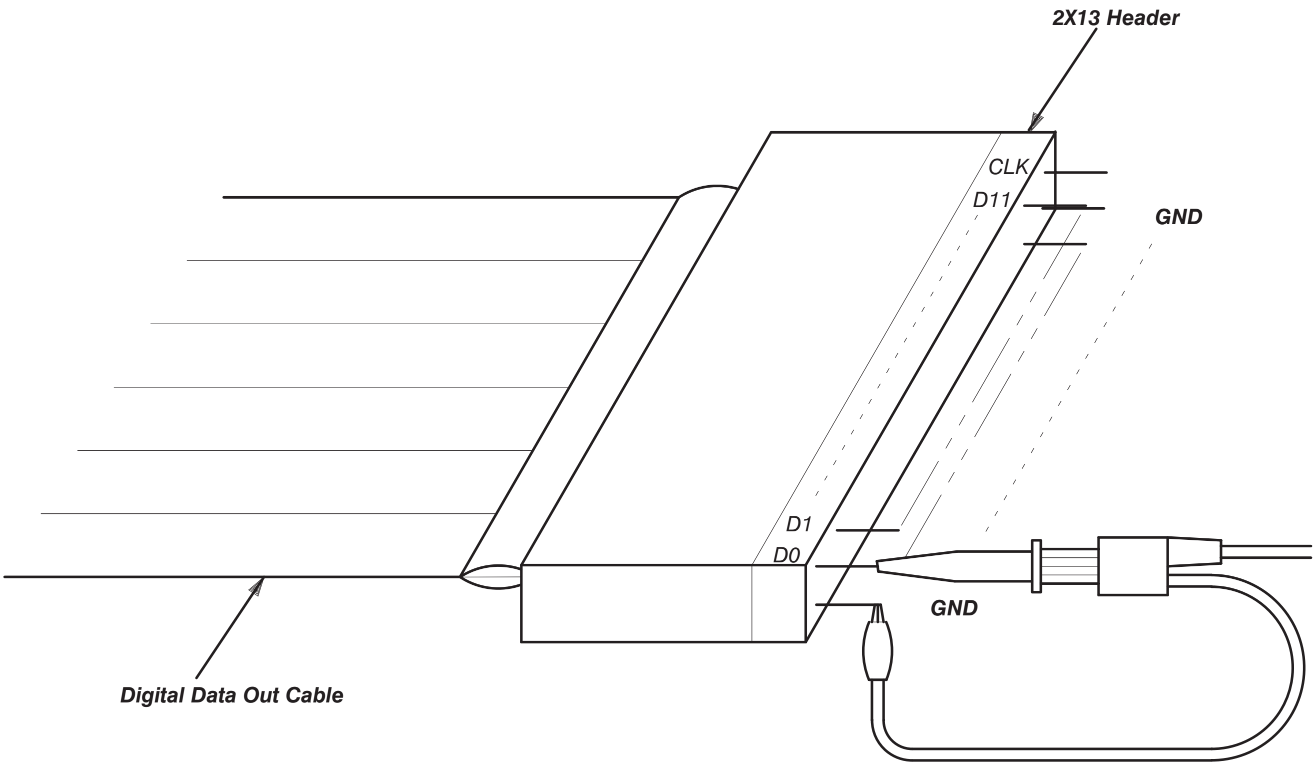


Figure E-23: Output Pins on the Digital Data Out Cable

4. *Check the CH2 digital data output signals:*

   a. *Change connection:* Change the connection for the digital data out cable from CH1 DIGITAL DATA OUT connector to CH2 DIGITAL DATA OUT connector.

   b. Repeat the step 2 and 3 to check the CH2 digital data output signals.

5. *Turn off equipment output and disconnect test hookup:*

   a. *Disable power supply output:* Turn off power supply output.

   b. *Remove connections:* Disconnect all connections to the AWG2005.

Floating Point Processor Check (Option 09)

This procedure checks the AWG2005 floating point processor.

NOTE

This check requires that the AWG2005 has Option 09 installed.

Equipment Required: None.

Prerequisites: The AWG2005 meets the prerequisites listed on page E-7.

Procedure:

1. *Check that floating point processor test in internal diagnostics passes:*

   a. *Run the AWG2005 internal diagnostics:* Push the AWG2005 **ON/STBY** switch two times so that the AWG2005 runs the power-on diagnostics.

   b. *Check the FPP test results:* When the AWG2005 finishes the FPP test, check that the test result is Pass.

This completes the performance tests for the AWG2005.

Appendix F: Inspection and Cleaning

Inspect and clean the instrument as often as operating conditions require. The collection of dirt can cause instrument overheating and breakdown. Dirt acts as an insulating blanket, preventing efficient heat dissipation. Dirt also provides an electrical conduction path that can cause an instrument failure, especially under high-humidity conditions.

CAUTION. *To prevent damage avoid the use of chemical cleaning agents that might damage the plastics used in this instrument. Use only deionized water when cleaning the menu buttons or front-panel buttons. Use a ethyl alcohol solution as a cleaner and rinse with deionized water.*

Avoid the use of high pressure compressed air when cleaning dust from the interior of this instrument. (High pressure air can cause ESD.) Instead, use low pressure compressed air (about 9 psi).

Inspection – Exterior

Using Table F-1 as a guide, inspect the outside of the instrument for damage, wear, and missing parts. You should thoroughly check instruments that appear to have been dropped or otherwise abused to verify correct operation and performance. Immediately repair defects that could cause personal injury or lead to further damage to the instrument.

Table F-1: External inspection check list

Item	Inspect for	Repair action
Cabinet, front panel, and cover	Cracks, scratches, deformations, damaged hardware or gaskets	Replace defective module
Front-panel knobs	Missing, damaged, or loose knobs	Repair or replace missing or defective knobs
Connectors	Broken shells, cracked insulation, and deformed contacts. Dirt in connectors	Replace defective modules; clear or wash out dirt
Carrying handle and cabinet feet	Correct operation	Replace defective module
Accessories	Missing items or parts of items, bent pins, broken or frayed cables, and damaged connectors	Replace damaged or missing items, frayed cables, and defective modules

Cleaning Procedure – Exterior

To clean the instrument exterior, do the following:

***WARNING.** To avoid injury or death, unplug the power cord from line voltage before cleaning the instrument. To avoid getting moisture inside the instrument during external cleaning, use only enough liquid to dampen the cloth or applicator.*

1. Remove loose dust on the outside of the instrument with a lint-free cloth.

2. Remove remaining dirt with a lint free cloth dampened in a general purpose detergent-and-water solution. Do not use abrasive cleaners.

3. Clean the monitor screen with a lint-free cloth dampened with either ethyl alcohol or, preferably, a gentle, general purpose detergent-and-water solution.

Lubrication. There is no periodic lubrication required for this instrument.